PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE
Dedication

To John Eckersley, who first encouraged my interest in this kind of thing.
Acknowledgements

I am grateful to all the people who have helped me with the preparation of this fourth edition. I owe a particular debt to Professor Bas Aarts of University College, London, and Dr Catherine Walter, of Linacre College, Oxford, who both read all of the material in draft, and whose detailed comments and suggestions have substantially improved the book. I am equally indebted to Professor Loretta Gray of Central Washington University, who also read the whole text, and whose comprehensive advice on questions of American usage has provided valuable support for this aspect of the revision. Many teachers in different countries were good enough to respond to a request for suggestions for possible additions and improvements: my thanks to the individuals and organisations concerned. My thanks also to members of the staff of the London School of English, who kindly participated in a very constructive workshop designed to explore ways of using the book. Several specialists have generously shared their knowledge of specific areas of language and usage, and numerous teachers, students and colleagues have taken the trouble to make comments and suggestions regarding particular entries. Their input, too, has benefited the book considerably. I must also acknowledge my debt to the many consultants and correspondents whose help and advice with the preparation of earlier editions continue as an important contribution to the fourth.

Any pedagogic grammarian owes an enormous debt to the academic linguists on whose research he or she is parasitic. There is not enough space to mention all the scholars of the last hundred years or so on whose work I have drawn directly or indirectly, even if I had a complete record of my borrowings. But I must at least pay homage to two monumental reference works of the present generation: the Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language, by Quirk, Greenbaum, Leech and Svartvik (Longman, 1985), and the Cambridge Grammar of the English Language, by Huddleston, Pullum and others (Cambridge University Press, 2002). Their authoritative accounts of the facts of English structure and usage constitute an essential source of information for anyone writing pedagogic grammar materials today.

Finally, it is with particular pleasure that I express my gratitude, once again, to the editorial, design and production team at Oxford University Press, whose professional expertise is matched only by their concern to make an author’s task as trouble-free as possible.
Contents summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>viii-xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents overview</td>
<td>xiii-xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language terminology</td>
<td>xx-xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonetic alphabet</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practical English Usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>Sections 1-28: entries 1-320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>Sections 29-31: entries 321-635</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Index
Introduction

What is Practical English Usage?

Practical English Usage is a combined usage guide and learner's grammar. It is intended mainly for advanced students and teachers of English as a foreign or second language; it may also be useful to teacher trainers and materials writers. It is not addressed to native speakers of English, who need a rather different kind of reference book.

A usage guide

Usage guides deal with problem points: words and structures that people have difficulty with, or disagree about. English, like all languages, is full of problems for the foreign learner. Some of these points are easy to explain – for instance, the formation of questions, the difference between since and for, or the meaning of after all. Other problems are more tricky, and cause difficulty even for advanced students and teachers. How exactly is the present perfect used? When do we use past tenses to be polite? What are the differences between at, on and in with expressions of place? We can say a chair leg – why not a cat leg? When can we use the expression do so? When is the used with superlatives? Is unless the same as if not? What are the differences between come and go, between each and every, between big, large and great, or between fairly, quite, rather and pretty? Is it correct to say There's three more bottles in the fridge? How do you actually say $3 	imes 4 = 12$? And so on, and so on.

Practical English Usage is a guide to problems of this kind. It deals with over 1,000 points which regularly cause difficulty to foreign students of English. It will be useful, for example, to a learner who is not sure how to use a particular structure, or who has made a mistake and wants to find out why it is wrong. It will also be helpful to a teacher who is looking for a clear explanation of a difficult language point. There is very full coverage of grammar, as well as explanations of a large number of common vocabulary problems. There are also some entries designed to clarify more general questions (e.g. formality, slang, the nature of standard English and dialects) which students and teachers may find themselves concerned with.

Problems are mostly explained in short separate entries. This makes it possible to give a clear complete treatment of each point, and enables the user to concentrate just on the question that he or she needs information about. In longer entries, basic information is generally given first, followed by more detailed explanations and discussion of more advanced points.

A complete student's grammar

The grammatical entries in Practical English Usage are grouped into 28 Sections, each dealing with a major grammatical topic (e.g. present tenses, passives, nouns and noun phrases, prepositions, relative clauses). So the book can be used not only as a guide to particular usage problems, but also as a systematic reference grammar. For users who like to work in this way, each Section begins with one or two pages giving a general introduction to the grammatical topic, together with a list of common mistakes that are dealt with in the entries that follow.
Vocabulary
The grammar Sections include a good deal of information about the structures used with particular words. In addition, the last three Sections of the book deal specifically with vocabulary questions, and include an A–Z guide to over 250 common word problems of various kinds.

Approach and style
I have tried to make the presentation as practical as possible. Each entry contains an explanation of a problem, examples of correct usage, and (when this is useful) examples of typical mistakes. In some cases, an explanation may be somewhat different from that found in many learners’ grammars; this is because the rules traditionally given for certain points (e.g. conditionals or indirect speech) are not always accurate or helpful. Explanations are, as far as possible, in simple everyday language. Where it has been necessary to use grammatical terminology, I have generally preferred to use traditional terms that are simple and easy to understand, except where this would be seriously misleading. Some of these terms (e.g. future tense) would be regarded as unsatisfactory by academic grammarians, but I am not writing for specialists. There is a glossary of the terminology used in the book on pages xx–xxix.

The kind of English described
The explanations deal mainly with standard everyday southern British English, but contrasts between British and American English are given detailed attention. There are also brief notes on several other varieties (e.g. Australian and Indian English). Information about stylistic differences (e.g. between formal and informal usage, or spoken and written language) is provided where this is appropriate.

Correctness and rules
If people say that a form is not ‘correct’, they can mean several different things. They may for instance be referring to a sentence like I have seen her yesterday, which normally only occurs in the English of foreigners. They may be thinking of a usage like less people (instead of fewer people), which is common in standard English but regarded as wrong by some people. Or they may be talking about forms like ain’t or ‘double negatives’, which are used in speech by many British and American people, but which do not occur in the standard dialects and are not usually written. This book is mainly concerned with the first kind of ‘correctness’: the differences between British or American English and ‘foreign’ English. However, there is also information about cases of divided usage in standard English, and about a few important dialect forms.

The rules given in this book are descriptive: they explain what actually happens in standard spoken and written English. Some usage guides give prescriptive rules – rules devised by people who feel that the language should be tidied up or protected against corruption. Such rules do not always correspond to actual usage (the rule about not using less with plurals is an example). In Practical English Usage, I avoid giving rules which do not describe the language as it is actually used, though I mention their existence where this is useful.
What this book does not do

*Practical English Usage* is not a complete guide to the English language. As the title suggests, its purpose is practical: to give learners and their teachers the most important information they need in order to deal with common language problems. Within this framework, the explanations are as complete and accurate as I can make them. However, it is not always helpful or possible in a book of this kind to deal with all the details of a complex structural point; so readers may well find occasional exceptions to some of the grammatical rules given here. Equally, the book does not aim to replace a dictionary. While it gives information about common problems with the use of a number of words, it does not attempt to describe other meanings or uses of the words beside those points that are selected for attention. Nor does it attempt to cover all the vocabulary problems that learners may meet: for this, another complete book would be needed.

Changes in the fourth edition

After consultation with users, the alphabetical organisation which was used in previous editions has been replaced by a thematic arrangement (see above), so as to make it easier to search for information. A number of amendments have also been made to particular entries to reflect recent changes in the language – for instance, the reduced frequency of some modal verbs, the disappearance of *shall*, or cases where British English is adopting American usage.

How much do mistakes matter?

It depends on how much people need, or want, a high level of correctness when speaking or writing another language. For many learners this is important – for instance for work, examinations, or their own personal goals – and *Practical English Usage* will help them to approach standard British/American native-speaker usage. However, it is important for such learners not to become obsessed with correctness, or to worry every time they make a mistake. It is quite unnecessary to speak or write a language like a native speaker in order to communicate effectively, and very few adults in fact achieve a perfect command of another language. For some learners, on the other hand, accuracy is relatively unimportant: people can use English successfully for international communication even when their grammar differs considerably from native-speaker models. However, too many such differences can make a speaker or writer difficult to understand, so it is good even for these learners to aim at a reasonable level of correctness.

Note also that ‘mistake’ is a relative term. The mistakes listed in this book are wrong if produced by someone aiming to write standard British or American English. They would not necessarily be incorrect in some other varieties of the language.

How to find things: the Index

The best way to find information about a particular point is to look in the Index at the end of the book. Most points are indexed under several different names, so it is not difficult to locate the entry you need. For instance, if you want to know about using *to* instead of a whole infinitive, in structures like *I hope to, I'd like to*, you can find the number of the entry where this is explained by looking in the Index under ‘to’, ‘infinitives’, ‘ellipsis’ or ‘leaving out words’. (On the other hand, it would obviously not be helpful to look under ‘hope’ or ‘want’: the rule is a general one about infinitive structures, not about these two verbs in particular.)
Using the Index

**280 ellipsis: infinitives**

1 to used instead of whole infinitive: We hope to.

We can use to instead of the whole infinitive of a repeated verb (and following words), if the meaning is clear.

'Aren't you and Gillian getting married? 'We hope to.'

'Let's go for a walk.' 'I don't want to.'

I don't dance much now, but I used to a lot.

Sorry I shouted at you. I didn't mean to.

'Somebody ought to clean up the bathroom.' 'I'll ask Jack to.'

Be and have (used for possession) are not usually dropped.

There are more flowers than there used to be. (not...than there used to be.)

She hasn't been promoted yet, but she ought to be. (not...but she ought to be.)

You've got more freckles than you used to have. (not...but you used to have.)

2 ellipsis (leaving out words) 275-280; leaving out words 275-280.

after adjectives 278.1; after and, but and or 276; after as and than 275.2; after auxiliary verbs 279; after conjunctions 275.11; after determiners 278.2; after if 245.6; after question words 275.8; at the beginning of a sentence 277; before question tags 306.8; in advertisements, instructions, etc 291; in emails, etc 290.2; in headlines 292.1; in infinitives (e.g. I don't want to) 280.1; in noun phrases 278; in replies 275.1; leaving out articles 142; leaving out if 244.4; leaving out prepositions 214; leaving out prepositions before that 210.1; leaving out that 265; object relative pronoun 234.4; subject relative pronoun 237.19; ellipsis causing comprehension problems 285.6–7

3 infinitives SECTIONS 8–10; introduction 88; progressive, perfect, passive and negative infinitives 89; split infinitive 89.7; perfect infinitives (e.g. to have left) 90; without to 91; to instead of whole infinitive 280.1; as subject, object or complement 92; infinitive or -ing form 93; infinitive or -ing form with different uses 105; after verbs 97; after verb + object 98; after hear, see, etc + object 110; after adjectives 101; after easy, difficult, impossible, etc 101.4; after superlatives (e.g. the youngest person to) 101.3; after nouns and pronouns 102; after

4 leave preposition 213; + object + infinitive 98; and forget 470; with preparatory it (e.g. I'll leave it to you to decide) 269.4; with two objects 8.1

5 leave off...ing 100.1

6 leaving out words see ellipsis

7 left (= remaining) 509

8 leisurely adjective and adverb 194.1
How to find things: the Contents overview

Larger grammatical topics (e.g. 'simple present', 'articles', 'reflexive pronouns') can also be found quite easily by looking through the Contents Overview on pages x-xvi.

4 Talking about the Future

INTRODUCTION

35 going to  36 present progressive for future
37 simple present for future  38 will
39 will, going to and present progressive: advanced points
40 future perfect  41 future progressive
42 be to + infinitive: I am to ..., you are to ..., etc  43 future in the past

12 Determiners: a/an and the; my, your, etc; this, that, etc

INTRODUCTION

133 articles: introduction  134 articles: basic information (A)
135 articles: basic information (B)  136 more about the  137 more about a/an
138 no article with plural and uncountable nouns
139 the difference between some/any and no article  140 talking in general
141 the: difficult cases  142 special rules and exceptions
143 possessive determiners: my, your, etc  144 this and that
145 this/that and it: things that have just been mentioned

14 Pronouns

INTRODUCTION

173 personal pronouns: basic information
174 personal pronouns: advanced points  175 singular they
176 possessive pronouns: mine, yours, etc  177 a friend of mine, etc
178 reflexive pronouns: myself, etc
179 reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another
180 somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, etc
181 one, you and they: used for people in general
182 one (substitute word): a big one

However, many smaller topics will not show up in the Contents Overview, because they do not have their own separate entries. So for instance to find what structures can be used with expect or hope, or what is the correct plural form of phenomenon, it is best to go to the Index.
Contents overview

This overview gives a general picture of the topics covered in the book; it is not
a complete guide to the contents. References are to entry numbers. To find
information about a particular point, consult the Index at the back of the book.

Grammar

1 Verbs
INTRODUCTION
1 irregular verbs  2 active verb tenses  3 progressive structures
4 non-progressive verbs  5 progressive with always, etc
6 perfect structures  7 subjects, objects and complements
8 verbs with two objects  9 verbs with both active and passive meanings
10 verb + object + complement: You make me nervous.
11 linking verbs: be, seem, look, etc  12 two-part verbs: phrasal verbs
13 two-part verbs: prepositional verbs  14 verbs of movement: she ran in, etc
15 verb + verb: auxiliary verbs  16 verb + verb: other structures

2 Be, have and do
INTRODUCTION
17 be: general  18 be: progressive forms  19 be with auxiliary do  20 there is
21 have: introduction  22 have: auxiliary verb  23 have: actions
24 have (got): possession, relationships and other states  25 be and have
26 do: introduction  27 do: auxiliary verb  28 do: substitute verb (I may do.)
29 do so/it/that

3 Present Tenses
INTRODUCTION
30 simple present: forms  31 simple present: use
32 present progressive  33 stories, commentaries and instructions
34 present tenses: advanced points

4 Talking about the Future
INTRODUCTION
35 going to  36 present progressive for future
37 simple present for future  38 will
39 will, going to and present progressive: advanced points
40 future perfect  41 future progressive
42 be to + infinitive: I am to . . ., you are to . . ., etc  43 future in the past

5 Past and Perfect Tenses
INTRODUCTION
44 simple past  45 past progressive
46 past form with present or future meaning  47 present perfect: basic information
48 present perfect or past?  49 present perfect or past: advanced points

To find the answer to a specific question, see the Index
50 present perfect progressive
51 present perfect simple or progressive? 52 present perfect or present?
53 past perfect: basic information 54 past perfect: advanced points
55 past perfect: progressive 56 This is the first/last . . , etc

6 Passives
INTRODUCTION
57 passive structures and verb forms 58 by + agent
59 passive modal structures: It can be done tomorrow.
60 get as passive auxiliary: He got caught.
61 verbs with two objects in the passive 62 verbs with prepositions in the passive
63 It was thought that . . . 64 He is believed to be . .
65 He was considered a genius. 66 My suitcase is packed.
67 When do we use passive structures?

7 Modal Auxiliary Verbs
INTRODUCTION
68 modals: grammar, pronunciation and contractions
69 deduction (deciding that something is certain): must, can’t, etc
70 deduction (deciding that something is probable): should, ought to, etc
71 chances: may, might and could 72 may and might: some special uses
73 strong obligation: must, will 74 strong obligation: have (got) to
75 have (got) to and must 76 weaker obligation: should and ought to
77 weaker obligation: had better 78 expectations: supposed to
79 willingness: will, can
80 instructions and requests: will, would, can, could, might, shall
81 permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to 82 ability: can and could
83 ability: advanced points 84 can and could with see, hear, etc
85 be able to 86 typical behaviour: can, could, may, might, will, would
87 typical behaviour: used to + infinitive

8 Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles
INTRODUCTION
88 infinitives: introduction 89 infinitives: forms
90 use of perfect infinitives: glad to have left
91 infinitives without to: I saw you come in.
92 infinitive as subject or complement 93 -ing forms: introduction
94 -ing form as subject, object or complement
95 infinitive or -ing form? 96 participles: -ing and -ed forms used like adjectives

9 Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc
INTRODUCTION
97 infinitives after verbs: It’s beginning to rain.
98 verb + object + infinitive: I want you to listen. 99 try and . . , go and . . , etc
100 -ing forms after verbs: I enjoy travelling.
101 infinitives after adjectives: pleased to see you
102 infinitives after nouns and pronouns: my decision to leave
103 -ing forms after nouns and adjectives: tired of listening
104 -ing forms after prepositions: without breaking eggs
105 infinitives or -ing forms: both possible with different uses
106 active and passive infinitive with similar meaning
107 causative structures with make 108 causative and similar structures with get
109 causative and similar structures with have
110 hear, see, etc + object + verb form

10 Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles: Other Uses
INTRODUCTION
111 infinitives after question words: who to . . . , etc
112 infinitive of purpose: I sat down to rest.
113 for . . . to . . .
114 infinitives: other uses
115 participle clauses

11 Nouns and Noun Phrases; Agreement
INTRODUCTION
116 spelling of plurals
117 irregular and special plurals
118 pronunciation of plurals
119 countable and uncountable nouns: basic information
120 countable and uncountable nouns: advanced points
121 piece- and group-words: a blade of grass; a bunch of flowers
122 noun + complement: What can follow a noun?
123 possessives: noun + 's (forms)
124 nouns in combination: my father's house
125 nouns in combination: milk chocolate
126 classifying expressions: noun + noun or preposition structure?
127 classifying expressions with 's: a child's toy; cow's milk
128 singular expressions with plural verbs
129 plural expressions with singular verbs
130 mixed singular and plural: other structures
131 distributive plural: Tell them to bring raincoats.
132 turning verbs into nouns: a cough, a taste

12 Determiners: a/an and the; my, your, etc; this, that, etc
INTRODUCTION
133 articles: introduction
134 articles: basic information (A)
135 articles: basic information (B)
136 more about the
137 more about a/an
138 no article with plural and uncountable nouns
139 the difference between some/any and no article
140 talking in general
141 the: difficult cases
142 special rules and exceptions
143 possessive determiners: my, your, etc
144 this and that
145 this/that and it: things that have just been mentioned

13 Determiners: Quantifiers
INTRODUCTION
146 all: introduction
147 all (of) with noun phrases and pronouns
148 all with the verb: We can all swim.
149 all, everybody/everyone and everything
150 all and whole
151 every (one)
152 every and all
153 each
154 each and every: the difference
155 both
156 either
157 neither
158 some
159 any
160 any = 'it doesn’t matter who/which/what'
14 Pronouns
INTRODUCTION
173 personal pronouns: basic information
174 personal pronouns: advanced points
175 singular they
176 possessive pronouns: mine, yours, etc
177 a friend of mine, etc
178 reflexive pronouns: myself, etc
179 reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another
180 somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, etc
181 one, you and they: used for people in general
182 one (substitute word): a big one

15 Adjectives
INTRODUCTION
183 adjectives: normal position
184 order of adjectives
185 adjectives with and
186 adjectives after nouns and pronouns
187 adjectives: position after as, how, so, too
188 adjectives without nouns
189 gradable and non-gradable adjectives
190 measurements: 'marked' and 'unmarked' forms
191 pronunciation of aged, naked, etc
192 What can follow an adjective?

16 Adverbs and Adverbials
INTRODUCTION
193 adverbs of manner and adjectives
194 adverbs or adjectives: confusing cases
195 adverb particles: up, down, back, away, etc
196 position of adverbials: introduction
197 connecting and comment adverbials
198 indefinite frequency, certainty and completeness
199 focusing adverbials
200 mid-position: details
201 manner, place and time
202 adverbials modifying adverbials: terribly sorry; right past me

17 Comparison
INTRODUCTION
203 as . . . as; as much/many as
204 comparative and superlative adjectives
205 comparative and superlative adverbs
206 using comparatives and superlatives
207 much older, by far the oldest, etc
208 comparison: advanced points

18 Prepositions
INTRODUCTION
209 prepositions at the ends of clauses
210 prepositions before conjunctions
211 -ing forms and infinitives
212 prepositions before particular words and expressions
213 prepositions after particular words and expressions
214 expressions without prepositions

19 Basic Clause Types

INTRODUCTION
215 sentence structure: basic word order  216 questions: basic rules
217 negative structures: basic rules  218 negative questions
219 negative structures with *think*, *hope*, *seem*, etc
220 multiple negatives: *I couldn't see nobody.*
221 ambiguous negatives
222 non-affirmative words: *anybody*, *ever*, *yet*, etc  223 exclamations
224 imperatives  225 *let* introducing imperatives

20 Conjunctions, Sentences and Clauses

INTRODUCTION
226 putting things together: *and*, *but*, *or*
227 *not* . . . *or*; *not* . . . *nor*; *and not*
228 emphatic coordination: *both* . . . *and*; *(n)either* . . . *(n)or*; *not only*
229 subordinate clauses: some general points
230 *who*, *which*, *what*, etc after prepositions
231 tense simplification in subordinate clauses
232 subjunctive: *that she go*, *that they be*, *if I were*, etc

21 Relative Clauses

INTRODUCTION
233 relatives: basic information
234 identifying and non-identifying clauses:
   *the tall man who . . .*; *Mr Rogers, who . . .*
235 *whose*  236 *what*  237 relatives: advanced points

22 If

INTRODUCTION
238 ordinary structures  239 special structures with past tenses and *would*
240 *if I were you*  241 unreal past situations  242 *if only*  243 *if . . . will*
244 other points  245 other structures found in spoken English
246 other words and expressions with similar uses  247 *unless*
248 *in case* and *if*

23 Other Adverbial Clauses

INTRODUCTION
249 *after*: conjunction  250 *before*: conjunction
251 *as*, *when* and *while*: simultaneous events  252 *whoever*, *whatever*, etc
253 *no matter who*, etc  254 *whether* . . . *or* . . .
255 *as* and *though*: special word order
256 *than*- and *as*-clauses: leaving out subjects, etc

Contents overview • xvii
To find the answer to a specific question, see the Index
24  Noun Clauses, Direct and Indirect Speech

INTRODUCTION
257  direct speech: reporting verbs and word order
258  indirect speech: introduction  259  indirect speech: tenses
260  indirect speech: questions and answers  261  whether and if
262  indirect speech: infinitives  263  indirect speech: advanced points
264  that-clauses  265  leaving out that  266  interrogative (question-word) clauses

25  Information Structure

INTRODUCTION
267  information structure: normal order and variations
268  preparatory it: subject  269  preparatory it: object
270  inversion: auxiliary verb before subject
271  inversion: full verb before subject
272  fronting: This question we have already discussed.
273  cleft sentences: It was my secretary who . . .
274  cleft sentences: What I need is a rest.
275  ellipsis (leaving words out): introduction
276  ellipsis with and, but and or  277  ellipsis at the beginning of a sentence
278  ellipsis in noun phrases  279  ellipsis after auxiliary verbs
280  ellipsis: infinitives

26  Written Texts

INTRODUCTION
281  formality  282  pronouns and other proforms
283  linking with conjunctions and adverbs  284  discourse markers in writing
285  reading complicated structures  286  paragraphs  287  repetition
288  academic writing  289  correspondence: letters
290  correspondence: emails, text messages, etc  291  abbreviated styles
292  headlines  293  punctuation: full stop, question mark and exclamation mark
294  punctuation: colon  295  punctuation: semi-colon
296  punctuation: comma  297  punctuation: dash
298  punctuation: quotation marks

27  Speech and Spoken Exchanges

INTRODUCTION
299  spoken sentence structure  300  avoiding repetition: Wonderful, isn’t it?
301  discourse markers in speech  302  declarative questions: That’s the boss?
303  rhetorical questions: Who cares?
304  echo questions: She’s invited how many?
305  question tags: basic information  306  question tags: advanced points
307  reply questions: Was it? Did you, dear?  308  short answers: Yes, he can, etc
309  so am I, neither do they, etc  310  politeness: using questions
311  politeness: distancing verb forms  312  politeness: softening expressions
313  pronunciation: stress and rhythm  314  pronunciation: intonation
315  pronunciation: weak and strong forms
28 Varieties of English

INTRODUCTION
316 standard English and dialects 317 correctness 318 changes in English
319 American and British English 320 other varieties of English

Vocabulary

29 Vocabulary Areas

INTRODUCTION
321 nationalities, countries and regions 322 numbers 323 talking about age
324 dates 325 telling the time 326 names and titles: Daniel; Mr Lewis
327 names: Florence, Homer, etc 328 gender (references to males and females)
329 ‘social’ language 33 meals 331 telephoning
332 idioms, collocations and formulaic expressions
333 formal and informal vocabulary 334 slang
335 discriminatory and offensive language

30 Word Formation and Spelling

INTRODUCTION
336 abbreviations 337 contractions: I’ll, don’t, etc 338 prefixes and suffixes
339 -ic and -ical 340 apostrophes 341 capital letters 342 hyphens
343 -ise and -ize 344 -able and -ible 345 -ly 346 final e
347 doubling final consonants 348 y and i 349 ch and tch, k and ck
350 ie and ei 351 spelling and pronunciation

31 Word Problems from A to Z 352–635
Language terminology

The following words and expressions are used in this book to talk about grammar and other aspects of language.

**abstract noun** (the opposite of a concrete noun) the name of something which we experience as an idea, not by seeing, touching, etc. Examples: *doubt; height; geography.*

**active** An active verb form is one like *breaks, told, will help* (not like *is broken, was told, will be helped*, which are passive verb forms). The subject of an active verb is usually the person or thing that does the action, or that is responsible for what happens.

**adjective** a word like *green, hungry, impossible*, which is used when we describe people, things, events, etc. Adjectives are used in connection with nouns and pronouns. Examples: *a green apple; She's hungry.*

**adjective clause** another name for relative clause

**adverb** a word like *tomorrow, once, badly, there, also*, which is used to say, for example, when, where or how something happens.

**adverbial** an adverb, or a longer expression which has a similar function to an adverb in a clause. Examples: *I usually get up at seven o'clock on weekdays.*

**adverbial clause** a clause which functions as an adverbial. Examples: *On Sundays I usually get up when I wake up; I'll phone you if I have time.*

**adverb particle** a short adverb like *up, out, off*, often used as part of a phrasal verb (e.g. *clean up, look out, tell off*).

**affirmative** an affirmative sentence is one that makes a positive statement - not a negative sentence or a question. Compare *I agree* (affirmative); *I don’t agree* (negative).

**agent** In a passive sentence, the agent is the expression that says who or what an action is done by. Example: *This picture was probably painted by a child.*

**article** *A, an and the* are called ‘articles’. *A/an* is called the ‘indefinite article’; *the* is called the ‘definite article’.

**aspect** Many grammarians prefer to talk about progressive and perfective aspect, rather than progressive and perfect tense, since these forms express other ideas besides time (e.g. continuity, completion). However, in this book the term *tense* is often used to include aspect, for the sake of simplicity.

**attributive** Adjectives placed before nouns are in ‘attributive position’.

Examples: *a green shirt; my noisy son.* See also **predicative**.

**auxiliary verb** a verb like *be, have, do* which is used with another verb to make tenses, passive forms, etc. Examples: *She was writing; Where have you put it?* See also modal auxiliary verb.

**base form** the form of a verb that has no endings or other changes, used for example in infinitives, imperatives and present tenses (except third person singular). Examples: *I'd like to phone; Pass the salt.*

**clause** a stretch of language which contains a subject and a finite verb. Sentences consist of one or more clauses. Examples: *Alex couldn't come today. I'll be glad when Harry gets back.* The word *clause* is also sometimes used for some structures containing participles or infinitives. Example: *Not knowing what to do, I telephoned Robin.* See also co-ordinate clause, main clause, subordinate clause.
cleft sentence a sentence in which special emphasis is given to one part (e.g. the subject or the object) by using a structure with it or what. Examples: It was you that caused the accident; What I need is a drink.
collective noun a singular word for a group. Examples: family; team.
comparative the form of an adjective or adverb made with -er (e.g. older, faster); also the structure more + adjective/adverb, used in the same way (e.g. more useful, more politely).
complement 1. (predicative complement) a part of a sentence that gives more information about the subject (after be, seem and some other verbs), or, in some structures, about the object. Examples: You're the right person to help; She looks very kind; They elected him President. 2. a structure or words needed after a noun, adjective, verb or preposition to complete its meaning. Examples: the intention to travel; full of water; try phoning; down the street.
compound a compound noun, verb, adjective, preposition, etc is one that is made of two or more parts. Examples: bus driver; get on with; one-eyed.
concrete noun (the opposite of an abstract noun) the name of something which we can experience by seeing, touching, etc. Examples: cloud; petrol; raspberry.
conditional a clause or sentence containing if (or a word with a similar meaning). Examples: If you try you'll understand; I would be surprised if she knew; Supposing the train had been late, what would you have done?
conjunction a word like and, but, although, because, when, if, which can be used to join clauses together. Example: I rang because I was worried.
consonant for example, the letters b, c, d, f, g and their usual sounds (see Phonetic alphabet, page xxx). See also vowel.
continuous the same as progressive.
contraction a short form in which a subject and an auxiliary verb, or an auxiliary verb and the word not, are joined together into one word. Contractions are also made with non-auxiliary be and have. Examples: I'm; who've; John'll; can't.
co-ordinate clause one of two or more clauses of equal 'value' that are connected. Examples: Shall I come to your place or would you like to come to mine?; It's cooler today and there's a bit of a wind. See also clause, main clause, subordinate clause.
co-ordinating conjunction a conjunction that joins co-ordinate clauses or other co-ordinate structures. Examples: and, but, or.
countable noun a noun like car, dog, idea, which can have a plural form, and can be used with the indefinite article a/an. See also uncountable noun.
declarative question a question which has the same grammatical form as a statement. Example: That's your girlfriend?
definite article the.
defining relative see identifying relative.
demonstrative this, these, that, those.
determiner one of a group of words that begin noun phrases. Determiners include a/an, the, my, this, each, either, several, more, both, all.
direct object see object.
**direct speech**  speech reported ‘directly’, in the words used by the original speaker (more or less), without any changes of tense, pronouns, etc. Example: She looked at me and said, ‘This is my money’. See also **indirect speech**.

**discourse marker**  a word or expression which shows the connection between what is being said and the wider context. A discourse marker may, for example, connect a sentence with what comes before or after, or it may show the speaker’s attitude to what he/she is saying. Examples: on the other hand; frankly; as a matter of fact.

**duration**  how long something lasts. The preposition **for** can be used with an expression of time to indicate duration.

**ellipsis**  leaving out words when their meaning can be understood from the context. Examples: (It’s a) Nice day, isn’t it?; It was better than I expected (it would be).

**emphasis**  giving special importance to one part of a word or sentence (for example by pronouncing it more loudly; by writing it in capital letters; by using do in an affirmative clause; by using special word order).

**emphatic pronoun**  reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, etc) used to emphasise a noun or pronoun. Examples: I’ll tell him myself; I wouldn’t sell this to the president himself. See also reflexive pronoun.

**ending**  something added to the end of a word, e.g. -er, -ing, -ed.

**finite verb**  Verbs which show time (e.g. goes, went) are often called ‘finite’ in grammars; other forms (e.g. written, playing) are called ‘non-finite’.

**first person**  see person.

**formal**  the style used when talking politely to strangers, on special occasions, in some literary writing, in business letters, etc. For example, commence is a more formal word than start.

**frequency**  Adverbials of frequency say how often something happens. Examples: often; never; daily; occasionally; every three days.

**fronting**  moving a part of a clause to the beginning in order to give it special emphasis. Example: Jack I like, but his wife I can’t stand.

**full verb**  a verb that is not an auxiliary verb. Examples: work, remove, explain.

**future**  a verb tense made with the auxiliary will (or sometimes shall) + infinitive without to. Example: I will arrive on Tuesday evening.

**future perfect**  a verb tense made with shall/will + have + past participle. Example: I will have finished by lunchtime.

**future progressive**  (or future continuous)  a verb tense made with shall/will + be + . . . ing. Example: I will be needing the car this evening.

**gender**  the use of different grammatical forms to show the difference between masculine, feminine and neuter, or between human and nonhuman. Examples: he; she; it; who; which.

**gerund**  the form of a verb ending in -ing, used like a noun (for example, as the subject or object of a sentence). Examples: Smoking is bad for you; I hate getting up early. See also present participle.

**gradable**  Pretty, hard or cold are gradable adjectives: things can be more or less pretty, hard or cold. Adverbs of degree (like rather, very) can be used with gradable words. Perfect or dead are not gradable words: we do not usually say that something is more or less perfect, or very dead.
grammar the rules that show how words are combined, arranged or changed to show certain kinds of meaning.

hypothetical Some words and structures (e.g. modal verbs, if-clauses) are used for hypothetical situations – that is to say, situations which may not happen, or are imaginary. Example: What would you do if you had six months free?

identifying (or defining) relative clause a relative clause which identifies a noun – which tells us which person or thing is being talked about. Example: There's the woman who tried to steal your cat. (The relative clause who tried to steal your cat identifies the woman – it tells us which woman is meant.) See also non-identifying relative clause.

imperative the form of a verb used to give orders, make suggestions, etc. Examples: Bring me a pen; Have a good holiday.

indirect object see object.

indirect speech a structure in which we report what somebody said by making it part of our own sentence (so that the tenses, word order, pronouns and other words may be different from those used by the original speaker). Compare: He said 'I'm tired' (the original speaker's words are reported in direct speech) and He said that he was tired (the original speaker's words are reported in indirect speech).

infinitive the base form of a word (usually with to), used after another verb, after an adjective or noun, or as the subject or complement of a sentence. Examples: I want to go home; It's easy to sing; I've got a plan to start a business; To err is human, to forgive divine.

informal the style used in ordinary conversation, personal letters, etc, when there is no special reason to speak politely or carefully. I'll is more informal than I will; get is used mostly in an informal style; start is a more informal word than commence.

-ing form the form of a verb ending in -ing. Examples: finding; keeping; running. See also gerund, present participle.

initial at the beginning. Sometimes is an adverb that can go in initial position in a sentence. Example: Sometimes I wish I had a different job.

intensifying making stronger, more emphatic. Very and terribly are intensifying adverbs.

interrogative Interrogative structures and words are used for asking questions. In an interrogative sentence, there is an auxiliary verb (or non-auxiliary be) before the subject (e.g. Can you swim?; Are you ready?). What, who and where are interrogative words.

intonation the 'melody' of spoken language: the way the musical pitch of the voice rises and falls to show meaning, sentence structure or mood.

intransitive An intransitive verb is one that cannot have an object or be used in the passive. Examples: smile; fall; come; go.

inversion a structure in which an auxiliary or other verb comes before its subject. Examples: Never had she seen such a mess; Here comes John.

irregular not following the normal rules, or not having the usual form. An irregular verb has a past tense and/or past participle that does not end in -ed (e.g. swam, taken); children is an irregular plural.
linking verb (or copular verb)  
be, seem, feel and other verbs which link a subject to a complement that describes it. Examples: My mother is in Jersey. He seems unhappy; This feels soft.

main clause, subordinate clause  
Some sentences consist of a main clause and one or more subordinate clauses. A subordinate clause acts like a part of the main clause (e.g. like a subject, or an object, or an adverbial). Examples: Where she is doesn't matter (the subordinate clause Where she is is the subject of the main clause); I told you that I didn't care (the subordinate clause that I didn't care is the direct object in the main clause); You'll find friends wherever you go (the subordinate clause wherever you go acts like an adverb in the main clause: compare You'll find friends anywhere).

main verb  
A verb phrase often contains one or more auxiliary verbs together with a main verb. The main verb is the verb which expresses the central meaning; auxiliary verbs mostly add grammatical information (for instance, they may show that a verb is progressive, future, perfect or passive). Examples: is going; will explain; has arrived; would have been forgotten.

manner  
an adverbial of manner describes how something happens. Examples: well; suddenly; fast; without any delay.

mid-position  
If an adverbial is in mid-position in a sentence, it is with the verb. Example: I have never been to Africa.

misrelated participle (also called hanging or dangling participle)  
a participle which appears to have a subject which is not its own. Example: Looking out of the window, the mountains appeared very close. (This seems to say that the mountains were looking out of the window.) The structure is usually avoided in careful writing because of the danger of misunderstanding.

modal auxiliary verb  
one of the verbs can, could, may, might, must, will, shall, would, should, ought.

modify  
an adjective is said to ‘modify’ the noun it is with: it adds to or defines its meaning. Examples: a fine day; my new job. An adverb can modify a verb (e.g. run fast), an adjective (e.g. completely ready) or other words or expressions. In sports car, the first noun modifies the second.

negative  
a negative sentence is one in which the word not is used with the verb. Example: I didn’t know.

nominal relative clause  
a relative clause (usually introduced by what) which acts as the subject, object or complement of a sentence. Example: I gave him what he needed.

non-affirmative (also called non-assertive)  
The words some, somebody, somewhere, etc are used most often in affirmative sentences. In other kinds of sentence they are often replaced by any, anybody, anywhere, etc. Words like any, anybody, etc are called ‘non-affirmative’ or non-assertive’ forms. Other non-affirmative forms are yet and ever.

non-identifying (or non-defining) relative clause  
a relative clause which does not identify the noun it refers to (because we already know which person or thing is meant). Example: There’s Hannah Smith, who tried to steal my cat. (The relative clause, who tried to steal my cat, does not identify the person - she is already identified by the name Hannah Smith.) See also identifying relative clause.
noun a word like oil, memory, arm, which can be used with an article. Nouns are most often the names of people or things. Personal names (e.g. George) and place names (e.g. Birmingham) are called 'proper nouns'; they are mostly used without articles.
noun phrase a group of words (e.g. article + adjective + noun) which acts as the subject, object or complement in a clause. Example: the last bus.
number the way in which differences between singular and plural are shown grammatically. The differences between house and houses, mouse and mice, this and these are differences of number.
object a noun phrase or pronoun that normally comes after the verb in an active clause. The direct object most often refers to a person or thing (or people or things) affected by the action of the verb. In the sentence Take the dog for a walk, the dog is the direct object. The indirect object usually refers to a person (or people) who receive(s) the direct object. In the sentence Anna gave me a watch, the indirect object is me, and the direct object is a watch. See also subject.

participle see present participle and past participle.

participle clause a clause-like structure which contains a participle, not a verb tense. Examples: Discouraged by his failure, he resigned from his job; Having a couple of hours to spare, I went to see a film.

passive A passive verb form is made with be + past participle. Examples: is broken; was told; will be helped (but not breaks, told, will help, which are active verb forms). The subject of a passive verb form is usually the person or thing that is affected by the action of the verb. Compare: They sent Lucas to prison for five years (active) and Lucas was sent to prison for five years (passive). See also active.
past participle a verb form like broken, gone, stopped, which can be used to form perfect tenses and passives, or as an adjective. (The meaning is not necessarily past, in spite of the name.)
past perfect a verb tense made with had + past participle. Examples: I had forgotten; The children had arrived; She had been working; It had been raining. The first two examples are simple past perfect; the last two (with had been + ...ing) are past perfect progressive (or continuous).
past progressive (or continuous) a verb tense made with was/were + ...ing.
Examples: I was going; They were stopping.

past simple see simple past.

perfect a verb form made with the auxiliary have + past participle. Examples:
I have forgotten; She had failed; having arrived; to have finished.
perfect conditional should/would have + past participle. Examples:
I should/would have agreed; He would have known.
perfect infinitive (to) have + past participle. Example: to have arrived.

perfect participle a structure like having lost, having arrived.

person the way in which, in grammar, we show the difference between the person(s) speaking (first person), the person(s) spoken to (second person), and the person, people or thing(s) spoken about (third person). The differences between I, you, and he/she, or between am, are and is, are differences of person.

personal pronouns the words I, me, you, he, him, etc.
**phrase**
two or more words that function together as a group. Examples: *dead tired; the silly old woman; would have been repaired; in the country.*

**phrasal verb**
a verb form that is made up of two parts: verb + adverb particle.
Examples: *fill up; run over; take in.*

**plural**
a grammatical form used to refer to more than one person or thing. Examples: *we; buses; children; are; many; these.* See also **singular**.

**possessive**
a form used to show possession and similar ideas. Examples: *John's; our; mine.*

**possessive pronoun**
My, your, his, her, etc are possessive pronouns (they stand for 'the speaker's', 'the hearer's', 'that person's', etc). Mine, yours, his, hers, etc are also possessive pronouns, for the same reason. My, your, etc are used before nouns, so they are not only pronouns, but also determiners. (They are often called 'possessive adjectives,' but this is not correct.) *Mine, yours,* etc are used without following nouns.

**postmodifier**
a word that comes after the word which it modifies, e.g. *invited in The people invited all came late.* See also **premodifier**.

**predicative**
Adjectives placed after a verb like be, seem, look are in predicative position. Examples: *The house is enormous; She looks happy.* See also **attributive**.

**prefix**
a form like ex-, anti- or un-, which can be added to the front of a word to give an additional or different meaning. Examples: *ex-wife, anti-British, unhappy.* See also **suffix**.

**premodifier**
a word that comes before the word which it modifies, e.g. *invited in an invited audience.* See also **postmodifier**.

**preparatory subject, preparatory object**
When the subject of a sentence is an infinitive or a clause, we usually put it towards the end of the sentence and use the pronoun *it* as a preparatory subject. Example: *It is important to get enough sleep.* It can also be used as a preparatory object in certain structures. Example: *He made it clear that he disagreed.* There is used as a kind of preparatory subject in *there is...* and similar structures. Example: *There is somebody at the door.*

**preposition**
a word like on, off, of, into, normally followed by a noun or pronoun.

**prepositional verb**
a verb form that is made up of two parts: verb form + preposition. Examples: *insist on; care for; listen to.*

**present participle**
the form of a verb ending in -ing, used as an adjective, a verb or part of a verb. Examples: *a crying baby; Opening his newspaper, he started to read; She was running.* (The meaning is not necessarily present, in spite of the name.) See also **gerund**.

**present perfect**
a verb tense made with have/has + past participle. Examples: *I have forgotten; The children have arrived; I've been working all day; It has been raining.* The first two examples are simple present perfect; the last two (with have been + ...ing) are present perfect progressive (or present perfect continuous).

**present progressive** (or continuous)
a verb tense made with am/are/is + ...ing. Examples: *I am going; She is staying for two weeks.*

**present simple**
see **simple present**.

**progressive** (or continuous)
A verb form made with the auxiliary be + ...ing. Examples: *to be going; We were wondering; I'll be seeing you.*
progressive (or continuous) infinitive  a form like to be going; to be waiting.
pronoun  a word like it, yourself, their, which is used instead of a more precise noun or noun phrase (like the cat, Tom's self, the family's). The word pronoun can also be used for a determiner when this includes the meaning of a following noun which has been left out. Example: I'll take these.
proper noun or proper name  a noun (most often with no article) which is the name of a particular person, place, organisation, etc. Examples: Alex, Brazil; the European Union.
quantifier  a determiner like many, few, little, several, which is used in a noun phrase to show how much or how many we are talking about.
question tag  an expression like do you? or isn't it?, consisting of an auxiliary verb (or non-auxiliary be or have) + pronoun subject, put on to the end of a sentence. Examples: You don't eat meat, do you?; It's a nice day, isn't it?
reflexive pronoun  myself, yourself, himself, etc. Example: I cut myself shaving this morning. See also emphatic pronoun.
regular  following the normal rules or having the usual form. Hoped is a regular past tense; cats is a regular plural. See also irregular.
relative clause  a clause which modifies a noun, usually introduced by a relative pronoun like who or which. Example: I like people who like me. See also identifying relative clause, non-identifying relative clause.
relative pronoun  a pronoun used to connect a relative clause to its noun. Who, whom, whose, which and that can be used as relative pronouns, and sometimes also when, where and why. Examples: There's the man who wants to buy my car; This is the room which needs painting; Do you remember the day when we met?
reply question  a question (similar in structure to a question tag) used to reply to a statement, for instance, to express interest. Example: 'I've been invited to spend the weekend in London.' 'Have you, dear?'
second person  see person.
sentence  a group of words that typically expresses a statement, command, question or exclamation. A sentence consists of one or more clauses, and usually has at least one subject and verb. In writing, it begins with a capital letter and ends with a full stop, question mark or exclamation mark.
short answer  an answer consisting of a subject and an auxiliary verb (or non-auxiliary be or have). Examples: 'Has anybody phoned the police?' 'Jack has.'; 'Who's ready for more?' 'I am.'
simple past (or past simple)  a past verb tense that has no auxiliary verb in the affirmative. Examples: I stopped; You heard; We knew.
simple present (or present simple)  a present verb form that has no auxiliary verb in the affirmative. Examples: He goes there often; I know; I like chocolate.
simple  a verb form that is not progressive.
singular  a grammatical form used to talk about one person, thing, etc, or about an uncountable quantity or mass. Examples: me; bus; water; is; much; this. See also plural.
slang  a word, expression or special use of language found mainly in very informal speech, often in the usage of particular groups of people. Examples: thick (= stupid); lose one's cool (= get upset); sparks (= electrician).
split infinitive  a structure in which an adverb comes between \textit{to} and the rest of the infinitive. Example: \textit{to easily understand}. Some people consider split infinitives 'incorrect,' but they are common in standard usage.

standard  A standard form of a language is the one that is most generally accepted for use in government, the law, business, education and literature. \textit{I’m not} is standard English; \textit{I ain’t} is non-standard.

statement  a sentence which gives information; not a question. Examples: \textit{I’m cold}; \textit{Daniel didn’t come home last night}.

stress  the way in which one or more parts of a word, phrase or sentence are made to sound more important than the rest, by using a louder voice and/or higher pitch. In the word \textit{particular}, the main stress is on the second syllable (\textit{partic-ular}); in the sentence \textit{Where’s the new secretary}? there are three stresses (\textit{WHERE’S the NEW secretary}?).

strong form, weak form  Certain words can be pronounced in two ways: slowly and carefully with the vowel that is written (strong form), or with a quicker pronunciation with the vowel /\textipa{æ}/ or /\textipa{ɛ}/ (weak form). Examples: \textit{can} (/\textipa{kæn}/, /\textipa{kən}/), \textit{was} (/\textipa{wɔz}/, /\textipa{wəz}/), \textit{for} (/\textipa{fɔ(r)/}, /\textipa{fə(r)/}).

subject  a noun phrase or pronoun that normally comes before the verb in an affirmative clause. It often says (in an active clause) who or what does the action that the verb refers to. Examples: \textit{Ellie gave me a wonderful smile}; \textit{Oil floats on water}. See also \textbf{object}.

subjunctive  a verb form (not very common in British English) used in certain structures. Examples: \textit{If I were you . . .}; \textit{It’s important that he be informed immediately}; \textit{We prefer that he pay in cash}.

subordinate clause  a clause which functions as part of another clause, for example as subject, object or adverbial in the main clause of a sentence. Examples: \textit{I thought that you understood}; \textit{What I need is a drink}; \textit{I’ll follow you wherever you go}. See also \textbf{clause}, \textbf{main clause}.

subordinating conjunction  a conjunction that joins a subordinate clause to the rest of its sentence. Examples: \textit{when}, \textit{if}, \textit{because}.

suffix  a form like -\textit{ology}, -\textit{able} or -\textit{ese}, which can be added to the end of a word to give an additional or different meaning. Examples: \textit{climatology}; \textit{understandable}; \textit{Chinese}. See also \textbf{prefix}.

superlative  the form of an adjective or adverb made with the suffix -\textit{est} (e.g. \textit{oldest}, \textit{fastest}); also the structure \textit{most} + adjective/adverb, used in the same way (e.g. \textit{most intelligent}, \textit{most politely}).

syllable  The word \textit{cat} has one syllable, \textit{cattle} has two, \textit{cataract} has three and \textit{category} has four. A syllable normally has a vowel, and usually one or more consonants before and/or after the vowel. Sometimes the consonant sounds \textit{l}, \textit{m} and \textit{n} can act as syllables (for instance in the words \textit{bottle} /\textipa{bɒtl}/, \textit{capitalism} /\textipa{ˌkæpəˈtaɪlɪz(ə)m}/, \textit{button} /\textipa{ˈbʌtn}/).

tag  a short phrase (e.g. pronoun subject + auxiliary verb) added on to the end of a sentence, especially in speech. Examples: \textit{He likes to talk}, \textit{Josh does}; \textit{You can’t swim, can you?}; \textit{Very noisy, those kids}. See also \textbf{question tag}.

tense  a verb form that shows the time of an action, event or state, by a change in its form and/or the use of an auxiliary. Examples: \textit{worked}, \textit{saw}, \textit{will go}; \textit{is sitting}.

third person  see \textbf{person}.

transitive  a transitive verb is one that can have an object. Examples: \textit{eat} (\textit{a meal}); \textit{drive} (\textit{a car}); \textit{give} (\textit{a present}). See also \textbf{intransitive}.
uncountable noun  a noun which has no plural form and cannot normally be used with the article a/an. Examples: mud; rudeness; furniture.

verb  a word like ask, wake, play, be, can. Most verbs refer to actions, events or states. See also auxiliary verb, modal auxiliary verb, verb phrase.

verb phrase  a verbal structure that has more than one part. Example: would have been forgotten.

vowel  the letters a, e, i, o, u and their combinations, and their usual sounds (see Phonetic alphabet, page xxx). See also consonant.

weak form  see strong form.
Phonetic alphabet

It is necessary to use a special alphabet to show the pronunciation of English words, because the ordinary English alphabet does not have enough letters to represent all the sounds of the language. The following list contains all the letters of the phonetic alphabet used in this book, with examples of the words in which the sounds they refer to are found.

Vowels and diphthongs (double vowels)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Example Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i:</td>
<td>seat /si:t/, feel /fi:l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɪ</td>
<td>sit /sɪt/, in /ɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>set /sɛt/, any /ˈɛni/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>sat /sæt/, match /mætʃ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ:</td>
<td>march /mɑ:tʃ/, after /ˈɑːftə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ</td>
<td>pot /pɔt/, gone /ɡən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>port /pɔːt/, law /loʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʊ</td>
<td>good /ɡʊd/, could /kʊd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʊː</td>
<td>food /fuːd/, group /gruːp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>much /mʌtʃ/, front /frʌnt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>away /əˈweɪ/, collect /kəˈlekt/, until /ˈənˈtɪl/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Example Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɛ</td>
<td>take /teɪk/, wait /weɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>mine /maɪn/, light /laɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>oil /oɪl/, boy /boʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əʊ</td>
<td>no /nəʊ/, open /ˈəʊpən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔʊ</td>
<td>house /haʊs/, now /nɔʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>hear /hɔː(r)/, deer /də(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>air /eə(r)/, where /ˈweə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əː</td>
<td>tour /tʊə(r)/, endure /ɪnˈdjuə(r)/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Example Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pull /pʊl/, cup /kʌp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bull /bʊl/, rob /roʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>ferry /ˈfɛri/, life /laɪf/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>very /ˈveri/, live /ˈlɪv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ</td>
<td>think /θɪŋk/, bath /bɑːθ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ð</td>
<td>then /ðen/, with /wɪð/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>take /teɪk/, set /set/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>day /deɪ/, red /red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>sing /sɪŋ/, rice /raɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>zoo /zuː/, days /deɪz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>show /ʃəʊ/, wish /wɪʃ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>pleasure /ˈpleʒə(r)/, occasion /ˈkeɪʃən/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sign (') shows stress ( ► 313).
INTRODUCTION

Verbs are the central element in sentences. Most of the things we say are built around them. English verbs have up to five one-word forms (except be, which has eight). These are:

- the **base form**: the one found in dictionaries, for example go, write, play. This is used for present tense forms after I, we, you (singular and plural) and they, in infinitives, and in imperatives.
  
  We go skating on Saturdays. I must write to Laura.
  
  Please play something.

- the **third person singular present**, for example goes, writes, plays

- the **past tense**, for example went, wrote, played

- the **past participle**, for example gone, written, played. Note that in regular verbs the past participle is the same as the past tense.

- the **-ing form**, for example going, writing, playing. Depending on how it is used, the -ing form may be called a ‘**present participle**’ or a ‘**gerund**’ (► 93.1).

Verb forms which show time (e.g. goes, went) are often called finite in grammars; other forms (e.g. written, playing) are **non-finite**.

tenses

Tenses are verb forms that show the time of actions and situations, either as single words or including auxiliary verbs (see below).

  We went home. (simple past tense)

  Have you written to Jamie? (present perfect tense)

For a list of active tenses, ► 2.3. For passive tenses, and an explanation of active and passive structures, ► 57.

auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary ('helping') verbs are used with other verbs to add various kinds of meaning. Be, have and do help to make progressive (or 'continuous') and perfect structures, questions and negatives (see below and ► Section 2).

Modal auxiliary verbs (must, can, could, will, would, may, might, shall, should and ought) are used with other verbs to add ideas such as futurity, certainty, probability, obligation and permission. For details, ► Section 7.

What can follow a verb?

Different non-auxiliary verbs can be followed by different kinds of words and structures. This is partly a matter of meaning: after a verb like eat or break, for instance, it is normal to expect a noun; after try or stop, it is natural to expect a verb. It is also partly a matter of grammatical rules that have nothing to do with meaning. Before an object, wait is followed by for; expect has no preposition. One can tell somebody something, but one cannot explain somebody something. One hopes to see somebody, but one looks forward to seeing somebody. One advises somebody to see the doctor, but one does not suggest somebody to see the doctor. One thinks that something will happen, but one does not
Unfortunately, there are no simple rules in this area; it is necessary to learn, for each verb, what kind of structures can follow it. A good dictionary will normally give this information.

For more about nouns and verbs with objects, ► 7.
For two-part verbs with adverb particles and prepositions (e.g. *pick up, look at*), ► 12–13.
For more about verbs followed by verbal structures, ► 15–16.

---

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- I laid down and went to sleep. ► 1.2
- She switched off it. ► 12.4
- What are you thinking of the government? ► 4.3
- I’m seeing what you mean. ► 4.3
- Is raining again. ► 7.1
- Give back me my watch. ► 12.4
- Is that the light off which you switched? ► 12.4
- You never listen me. ► 13.1
- Listen to! ► 13.1
- About what are you thinking? ► 13.3
- He gave you it. ► 8.3
- Who did you buy it? ► 8.4
- I’d like him to explain us his decision. ► 8.6
- Can you suggest me a good dentist? ► 8.6
- Please describe us your wife. ► 8.6
- Sing us. ► 8.7
- He painted red the wall. ► 10.1
- She made that she disagreed clear. ► 10.5
- You surprised! ► 7.2
- Do sit that chair. ► 7.2
- The problem appears impossibly. ► 11.3
- Isabel sudden appeared in the doorway. ► 11.3
- He fell unconsciously on the floor. ► 11.5
- He pulled his belt tightly and started off. ► 11.5
- She crossed the garden dancing. ► 14

---

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

1 irregular verbs
2 active verb tenses
3 progressive structures
4 non-progressive verbs
5 progressive with *always, etc*
6 perfect structures
7 subjects, objects and complements
8 verbs with two objects
9 verbs with both active and passive meanings
10 verb + object + complement: *You make me nervous.*
11 linking verbs: *be, seem, look, etc*
12 two-part verbs: phrasal verbs
13 two-part verbs: prepositional verbs
14 verbs of movement: *she ran in, etc*
15 verb + verb: auxiliary verbs
16 verb + verb: other structures
1 irregular verbs

1 common irregular verbs

This is a list of the more common irregular verbs. Students should check that they know all of them. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Simple past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arise</td>
<td>arose</td>
<td>arisen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awake</td>
<td>awoke</td>
<td>awoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was, were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>born(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet, betted</td>
<td>bet, betted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td>bound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>bled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt, burned</td>
<td>burnt, burned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt /delt/</td>
<td>dealt /delt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt /dremt/, dreamed /dri:md/</td>
<td>dreamt /dremt/, dreamed /dri:md/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate /et, eit/</td>
<td>eaten /iːtn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>Simple past</td>
<td>Past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone, been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear /hə(r)/</td>
<td>heard /hɜːd/</td>
<td>heard /hɜːd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leant /lent/, leaned /liːnd/</td>
<td>leant /lent/, leaned /liːnd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leap</td>
<td>leapt /lept/, leaped</td>
<td>leapt /lept/, leaped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt, learned</td>
<td>learnt, learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit, lighted</td>
<td>lighted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean /miːn/</td>
<td>meant /ment/</td>
<td>meant /ment/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit, quitted</td>
<td>quit, quitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read /rɪ:d/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said /sed/</td>
<td>said /sed/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Infinitive
send
set
shake
shine
shoot
show
shrink
shut
sing
sink
sit
sleep
slide
smell
speak
speed
spell
spend
spill
spin
split
spoil
spread
stand
steal
stick
sting
strike
swear
sweep
swing
swim
take
teach
tear
tell
think
throw
understand
wake
wear
win
wind /waɪnd/
write

Simple past
sent
set
shook
shone /ʃən/
shot
showed
shrank, shrunk
shut
sang
sank
sat
slept
slid
smelt, smelled
spoke
sped
spelt, spelled
spent
spilt, spilled
span, spun
spat
split
spoilt, spoiled
spread
stood
stole
stuck
stung
struck
swore
swept
swung
swam
took
taught
tore
told
thought
threw
understood
woke
wore
won
wound /ˈwɔːnd/
wrote

Past participle
sent
set
shaken
shone /ʃən/
shot
shown
shrunk
shut
sung
sunk
sat
slept
slid
smelt, smelled
spoken
sped
spelt, spelled
spent
spilt, spilled
spun
spat
split
spoilt, spoiled
spread
stood
stolen
stuck
stung
struck
sworn
swept
swung
swum
taken
taught
torn
told
thought
thrown
understood
woken
worn
won
wound /ˈwɔːnd/
written
## 2 verbs that are easily confused

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Simple past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill</td>
<td>filled</td>
<td>filled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find (= get back something lost)</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found (= start up an organisation or institution)</td>
<td>founded</td>
<td>founded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flow (of a liquid = move)</td>
<td>flowed</td>
<td>flowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly (= move in the air)</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee (= run away)</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>fled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay (= put down flat)</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie (= be down)</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie (=? say things that are not true)</td>
<td>lied</td>
<td>lied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details of these three verbs, ► 507.

| leave                         | left        | left            |
| live                          | lived       | lived           |
| raise (= put up)              | raised      | raised          |
| rise (= go/get up)            | rose        | risen           |
| strike (= hit)                | struck      | struck          |
| stroke (= pass the hand gently over) | stroked | stroked |
| wind /waund/ (= turn, tighten a spring, etc) | wound /waund/ | wound /waund/ |
| wound /wu:nd/ (= injure in a battle) | wounded | wounded |

### Notes

- **Verbs**
  - Note the standard AmE pronunciations of *ate* (/eit/) and *shone* (/ʃoun/).
  - `/et/ for *ate* is substandard in AmE (but a standard variant in BrE).
  - **Burn, dream, kneel, lean, learn, smell, spell, spill and spoil** are all generally regular in American English. In British English, irregular past tenses and participles with -t are also quite common.
  - **Dive** is regular in British English, but can be irregular in American: *dive* – *dived/dove* (/dʌv/ – *dived*
  - The old past participle *drunken* is used as an adjective in some expressions (e.g. *a drunken argument, drunken driving*), but these are not very common.
Fit and quit are usually irregular in American English.

fit – fit – fit, quit – quit – quit

The American past participle of get is either got or gotten (► 472.6).

Hang is regular when used to mean ‘execute by hanging’.

Prove (regular) has an irregular past participle proven which is sometimes used instead of proved, especially as an adjective (e.g. a proven liar).

Says is pronounced /sez/.

Speed can also have regular forms, especially in the expression speeded up.

Spit has both spit and spat as past tense and participle in American English.

Sung and sunk are sometimes used instead of sang and sank.

2 active verb tenses

1 present, future and past; simple, progressive and perfect

English verbs can refer to present, future or past time.

present: I’m watching you.

future: She will see you tomorrow.

past: Who said that?

For each kind of time, there are three possibilities with most verbs:

simple; progressive or continuous (be + -ing ► 3); and perfect

(have + past participle ► 6).

simple present: I start

present progressive: I am starting

present perfect: I have started

Some grammarians use the word ‘tense’ only for simple forms like goes or went; for forms like is going or has gone they prefer to talk about progressive or perfect ‘aspect’, and they say that English has ‘no future tense’. These are principally questions of terminology, not grammatical fact, and have no practical importance. In Practical English Usage the term ‘tense’ is used for all verb forms and structures that indicate time.

2 tenses and time

There is not a direct relationship between verb forms and time. For example, a past verb like went is not only used to talk about past events (e.g. We went to Morocco last January), but also about unreal or uncertain present or future events (e.g. It would be better if we went home now). And present verbs can be used to talk about the future (e.g. I’m seeing Daniel tomorrow). Also, progressive and perfect forms express ideas that are not simply concerned with time – for example continuation, completion, present importance.
3 table of active verb tenses

This is a list of all the active affirmative forms of an ordinary English verb, with their names, examples, and very brief descriptions of typical uses. For more information about the forms and their uses, see the entries for each tense in ►Sections 3-5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>TYPICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>same as base form/infinitive, but -s on third person singular (e.g. I/you/we/they work; he/she works)</td>
<td><em>It always rains in November.</em></td>
<td>'general' time; permanent situations (► 31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>am/are/is ...ing</td>
<td><em>I can't talk to you now; I'm working.</em></td>
<td>actions continuing at the moment of speaking (► 32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>have/has + past participle</td>
<td><em>I have worked with children before, so I know what to expect.</em></td>
<td>past action with some present connection (► 47)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect progressive</td>
<td>have/has been ...ing</td>
<td><em>It has been raining all day.</em></td>
<td>continuation up to the present (► 50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(simple) future</td>
<td>will + infinitive (I/we shall also possible)</td>
<td><em>It will rain tomorrow.</em></td>
<td>information about the future (► 38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future progressive</td>
<td>will be ...ing (I/we shall also possible)</td>
<td><em>This time tomorrow I'll be lying on the beach.</em></td>
<td>continuing situation at a particular future time (► 41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect</td>
<td>will have + past participle (I/we shall also possible)</td>
<td><em>I will have finished the repairs by this evening.</em></td>
<td>completion by a particular future time (► 40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect progressive</td>
<td>will have been ...ing (I/we shall also possible)</td>
<td><em>In June I will have been working here for ten years.</em></td>
<td>continuity up to a particular future time (► 40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>regular verbs: base form/infinitive + -(e)d irregular verbs: various forms</td>
<td><em>I worked all last weekend.</em></td>
<td>past events (► 44)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 grammar • 2 active verb tenses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>TYPICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past progressive</td>
<td>was/were...ing</td>
<td><em>I saw Jack when I was coming out of the supermarket.</em></td>
<td>action continuing at a particular past time (►45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>had + past participle</td>
<td><em>I couldn't get in because I had lost my keys.</em></td>
<td>action before a particular past time (►53)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect progressive</td>
<td>had been...ing</td>
<td><em>I was tired because I had been working all day.</em></td>
<td>continuation up to a particular past time (►55)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For irregular past tenses and past participles, ►1. For question forms, ►216. For negatives, ►217. For the use of present forms to talk about the future, ►35–37. For past verbs with present or future meanings, ►46. For passives (e.g. that she go), ►232. For passive verb forms, ►57. For infinitives, ►89. For imperatives, ►224. For -ing forms, ►93. For auxiliary verbs, ►15. For verb forms constructed with modal auxiliary verbs, ►68.1.

### 3 progressive structures

#### 1 construction

Progressive verb structures (also called ‘continuous’) are made with *be* + *-ing.*

- *I am waiting for the shops to open.* (present progressive)
- *Your suit is being cleaned.* (present progressive passive)
- *She phoned while I was cooking.* (past progressive)
- *Will you be going out this evening?* (future progressive)
- *I'd like to be lying on the beach now.* (progressive infinitive)

Progressive and perfect forms can be combined.

- *I didn't know how long she had been sitting there.* (past perfect progressive)

#### 2 terminology and use

A progressive does not simply show the time of an event. It also shows how the speaker sees the event – generally as ongoing and temporary, not completed or permanent. (Because of this, grammars often talk about ‘progressive aspect’ rather than ‘progressive tenses’.) Compare:

- *I've read your email.* (completed action)
- *I've been reading a lot of thrillers recently.* (not necessarily completed)
- *The Rhine runs into the North Sea.* (permanent)
- *We'll have to phone the plumber – water's running down the kitchen wall.* (temporary)

When a progressive is used to refer to a short momentary action, it often suggests repetition.

- *Why are you jumping up and down?*
- *The door was banging in the wind.*
3 distancing: I was wondering . . .

Progressives can make requests, questions and statements less direct.
(They sound less definite than simple forms, because they suggest something temporary and incomplete.)

I’m hoping you can lend me £10. (less definite than I hope . . .)
What time are you planning to arrive?
I’m looking forward to seeing you again.
I’m afraid we must be going.
I was wondering if you had two single rooms.
Will you be going away at the weekend?

For more about this kind of distancing, ► 311.

For more details of the use of progressives, see the individual entries on the present progressive, past progressive, etc.

4 non-progressive verbs

1 verbs not often used in progressive (‘continuous’) forms

Some verbs are not often used in progressive forms.

I like this music. (NOT I’m liking this music.)
I called her because I needed to talk. (NOT . . . because I was needing to talk.)

Some other verbs are not used in progressive forms when they have certain meanings (see below). Compare:

I’m seeing the doctor at ten o’clock.
I see what you mean. (NOT I’m seeing what you mean.)

Many of these non-progressive verbs refer to states rather than actions. Some refer to mental states (e.g. know, think, believe); some others refer to the use of the senses (e.g. smell, taste).
Modal verbs (e.g. can, must) have no progressive forms, ► 68.1.

2 common non-progressive verbs

Here is a list of some common verbs which are not often used in progressive forms (or which are not used in progressive forms with certain meanings).

mental and emotional states

believe
(dis)like
like
love
suppose

love
prefer
think (= have an opinion)

hate
realise
understand

imagine
recognise
want

know
remember
wish

use of the senses

feel
see
sound

hear
smell
taste
communicating and causing reactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agree</th>
<th>Impress</th>
<th>Promise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appear</td>
<td>Look (= seem)</td>
<td>Satisfy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astonish</td>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>Seem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deny</td>
<td>Please</td>
<td>Surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disagree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Other**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Be</th>
<th>Deserve</th>
<th>Measure (= have length, etc)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Belong</td>
<td>Fit</td>
<td>Need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concern</td>
<td>Include</td>
<td>Owe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consist</td>
<td>Involve</td>
<td>Own</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contain</td>
<td>Lack</td>
<td>Possess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depend</td>
<td>Matter</td>
<td>Weigh (= have weight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More details on usage are given in entries for some of these verbs.

### 3 progressive and non-progressive uses

Compare the progressive and non-progressive uses of some of the verbs listed above.

- I'm feeling fine. (or I feel fine. ▶ 463.1)
  
  *I feel we shouldn't do it.* *(not I'm feeling we shouldn't do it. – feel here = have an opinion.)*

- What are you thinking about?
  What do you think of the government? *(not What are you thinking of the government? – think here = have an opinion.)*

- I'm seeing Leslie tomorrow.
  I see what you mean. *(not I'm seeing what you mean. – see here = understand.)*

- Why are you smelling the meat? Is it bad?
  Does the meat smell bad? *(not Is the meat smelling bad? ▶ 581.)*

- I'm just tasting the cake to see if it's OK.
  The cake tastes wonderful. *(not The cake's tasting wonderful. ▶ 603.)*

- The scales broke when I was weighing myself this morning.
  I weighed 68 kilos three months ago – and look at me now! *(not I was weighing 68 kilos... – weigh here = have weight.)*

Occasionally 'non-progressive' verbs are used in progressive forms in order to emphasise the idea of change or development.

*These days, more and more people prefer / are preferring to retire early.*
*The water tastes / is tasting better today.*
*As I get older, I remember / I'm remembering less and less.*
*I'm liking it here more and more as time goes by.*

*Need, want and mean can have future or present perfect progressive uses.*

*Will you be needing the car this afternoon?*
*I've been wanting to go to Australia for years.*
*I've been meaning to tell you about Andrew. He...*
4 can see, etc

Can is often used with see, hear, feel, taste, smell, understand and remember to give a kind of progressive meaning, especially in British English (► 84).

I can see Emma coming down the road.

Can you smell something burning?

5 -ing forms

Even verbs which are never used in progressive tenses have -ing forms which can be used in other kinds of structure.

Knowing her tastes, I bought her a large box of chocolates.

You can respect people's views without agreeing with them.

5 progressive with always, etc

We can use always, continually and similar words with a progressive form to mean 'very often'.

I'm always losing my keys. Granny's always giving people little presents.

I'm continually running into Oliver these days.

That cat's forever getting shut in the bathroom.

This structure is used to talk about things which happen very often (perhaps more often than expected), and which are unexpected or unplanned. Compare:

- When Alice comes to see me, I always meet her at the station. (a regular, planned arrangement)
- I'm always meeting Mrs Bailiff in the supermarket. (accidental, unplanned meetings)
- When I was a child, we always had picnics on Saturdays in the summer. (regular, planned)
- Her mother was always arranging little surprise picnics and outings. (unexpected, not regular)

The structure is often used in critical remarks.

He's always scratching himself in public.

6 perfect structures

1 construction

Perfect verb forms are made with have + past participle.

She has lost her memory. (present perfect)

I told him that I had never heard of the place. (past perfect)

When I went back to the village the house had been pulled down. (past perfect passive)

We will have finished by tomorrow afternoon. (future perfect tense)

I'm sorry to have disturbed you. (perfect infinitive)

Having seen the film, I don't want to read the book. (perfect -ing form)

Perfect and progressive forms can be combined.

They have been living in Portugal for the last year. (present perfect progressive)
2 terminology and use

A perfect verb form generally shows the time of an event as being earlier than some other time (past, present or future). But a perfect does not only show the time of an event. It also shows how the speaker sees the event – perhaps as being connected to a later event, or as being completed by a certain time. Because of this, academic grammars often talk about ‘perfect aspect’ rather than ‘perfect tenses’.

For details of the use of the various perfect verb forms, see the Index.

7 subjects, objects and complements

1 subjects

The subject of a verb is a noun phrase, noun or pronoun that comes before it in a statement. Often the subject indicates the agent – the person or thing that causes the action of the verb.

*My brother gave me this.*  *Rain stopped play.*  *You woke me up.*

But the subject can also, for example, indicate the receiver or experiencer of an action – it depends on the verb.

*All the soldiers got medals.*  *I saw the accident.*

Subjects cannot normally be dropped.

*He has changed his plans; will arrive tomorrow.*

For special structures in which it is possible to drop subjects, ►  224, 275.

2 transitive and intransitive verbs

Some verbs are usually followed by nouns, noun phrases or pronouns that act as direct objects. These typically show who or what is affected by the action of the verb. In grammars they are called ‘transitive’. Examples are *invite, surprise.*

*Let's invite Sophie and Bruce.*  *(but not Let's invite.)*

*You surprised me.*  *(but not You surprised.)*

Some verbs are not normally followed by direct objects. These are called ‘intransitive’. Examples are *sit, sleep.*

*Do sit down.*  *(but not Do sit that chair.)*

*I usually sleep well.*  *(but not She slept the baby.)*

Many verbs can be both transitive and intransitive. Compare:

- *England lost the match.*  - *I can't eat this.*

  *England lost.*  *Let's eat.*

Some transitive verbs can be followed by two objects (indirect and direct). For details, ► 8.

*I'll send you the form tomorrow.*  *I'm going to buy Sarah some flowers.*

Some verbs are used transitively and intransitively with different kinds of subject; the intransitive use has a meaning rather like a passive (► 9) or reflexive (► 178) verb. Compare:

- *She opened the door.*  - *The wind's moving the curtain.*

  *The door opened.*  *The curtain's moving.*

grammar • 7 subjects, objects and complements
Some transitive verbs can be followed by an object together with an object complement (an expression that gives more information about the object). For details, ► 10.

You make me nervous. Let’s paint it blue.

3 complements of place

Usually, a preposition is necessary before an expression of place.

She arrived at the station last night. (NOT She arrived the station . . .)

Don’t walk on the grass. (NOT Don’t walk the grass.)

A few verbs can be used with direct objects referring to place.

I like climbing mountains. (NOT I like climbing on mountains.)

Some verbs are incomplete without an expression of place.

He lives in York. (BUT NOT He-lives.)

4 linking verbs

Some verbs are followed not by an object, but by a subject complement – an expression which describes the subject. These are called ‘linking verbs’.

For details, ► 11.

Your room is a mess. The bathroom is upstairs.

That looks nice. I felt a complete idiot.

8 verbs with two objects

1 indirect and direct objects: I gave Jack the keys.

Many verbs can have two objects – usually a person and a thing. This often happens with verbs that are used to talk about transferring or communicating things from one person to another, or doing things for somebody. A few other verbs are also used in this way. Common examples:

bet, get, offer, post, send, tell
bring, give, owe, promise, show, throw
build, leave, pass, read, sing, wish
buy, lend, pay, refuse, take, write
cost, make, play, sell, teach

The thing that is given, sent, bought, etc is called the ‘direct object’; the person who gets it is the ‘indirect object’. Most often, the indirect object comes first.

I bet you ten dollars you can’t beat me at chess.
He built the children a tree house.
Shall I buy you some chocolate while I’m out?
Could you bring me the paper?
The repair cost me a lot. I gave Jack the keys.
If you’re going upstairs, could you get me my coat?
He left his children nothing when he died. Lend me your bike, can you?
I’ll make you a cake tomorrow. I owe my sister a lot of money.
Can I play you some relaxing music? I’ll send her the report tomorrow.
They promised me all sorts of things. Daddy, read me a story.
He sent his mother a postcard. Let’s take her some flowers.
Will you teach me poker? We bought the children pizzas.
2 indirect object last: I gave the keys to Jack.

We can also put the indirect object after the direct object. In this case it normally has a preposition (usually to or for).

I gave the keys to Jack. I handed my licence to the police officer.
Mrs Norman sent some flowers to the nurse.
Mother bought the ice cream for you, not for me.
(Not all grammars call these prepositional phrases 'indirect objects'.)

3 two pronouns: Lend them to her.

When both objects are pronouns, it is common to put the indirect object last. To is occasionally dropped after it in informal British English.

Lend them to her. Send some to him. Give it (to) me.

It is also possible to put the indirect object first.

Give her one. Send him some.

However, this structure is avoided in some cases: phrases ending with it or them (e.g. He gave you it or Send them them) are often felt to be unnatural.

4 wh-questions: Who did you buy it for?

Prepositions are used in wh-questions referring to the indirect object.

Who did you buy it for? (not Who did you buy it?)

Who was it sent to? (not Who was it sent?)

5 passives: I've been given a picture.

When these verbs are used in passive structures, the subject is usually the person who receives something, not the thing which is sent, given, etc.

I've just been given a lovely picture.
We were all bought little presents.

However, the thing which is given, sent, etc can be the subject if necessary.

'What happened to the stuff he left behind?' 'Well, the picture was given to Mr Ferguson.'

For details of these passive structures, 61.

6 structures with donate, push, carry, explain, suggest, describe and take

Not all verbs that refer to transferring or communicating can be followed by indirect object + direct object. The structure is not possible, for example, with donate, push, carry, explain, suggest or describe.

They donated money to the museum. (but not They donated the museum money.)
I pushed the plate to Anna. (but not I pushed Anna the plate.)
He carried the baby to the doctor. (but not He carried the doctor the baby.)
I'd like him to explain his decision to us. (but not ... to explain us his decision.)
Can you suggest a good dentist to me? (but not Can you suggest me a good dentist?)
Please describe your wife to us. (but not Please describe us your wife.)
Take can be used with **indirect object + direct object** when it means ‘take to’ but not ‘take from’.

*I took her some money.* (= I took some money to her – **not** ... from her.)

7 one object or two

Some verbs can be followed by either a direct object, or an indirect object, or both.

*I asked Jack.*  
*I asked a question.*  
*I asked Jack a question.*

Other verbs like this include *teach, tell, pay, show, sing, play* and *write*. Note that when *sing, play* and *write* have no direct object, we put *to* before the indirect object. Compare:

- **Sing her a song.**  
  **Sing to her.** (not *Sing her.*)

- **Write me a letter.**  
  **Write to me when you get home.**

  (More common than *Write me ...* in standard British English.)

For structures with object complements (e.g. *They made him captain*), ► 10.

9 verbs with both active and passive meanings

1 *She opened the door.* / *The door opened.*

Some verbs are used transitively and intransitively with different kinds of subject. The intransitive use has a meaning rather like a passive (► 57) or reflexive (► 178) verb. Compare:

- *She opened the door.*  
  *The door opened.*

- *The wind's moving the curtain.*  
  *The curtain's moving.*

- *Marriage has really changed her.*  
  *She's changed a lot since she got married.*

- *We're selling a lot of copies of your book.*  
  *Your book's selling well.*

- *Something woke her.*  
  *Suddenly she woke.*

- *I can't start the car.*  
  *The car won't start.*

2 *It scratches easily.*

The intransitive structure is used with many verbs referring to things we can do to materials: e.g. *bend, break, crack, melt, polish, scratch, stain, tear, unscrew.*

*Be careful what you put on the table – it scratches easily.* (= You can easily scratch it.)

*These glasses are so fragile: they break if you look at them.*  
*The carpet's made of a special material that doesn't stain.*  
*The handle won't unscrew – can you help me?*
10 verb + object + complement: You make me nervous.

1 adjective and noun complements

Some transitive verbs can be followed by an object together with an object complement (an expression that gives more information about the object). This is often an adjective or noun phrase.

- You make me nervous.
- She’s driving us crazy.
- Let’s paint it blue.
- I find her attitude strange.
- Don’t call me a liar.
- I don’t know why they elected him President.
- ‘Would you like to join the committee?’ ‘I would consider it an honour.’

A complement may come before a long and heavy object. Compare:

- He painted the wall red. (not He painted red the wall.)
- He painted red the walls, the window frames and the ceiling.

2 I see you as . . .

After some verbs, an object complement is introduced by as. This is common when we say how we see or describe somebody/something.

- I see you as a basically kind person.
- She described her attacker as a tall dark man with a beard.
- His mother regards him as a genius.
- After tests, they identified the metal as gold.

The structure is also possible with as being.

- The police do not regard him as (being) dangerous.

3 I considered him to be . . .

Some verbs that refer to thoughts, feelings and opinions (e.g. believe, consider, feel, know, find, understand) can be followed by object + infinitive (usually to be) in a formal style. In an informal style, that-clauses are more common.

- I considered him to be an excellent choice.
  (Less formal: I considered that he was an excellent choice.)
- We supposed them to be married.
  (Less formal: We supposed that they were married.)
- They believed her to be reliable.
  (Less formal: They believed that she was reliable.)

This structure is very unusual with think.

- I thought that she was mistaken.
  (More natural than I thought her to be mistaken.)

To be can be dropped after consider.

- I considered him (to be) an excellent choice.

Passive forms of these structures may be less formal than active forms (► 10.6).

For more details of structures with feel, ► 463; for know, ► 504; for think, ► 606.

4 They found her (to be) . . .

After find + object, to be suggests the result of a test or investigation. Compare:

- Everybody found her very pleasant.
- The doctors found her to be perfectly fit.
11 linking verbs: be, seem, look, etc

1 common linking verbs

Some verbs are used to join an adjective or noun complement to a subject. These verbs can be called 'linking verbs', 'copulas' or 'copular verbs'. Common examples: be, seem, appear, look, sound, smell, taste, feel, become, get.

The weather is horrible. She became a racehorse trainer.
I do feel a fool. The stew smells good.
That car looks fast. It's getting late.

2 adjectives after linking verbs

After linking verbs we use adjectives, not adverbs. Compare:

He spoke intelligently. (Intelligently is an adverb. It tells you about how the person spoke.)

He seems intelligent. (Intelligent is an adjective. It tells you about the person himself - rather like saying He is intelligent. Seem is a linking verb.)

3 other uses

Some of these verbs are also used with other meanings as ordinary non-linking verbs. They are then used with adverbs, not adjectives. Compare:

The problem appeared impossible. (not . . . impossibly.)

Isabel suddenly appeared in the doorway. (not . . . suddenly.)

Other verbs used in two ways like this are look (► 518), taste (► 603) and feel (► 463).
change: become, get, grow, etc
Some linking verbs are used to talk about change, or the absence of change. The most common are: become, get, grow, go, turn, stay, remain, keep.

It’s becoming colder. I’m getting sleepy.
It’s growing late. The leaves are going brown.
How does she stay so young? I hope you will always remain so happy.
Keep calm. His hair is turning grey.

For the differences between these verbs, ► 394.

other verbs followed by adjectives
Sometimes other verbs, too, can be followed by adjectives. This happens when we are really describing the subject of the sentence, and not the action of the verb. It is common in descriptions with sit, stand, lie, fall.

The valley lay quiet and peaceful in the sun.
She sat motionless, waiting for their decision.
He fell unconscious on the floor. (not . . . unconsciously . . .)
Adjectives can also be used in the structure verb + object + adjective, to describe the object of the verb.
New SUPER GUB washes clothes SUPER WHITE. (not . . . WHITELY . . .)
He pulled his belt tight and started off. (not . . . tightly . . .)

For the difference between adjectives and adverbs, ► 193.
For cases like drive slow, think positive, ► 194.2, 194.4. For more about structures after verbs, ► 16.
See also the entries for particular linking verbs.

two-part verbs: phrasal verbs
1 verb + adverb particle: get back, walk out
Many English verbs can be followed by small adverbs (‘adverb particles’). These two-part verbs are often called ‘phrasal verbs’.

Get back! She walked out. I switched the light off.

Common adverb particles: about, across, ahead, along, (a)round, aside, away, back, by, down, forward, in, home, off, on, out, over, past, through, up.
Some of these words can also be used as prepositions. Compare:
I switched the light off. (adverb particle)
I jumped off the wall. (preposition)

For a detailed comparison, ► 195.

2 idiomatic meanings: break out; turn up
The meaning of a phrasal verb is often very different from the meanings of the two parts taken separately.
War broke out in 1939. (Broke out is not the same as broke + out.)
Joe turned up last night. (= ‘appeared’ – not the same as turned + up.)
I looked the word up in the dictionary. (Look up is not the same as look + up.)
We put off the meeting till Tuesday. (Put off is not the same as put + off.)
3 phrasal verbs with and without objects

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive (they do not have objects).

I got up at 7.00 today. That colour really stands out.

Others are transitive.

Could you switch the light off? I helped Anna to clean up the room.

4 word order with objects

Adverb particles can go either before or after noun objects (unlike most adverbs). ► 196.1

She switched off the light, or She switched the light off.

But they can only go after pronoun objects.

She switched it off. (NOT She switched off it.)

Is that the light which you switched off? (NOT . . . the light off which you switched?)

Give me back my watch, or Give me my watch back. (NOT Give back me my watch.)

For details of particular phrasal verbs, see a good dictionary.

13 two-part verbs: prepositional verbs

1 verb + preposition: listen to; look at

Many English verbs are regularly followed by prepositions before objects.

You never listen to me. (NOT You never listen me.)

Luke walked down the road without looking at anybody.

Prepositions are not used when there is no object.

Listen! (NOT Listen to!)

2 idiomatic meanings: look after, get over

The meaning of a prepositional verb can be very different from the meanings of the two parts taken separately.

Could you look after the kids while I’m out? (Look after is not the same as look + after.)

He took ages to get over his illness. (Get over is not the same as get + over.)

3 word order: What are you thinking about?

When an object comes at the beginning of a clause (e.g. in a question or relative clause), a prepositional verb usually stays together, so that a preposition can be separated from its object and go at the end of the clause. For details of this and other preposition-final structures, ► 209.

What are you thinking about? (NOT About what are you thinking?)

I’ve found the book which I was looking for. (More natural in an informal style than . . . the book for which I was looking.)

4 verbs with prepositions and particles together

A few verbs can be used with both an adverb particle (► 12) and a preposition (making them three-part verbs).

I get along with her quite well. Stop talking and get on with your work. →
It's hard to put up with people who won't stop talking.
If you're on the road on Saturday night, look out for drunk drivers.
I'll think about it and get back to you.
She went up to the officer and explained her problem.
I’m looking forward to the party.

For the difference between prepositions and adverb particles, ► 195.
For prepositional verbs in the passive, ► 62.
For details of particular prepositional verbs, see a good dictionary.

14 verbs of movement: she ran in, etc

When we want to talk about a movement, its direction and its nature, there are several possibilities.

We can use three separate words for the three ideas:
She came in running.

We can use a verb which includes the idea of direction, and describe the nature of the movement separately:
She entered running.

Or we can use a verb which makes clear the nature of the movement, and describe the direction separately:
She ran in.

In English, the third of these solutions is the most common.
I walked back. (More natural than I went back walking.)
She danced across the garden. (More natural than She crossed the garden dancing.)
I jumped down the stairs. (More natural than I came down the stairs jumping.)
They crawled out of the cellar. The eagle flew away.

15 verb + verb: auxiliary verbs

1 the need for auxiliary verbs

In English sentences, a lot of important meanings are expressed by the verb phrase – for example questioning, negation, time, completion,continuation, repetition, willingness, possibility, obligation. But English verbs do not have many different one-word forms: the maximum (except for be) is five (e.g. see, sees, seeing, saw, seen). So to express all these meanings, ‘auxiliary’ (or ‘helping’) verbs are added to other verbs. There are two groups.

2 be, do and have
Be is added to other verbs to make progressive and passive forms.
Is it raining? She was imprisoned by a military court.

Do is used to make questions, negatives and emphatic forms of non-auxiliary verbs.
Do you smoke? It didn’t matter. Do come in.

Have is used to make perfect forms.
What have you done? I realised that I hadn’t turned the lights off.

For details, ► Section 2.
3 modal auxiliary verbs

The verbs will, shall, would, should, can, could, may, might, must and ought are usually called 'modal auxiliary verbs'. They are used with other verbs to add various meanings, mostly to do with certainty or obligation.

_She may be in Mexico._ _You must call Uncle Arthur._

For details, ► Section 7.

4 other verb + verb structures

Other verbs (e.g. seem) which are used in verb + verb structures are not usually called ‘auxiliary verbs’. One important difference is grammatical. In auxiliary verb structures, questions and negatives are made without do; in other verb + verb structures the auxiliary do has to be added to the first verb. Compare:

- _She should understand._
  - _She seems to understand._

- _Should she understand?_  
  - _Does she seem to understand?_

- _He is swimming._
  - _He likes swimming._

- _He is not swimming_  
  - _He doesn’t like swimming._

For more about these structures, ► 16.

16 verb + verb: other structures

1 infinitives, -ing forms and clauses

Many verbs besides auxiliaries can be followed by forms of other verbs (or by structures including other verbs). This can happen, for example, if we talk about our attitude to an action: the first verb describes the attitude and the second refers to the action. The second verb structure is often rather like the direct object of the first verb.

_I hope to see you soon._  
_I enjoy playing cards._  
_I saw that she was crying._

Different structures are possible, depending on the particular verb. Some verbs can be followed by infinitives with or without to (► 97–98), some verbs can be followed by -ing forms with or without a preposition (► 100), and some by clauses. Many verbs can be followed by more than one of these structures, often with a difference of meaning or use. For each verb, it is necessary to know which structures are possible.

_We seem to have a problem._  
_Can I help wash the dishes?_

_It’s not very easy to stop smoking._  
_We’re thinking of moving._

_I suggest that you see a solicitor._  
_I suggest seeing a solicitor._

Sometimes the first verb does not give information about the subject — it says more about the action which the second verb refers to.

_I happened to see Alice the other day._

_We’re starting to get invited to some of the neighbours’ parties._

_My keys seem to have disappeared._

It is possible to have 'chains' of verbs following each other.

_I keep forgetting to go shopping._  
_Don’t let me stop you working._

_He seems to be trying to sit up._

_I don’t want to have to get her to start telling lies._
2 verb + object + verb

Many verbs can be followed by an object as well as a verb structure.

I'd like you to meet Sophie.
We all want you to be happy. (not We all want that you are happy.)
We've got to stop him making a fool of himself.
When are you going to get the clock repaired?
Nobody told me that you were here.

For more about verbs followed by infinitives and -ing forms, ► Section 9.
For causative structures like get the clock repaired, ► 107–109.
For that-clauses after verbs, ► 258–259, 264.
Section 2  Be, have and do

INTRODUCTION

These three verbs live a double life. They can be auxiliary verbs used to form questions, negatives, emphatic forms, perfect and progressive tenses, and passives. Be can also be a linking verb, and have and do can be ordinary full verbs. For this reason, each of them can appear twice in a single phrase.

I am being served. Have you had an invitation? What do you do?

There are some grammatical complications, particularly as regards have. For details, see the following entries.

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

✗ I was being depressed when you phoned. ► 18
✗ I don't often be sick. ► 19
✗ A hole is in my sleeve. ► 20.1
✗ It is a lot of noise in the street. ► 20.1
✗ I don't know how many people there is in the waiting room. ► 20.1
✗ There was swimming a girl in the lake. ► 20.4
✗ There seems to be some problems. ► 20.5
✗ There was the door open. ► 20.7
✗ Do you have heard the news? ► 22.2
✗ I'm not having seen her anywhere. ► 22.3
✗ Had you a good trip? ► 23.2
✗ I've lunch at 12.30 most days. ► 23.2
✗ She is having three brothers. ► 24.2
✗ Do you have got a headache? ► 24.6
✗ 'Have you got a pen?' 'Sorry, I haven't got.' ► 24.6
✗ I had got a cold last week. ► 24.6
✗ You have right. ► 25.1
✗ She has nearly thirty. ► 25.2
✗ It's 37 kilos heavy. ► 25.2
✗ Like you football? ► 27.1
✗ Do you can play football? ► 27.1
✗ I like not football. ► 27.2
✗ I haven't got time to get the tickets. Who's going to do so? ► 29.2
✗ I like the saxophone, and I have always done it. ► 29.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

17  be: general
18  be: progressive forms
19  be with auxiliary do
20  there is
21  have: introduction
22  have: auxiliary verb
23  have: actions
24  have (got): possession, relationships and other states
25  be and have
26  do: introduction
27  do: auxiliary verb
28  do: substitute verb (I may do.)
29  do so/it/that
17 be: general

Be can be an auxiliary verb, used to form progressive and passive structures (► 3, 57).

- What are you doing?
- We weren’t told about the meeting.

As an auxiliary verb, be can have progressive forms in passive structures (► 57.2).

- The hospital is being rebuilt.
- I knew we were being watched.

Be can also be a linking verb, used to join a subject to a complement.

- This is difficult.
- Andy was very tired.

Progressive forms of the linking verb be are not usual.

- It’s cold today. (NOT It’s being cold today.)

But they are possible in some cases (► 18).

- You’re being stupid.

Questions and negatives are formed without do, but do is used in negative and emphatic imperatives (► 19).

- Don’t be afraid.
- Do be careful. (stronger than Be careful.)

For the structure there is, used to introduce indefinite subjects, ► 20.

For be + infinitive (e.g. She is to arrive tomorrow), ► 42. For contractions (e.g. I’m, isn’t), ► 337.

18 be: progressive forms

We can use this structure to talk about temporary situations to do with actions and behaviour, but not usually to talk about feelings. Compare:

- You’re being stupid. (= You’re doing stupid things.)
- I was being very careful. (= I was doing something carefully.)
- Who’s being a silly baby, then?
- I’m happy at the moment. (NOT I’m being happy at the moment.)
- I was depressed when you phoned. (NOT I was being depressed . . . )

Note the difference between He’s being sick (BrE = He’s vomiting – bringing food up from the stomach) and He’s sick (= He’s ill).

For the use of am being, etc in passive verb forms, ► 57.2.

19 be with auxiliary do

Normally, be is used without the auxiliary do.

- I’m not often sick. (NOT I don’t often be sick.)

But do is used to make negative imperative sentences with be (when we tell somebody not to do something).

- Don’t be silly!  Don’t be such a nuisance!
And *do be* can begin emphatic imperatives.

*Do be* careful!   *Do be* quiet!

In an informal style, people sometimes use *do* with *be* in one or two other structures which have a similar meaning to imperative sentences.

*Why don’t you be a good boy and sit down?*

*If you don’t be quiet you’ll go straight to bed.*

For other auxiliary uses of *do*, [► 27](#).

### 20 there is

#### 1 use

In sentences which say that something exists (or does not exist) somewhere, we usually use *there* as a kind of preparatory subject, and put the real subject after the verb. Note the pronunciation of *there*: usually /ðə(r)/, not /ðeə(r)/.

*There’s a hole in my sleeve.* (More natural than *A hole is in my sleeve.*)

*There’s ice on the lake.* (More natural than *Ice is on the lake.*)

*It* cannot be used in this way.

*There is a lot of noise in the street.* *(Not* *It is a lot of noise in the street.*)

*There are* is used with plural subjects.

*I don’t know how many people there are in the waiting room.*

*(Not* . . . *how many people there is . . .*)

However, *there’s* can begin sentences with plural subjects in informal speech.

*There’s two men at the door, Dad.*

*There’s some grapes in the fridge, if you’re still hungry.*

#### 2 indefinite subjects

We use *there* in this way particularly with subjects that have indefinite articles, no article, or indefinite determiners like *some, any, no*; and with indefinite pronouns like *somebody, nothing.*

*There are some people outside.*

*There were no footsteps to be seen.*

*Is there anybody at home?*

*There was dancing in the streets.*

*There’s something worrying me.*

Note the use of *wrong* and *the matter* ([► 524](#)).

*There’s something wrong.*  *Is there anything the matter?*

Note also the structures with *sense, point, use* ([► 373](#)) and *need.*

*There’s no sense in making him angry.*

*Is there any point in talking about it again?*

*Do you think there’s any use trying to explain?*

*There’s no need to hurry – we’ve got plenty of time.*  →
3 all tenses

There can be used in this way with all tenses of be.

Once upon a time there were three wicked brothers.
There has never been anybody like you.
There will be snow later in the week.
And there can be used in question tags (► 306.4).
There’ll be enough for everybody, won’t there?

4 structures with auxiliary be

There can also be used in structures where be is a progressive or passive auxiliary. Note the word order.

There was a girl swimming in the lake. (= A girl was swimming . . .)
(Not There was swimming a girl . . .)

There have been more Americans killed in road accidents than in all the wars since 1900. (= More Americans have been killed . . .)
(Not There have been killed more Americans . . .)
There’ll be somebody meeting you at the airport.

5 more complex structures

There can be used with modal verb + be, and with some other verbs (e.g. seem, appear, happen, tend) before to be.

There might be drinks if you wait for a bit.
There must be something we can do.
If the police hadn’t closed the road, there could have been a bad accident.
There seem to be some problems. (Not There seems to be . . .)
Could you be quiet? There happens to be a lecture going on.
There tends to be jealousy when a new little brother or sister comes along.

Note also the structure there is/are certain/sure/likely/bound to be.

There is sure to be trouble when she gets his message.
Do you think there are likely to be delays?

Infinitives (there to be) and -ing forms (there being) are also used.

I don’t want there to be any more trouble.
What’s the chance of there being an election this year?

6 other verbs: there lived . . .

In a formal or literary style, some other verbs can be used with there besides be. These are mostly verbs which refer to states or arrivals.

In a small town in Germany there once lived a poor shoemaker.
There remains nothing more to be done.
Suddenly there entered a strange figure dressed all in black.
There followed an uncomfortable silence.

7 definite subjects

There is not normally used in a sentence with a definite subject (e.g. a noun with a definite article, or a proper name).

The door was open. (Not There was the door open.)
James was at the party. (Not There was James at the party.)

One exception to this is when we simply name people or things, in order to draw attention to a possible solution to a problem.

grammar • 20 there is
'Who could we ask?' 'Well, there's James, or Miranda, or Anna, or Emma, ...'
'Where can he sleep?' 'Well, there's always the attic.'
Another apparent exception is in oral stories that begin There was this ..., when this has an indefinite sense.
There was this man, see, and he couldn't get up in the mornings. So he ...

21 have: introduction

Have is used in several different ways:

a as an auxiliary verb, to make perfect verb forms (► 22)

Have you heard about Daniel and Corinne?
I remembered his face, but I had forgotten his name.

b to talk about actions and experiences (► 23)

I'm going to have a bath. What time do you usually have breakfast?

c to talk about possession, relationships and other states (► 24)

They have three cars. Have you (got) any brothers or sisters?
Do you often have headaches?

d with an infinitive, to talk about obligation, like must (► 74)

I had to work last Saturday.

e with object + verb form, to talk about causing or experiencing actions and events (► 109)

He soon had everybody laughing. I must have my shoes repaired.
We had our car stolen last week.

For contractions (I've, haven't, etc), ► 337. For weak forms, ► 315. For had better + infinitive, ► 77.

22 have: auxiliary verb

have + past participle

1 perfect verb forms

We use have as an auxiliary verb with past participles, to make perfect verb forms.

You've heard about Daniel and Corinne? (present perfect: ► 47, 52)
I realised that I had met him before. (past perfect: ► 53–55)
We'll have been living here for two years next Sunday. (future perfect progressive: ► 40)
I'd like to have lived in the eighteenth century. (perfect infinitive: ► 89)
Having been there before, he knew what to expect. (perfect participle)  →
2 questions and negatives

Like all auxiliary verbs, *have* makes questions and negatives without *do*.

*Have you heard the news? (NOT Do you have heard...?)*
*I haven’t seen them. (NOT I don’t have seen them.)*

3 progressive forms

There are no progressive forms of the auxiliary verb *have*.

*I haven’t seen her anywhere. (NOT I’m not having seen her anywhere.)*

For contractions, ► 337. For weak forms, ► 315.

23 *have*: actions

1 meaning and typical expressions

We often use *have* + object to talk about actions and experiences, especially in an informal style.

*Let’s have a drink.*  *I’m going to have a bath.* (BrE)
*I’ll have a think* (BrE) and let you know what I decide.
*Have a good time.*

In expressions like these, *have* can be the equivalent of ‘eat’, ‘drink’, ‘enjoy’, ‘experience’ or many other things – the exact meaning depends on the following noun. Common expressions:

- *have breakfast / lunch / supper / dinner / tea / coffee / a drink / a meal*
- *have a bath (BrE) / a wash / a shave / a shower (BrE)*
- *have a rest / a lie-down (BrE) / a sleep / a dream*
- *have a good time / a bad day / a nice evening / a day off / a holiday (BrE)*
- *have a good journey / flight / trip, etc*
- *have a talk / a chat / a word with somebody / a conversation / a disagreement / a row (BrE) / a quarrel / a fight*
- *have a swim / a walk / a ride / a dance / a game of tennis, etc*
- *have a try / a go (BrE) have a look have a baby (= give birth)*
- *have difficulty / trouble (in) . . . ing (something)*
- *have an accident / an operation / a nervous breakdown*

Note American English *take a bath/shower/rest/swim/walk.*

*Have* can also be used to mean ‘receive’ (e.g. *I’ve had a phone call from Emma*).

For other common structures in which nouns are used to talk about actions, ► 132.

2 grammar

In this structure, we make questions and negatives with *do*. Progressive forms are possible. Contractions and weak forms of *have* are not used.

*Did you have a good time (NOT Had you a good time?)*
*I’m having a bad day.*
*I have lunch at 12.30 most days. (NOT I’ve lunch . . .)*
24 *have (got)*: possession, relationships and other states

1 meanings

We often use *have* to talk about states: possession, relationships, illnesses, the characteristics of people and things, and similar ideas.

*Her father has an office in Westminster.*

*They hardly have enough money to live on.*

*Do you have any brothers or sisters?*

*The Prime Minister had a bad cold.*

*My grandmother didn’t have a very nice personality.*

Sometimes *have* simply expresses the fact of being in a particular situation.

*She has a houseful of children this weekend.*

*I think we have mice.*

2 progressive forms not used

Progressive forms of *have* are not used for these meanings.

*She has three brothers.* (*not* *She is having three brothers.*)

*Do you have a headache?* (*not* *Are you having a headache?*)

3 questions and negatives with *do*

In American English and modern British English, questions and negatives are commonly formed with *do* for these meanings.

*Does the house have a garden?*

*Her parents did not have very much money.*

4 shorter question and negative forms: *have you . . . ?*; *she has not*

Short question and negative forms (e.g. *have you . . . ?*, *she has not*) were common in older English. In modern English they are rather formal and uncommon (except in a few fixed expressions like *I haven’t the faintest idea*).

They are not normally used in American English.

– *Have you an appointment?* (formal BrE only)

– *Do you have an appointment?* (AmE/BrE)

– *Angela has not the charm of her older sisters.* (formal BrE only)

– *Angela does not have the charm . . .* (AmE/BrE)

5 *have got*

In conversation and informal writing, we often use the double form *have got*.

*I’ve got a new boyfriend.* (More natural in speech than *I have a new boyfriend.*)

*Has your sister got a car? I haven’t got your keys.*

Note that *have got* means exactly the same as *have* in this case – it is a present tense of *have*, not the present perfect of *get*.

6 *have got*: details

*Do* is not used in questions and negatives with *got*.

*Have you got a headache?* (*not* *Do you have got . . .*)

*The house hasn’t got a cellar.* (*not* *The house doesn’t have got . . .*)
Got-forms of have are not used in short answers or tags.

‘Have you got a light?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’ (NOT No, I haven’t got.)
Anne’s got a bike, hasn’t she?

Got-forms of have are less common in the past tense.

I had some problems last week. (NOT I had got some problems...

Did you have good teachers when you were at school?

Got is not generally used with infinitives, participles or -ing forms of have: you cannot usually say to have got a headache or having got a brother. The infinitive of have got is occasionally used after modal verbs (e.g. She must have got a new boyfriend).

Have got is rather less common in American English, especially in questions and negatives.

In very informal American speech, people may drop ‘ve (but not ‘s) before got.
I(‘ve) got a problem.

Got- and do-forms may be mixed in American English, especially when short answers, reply questions and tags follow got-forms.
‘I’ve got a new apartment.’ ‘You do?’

7 repeated states: got not used

When we are talking about repeated or habitual states, got-forms of have are less often used. Compare:

- I have / I’ve got a headache.
  I often have headaches.
- Do you have / Have you got time to go to London this weekend?
  Do you ever have time to go to London?
- Sorry, I don’t have / haven’t got any beer.
  We don’t usually have beer in the house.

8 repetition: a change in British English

Traditionally in British English, do was used with have mostly in references to habit or repetition. Compare:

Do you often have meetings?
Have you (got) a meeting today?

In modern British English (which is heavily influenced by American English), do-forms are common even when there is no idea of repetition.

Do you have time to go to the beach this weekend? (AmE / modern BrE)

25 be and have

1 physical conditions: hunger, thirst, etc

To talk about experiencing hunger, thirst, heat, cold and certain other common physical conditions, we normally use be (or feel) + adjective, not have + noun.

Note the following expressions:

be hungry (not have-hunger), be thirsty, be warm, be hot, be cold, be sleepy, be afraid

Note also:
be right, be wrong, be lucky
Be, have and do

2 age, height, weight, size and colour

Be is also used to talk about age, height, length, weight, size, shape and colour.

I'm nearly thirty. (Not I have nearly thirty.)

She is nearly my age. He is six feet tall.

I wish I was ten kilos lighter. What size are your shoes?

The room is ten metres long. What colour are his eyes?

She is the same height as her father.

Be heavy is not usually used in measuring expressions.

It weighs 37 kilos. (Not It's 37 kilos heavy.)

For have in expressions like have a bath, have a drink, have a walk, ► 23.

26 do: introduction

Do has three main uses.

1 auxiliary verb

The auxiliary do is used to form the questions and negatives of other verbs, as well as emphatic and shortened forms. For details, ► 27.

Did you remember to buy milk? This doesn't taste very nice.

I do like your earrings. 'Jack eats too much.' 'He certainly does.'

2 general-purpose verb

Do is also an ordinary (non-auxiliary) verb. It can refer to almost any kind of activity, and is used when it is not necessary or not possible to be more precise. For details, and the difference between do and make, ► 435.

What are you doing? Don't just stand there. Do something.

I've finished the phone calls, and I'll do the letters tomorrow.

3 substitute verb

In British English, do can be used alone as a substitute for a main verb after an auxiliary. For details, ► 28.

'Do you think Jake will come?' 'He might do.' (AmE He might.)

Do so/it/that can be used as a substitute expression when we want to avoid repeating another verb and what follows. For details, ► 29.

I need to take a rest, and I shall do so as soon as I can find time.

He told me to open the door. I did it as quietly as I could.

4 combined forms

Auxiliary do and non-auxiliary do can occur together.

Do you do much gardening? How do you do?

The company didn't do very well last year.
The auxiliary verb *do* is followed by infinitives without *to*. It has several uses.

### 1 questions
We use *do* to make questions with ordinary verbs, but not with other auxiliary verbs (► 216). Compare:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Do you } & \text{like football? (NOT } \text{like you-football)?} \\
\text{Can you } & \text{play football? (NOT Do you can-play-football?)}
\end{align*}
\]

The auxiliary *do* can make questions with the ordinary verb *do*.

*What do you do in the evenings?*

### 2 negatives
We use *do* to make negative clauses with ordinary verbs (including the ordinary verb *do*), but not with other auxiliary verbs (► 217).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I don’t like football. (NOT I like not football.)} & \quad \text{Don’t go.} \\
\text{I don’t do much in the evenings.} & \quad \text{BUT I can’t play football. (NOT I don’t can-play-football.)}
\end{align*}
\]

### 3 emphasis
We can use *do* in an affirmative clause for emphasis.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Do sit down.} & \quad \text{You do look nice today!} \\
\text{She thinks I don’t love her, but I do love her.} & \quad \text{I don’t do much sport now, but I did play football when I was younger.}
\end{align*}
\]

### 4 inversion
*Do* is used in some structures with inversion (verb before subject) (► 270).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{At no time did he lose his self-control.}
\end{align*}
\]

### 5 ellipsis
In cases where an auxiliary is used instead of a whole verb phrase (► 279), *do* is common in affirmative clauses as well as questions and negatives.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{She doesn’t like dancing, but I do. (= . . . but I like dancing.)} \\
\text{‘That meat smells funny.’ ‘Yes, it does, doesn’t it?’} \\
\text{Anna thinks there’s something wrong with James, and so do I.}
\end{align*}
\]

For *do* with *be*, ► 19. For weak pronunciations of *do* and *does*, ► 315. For *do* in short answers, ► 308.
28 do: substitute verb (I may do.)

auxiliary verb + do

In British English (but not American), do can be used alone as a substitute verb after an auxiliary verb.

'The dog chased the cat.' 'I may (do), if I have the time.' (AmE I may, if . . .

or I may come, if . . .)

'He’s supposed to have locked the safe.' ‘He has (done).’ (AmE He has.

or He has locked it.)

He didn’t pass his exam, but he could have (done) if he’d tried harder.

He smokes more than he used to (do).

Progressive forms are possible, but not very common.

'You should be getting dressed.' 'I am (doing).'

Note that the auxiliary verb is stressed in this structure.

'Close the door.' ‘I HAVE done.’ (NOT . . . I have done.)

For auxiliary verbs used instead of complete verb phrases, ➜ 279.

29 do so/it/that

1 do so

The expression do so can be used to avoid repeating a verb and its object or complement. It is usually rather formal.

'Put the car away, please.' 'I’ve already done so.'

Eventually she divorced Joshua. It was a pity she had not done so earlier.

He told me to get out, and I did so as quietly as possible.

2 do so and do it/that

Do it and do that can be used instead of do so.

I promised to get the tickets, and I will do so/it as soon as possible.

She rode a camel: she had never done so/that before.

We use do so mainly to refer to the same action, with the same subject, that was mentioned before. In other cases we prefer do it/that or do alone.

I haven’t got time to get the tickets. Who’s going to do it? (NOT . . . Who’s going to do so?)

'I rode a camel in Morocco.' I’d love to do that. (NOT . . . to-do-so.)'

I always eat peas with honey. My wife never does.

(NOT . . . My wife never does so.) ➜
3 *do so*/it*/that*: deliberate actions

*do so*/it*/that* are mainly used to refer to deliberate dynamic actions. We do not usually use these expressions to replace verbs like *fall*, *lose*, *like*, *remember*, *think*, *own*, which refer to involuntary actions or states.

*I like the saxophone, and I always have (done).* (AmE . . . and I always *have*.)

*(NOT . . . -and I have always done so/it/that.*)

*She lost her money. I wasn’t surprised that she did.*

*(NOT . . . -that she did so/it/that.*)

*I think Jake’s wrong. I did when he first spoke to me.*

*(NOT . . . -did so/it/that when . . .*)

4 other verbs

Note that *so*, *it* and *that* are not normally used in this way after auxiliary verbs. It is not possible in standard English to say *I can so*, *She was it* or *I have that*.

For *so I am*, *so it is*, etc, ➤ 309.3. For *so do I*, *so am I*, etc, ➤ 309.1. For *so with say and tell*, ➤ 586.

For *so with think, believe, hope* and similar verbs, ➤ 585.

For *auxiliary do as substitute for a whole verb phrase*, ➤ 279. For *differences between it and that*, ➤ 145.
INTRODUCTION

the two present tenses
Most English verbs have two present tenses. Forms like *I wait, she thinks* are called ‘simple present’ or ‘present simple’; forms like *I am waiting* or *she’s thinking* are called ‘present progressive’ or ‘present continuous’.

general time: simple present
When we talk about timeless truths, permanent situations or things that happen repeatedly, we usually use the simple present (► 30–31 for details).

*Water freezes at 0° Celsius. My parents live near Dover. I often go swimming.*

around now: present progressive
When we talk about temporary continuing actions and events, which are just going on now or around now, we usually use a present progressive tense (► 32).

*‘What are you doing?’ ‘I’m reading.’ I’m travelling a lot these days.*

future
Both present tenses can be used to talk about the future (► 31.4, 36–37).

*I’ll meet you when you arrive. Call me if you’re passing through London.*

terminology: tense and aspect
In academic grammars, the term ‘aspect’ is often used for progressive forms. We use ‘tense’ for all verb forms which show time.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- That baby crys all the time. ► 30.2
- What are frogs eating? ► 31.1
- The kettle boils - shall I make tea? ► 31.2
- I’m liking this wine very much. ► 4.1
- I promise I don’t smoke any more. ► 31.4
- ‘There’s the doorbell.’ ‘I get it.’ ► 31.4
- I’ll phone you when I’ll get home. ► 31.4
- I know her since 1990. ► 32.8
- I’m going to the mountains twice a year. ► 34.1
- I’m swearing that I will tell the truth. ► 34.4
- Here is coming your husband. ► 34.5

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

30 simple present: forms 33 stories, commentaries and instructions
31 simple present: use 34 present tenses: advanced points
32 present progressive
30 simple present: forms

1 forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>do I work?</td>
<td>I do not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you work</td>
<td>do you work?</td>
<td>you do not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it works</td>
<td>does he/she/it work?</td>
<td>he/she/it does not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we work</td>
<td>do we work?</td>
<td>we do not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they work</td>
<td>do they work?</td>
<td>they do not work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Contracted negatives (► 337): I don’t work, he doesn’t work, etc
- Negative questions (► 218): do I not work? or don’t I work? etc

For passives (e.g. The work is done), ► 57.

2 spelling of third person singular forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most verbs: add -s to infinitive</th>
<th>work → works</th>
<th>sit → sits</th>
<th>stay → stays</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verbs ending in consonant + y: change y to i and add -es</td>
<td>cry → cries</td>
<td>hurry → hurries</td>
<td>reply → replies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But (vowel + y):</td>
<td>enjoy → enjoys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs ending in -s, -z, -ch, -sh or -x: add -es to infinitive</td>
<td>miss → misses</td>
<td>buzz → buzzes</td>
<td>watch → watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceptions:</td>
<td>have → has</td>
<td>go → goes</td>
<td>do → does</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 pronunciation of third person singular forms

The pronunciation of the -(e)s ending depends on the sound that comes before it. The rules are the same as for the plural -(e)s ending, ►118.

Irregular pronunciations: says (/sez/, not /seis/); does (/daz/, not /du:z/).

31 simple present: use

1 general time: It always rains in November.

We often use the simple present to talk about timeless truths, permanent situations, or things that happen regularly, repeatedly or all the time.

What do frogs eat? (not What are frogs eating?)
Alice works for an insurance company.
It always rains here in November.  I play tennis every Wednesday.

simple present: permanent situations
Alice works for an insurance company.

PAST  NOW  FUTURE

simple present: things that happen repeatedly
I play tennis every Wednesday.

PAST  NOW  FUTURE

2 not used for things happening just around the present
We do not usually use the simple present to talk about temporary situations or actions that are only going on around the present. Compare:
- Water boils at 100° Celsius.
  The kettle’s boiling – shall I make tea? (NOT The kettle boils . . .)
- It usually snows in January.
  Look – it’s snowing! (NOT Look — it snows!)
- I play tennis every Wednesday.
  ‘Where’s Bernard?’ ‘He’s playing tennis.’ (NOT . . . He plays tennis.)

3 non-progressive verbs
However, the simple present is used for this ‘around the present’ meaning with verbs that do not usually have progressive forms (► 4).
I like this wine. (NOT I’m liking . . .)  I believe you. (NOT I’m believing you.)

4 talking about the future
We do not normally use the simple present to talk about the future.
I promise I won’t smoke any more. (NOT I promise I don’t smoke . . .) (► 79.3)
We’re going to the theatre this evening. (NOT We go to the theatre this evening.)
‘There’s the doorbell.’ ‘I’ll get it.’ (NOT I get it.) (► 79.1)

However, the simple present is used for ‘timetabled’ future events (► 37.1).
His train arrives at 11.46.  I start my new job tomorrow.

And the simple present is often used instead of will . . . in subordinate clauses that refer to the future. (For details, ► 231).
I'll kill anybody who touches my things. (Not... who will touch...) I'll phone you when I get home. (Not... when I'll get home.)
The simple present is also used in suggestions with Why don't you...? Why don't you take a day off tomorrow?

5 series of events: demonstrations, commentaries, instructions, stories

When we talk about a series of completed actions and events, we often use the simple present. This happens, for example, in demonstrations, commentaries, instructions and present-tense stories (► 33 for more details).
First I take a bowl and break two eggs into it. (Not First I am-taking...) Lydiard passes to Taylor, Taylor shoots - and it's a goal!
'How do I get to the station?' 'You go straight on until you come to the traffic lights, then you turn left...'
So I go into the office, and I see this man, and he says to me...

6 how long? present tenses not used

We use a perfect tense, not a present tense, to say how long a present action or situation has been going on. (► 52 for details.)
I've known her since 1990. (Not I know her since 1990.)

32 present progressive

1 present progressive: forms

   am/are/is + -ing

   I am waiting. Are you listening? She isn't working today.

For spelling of -ing forms, ► 346–347. For passive forms (e.g. The work is being done). ► 57.

2 use: ‘around now’

We use the present progressive to talk about temporary situations that are going on now or ‘around now’: before, during and after the moment of speaking.
Hurry up! We're all waiting for you! (Not We all wait...) ‘What are you doing?’ ‘I'm writing emails.’ (Not... I write emails.)
He's working in Saudi Arabia at the moment.

present progressive: temporary actions and situations going on now or around now

   We're all waiting for you. Why are you crying?

      PAST | NOW | FUTURE

grammar • 32 present progressive
Present Tenses

3 repeated actions
The present progressive can refer to repeated actions and events, if these are just happening around the present (for more details, ► 34.1).

Why is he hitting the dog? I'm travelling a lot these days.

4 changes
We also use the present progressive to talk about developments and changes.

That child's getting bigger every day. House prices are going up again.

5 talking about the future
We often use the present progressive to talk about the future (► 36).

What are you doing tomorrow evening?
Come and see us next week if you're passing through London.

6 things that happen all the time: present progressive not used
We do not normally use the present progressive to talk about permanent situations, or about things that happen regularly, repeatedly or all the time.

Compare:
- Look - the cat's eating your breakfast!
  'What do bears eat? 'Everything.' (NOT 'What are bears eating? . . . )
- Why is that girl standing on the table?
  Chetford Castle stands on a hill outside the town. (NOT . . . is standing . . . )
- My sister's living at home for the moment.
  Your parents live in North London, don't they?

7 verbs not generally used in progressive forms
Some verbs are not generally used in progressive forms (► 4), even if the meaning is 'just around now'.

I like this wine. (NOT I'm liking this wine.)
Do you believe what he says? (NOT Are you believing . . . ?)
The tank contains about 7,000 litres at the moment.

8 how long? present tenses not used
We use a perfect tense, not a present tense, to say how long something has been going on. (► 52 for details.)

I've been learning English for years. (NOT I'm learning English for years.)

33 stories, commentaries and instructions

1 stories
Present tenses are often used informally to tell stories. The simple present is used for the events – the things that happen one after another. The present progressive is used for 'background' – things that are already happening when the story starts, or that continue through the story. (This is like the difference between the simple past and past progressive. ► 45.3)

So I open the door, and I look out into the garden, and I see this man.
He's wearing pyjamas and a policeman's helmet. 'Hello,' he says . . .
There's this Scotsman, and he's walking through the jungle when he meets a gorilla. And the gorilla's eating a snake sandwich. So the Scotsman asks . . .

The simple present is common in summaries of plays, stories, etc.

In Act I, Hamlet sees the ghost of his father. The ghost tells him . . .

Chapter 2: Henry goes to Scotland and meets the Loch Ness Monster.

2 commentaries

In commentaries, the use of tenses is similar. The simple present is used for the quicker actions and events (which are finished before the sentences that describe them); the present progressive is used for longer actions and situations. There are more simple and fewer progressive tenses in a football commentary, for instance, than in a commentary on a boat race.

Smith passes to Devaney, Devaney to Barnes – and Harris intercepts . . .

Harris passes back to Simms, nice ball – and Simms shoots!

Oxford are pulling slightly ahead of Cambridge now; they're rowing with a beautiful rhythm; Cambridge are looking a little disorganised . . .

3 instructions and demonstrations

We often use the two present tenses in a similar way to give instructions, demonstrations and directions.

OK, let's go over it again. You wait outside the bank until the manager arrives. Then you radio Louie, who's waiting round the corner, and he drives round to the front entrance. You and Louie grab the manager . . .

First I put a lump of butter into a frying pan and light the gas; then while the butter's melting I break three eggs into a bowl, like this . . .

34 present tenses: advanced points

1 repeated actions: simple or progressive?

The present progressive can refer to repeated actions and events, if these are happening around the moment of speaking.

Why is he hitting the dog? Jake's seeing a lot of Felicity these days.

We normally use the simple present for repeated actions and events which are not closely connected to the moment of speaking.

Water boils at 100° Celsius. (NOT Water is boiling at 100° Celsius.)

I go to the mountains about twice a year.

But we can use the present progressive for things that are going on around these actions and events.

At seven, when the mail comes, I'm usually having breakfast.

You look lovely when you're smiling.

2 long-lasting changes

We use the present progressive for changes and developments, even if these are very long-lasting.

The climate is getting warmer. (NOT The climate gets warmer.)

The universe is expanding, and has been since its beginning.
Present Tenses

Section 3

3 I promise . . . , etc

Sometimes we do things by saying special words (e.g. promising, agreeing).
We usually use the simple present in these cases.
  I promise never to smoke again. (NOT I’m promising . . .)
  I swear that I will tell the truth . . . I agree. (NOT I am agreeing.)
  He denies the accusation. (NOT He is denying . . .)

4 I hear, etc

The simple present is used with a perfect kind of meaning (= ‘I have learnt’) in
introductory expressions like I hear, I see, I gather, I understand (► 482).
  I hear you’re getting married. (= ‘I have heard . . .’)
  I see there’s been trouble down at the factory.
  I gather Daniel’s looking for a job.

Other people’s statements, opinions, etc are often introduced with says.
  It says in the paper that petrol’s going up again.
  No doubt you all remember what Hamlet says about suicide.

5 Here comes . . . , etc

Note the structures here comes . . . and there goes . . .
  Here comes your husband. (NOT Here is coming . . .)
  There goes our bus.

6 I feel / I’m feeling

Verbs that refer to physical feelings (e.g. feel, hurt, ache) can often be used in
simple or progressive tenses without much difference of meaning.
  How do you feel? OR How are you feeling?
  My head aches. OR My head is aching.

7 formal correspondence

Some fixed phrases that are used in letters, emails, etc can be expressed either
in the simple present (more formal) or in the present progressive (less formal).
  We write to advise you . . . (Less formal: We are writing to let you know . . .)
  I enclose a recent photograph. (Less formal: I am enclosing . . .)
  I look forward to hearing from you. (Less formal: I’m looking forward to
  hearing . . .)

For progressive forms with always and similar words (e.g. She’s always losing her keys), ► 5.
For progressive forms in general, ► 3. For the ‘distancing’ use of progressive forms, ► 311.
For simple and progressive forms in older English, ► 318.10.
Section 4  Talking about the Future

INTRODUCTION

There are several ways to use verbs to talk about the future in English. This is a complicated area of grammar: the differences between the meanings and uses of the different structures are not easy to analyse and describe clearly. In many, but not all situations, two or more structures are possible with similar meanings.

**present-tense forms: I’m leaving; I’m going to leave**

When we talk about future events which have some present reality – which have already been planned or decided, or which we can see are on the way – we often use present-tense forms. The present progressive is common. For details, ► 36.

I’m seeing Jack tomorrow.  What are you doing this evening?

The present progressive of go (be going to . . .) is often used as an auxiliary verb to talk about the future. For details, ► 35.

Sandra is going to have a baby.  When are you going to get a job?

These present forms are especially common in speech (because conversation is often about future events which are already planned, or which we can see are on the way).

**will/shall**

When we are simply giving information about the future, or talking about possible future events which are not already decided or obviously on the way, we usually use will (or sometimes shall) + infinitive. This is the most common way of talking about the future. For details, ► 38.

Nobody will ever know the truth.  I think Liverpool will win.

Will (and sometimes shall) are also used to express our intentions and attitudes towards other people: they are common in offers, requests, threats, promises and announcements of decisions. For details, ► 79–80.

Shall I carry your bag?  I’ll hit you if you do that again.

**simple present: the train leaves . . .**

The simple present can also be used to talk about the future, but only in certain situations. For details, ► 37.

The train leaves at half past six tomorrow morning.

**other ways of talking about the future**

We can use the future perfect to say that something will be completed, finished or achieved by a certain time. For details, ► 40.

By next Christmas we’ll have been here for eight years.

The future progressive can be used to say that something will be in progress at a particular time. For details, and other uses of this tense, ► 41.

This time tomorrow I’ll be lying on the beach.
Be about to + infinitive (► 353) suggests that a future event is very close.
The plane's about to take off.

Be to + infinitive is used to talk about plans, arrangements and schedules, and to give instructions. For details, ► 42.
The President is to visit Beijing. You're not to tell anybody.

'future in the past'
To say that something was still in the future at a certain past time, we can use a past form of one of the future structures. For details, ► 43.
Something was going to happen that was to change the world.
I knew she would arrive before long.

subordinate clauses
In many subordinate clauses we refer to the future with present tenses instead of will + infinitive. For details, ► 231.
Phone me when you have time. (NOT . . . when you'll have time.)
I'll follow him wherever he goes. (NOT . . . wherever he'll go.)

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?
X What do you do this evening? ► 36.1
X I'm seeing him this evening and I'm really telling him what I think.
  ► 36.2
X It's snowing before long. ► 36.2
X Lucy comes for a drink this evening. ► 37.4
X I promise I phone you soon. ► 37.4
X 'There's the doorbell.' 'I go.' ► 37.4
X See those clouds? It will rain. ► 35.3
X I'll phone you when I will arrive. ► 37.2
X I'll tell you what I'll find out. ► 37.2

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION
35 going to
36 present progressive for future
37 simple present for future
38 will
39 will, going to and present progressive: advanced points
40 future perfect
41 future progressive
42 be to + infinitive: I am to . . . , you are to . . . , etc
43 future in the past
35 going to

1 a present tense
This structure is really a present tense (the present progressive of go). We use it to talk about future actions and events that have some present reality. If we say that something in the future is going to happen, it is usually already planned or decided, or it is starting to happen, or we can see it coming now. The structure is very common in an informal style, especially in speech (because conversation is often about future actions and events of this kind).

2 plans: We’re going to get a new car.
We use be going to + infinitive to talk about plans, especially in an informal style. This structure often emphasises the idea of intention, or a decision that has already been made.

- We’re going to get a new car soon.
- Jack says he’s going to phone this evening.
- When are you going to get your hair cut?
- I’m going to keep asking her until she says ‘Yes’.
- I’m going to stop him reading my emails if it’s the last thing I do.

3 things that are on the way: She’s going to have a baby.
Another use of the going-to structure is to predict the future on the basis of present evidence – to say that a future action or event is on the way, or starting to happen.

- Sandra’s going to have another baby in June.
- Look at the sky. It’s going to rain. Look out! We’re going to crash!

4 commands and refusals
Going to . . . can be used to insist that people do things or do not do things.

- You’re going to finish that soup if you sit there all afternoon!
- She’s going to take that medicine whether she likes it or not!
- You’re not going to play football in my garden.

It is also used in emphatic refusals.

- I’m not going to sit up all night listening to your problems!

5 gonna
In informal speech, going to is often pronounced /gəna/. This is sometimes shown in writing as gonna, especially in American English.

- Nobody’s gonna talk to me like that.

For was going to, has been going to, etc, ► 43.
For going to . . . compared with the present progressive, ► 36.2. For a comparison with will, ► 39.
36 present progressive for future

1 present reality: I'm washing my hair this evening.
We use the present progressive for future actions and events that have some present reality. It is most common in discussions of personal arrangements and fixed plans, when the time and place have been decided.
- 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I'm washing my hair.'
- I'm seeing Larry on Saturday.
- Did you know I'm getting a new job?
- We're touring Mexico next summer.
- What are we having for dinner?
- My car's going in for repairs next week.
We often use the present progressive with verbs of movement, to talk about actions which are just starting.
- Are you coming to the pub?
- I'm just going next door. Back in a minute.
- Get your coat on! I'm taking you down to the doctor!
Note that the simple present is not often used to talk about the future (but ► 37).
- What are you doing this evening? (NOT What do you do this evening?)

2 present progressive and going to . . .: differences
In many cases, both structures can be used to express the same idea.
- I'm washing / going to wash my hair this evening.
But there are some differences. For example, we prefer going to . . . when we are talking not about fixed arrangements, but about intentions and decisions.
Compare:
- I'm seeing Jake tonight. (emphasis on arrangement)
  I'm really going to tell him what I think of him. (emphasis on intention:
  NOT I'm really telling him . . .)
- Who's cooking lunch? (asking what has been arranged)
  Who's going to cook lunch? (asking for a decision)
Because the present progressive is used especially for personal arrangements, it is not generally used to make predictions about events that are outside people's control.
- It's going to snow before long. (NOT it's snowing before long.)
- I can see that things are going to get better soon. (NOT . . . things are getting better soon.)
And the present progressive is used for actions and events, but not usually for permanent states. Compare:
- Our house is getting / is going to get new windows this winter.
  Their new house is going to look over the river. (NOT Their new house is looking over the river.)
3 commands and refusals

The present progressive can be used to insist that people do things or do not do things.

*She’s taking that medicine whether she likes it or not!*

*You’re not wearing that skirt to school.*

The present progressive is common in emphatic refusals.

*I’m sorry – you’re not taking my car.*

*I’m not washing your socks – forget it!*

For a comparison with *will*, ► 39.

37 simple present for future

1 timetables, etc: *The summer term starts . . .*

We can sometimes use the simple present to talk about the future. This is common when we are talking about events which are part of a timetable, a regular schedule or something similar.

*The summer term starts on April 10th.*

*What time does the bus arrive in Seattle?*

*My plane leaves at three o’clock.*

*The sun rises at 6.13 tomorrow.*

*Will is also usually possible in these cases.*

*The summer term will start on April 10th.*

2 subordinate clauses: when she gets a job

The simple present is often used with a future meaning in subordinate clauses – for example after *what, where, when, until, if, than.* For details, ► 231.

*I’ll tell you what I find out.* (not . . .what I’ll find out.)

*She’ll pay us back when she gets a job.* (not . . .when she’ll get a job.)

*Alex will see us tomorrow if he has time.* (not . . .if he will have time.)

3 instructions: Where do I pay?

Occasionally the simple present is used with a future meaning when asking for and giving instructions.

*Where do I pay? Well, what do we do now?*

*So when you get to London you go straight to Victoria Station, you meet up with the others, Ramona gives you your ticket, and you catch the 17.15 train to Dover. OK?*

4 other cases

In other cases, we do not usually use the simple present to talk about the future.

*Lucy’s coming for a drink this evening.* (not *Lucy comes . . .*)

*I promise I’ll call you this evening.* (not *I promise I call you this evening.*)

*‘There’s the doorbell.’ ‘I’ll go.’* (not . . .‘I go.’)
Talking about the Future

38 will

1 forms

*will* + infinitive without *to*

It will be cold tomorrow. Where will you spend the night?

Some British people use *I shall* and *we shall* instead of *I/we will,* with no
difference of meaning in most situations. However, *shall* is now rare, and it is
almost non-existent in American English. For situations where it is still used,
► 80.2.

Contractions: *I’ll, you’ll, etc; won’t /wɔnt/*

2 use: giving information about the future; predicting

*Will* + infinitive is used to give (or ask for) information about the future.

It’ll be spring soon.
Will all the family be at the wedding?
Karen will start work some time next week.
In another thirteen minutes the alarm will go off. This will close an electrical
contact, causing the explosive to detonate.

We often use *will* in predictions of future events - to talk about what we think,
guess or calculate will happen.

Tomorrow will be warm, with some cloud in the afternoon.
Who do you think will win on Saturday? You’ll never finish that book.

3 conditional use: You’ll fall if you’re not careful.

*Will* is often used to express conditional ideas, when we say what *will happen if*
something else happens.

He’ll have an accident if he goes on driving like that.
If the weather’s fine, we’ll have the party in the garden.
Look out – you’ll fall! (If you’re not more careful.)
‘Come out for a drink.’ ‘No, I’ll miss the film on TV if I do.’
Don’t leave me. I’ll cry!

4 future events already decided: *will* not used

When future events are already decided, or when we can ‘see them coming’, we
often prefer a present form (usually present progressive or **going to . . .**).

I’m seeing the headmaster on Monday. My sister’s going to have a baby.

For details, ► 35–36.

5 not used in subordinate clauses: when *I arrive*

In subordinate clauses, we usually use present tenses instead of *will* (► 231.2).

I’ll phone you when I arrive. (**not . . . when I will arrive**)

For exceptions, ► 231.4, 243.

For other uses of *will,* ► 69.5, 73, 79–80.
39 will, going to and present progressive: advanced points

Will is the basic structure for talking about the future. We use will if there is not a good reason for using present forms.

1 present reality
We prefer present forms (present progressive or going to . . .) when we are talking about future events that have some present reality (► 35–36). In other cases we use will. Compare:

- I’m seeing Jessica on Tuesday. (The arrangement exists now.)
  I wonder if she’ll recognise me. (not talking about the present)
- We’re going to get a new car. (The decision already exists.)
  I hope it will be better than the last one. (not talking about the present)

2 predictions: thinking and guessing about the future
In predictions, we use going to when we have outside evidence for what we say – for example black clouds in the sky, a person who is obviously about to fall.

See those clouds? It’s going to rain. (NOT See those clouds? It will rain.)
Look – that kid’s going to fall off his bike. (NOT Look! That kid’ll fall off his bike.)

We prefer will for predictions when there is not such obvious outside evidence – when we are talking more about what is inside our heads: what we know, or believe, or have calculated. (When we use will, we are not showing the listener something; we are asking him or her to believe something.) Compare:

- Look out – we’re going to crash! (There is outside evidence.)
  Don’t lend him your car. He’s a terrible driver – he’ll crash it.
  (the speaker’s knowledge)
- I’ve just heard from the builder. That roof repair’s going to cost £7,000.
  (outside evidence – the builder’s letter)
I reckon it’ll cost about £3,000 to put in new lights. (the speaker’s opinion)
- Alice is going to have a baby. (outside evidence – she is pregnant now)
  The baby will certainly have blue eyes, because both parents have.
  (speaker’s knowledge about genetics)
3 will and present forms: both possible

The differences between the structures used to talk about the future are not always very clear-cut. Will and present forms (especially going to . . .) are often both possible in the same situation, if ‘present’ ideas like intention or fixed arrangement are a part of the meaning, but not very important. The choice can depend on which aspect we wish to emphasise.

- What will you do next year? (open question about the future; perhaps no clear plans have been made)
  What are you doing next year? (emphasis on fixed arrangements)
  What are you going to do next year? (emphasis on intentions)
- All the family will be there.
  All the family are going to be there.
- If your mother comes, you’ll have to help with the cooking.
  If your mother comes, you’re going to have to help with the cooking.
- You won’t believe this.
  You’re not going to believe this.
- Next year will be different.
  Next year is going to be different.
- Jack will explain everything to you.
  Jack’s going to explain everything to you.

Both going to . . . (► 35) and stressed will (► 79.1) can express a strong intention or determination.

I’m really going to stop smoking! I really will stop smoking!

In cases like these, the different forms are all correct, and it is unimportant which one is chosen.

4 official arrangements: The Princess will meet the President at 14.30.

Will is often used, rather than present forms, in giving information about impersonal, fixed arrangements – for example official itineraries. Compare:

We’re meeting Sandra at 6.00.

The Princess will arrive at the airport at 14.00. She will meet the President at 14.30, and will then attend a performance of traditional dances.

5 predictions as orders: The regiment will attack at dawn.

Predictions can be used as a way of giving orders – instead of telling somebody to do something, the speaker just says firmly that it will happen. This is common in military-style orders.

The regiment will attack at dawn.

You will start work at six o’clock sharp.
6 different meanings of *will you . . .?*

With a verb referring to a state, *will you . . .?* asks for information.

_How soon will you know your travel dates?*_

_Will you be here next week?*_

With a verb referring to an action, *will you . . .?* usually introduces an order or request (► 80.1).

_Will you turn off that music!*_

_Will you do the shopping this afternoon, please?*_

To ask for information about planned actions, we use a present form (► 35–36) or the future progressive (► 41).

_When are you going to see Andy?*_

_Are you doing the shopping this afternoon?*_

_Will you be doing the shopping . . .?*

7 expressing certainty about the present or past

We can use *will* to talk about the present – to say what we think is very probably or certainly the case.

_‘There’s somebody at the door.’ ‘That’ll be the electrician.’*_

_Don’t phone them now – they’ll be having dinner._

_Will have . . .* can express similar ideas about the past.

_As you will have noticed, there is a new secretary in the front office._

_It’s no use expecting Barry to turn up. He’ll have forgotten._

For more about this and other uses of *will*, ► 69.5, 73, 79–80.

8 obligation: *shall*

In contracts and other legal documents, *shall* is often used with third-person subjects to refer to obligations and duties, in both British and American English.

_The hirer shall be responsible for maintenance of the vehicle._

In normal usage, we prefer *will, must* or *should* to express ideas of this kind.

40 future perfect

*will have + past participle*

We can use the future perfect to say that something will be finished or complete by a certain time in the future.

_The builders say they will have finished the roof by Tuesday._

_I’ll have spent all my savings by the end of the year._

A progressive form can be used to talk about a continuous activity.

_I’ll have been teaching for twenty years this summer._

For *will have . . .* used to express certainty about the past (e.g. *It’s no use phoning – he’ll have left by now*), ► 39.7.
Talking about the Future

41 future progressive

shall/will + be + . . . ing

1 events in progress in the future

We can use the future progressive to say that something will be in progress (happening) at a particular moment in the future.

This time tomorrow I’ll be lying on the beach.

Good luck with the exam. We’ll be thinking of you.

2 events that are fixed or expected to happen

The future progressive is often used to refer to future events which are fixed or decided, or which are expected to happen in the normal course of events.

Professor Baxter will be giving another lecture on Roman glass-making at the same time next week.

I’ll be seeing you one of these days, I expect.

This is useful if we want to show that we are not talking about making decisions, but about things that will happen ‘anyway’.

‘Shall I pick up the laundry for you?’ ‘Oh, no, don’t make a special journey.’

‘It’s OK. I’ll be going to the shops anyway.’

The tense can be used to make polite enquiries about people’s plans. (By using the future progressive to ask ‘What have you already decided?’, the speaker shows that he/she does not want to influence the listener’s intentions.)

Compare:

Will you be staying in this evening? (very polite enquiry, suggesting ‘I simply want to know your plans’)

Are you going to stay in this evening? (pressing for a decision)

This usage is possible with verbs that do not normally have progressive forms (► 4).

Will you be wanting lunch tomorrow?

3 progressive form with going to

A progressive form of the going to structure is also possible.

I’m going to be working all day tomorrow, so I won’t have time to shop.

For will be . . . ing used to express certainty about the present (e.g. Don’t phone now – they’ll be having lunch), ► 39.7.
42 be to + infinitive: *I am to . . .*, you are to . . ., etc

1 plans and arrangements: *He is to visit Nigeria.*

We use this structure in a formal style to talk about official and other plans and arrangements.

*The President is to visit Nigeria next month.*
*We are to get a 10 per cent wage rise in June.*
*I felt nervous because I was soon to leave home for the first time.*

A perfect infinitive can be used to show that a planned event did not happen.

*I was to have started work last week, but I changed my mind.*

2 ‘fate’: *We were to meet again.*

Another use is to talk about things which are/were ‘hidden in the future’, fated to happen.

*I thought we were saying goodbye for ever. But we were to meet again, many years later, under very strange circumstances.*

3 pre-conditions: *If we are to get there in time . . .*

This structure is common in *if*-clauses, when the main clause expresses a pre-condition – something that must happen first if something else is to happen.

*If we are to get there by lunchtime, we had better hurry.*
*He knew he would have to work hard if he was to pass his exam.*

4 orders: *You are to do your homework.*

The structure is used to give orders, for example by parents speaking to children.

*You are to do your homework before you watch TV.*
*She can go to the party, but she’s not to be back late.*

5 *be* + passive infinitive: *It is not to be removed.*

*Be + passive infinitive* is often used in notices and instructions.

*This cover is not to be removed.*

Sometimes only the passive infinitive is used.

*To be taken three times a day after meals.* (on a medicine bottle)

Some other common expressions with *be* + passive infinitive:

*There’s nothing to be done.*  *She was nowhere to be found.*
*I looked out of the window, but there was nothing to be seen.*
Sometimes when we are talking about the past, we want to talk about something which was in the future at that time – which had not yet happened. To express this idea, we use the structures that are normally used to talk about the future (► 35–42), but we make the verb forms past. For example, instead of *is going to* we use *was going to*; instead of the present progressive we use the past progressive; instead of *will* we use *would*; instead of *is to* we use *was to*.

Last time I saw you, you were going to start a new job.

I had no time to shop because I was leaving for Germany in two hours.

In 1988 I arrived in the town where I would spend ten years of my life.

I went to have a look at the room where I was to talk that afternoon.

Perfect forms of *be going to* are also possible.

I’ve been going to write to you for ages, but I’ve only just found time.

For *was to have* + past participle (e.g. *She was to have taken over my job, but she fell ill*), ► 42.1.
Section 5  Past and Perfect Tenses

INTRODUCTION

English has six different verb forms to refer to past events and situations. They are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>I worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past progressive (or 'continuous')</td>
<td>I was working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(simple) present perfect</td>
<td>I have worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect progressive (or 'continuous')</td>
<td>I have been working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(simple) past perfect</td>
<td>I had worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect progressive (or 'continuous')</td>
<td>I had been working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In academic grammars, a distinction is often made between 'tense' (present or past) and 'aspect' (perfective and progressive). Tense shows time; aspect shows, for example, whether an event is seen as ongoing or completed at a particular time. In more practical books like this one, it is convenient to use 'tense' for all verb forms which show time.

The various uses of these six verb forms are covered in the following entries. Note in particular that the English present perfect (e.g. I have seen) is constructed in the same way as a tense in some other Western European languages (e.g. j'ai vu, ich habe gesehen, ho visto, jeg har set), but that it is not used in exactly the same ways (► 48.2).
Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

- galloped  regreted  44.3
- 'What did you do at eight o'clock yesterday evening?' 'I watched TV.'  45.2
- When I got up this morning the sun shone and the birds sang.  45.2
- When I was a child we were walking to school every day.  45.4
- She said she wasn't believing me.  45.5, 4
- Some people think that Shakespeare has travelled in Germany.  47.3
- Once upon a time a beautiful princess has fallen in love with a poor farmer.  48.1–48.2
- When has the accident happened?  48.2
- I know her for years.  52.1
- How long are you studying English?  52.1
- 'Why are you crying?' 'Granny has hit me.'  49.1
- The Chinese have invented paper.  49.1
- It's not as big as I have expected.  49.2
- I've only been knowing her for two days.  51.1
- Look at all the rose bushes I've been planting!  51.3
- This is the first time I heard her sing.  52.2
- During our conversation, I realised that we met before.  53.2
- I told her that I have finished.  53.2
- Alex Cary, who had worked for my father a few years ago, is now living in Greece.  53.2
- I had left a jacket to be cleaned. Is it ready yet?  53.3
- She told me that her father was ill since Christmas.  53.5
- When I opened the windows, I sat down.  54.1
- We were walking since sunrise, and we were very hungry.  55.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

44 simple past
45 past progressive
46 past form with present or future meaning
47 present perfect: basic information
48 present perfect or past?
49 present perfect or past: advanced points
50 present perfect progressive
51 present perfect simple or progressive?
52 present perfect or present?
53 past perfect: basic information
54 past perfect: advanced points
55 past perfect progressive
56 This is the first/last . . ., etc
44 simple past

This form is also called ‘past simple’.

1 forms (regular verbs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I worked</td>
<td>did I work?</td>
<td>I did not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you worked</td>
<td>did you work?</td>
<td>you did not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it worked</td>
<td>did he/she/it work?</td>
<td>he/she/it did not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc</td>
<td>etc</td>
<td>etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Contracted negatives (► 337): I didn’t work, you didn’t work, etc
- Negative questions (► 218): did I not work? or didn’t I work?, etc
- For the affirmative past forms of common irregular verbs, ► 1.
- Questions and negatives of irregular verbs are made in the same way as those of regular verbs (with did + infinitive).

For details of question structures, ► 216. For negatives, ► 217–221.
For passive forms (e.g. Work was done), ► 57.

2 pronunciation of -ed

The regular past ending -ed is pronounced as follows:
- /d/ after vowels and voiced consonants (except /d/):
  
  • /ɪd/, /bl/, /vl/, /zl/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/, /g/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/  
  tried /trɪd/  lived /lɪvd/  seemed /siːmd/  failed /feɪld/  
- /t/ after unvoiced consonants (except /t/):
  
  • /ʊt/, /p/, /ʃ/, /ʃ/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /k/  
  stopped /stɒpt/  passed /pæst/  laughed /luːft/  watched /wɒtʃt/  
  worked /wɜːkt/  
- /d/ after /d/ and /t/
  
  • ended /ˈendt/  started /ˈstɑːtɪd/  

For adjectives like aged, naked, ► 191.

3 spelling of regular affirmative past tense forms

Most regular verbs:  
add -ed  

- work → worked  
- stay → stayed  
- show → showed  
- wonder → wondered  
- visit → visited  
- gallop → galloped

Verbs ending in -e:  
add -d  

- hope → hoped  
- decide → decided
Past and Perfect Tenses

Verbs ending in one stressed vowel + one consonant (except w or y):

double the consonant and add -ed

shop → shopped
plan → planned
refer → referred
regret → regretted

But (last syllable not stressed):

offer → offered
visit → visited

Verbs ending in consonant + -y:

change y to i and add -ed

hurry → hurried
cry → cried
study → studied

But (vowel + -y):

play → played

Verbs ending in -c have ck in the past (e.g. picnic → picnicked).
In British English, -l is doubled in the past after one short vowel even if the vowel is not stressed: 'travel → travelled.'

4 use

We use the simple past for many kinds of past events: short, quickly finished actions and happenings, longer situations, and repeated events.

Daniel broke a window last night.
I spent all my childhood in Scotland.
Regularly every summer, Jessica fell in love.

The simple past is common in stories and descriptions of past events.

One day the Princess decided that she didn’t like staying at home all day,
so she told her father that she wanted to get a job . . .

The simple past is often used with words referring to finished times.

I saw Jack yesterday morning. He told me . . .

In general, the simple past tense is the normal one for talking about the past; we use it if we do not have a special reason for using one of the other tenses.

simple past with finished time expressions

One day, the Princess decided . . . I saw Jack yesterday.

For the simple past with a present or future meaning (e.g. It's time you went), ► 46.
For special uses in subordinate clauses, ► 231.
1 forms

\[ \text{was/were + -ing} \]

\[ \text{I was working.} \quad \text{Were you listening to me?} \quad \text{She was not trying.} \]

For details of question structures, ► 216. For negatives, ► 217–221.
For passive forms (e.g. Work was being done), ► 57.
For double letters in words like sitting, stopping, ► 347.

2 use: What were you doing at eight o’clock?

We use the past progressive to say that something was in progress (going on) around a particular past time.

‘What were you doing at eight o’clock yesterday evening?’ ‘I was watching TV.’
(not What did you do...? I watched TV.)
When I got up this morning the sun was shining, the birds were singing, ...
(not ... the sun shone, the birds sang...)
4 not used for repeated actions

The past progressive is not the normal tense for talking about repeated or habitual past actions. The simple past is usually used with this meaning.

\[ \text{I rang the bell six times. (not I was ringing the bell six times.)} \]
\[ \text{When I was a child we walked to school. (not . . . we were walking to school.)} \]

However, the past progressive is possible if the repeated actions form a ‘background’ for the main action.

\[ \text{At the time when it happened, I was travelling to New York a lot.} \]

5 non-progressive verbs: She said she believed

Some verbs are not often used in progressive forms (► 4).

\[ \text{She said she believed Joe was dying. (not She said she was believing . . .)} \]

6 used for shorter, temporary actions and situations

The past progressive, like other progressive forms (► 3), is used for temporary actions and situations. When we talk about longer, more permanent situations we use the simple past. Compare:

\[ \text{– It happened while I was living in Eastbourne last year.} \]
\[ \text{I lived in London for ten years while I was a child.} \]
\[ \text{– When I got home, water was running down the kitchen walls.} \]
\[ \text{When they first discovered the river, they thought it ran into the Atlantic.} \]

7 special uses

Because we often use the past progressive to talk about something that is a ‘background’, not the main ‘news’, we can make something seem less important by using this tense. Compare:

\[ \text{I had lunch with the President yesterday. (important piece of news)} \]
\[ \text{I was having lunch with the President yesterday, and she said . . . (as if there was nothing special for the speaker about lunching with the President)} \]

The past progressive is quite often used with verbs of saying; this gives more relative importance to the following verb – to what is said.

\[ \text{Jack was saying that he still can’t find a job.} \]

With always, continually and similar words, the past progressive can be used for things that happened repeatedly and unexpectedly or in an unplanned way (► 5).

\[ \text{Aunt Lucy was always turning up without warning and bringing us presents.} \]
\[ \text{I didn’t like him – he was continually borrowing money.} \]

For the ‘distancing’ use of past progressives (e.g. I was wondering whether you’d like to come out with me this evening), ► 311.
46 past verb form with present or future meaning

A past tense does not always have a past meaning. In some kinds of sentence we can use verbs like I had, you went or I was wondering to talk about the present or future.

1 after conjunctions, instead of would: If I paid now . . .

In most subordinate clauses (e.g. after if, supposing, wherever, what), we use past tenses (and not would . . .) to express ‘unreal’ or conditional ideas (► 231.6).

If I had the money now I’d buy a car.
If you caught the ten o’clock train tomorrow, you would be in Edinburgh by supper-time, unless the train was delayed, of course.
Supposing we didn’t go abroad next year?
Would you follow me wherever I went?
In a perfect world, you would be able to say exactly what you thought.
Ten o’clock – it’s time (that) you went home. (► 502)
Don’t come and see me today – I’d rather (that) you came tomorrow.

I wish (that) I had a better memory. (► 632.4)

2 distancing in questions, requests, etc: I wondered if . . .

We can make questions, requests and offers less direct (and so more polite) by using past tenses. (For more about ‘distancing’ of this kind, ► 311.) Common formulae are I wondered, I thought, I hoped, did you want. (► 311.1.)

I wondered if you were free this evening.
I thought you might like some flowers.
Did you want cream with your coffee, sir?
Past progressive forms (I was thinking/wondering/hoping, etc) make sentences even less direct. (► 311.2)
I was thinking about that idea of yours.
I was hoping we could have dinner together.

3 ‘past’ modals: could, might, would, should

The ‘past’ modal forms could, might, would and should usually have present or future reference; they are used as less direct, ‘distanced’ forms of can, may, will and shall. (► 311.4)

Could you help me for a moment? Would you come this way, please?
I think it might rain soon. Alice should be here soon.

4 past focus on continuing situations: It was such a nice place

If we are talking about the past, we often use past tenses even for things which are still true and situations which still exist.

Are you deaf? I asked how old you were.
I’m sorry we left Liverpool. It was such a nice place.
Do you remember that nice couple we met in Greece? They were German, weren’t they?
Past and Perfect Tenses

I got this job because I was a good driver.
James applied to join the police last week, but he wasn’t tall enough.

For more indirect speech examples, ► 259, 263.

47 present perfect: basic information

This entry deals with the simple present perfect. For the present perfect progressive, ► 50–51.

1 forms

**have/has + past participle**

I have broken my glasses. Have you finished? She hasn’t phoned.
In older English, some present perfect forms were made with be, not have (e.g. Winter is come). This does not normally happen in modern English (for exceptions, ► 66, 466).

For details of question structures, ► 216. For negatives, ► 217–221.
For passive forms (e.g. The work has been done), ► 57.

2 other languages

In some other languages there are verb forms which are constructed like the English present perfect (compare English I have worked, French j’ai travaillé, German ich habe gearbeitet, Italian ho lavorato, Spanish he trabajado). Note that the English present perfect is used rather differently from most of these.

3 finished events connected with the present

We use the present perfect especially to say that a finished action or event is connected with the present in some way. If we say that something has happened, we are thinking about the past and the present at the same time, for example if we are giving news.

I can’t go skiing because I have broken my leg.
A present-perfect sentence often corresponds to a present-tense sentence expressing the same facts.

I’ve broken my leg. → My leg is broken now.
Some fool has let the cat in. → The cat is in.
Utopia has invaded Fantasia. → Utopia is at war with Fantasia.
Emily has had a baby. → Emily now has a baby.
Our dog has died. → Our dog is dead.
Have you read the Bible? → Do you know the Bible?
All the wars in history have taught us nothing. → We know nothing.
The present perfect is often used to express the idea of completion or achievement.

At last! I’ve finished! Have you done all the housework?
We do not use the present perfect if we are not thinking about the present (► 48.1). Compare:

I’ve travelled in Africa a lot. (= I know Africa.)
Some people think that Shakespeare travelled a lot in Germany.

(Note Some people think that Shakespeare has travelled . . .)
When we talk about finished events with words that mean 'at some/any time up to now' (like ever, before, never, yet, recently, lately, already), we normally use the present perfect in British English. (For a note on American usage, ► 49.7.)

Have you ever seen a ghost? She's never said 'sorry' in her life.
I'm sure we've met before. Has Dan phoned yet?
We haven't seen Beth recently.
'Could you clean the car?' 'I've already done it.'

We can use the present perfect to say that something has happened several times up to the present.

I've written six emails since lunchtime.
Adverbs of frequency like often, sometimes, occasionally are common with the present perfect.

How often have you been in love in your life?
I've sometimes thought of moving to Australia.

To talk about actions and situations that have continued up to the present, both the simple present perfect and the present perfect progressive are possible (depending on the kind of verb and the exact meaning. For details, ► 51.

I've known her for years. (not I know her for years. ► 52.1)
I've been thinking about you all day.

For present perfect tenses in clauses referring to the future (e.g. I'll take a rest when I've finished cleaning the kitchen), ► 231.3.
48 present perfect or past?

1 not thinking about the present

We use the present perfect if we are thinking about the past and present together. We do not use the present perfect if we are not thinking about the present. Compare:

- My sister has learnt French. (She can speak French now.)
- Shakespeare probably learnt Italian. (not Shakespeare has probably learnt Italian.)
- We've studied enough to pass the exam. (The exam is still to come.)
- We studied enough to pass the exam. (The exam is over.)
- Anna and Daniel have got married! (news)
- My parents got married in Canada.

We do not use the present perfect in story-telling.

Once upon a time a beautiful princess fell in love with a poor farmer. (not . . . has fallen in love . . .)

thinking about the past and present together: present perfect

My sister has learnt French. (= She can speak French now.)

only thinking about the past: simple past

Shakespeare probably learnt Italian.
2 finished-time words: present perfect not used

We do not often use the present perfect with words that refer to a completely finished period of time, like yesterday, last week, then, when, three years ago, in 1970. This is because the present perfect focuses on the present, and words like these focus on the past, so they contradict each other. Compare:

- Have you seen Lucy anywhere?
  I saw Lucy yesterday. (NOT I have seen Lucy yesterday.)
- Tom has hurt his leg; he can't walk.
  Tom hurt his leg last week. (NOT Tom has hurt his leg last week.)
- What have you done with the car keys? I can't find them.
  What did you do then? (NOT What have you done then?)
- My brother has had an accident. He's in hospital.
  When did the accident happen? (NOT When has the accident happened?)
- All my friends have moved to London.
  Sam moved three years ago. (NOT Sam has moved three years ago.)

But with words that mean 'at some/any time up to now' (like ever, before, never, yet, recently, already), we normally use the present perfect (► 47.4).

Have you ever been to Chicago?
I've seen this film before.

For tenses with just and just now, ► 503.

3 time not mentioned

We use the present perfect when we are thinking of a period of 'time up to now', even if we do not mention it.

Have you seen 'Romeo and Juliet'? (= Have you ever seen it? or Have you seen the present production?)
You've done a lot for me. (. . . up to now)

On the other hand, we do not use the present perfect when we are thinking of a particular finished time, even if we do not mention it.

Did you see 'Romeo and Juliet'? (It was on TV last night.)
My grandfather did a lot for me. (. . . when he was alive)

4 news and details

We normally use the present perfect to announce news.

Have you heard? Andy has won a big prize!

But when we give more details, we usually change to a past tense.

Joe has passed his exam! He got 87%.

There has been a plane crash near Bristol. Witnesses say that there was an explosion as the aircraft was taking off . . .

The Prime Minister has had talks with President Kumani. During a three-hour meeting, they discussed the economic situation, and agreed on the need for closer trade links between the two countries.
49 present perfect or past: advanced points

1 causes and origins: Who gave you that?

We normally use the present perfect when we are thinking about past events together with their present results (► 47.3).

I can’t come to your party because I’ve broken my leg.

However, we usually prefer a past tense when we identify the person, thing or circumstances responsible for a present situation (because we are thinking about the past cause, not the present result). Compare:

- Look what Jack’s given me! (thinking about the gift)
  Who gave you that? (thinking about the past action of giving)
- Somebody has spilt coffee on the carpet.
  Who spilt all that coffee on the carpet?

Other examples:

‘Why are you crying?’ ‘Granny hit me. (not . . . Granny has hit me.)’
I’m glad you were born.
How did you get that bruise?
That’s a nice picture. Did you paint it yourself?
Some people think that ‘Pericles’ was not written by Shakespeare.
The Chinese invented paper. (not The Chinese have invented paper.)
2 expectation and reality: You’re older than I thought.

We use a past tense to refer to a belief that has just been shown to be true or false.

- It’s not as big as I expected. (not as I have expected.)
- You’re older than I thought. (not than I have thought.)
- But you promised ...! (not But you have promised ...)
- I knew you would help me! (not I have known ...)

3 today, this week, etc

With definite expressions of ‘time up to now’ (e.g. today, this week), perfect and past tenses are often both possible. We prefer the present perfect if we are thinking of the whole period up to now. We prefer the simple past if we are thinking of a finished part of that period. Compare:

- I haven’t seen Jack this week. (the whole week up to now – present perfect more natural)
- I saw Jack this week, and he said . . . (earlier in the week – simple past more natural)
- Has Anna phoned today? (meaning ‘any time up to now’)
- Did Anna phone today? (meaning ‘earlier, when the call was expected’)

4 always, ever and never

In an informal style, a simple past tense is sometimes possible with always, ever and never when they refer to ‘time up to now’.

- I always knew I could trust you. (or I’ve always known . . .)
- Did you ever see anything like that before? (or Have you ever seen . . . ?)

5 present perfect with past time expressions

Grammars usually say that the present perfect cannot be used together with expressions of finished time – we can say I have seen him or I saw him yesterday, but not I have seen him yesterday. In fact, such structures are unusual but not impossible (though learners should avoid them). They often occur in brief news items, where space is limited and there is pressure to announce the news and give the details in the same clause.

Here are some real examples taken from news broadcasts, newspaper articles, advertisements, letters and conversations.

Police have arrested more than 900 suspected drugs traffickers in raids throughout the country on Friday and Saturday.

A 24-year-old soldier has been killed in a road accident last night.

The horse’s trainer has had a winner here yesterday.

... indicating that the geological activity has taken place a very long time ago.

Perhaps what has helped us to win eight major awards last year alone . . .

I have stocked the infirmary cupboard only yesterday.

I am pleased to confirm that Lloyds Bank . . . has opened a Home Loan account for you on 19th May.
6 simple past for news

Recently, some British newspapers and online news channels have started regularly using the simple past for smaller news announcements – probably to save space. Some authentic examples:

*An unnamed businessman was shot dead by terrorists...*
*A woman was jailed for six months after taking a baby boy from his mother.*
*Driving wind and rain forced 600 out of 2,500 teenagers to abandon the annual ‘Ten Tor’ trek across Dartmoor.*

7 American English

In American English the simple past is often used to give news.

*Did you hear? Switzerland declared war on Mongolia!* (BrE Have you heard? Switzerland has declared war...)

*Uh, honey, I lost the keys (BrE I've lost the keys).*

*Lucy just called. (BrE Lucy has just called.)*

In American English, it is also possible to use the simple past with indefinite past-time adverbs like *already, yet, ever* and *before.*

*Did you eat already? or Have you eaten already? (BrE Have you eaten already?)*

*I didn’t call Bobby yet or I haven’t called... (BrE I haven’t called...)*

For more about tenses with *just,* ► 503. For more about British-American differences, ► 319.

8 bad rules (1): ‘definite time’

Grammars sometimes say that the simple past, not the present perfect, is used with expressions referring to ‘definite time’. This is confusing – the present perfect is not often used with *finished* time expressions, but it actually is very common with *definite* time expressions. Compare:

*I've lived here for exactly three years, seven months and two days.* (present perfect with very definite time-reference)

*Once upon a time a little girl lived with her mother in a lonely house in a dark forest.* (simple past with very indefinite time-reference)

9 bad rules (2): ‘finished actions’

Note also that the choice between simple present perfect and simple past does not depend on whether we are talking about finished *actions,* as learners’ grammars sometimes suggest (though it can depend on whether we are talking about finished *time periods*). Compare:

*That cat has eaten your supper.* (finished action – present perfect)

*I ate the last of the eggs this morning.* (finished action – simple past)

10 bad rules (3): ‘recent actions’

The choice also does not depend directly on whether actions and events are recent. Recent events are more likely to be ‘news’, and we are more likely to be concerned about their present results, so many present perfect sentences are in fact about recent events. But it is possible to use the present perfect to talk about things that happened a long time ago. Compare:

*The French revolution has influenced every popular radical movement in Europe since 1800.* (200-year-old event – present perfect)

*Anna phoned five minutes ago.* (very recent event – simple past)
The difference between the present perfect and the simple past is not always very clear-cut. It often depends on our 'focus': are we thinking mostly about the present relevance of a past event, or about the past details? In some cases both present perfect and past are possible with little difference of meaning.

_We (have) heard that you have rooms to let._

_Has Mark phoned? or Did Mark phone?_

_I've given / I gave your old radio to Philip._

### 50 present perfect progressive

#### 1 forms

*have/has been + -ing*

- I have been thinking about you.
- Have you been waiting long?
- I haven't been studying very well recently.

For double letters in words like _sitting, stopping_, ► 347.

#### 2 continuing actions and situations

We use the present perfect progressive to look back over actions and situations which started in the past and are still going on.

- I've been working very hard recently.
- It's been raining all day. I'm tired of it.
- Food prices have been going up steadily all this year.

We often use the present perfect progressive to talk about people’s use of their time up to the present.

- ‘Hi! What have you been doing with yourself?’ ‘I've been trying to write a novel.’
- That kid has been watching TV non-stop since breakfast.

**present perfect progressive: actions and situations which started in the past and are still going on**

*House prices have been going up steadily this year.*

| PAST       | €500,000 | €560,000 | €570,000 | NOW  | €580,000 |
3 actions and situations that have just stopped
We also use the present perfect progressive for actions and situations which have just stopped, but which have present results.

'You look hot.' 'Yes, I've been running.'
Sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?
I must just go and wash. I've been gardening.

4 repeated actions
We can use the present perfect progressive not only for continuous activity, but also for repeated activity.

People have been phoning me all day.
I've been waking up in the night a lot. I think I'll see the doctor.

5 time expressions: recently, lately, this week, since . . ., for . . ., etc
We often use the present perfect progressive with words that refer to a period of time continuing up to now, like recently, lately, this week, since January, for the last three days.

The company has been losing money recently.
Jack's been walking in Scotland all this week.
I've been doing a new job since January.
It's been raining for the last three days.

For the difference between since and for, ► 469.

6 not used with finished time expressions
We cannot use the present perfect progressive with expressions that refer to a finished period of time.

'You look tired.' 'Yes. I was cycling from ten this morning until five o'clock.'
(not . . . I've been cycling from ten this morning until five o'clock.)

7 how long?
We use the present perfect progressive, not the present progressive, to talk about how long something has been happening.

How long have you been studying English? (NOT How long are you studying . . . ?)
I've been working here for two months. (NOT I'm working here for two months.)

For details, ► 52.

8 present perfect progressive and (simple) present perfect
In some cases, we can also use the simple present perfect to talk about actions and situations continuing up to the present. Compare:

How long have you been working with her?
How long have you known her?
That man has been standing on the corner all day.
For 900 years the castle has stood on the hill above the village.

For the differences, ► 51.
9 a bad rule
Grammars sometimes simply say that the present perfect progressive is used ‘for actions or situations that started in the past and are still going on’. This is true, but incomplete and unhelpful. To talk about actions and situations that started in the past and are still going on, we normally use present tenses (everything that is going on now started in the past!). The difference is that we use the present perfect progressive when we are looking back over something that is still going on – for example when we say how long it has lasted. Compare:
- It’s raining.
  It’s been raining all day.
- I’m working very hard at the moment.
  I’ve been working very hard recently.

51 present perfect simple or progressive?

1 non-progressive verbs
Some verbs are not used in progressive forms (► 4), even if the meaning is one for which a progressive form is more suitable. Common examples are be, have and know.

Jack’s been ill all week. (Not Jack’s been being ill . . .)
She’s had a cold since Monday. (Not She’s been having a cold . . .)
I’ve only known her for two days. (Not I’ve only been knowing her . . .)

2 temporary or permanent
We use progressive forms mostly for shorter, temporary actions and situations. When we talk about longer-lasting or permanent situations we often prefer the simple present perfect. Compare:
- I’ve been playing the piano all afternoon, and I’m really tired.
  My grandmother has played the piano since she was a little girl.
- I haven’t been working very well recently.
  He hasn’t worked for years.
- I’ve been living at Emma’s place for the last month.
  My parents have lived in Bristol all their lives.
Progressive and simple tenses are sometimes both possible, with a slight difference of emphasis.

It’s been raining / It’s rained steadily since last Saturday.
Harry has been working / has worked in the same job for thirty years.
We generally use the progressive to talk about continuous change or development, even if this is permanent.

Scientists believe that the universe has been expanding steadily since the beginning of time.

3 how much? how often? simple present perfect
We use the simple present perfect to say how much we have done, or how often we have done something. Compare:
- I’ve been planting rose bushes all afternoon.
  Look at all the rose bushes I’ve planted! (Not . . . I’ve been planting . . .)
Past and Perfect Tenses

Section 5

We've been painting the house.  
We've painted two rooms since lunchtime. (not We've been painting two  
rooms since lunchtime.)  
I've been playing a lot of tennis recently.  
I've played tennis three times this week.

52 present perfect or present?

1 how long? present perfect  
We use a present perfect to say how long a situation or action has continued up to now. Compare:  
- It's raining again.  
  It's been raining since Christmas. (not It's raining since Christmas.)  
- Are you learning English?  
  How long have you been learning? (not How long are you learning?)  
- 'I hear you're working at Smiths.' 'Yes, I've been working there for a month.'  
  (not I'm working there for . . .)  
- I know her well.  
  I've known her for years. (not I know her for years.)  
- My brother's a doctor.  
  How long has he been a doctor? (not How long is he a doctor?)

Compare also:  
How long are you here for? (= until when; when are you leaving?)  
How long have you been here for? (= since when; when did you arrive?)

For the difference between simple and progressive forms, ► 51.  
For the difference between since and for, ► 469. For tenses with since, ► 579.

2 This is the first time, etc  
We use a simple present perfect after this is the first time that . . . , it's the second . . . that . . . , and similar structures (► 56).  
This is the first time that I've heard her sing. (not This is the first time that I hear her sing.)  
It's the fifth time you've asked me the same question.  
This is only the second opera I've ever seen.

For present perfect and simple present passives with similar meanings (e.g. The shop has been / is closed),  
► 66.

53 past perfect: basic information

This entry deals with the simple past perfect. For the past perfect progressive,  
► 55.

1 forms  
had + past participle  
I had forgotten. Where had she been? It hadn't rained for weeks.

For passives (e.g. The work had been done), ► 57.
meaning and use: earlier past

The basic meaning of the past perfect is ‘earlier past’. A common use is to ‘go back’ for a moment when we are already talking about the past, to make it clear that something had already happened at the time we are talking about.

_During our conversation, I realised that we had met before._

(not I realised that we met before)

_When I arrived at the party, Lucy had already gone home._

(not Lucy already went home)

The past perfect is common after past verbs of saying and thinking, to talk about things that had happened before the saying or thinking took place.

*I told her that I had finished._

(not I finished)

*I wondered who had left the door open._

*I thought I had sent the money a week before._

past perfect: we are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past

When I arrived at the party, Lucy had already gone home.

past perfect: not used

The past perfect is normally only used as described above. The past perfect is not used simply to say that something happened some time ago, or to give a past reason for a present situation.

_Alex Cary, who worked for my father in the 1980s, is now living in Greece._

(not Alex Cary, who had worked for my father)

_I left a jacket to be cleaned. Is it ready yet?_ (not I had left a jacket)

unreal events: if, etc

After _if_ (► 241), _wish_ (► 632) and _would rather_ (► 566), the past perfect can be used to talk about past events that did not happen.

*If I had gone to university I would have studied medicine.*

*I wish you had told me the truth._

*I'd rather she had asked me before borrowing the car._

how long? past perfect, not simple past

We use a past perfect, not a simple past, to say how long something had continued up to a past moment. A simple past perfect is used with non-progressive verbs like _be, have_ and _know._

_She told me that her father had been ill since Christmas._

(not that her father was ill since Christmas)

_I was sorry to sell my car. I had had it since College._

(not I had it since College)
Past and Perfect Tenses

When they got married, they had known each other for 15 years. (not . . . they knew each other for 15 years.)
With most other verbs, we use the past perfect progressive for this meaning (► 55).

For the difference between since and for, ► 469.

54 past perfect: advanced points

1 past perfect or simple past with after, as soon as, etc

We can use time conjunctions (e.g. after, as soon as, when, once) to talk about two actions or events that happened one after the other. Usually the past perfect is not necessary in these cases, because we are not ‘going back’ from the time that we are mainly talking about, but simply moving forward from one event to the next.

After it got dark, we came back inside.
As soon as Megan arrived, we sat down to eat.
Once it stopped raining, we started the game again.

However, we can use the past perfect with after, as soon as, etc to emphasise that the first action is separate, independent of the second, completed before the second started.

She didn’t feel the same after her dog had died.
As soon as he had finished his exams, he went to Paris for a month.

This use of the past perfect is especially common with when. (When has several meanings, so we often have to show the exact time relations by the verb form.)

Compare:

- When I had opened the windows, I sat down and had a cup of tea. (not When I opened the windows, I sat down . . .: the first action was quite separate from the second.)
- When I opened the window, the cat jumped out. (More natural than When I had opened the window, . . .: one action caused the other.)
- When I had answered my emails, I did some gardening. (not When I answered my emails, I did some gardening.)
- When I wrote to her, she came at once.

2 unrealised hopes and wishes; things that did not happen

The past perfect can be used to express an unrealised hope, wish, etc. Had is usually stressed in this case.

I HAD hoped we would leave tomorrow, but it won’t be possible.
He HAD intended to make a cake, but he ran out of time.

3 past perfect with It was the first/second . . . that . . .

We generally use a past perfect after it was the first/second . . . that . . . and similar structures (► 56).

- It was the first time that I had heard her sing.
- It was the fifth time she had asked the same question.
- It was only the second opera I had seen in my life.

For the past perfect with before (e.g. He went out before I had finished my sentence), ► 250.3.
1 forms

had been + -ing

I had been working. Where had she been staying?
They hadn't been listening.

For double letters in words like sitting, stopping, ▶ 347.

2 use

We use the past perfect progressive to talk about actions or situations which had continued up to the past moment that we are thinking about, or shortly before it.

At that time we had been living in the caravan for about six months.
When I found Emily, I could see that she had been crying.
I went to the doctor because I had been sleeping badly.

past perfect progressive: actions or situations which had continued up to the past moment that we are thinking about, or shortly before it

I went to the doctor because I had been sleeping badly.

3 how long? past perfect progressive, not past progressive

We use a past perfect progressive, not a past progressive, to say how long something had been happening up to a past moment.

We'd been walking since sunrise, and we were hungry. (not We were walking since sunrise...)
When she arrived, she had been travelling for twenty hours. (not...she was travelling...)

For the difference between since and for, ▶ 469.
4 **progressive and simple**: differences

Progressive forms are mostly used to talk about more temporary actions and situations. When we talk about longer-lasting or permanent situations we prefer simple forms. Compare:

- *My legs were stiff because I had been standing still for a long time.*
- *The tree that blew down had stood there for 300 years.*

Progressive forms generally emphasise the continuation of an activity; we use simple tenses to emphasise the idea of completion. Compare:

- *I had been reading science fiction, and my mind was full of strange images.*
- *I had read all my magazines, and was beginning to get bored.*

Some verbs are not normally used in progressive forms (► 4), even if the meaning is one for which a progressive form would be more suitable.

- *I hadn’t known her for very long when we got married. (Not *I hadn’t been knowing her...)*

56 **This is the first/last . . ., etc**

1 **This is the first time, etc**

We use the present perfect in sentences constructed with this/it/that is the first/second/third/only/best/worst, etc.

- *This is the first time that I’ve heard her sing.* (Not *This is the first time that I hear her sing.*)
- *This is the first time I’ve seen a volcano.* (Not *This is my first time to see a volcano.*)
- *This is the fifth time you’ve asked me the same question.* (Not *This is the fifth time you ask...*)

When we talk about the past, we generally use the past perfect in these structures.

- *It was the third time he had been in love that year.*

2 **tenses with This is the last . . ., etc**

Present (simple or progressive) and future tenses are both possible with *This is the last . . .* and similar structures.

- *This is the last time I pay / I’m paying for you.* (Or *This is the last time I’ll pay for you.*)
- *That’s the last email he gets / he’s getting from me.* (Or *That’s the last email he’ll get from me.*)
- *This is the last thing I’m going to say to you.*
Section 6 Passives

INTRODUCTION

active and passive structures

Compare:
- They built this house in 1486. (active)
  This house was built in 1486. (passive)
- Most Austrians speak German. (active)
  German is spoken by most Austrians. (passive)
- A friend of ours is repairing the roof. (active)
  The roof is being repaired by a friend of ours. (passive)
- This book will change your life. (active)
  Your life will be changed by this book. (passive)

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it. If we want A (the 'doer' or 'agent') to be the subject, we use an active verb: built, speak, is repairing, will change. If we want B (the 'receiver' of the action) to be the subject (► 67), we use a passive verb: was built, is spoken, is being repaired, will be changed.

The object of an active verb corresponds to the subject of a passive verb.

| Active: They built [this house] in 1486. |
| Passive: [This house] was built in 1486. |

In most cases, the subject of an active verb is not expressed in the corresponding passive sentence. If it does have to be expressed, this usually happens in an expression with by; the noun is called the 'agent' (► 58).

This house was built in 1486 by Sir John Latton.

meaning and grammar

Meaning and grammar do not always go together. Not all active verbs have 'active' meanings; for instance, if you say that somebody receives something or suffers, you are really saying that something is done to him/her.

Some English active verbs might be translated by passive or reflexive verbs in certain other languages: e.g. My shoes are wearing out; She is sitting; Suddenly the door opened. And some English passives might be translated by active or reflexive verbs: e.g. I was born in 1956; English is spoken here.
Some verbs can be used in both active and passive forms with similar meanings: for example to worry / to be worried; to drown / to be drowned (► 438).
Sometimes active and passive infinitives can be used with very similar meanings: for example There's a lot of work to do / to be done (for details, ► 106).
And some active verbs can have both active and passive meanings, for example She opened the door / The door opened (► 9).

For more about reflexive verbs, ► 178. For active and passive past participles, ► 96.3–96.4.
For -ing forms with passive meanings after need and want (e.g. My watch needs cleaning), ► 100.
For more about the way information is organised in sentences, ► 267.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

✗ I was very interesting in the lesson. ► 96.3
✗ She has put in prison for life. ► 57.4
✗ Tact is lacked by your mother. ► 57.3
✗ He was shot by a rifle. ► 58
✗ Our house got built in 1827. ► 60
✗ The children were explained the problem. ► 61
✗ We were suggested a meeting place. ► 61
✗ I don’t like to be shouted. ► 62.1
✗ He was thrown stones at. ► 62.2
✗ She was broken her mirror. ► 62.2
✗ That she was a spy was thought by nobody. ► 63.1
✗ It is expected to make a profit this year. ► 63.2
✗ They say his company to be in trouble. ► 64.2
✗ Doris was wanted to be the manager. ► 64.6
✗ Emily telling everybody what to do annoyed me. ► 67.4

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

57 passive structures and verb forms
58 by + agent
59 passive modal structures:
   It can be done tomorrow.
60 get as passive auxiliary:
   He got caught.
61 verbs with two objects in the passive
62 verbs with prepositions in the passive
63 It was thought that . . .
64 He is believed to be . . .
65 He was considered a genius.
66 My suitcase is packed.
67 When do we use passive structures?
57 passive structures and verb forms

1 passive verb forms

We normally make passive forms of a verb by using tenses of the auxiliary be followed by the past participle (= pp) of the verb. (For get as a passive auxiliary, ► 60.) Here is a list of all the passive forms of an ordinary English verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple present</td>
<td>am/are/is + pp</td>
<td>English is spoken here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>am/are/is being + pp</td>
<td>Excuse the mess; the house is being painted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>have/has been + pp</td>
<td>Has Emily been told?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(simple) future</td>
<td>will be + pp</td>
<td>You’ll be told soon enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect</td>
<td>will have been + pp</td>
<td>Everything will have been done by Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple past</td>
<td>was/were + pp</td>
<td>I wasn’t invited, but I went.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past progressive</td>
<td>was/were being + pp</td>
<td>I felt as if I was being watched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>had been + pp</td>
<td>I knew why I had been chosen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future progressive passives (will be being + pp) and perfect progressive passives (has been being + pp) are unusual.

Examples of passive infinitives: (to) be taken; (to) have been invited.

Examples of passive -ing forms: being watched; having been invited.

Note that verbs made up of more than one word (► 12−13) can have passive forms if they are transitive.

The furniture was broken up for firewood.
She likes being looked at. I need to be taken care of.
He hates being made a fool of.

For more about structures with prepositions at the ends of clauses, ► 209.

2 use of tenses

Passive tenses are normally used in the same way as active tenses. So for example the present progressive passive is used, like the present progressive active, to talk about things that are going on at the time of speaking (► 32).

The papers are being prepared now.
The secretary is preparing the papers now.

And the present perfect passive can be used, like the present perfect active, to talk about finished actions with present consequences (► 47).

Alex has been arrested! The police have arrested Alex!

3 verbs not used in the passive

Not all verbs can have passive forms. Passive structures are impossible with intransitive verbs (► 7.2) like die or arrive, which cannot have objects, because there is nothing to become the subject of a passive sentence. Some transitive verbs, too, are seldom used in the passive. Most of these are ‘stative verbs’ (verbs which refer to states, not actions). Examples are fit, have, lack, resemble, suit.

They have a nice house. (but not A nice house is had by them.)
My shoes don’t fit me. (but not *I’m not fitted by my shoes.*)

Sylvia resembles a Greek goddess. (but not *A Greek goddess is resembled by Sylvia.*)

Your mother lacks tact. (but not *Tact is lacked by your mother.*)

She was having a bath. (but not *A bath was being had by her.*)

4 confusing forms

Students often confuse active and passive verb forms in English. Typical mistakes:

1. We are write to each other in English.
2. The play performed in the evening.

Mistakes like these are not surprising, because:

1. Be is used in both passive verb forms and active progressive tenses.
2. Past participles are used in both passive verb forms and active perfect tenses.

Compare:

- He was calling. (active - past progressive)
- He was called. (passive - simple past)
- He has called. (active - present perfect)

For active verb forms, ➔ 2.

58 by + agent

In a passive clause, we usually use *by* to introduce the agent – the person or thing that does the action, or that causes what happens. (Note, however, that agents are mentioned in only about 20 per cent of passive clauses.)

All the trouble was caused by your mother.

These carpets are made by children who work twelve hours a day.

Some past participles can be more like adjectives than verbs (➔ 96); for example shocked, worried, frightened. After these, we often use other prepositions instead of *by*. (And such structures are not really passives, but examples of *be + adjective.*)

I was shocked at/ by your attitude.

We were worried about/ by her silence.

Are you frightened of spiders?

With is used when we talk about an instrument which is used by an agent to do an action (➔ 416).

He was shot (by the policeman) with a rifle.
59 passive modal structures: *It can be done tomorrow.*

Modal structures can be passivised.

- *We can do it tomorrow.* \(\rightarrow\) *It can be done tomorrow.*
- *They may close the hospital.* \(\rightarrow\) *The hospital may be closed.*

An interesting, rather complicated point about modal verbs is that their meaning usually 'spreads over' a whole clause. This means that one can change a modal structure from active to passive, for example, without affecting the meaning very much. Compare:

- *A child could understand his theory.*
  *His theory could be understood by a child.*
- *You shouldn't put adverbs between the verb and the object.*
  *Adverbs shouldn't be put between the verb and the object.*
- *Dogs may chase cats.*
  *Cats may get chased by dogs.*

With most other verbs that are followed by infinitives, their meaning is attached to the subject, so that a change from active to passive changes the sense of the sentence completely. Compare:

- *Dogs like to chase cats.*
  *Cats like to be chased by dogs.* (different and – of course – untrue)
- *Dan wants to phone Anna.*
  *Anna wants to be phoned by Dan.* (not the same meaning)

60 get as passive auxiliary: *He got caught.*

*Get + past participle* can be used to make passive structures in the same way as *be + past participle*. This structure is mostly used in an informal style. It is often used to talk about events that happen by accident, unexpectedly, or outside one's control, and that have good or bad consequences.

- *I get paid on Fridays.*
  *She's always getting invited to parties.*
- *My watch got broken while I was playing with the children.*
  *He got caught by the police speeding through the town centre.*

The passive with *be* is preferred for longer, more deliberate, planned actions.

- *The Emperor Charlemagne was crowned in the year 800.* (It would be strange to say Charlemagne got crowned . . .)
- *The new school will be opened by the Prime Minister on May 25th.*
  *Our house was built in 1827.*

61 verbs with two objects in the passive

Many verbs, such as *give, send, show, lend, pay, promise, refuse, tell, offer*, can be followed by two objects, an 'indirect object' and a 'direct object'. These usually refer to a person (indirect object) and a thing (direct object). Two structures are possible.

A. *verb + indirect object + direct object*

*She gave her sister the car.*
Passives

I had already shown the police officer Sam’s photo.

B. verb + direct object + preposition + indirect object

She gave the car to her sister.
I had already shown Sam’s photo to the police officer.

Both of these structures can be made passive.

A. indirect object becomes subject of passive verb

Her sister was given the car.
The police officer had already been shown Sam’s photo.

B. direct object becomes subject of passive verb

The car was given to her sister.
Sam’s photo had already been shown to the police officer

The choice between the two passive structures may depend on what has been said before, or on what needs to be put last in the sentence (► 67.2, 67.4).
Structure A (e.g. Her sister was given the car) is the more common of the two.

More examples:
I’ve just been sent a whole lot of information.
You were lent ten thousand pounds last year.
The visitors were shown a collection of old manuscripts.
They are being paid a lot of money for doing very little.
He was refused a visa because he had been in prison.
We will never be told the real truth.
How much have you been offered?

In structure B (e.g. The car was given to her sister), prepositions are sometimes dropped before indirect object pronouns.

This watch was given (to) me by my father.

Explain (► 459) and suggest (► 598) cannot be used in structure A.

The problem was explained to the children. (but not The children were explained the problem.)

A meeting place was suggested to us. (but not We were suggested a meeting place.)

Note that prepositional phrases like ‘to the police officer’ are not called ‘indirect objects’ in all grammars.

For more details of verbs with two objects, ► 8.

62 verbs with prepositions in the passive

1 The plan has been looked at carefully.

The objects of prepositional verbs can become subjects in passive structures.
We have looked at the plan carefully. ⇒ The plan has been looked at carefully.
Nobody listens to her. ⇒ She is never listened to.
Somebody has paid for your meal. ⇒ Your meal has been paid for.

Note the word order. The preposition cannot be dropped.
I don’t like to be shouted at. (not I don’t like to be shouted.)

For more about prepositions at the ends of clauses, ► 209.
2 Stones were thrown at him.

If there is already a direct object, the second object (after the preposition) cannot become a passive subject.

- They threw stones at him. → Stones were thrown at him.
- They stole a bicycle from him. → A bicycle was stolen from him.
- They poured water on us. → Water was poured on us.

Note that possessive nouns or pronouns cannot become passive subjects, either.

- They called Mr Archer's name. → Mr Archer's name was called.
- I broke her mirror. → Her mirror was broken.

3 give, send, etc

Verbs like give, send, lend can have two objects with no preposition (e.g. They gave him a gold watch). For the passive of this structure (e.g. He was given a gold watch, A gold watch was given to him), ► 61.

For structures with have + object + past participle (e.g. We had water poured on us), ► 109, 267.3.

63 It was thought that . . .

1 clause objects: Nobody thought that she was a spy.

Some sentences have clauses as their objects. These cannot normally become the subjects of passive sentences.

- Nobody thought that she was a spy. (but not That she was a spy was thought by nobody.)
- We felt that he was the right man for the job. (but not That he was . . . was felt.)
- The newspapers say that his company is in trouble. (but not That his company is in trouble is said . . .)

However, passive structures are often possible with preparatory it (► 268).

- It was thought that she was a spy.
- It was felt that he was the right man for the job.
- It is said that his company is in trouble.

2 infinitive objects: They decided to . . .

A few verbs that are followed by infinitives (for example decide, agree) can also be used in passive structures beginning with it.

- They decided to meet at twelve. → It was decided to meet at twelve.
- We agreed to open a new branch. → It was agreed to open a new branch.

However, most verbs cannot be used in this way.

NOT It is started to make a profit. OR It is not expected to rain today.
64 He is believed to be . . .

1 I was asked to send . . .

Many verbs can be followed by object + infinitive (► 98).

He asked me to send a stamped addressed envelope.
We chose Felicity to be the Carnival Queen.

In most cases, these structures can be made passive.

I was asked to send a stamped addressed envelope.
Felicity was chosen to be the Carnival Queen.
We were told not to come back.
They are allowed to visit Harry once a week.

2 He is believed to be dangerous.

With verbs like think, feel, believe, know, etc, the object + infinitive structure is rather formal and often unusual.

They believe him to be dangerous. (more usual: They believe that he . . .)
However, the passive structure (e.g. He is believed to be . . .) is common, and often occurs in news reports.

He is believed to be dangerous.
Moriarty is thought to be in Switzerland.
She is known to have been married before.
It is considered to be the finest cathedral in Scotland.

Note that with say, the infinitive structure is only possible in the passive.

His company is said to be in trouble.
(BUT NOT They say his company to be in trouble.)

3 hear, see, make and help

These verbs can be followed, in active structures, by object + infinitive without to (► 91). In passive structures to-infinitives are used. Compare:

- I saw him come out of the house.
  He was seen to come out of the house.
- They made him tell them everything.
  He was made to tell them everything.
- They helped him (to) get out of the country.
  He was helped to get out of the country.

4 preparatory there

With some verbs (e.g. say, think, feel, report, presume, understand), the passive structure is possible with there as a ‘preparatory subject’.

There are thought to be more than 3,000 different languages in the world.
(= It is thought that there are . . .)
There was said to be disagreement between Ministers.

5 perfect, progressive and passive infinitives

A passive verb can be followed by a perfect, progressive or passive infinitive.

He is believed to have crossed the frontier last night.
I was told to be waiting outside the station at six o’clock.
The hostages are expected to be released today.

→
6 exceptions: wanting and liking

Verbs that refer to wanting, liking and similar ideas cannot usually be used in passive structures with infinitives after them.

*Everybody wanted Doris to be the manager.* (But not *Doris was wanted to be the manager.*)

*We like our staff to say what they think.* (But not *Our staff are liked to say what they think.*)

65 He was considered a genius.

After some verbs the direct object can be followed by an 'object complement' – a noun or adjective which describes or classifies the object.

*Queen Victoria considered him a genius.*
*They elected Mrs Sanderson President.*
*We all regarded Kathy as an expert.*
*Most people saw him as a sort of clown.*
*The other children called her stupid.*
*You've made the house beautiful.*

In passive clauses these are 'subject complements'; they come after the verb.

*He was considered a genius by Queen Victoria.*
*Mrs Sanderson was elected President.*
*Kathy was regarded as an expert.*
*He was seen as a sort of clown.*
*She was called stupid by the other children.*
*The house has been made beautiful.*

For more about object complements, ► 10.

66 My suitcase is packed.

Some verbs refer to actions that produce a finished result. Examples are *cut, build, pack, close.* Other verbs do not: for example *push, live, speak, hit, carry.*

The past participles of finished-result verbs, and some of their passive tenses, can have two meanings. They can refer to the action, or they can describe the result (rather like adjectives). Compare:

*The theatre was closed by the police on the orders of the mayor.* (refers to the action of closing)
*When I got there I found that the theatre was closed.* (refers to the state of being shut – the result of the action)

Because of this, *be + past participle* can have a similar meaning to a present perfect passive.

*The vegetables are all cut up – what shall I do now? (= The vegetables have all been cut up . . .)*
*I got caught in the rain and my suit's ruined. (= . . . has been ruined.)*
*I think your ankle is broken. (= . . . has been broken.)*
*My suitcase is packed. (= . . . has been packed.)*
67 When do we use passive structures?

1 interest in the action
We often choose passive structures when we want to talk about an action, but are not so interested in saying (or not able to say) who or what does/did it. Passives without ‘agents’ (► 58) are common in academic and scientific writing for this reason.

*Those pyramids were built around 400 AD.*
*Too many books have been written about the Second World War.*
*The results have not yet been analysed.*

2 putting the news at the end
We often prefer to begin a sentence with something that is already known, or that we are already talking about, and to put the ‘news’ at the end. This is another common reason for choosing passive structures. Compare:
*Jack’s painting my portrait.* (active verb so that the ‘news’ - the portrait - can go at the end)
*‘Nice picture.’ ‘Yes, it was painted by my grandmother.’* (passive verb so that the ‘news’ - the painter - can go at the end)

3 keeping the same subject
In order to keep talking about the same person or thing, it may be necessary to switch from active to passive and back.
*He waited for two hours; then he was seen by a doctor; then he was sent back to the waiting room. He sat there for another two hours - by this time he was getting angry. Then he was taken upstairs and examined by a specialist, after which he had to wait for another hour before he was allowed to go home.*
(More natural than *He waited for two hours; then a doctor saw him . . .*)

4 putting heavier expressions at the end
Longer and heavier expressions often go at the end of a clause, and this can also be a reason for choosing a passive structure.
*I was annoyed by Emily wanting to tell everybody what to do.*
(More natural than *Emily wanting to tell everybody what to do annoyed me* - the phrase *Emily . . . do* would make a very long subject.)
Section 7 Modal Auxiliary Verbs

INTRODUCTION

What are modal auxiliary verbs?
The **modal auxiliary verbs** are will, would, shall, should, can, could, ought, may, might and must. Their grammar is different from that of other verbs: for example, they have no infinitives, participles or past tenses. For details, ► 68.1. Some other verbs and expressions are used in similar ways to modals: have to, be able to, be supposed to, had better and need.

meanings

We do not usually use modal verbs to say that situations definitely exist, or that particular events have definitely happened. We use them, for example, to talk about things which we expect, which are or are not possible, which we think are necessary, which we want to happen, which we are not sure about, which tend to happen, or which have not happened. This is a complicated area of grammar: each modal verb has more than one use; on the other hand, different modals can have very similar uses. Modal meanings fall into four groups.

1 **degrees of certainty** (► 69-72)
Most modal verbs can be used to express degrees of certainty about facts, situations or events: for instance to say that something is certain, probable, possible or impossible.

- It will rain tomorrow.
- She should be here soon.
- We may get a new car.
- It can’t be true.

2 **obligation, freedom to act, etc** (► 73-81)
Most modal verbs can also express various ideas relating to obligation, freedom to act, recommended behaviour, permission, willingness and similar matters. They are common in requests, suggestions, invitations and instructions.

- Students must register by 30 January.
- You should see the doctor.
- If you will come this way . . .
- Could I talk to you for a moment?

Note that these meanings are usually expressed from the speaker’s point of view in statements, and from the hearer’s in questions. Compare:

- You must go and see Anna. (I think it is necessary.)
- Must you go and see Anna? (Do you think it is necessary?)

3 **ability** (► 82-85)
Modal verbs, especially can and could, are used to say what people and things are able to do because of their knowledge, skill, design and so on.

- She can speak six languages.
- My old car could do 120mph.

4 **typical behaviour** (► 86-87)
We can talk about what people and things typically or habitually do or did, using can, may, will, would and used to.

- Dan can really get on your nerves.
- Most evenings he’ll just sit watching TV.
- A female crocodile may lay 30-40 eggs. I used to play a lot of tennis.
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- I must to water the plants. ► 68.1
- It mustn’t be Emily at the door – she’s in Ireland. ► 69.2
- You mustn’t work tomorrow if you don’t want to. ► 73.4
- It can rain this afternoon. ► 71.1
- May you go camping this summer? ► 71.3
- I felt very hot and tired. I might be ill. ► 71.7
- I might read what I liked when I was a child. ► 81.3
- Next week’s exam must be easy. ► 69.9
- Yesterday I should clean the whole house. ► 76.2
- James should get back home yesterday. Has anybody seen him? ► 70.2
- It can rain this afternoon. ► 71.1
- I’m not sure where Emma is. She can be out shopping. ► 71.1
- You have better hurry up. ► 77.2
- ‘The phone’s ringing,’ ‘I’m going to answer it.’ ► 79.1
- ‘There’s the doorbell.’ ‘I go.’ ► 79.1
- I phone you tonight. ► 79.3
- May everybody park here? ► 81.2
- Yesterday evening Daniel could watch TV for an hour. ► 81.3
- I could run 10km yesterday. ► 82.4
- I can speak French at the end of this course. ► 83.1
- He uses to smoke. ► 87.2
- You used not to like him, used you? ► 87.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

68 modals: grammar, pronunciation and contractions
69 deduction (deciding that something is certain): must, can’t, etc
70 deduction (deciding that something is probable): should, ought to, etc
71 chances: may, might and could
72 may and might: some special uses
73 strong obligation: must, will
74 strong obligation: have (got) to
75 have (got) to and must
76 weaker obligation: should and ought to
77 weaker obligation: had better
78 expectations: supposed to
79 willingness: will, can
80 instructions and requests: will, would, can, could, might, shall
81 permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to
82 ability: can and could
83 ability: advanced points
84 can and could with see, hear, etc
85 be able to
86 typical behaviour: can, could, may, might, will, would
87 typical behaviour: used to + infinitive

For will as a future auxiliary, ► 38. For would in conditional structures, ► 239, 241.
For polite uses of would in ‘distancing’ structures, ► 311.
For should in subordinate clauses (e.g. It’s funny she should say that), ► 232.5.
For modal-like uses of need, ► 532. For modal-like uses of dare, ► 431.
Modal verbs differ from ordinary verbs in several ways.

1 grammar

a Modal verbs have no -s in the third person singular.

She may know his address. (NOT She mays...)

b Questions, negatives, tags and short answers are made without do.

'Can you swim? (NOT Do you can swim) 'Yes, I can.'

He shouldn't be doing that, should he? (NOT He doesn't should...)

c After modal auxiliary verbs, we use the infinitive without to of other verbs. Ought is an exception, ► 70.1.

I must water the flowers. (NOT I must to water...)

Progressive, perfect and passive infinitives are also possible (► 89).

I may not be working tomorrow.

She was so angry she could have killed him.

The kitchen ought to be painted one of these days.

d Modal verbs do not have infinitives or participles (to may, maying, mayed do not exist), and they do not normally have past forms. Other expressions are used when necessary.

I'd like to be able to skate. (NOT... to can skate.)

People really had to work hard in those days. (NOT People really musted to work...)

Could, might, would and should usually have present and future reference, but they can sometimes be used as past tenses of can, may, will and shall.

e Certain past ideas can be expressed by a modal verb followed by a perfect infinitive (have + past participle).

You should have told me you were coming.

I think I may have annoyed Aunt Mary.

For details of these uses, see the entries on particular modal verbs.

f There is quite often used as a preparatory subject with modal verbs, especially when these are followed by be (► 605).

There may be rain later today.

2 pronunciation and contractions

Several modals have weak pronunciations, used when they are not stressed: shall /ʃɔl/, should /ʃəd/, can /kən/, could /kəd/, must /mʌst/. For more about weak pronunciations, ► 315. Ought to is generally pronounced /ˈɔːtə/ (‘oughta’) in conversational speech; should have, could have and might have are often pronounced /ʃədə/, /kədə/ and /məstə/. Can’t is pronounced /kɑːnt/ in standard British English and /kænt/ in standard American English.
Contracted negatives are won’t, wouldn’t, shan’t (BrE), shouldn’t, can’t, couldn’t, oughtn’t, mightn’t (BrE) and mustn’t (mostly BrE). Will and would also have contracted affirmative forms (‘ll, ’d). For more about contractions, ▶ 337.

69 deduction (deciding that something is certain): must, can’t, etc

1 statements: Emily must have a problem.

Must can be used to express the deduction or conclusion that something is certain or highly probable: it is normal or logical, there are excellent reasons for believing it, or it is the only possible explanation for what is happening.

If A is bigger than B, and B is bigger than C, then A must be bigger than C.

‘I’m in love.’ ‘You must be very happy.’

Emily must have a problem — she keeps crying.

There’s the doorbell. It must be George.

Have (got) to is also possible in this sense.

There’s the doorbell. It has to be George.

Getting married next week? You have to be joking.

Only five o’clock? It’s got to be later than that!

2 negatives: It can’t be Emily.

Must is not often used to express certainty in negative clauses. We normally use cannot/can’t to say that something is certainly not the case, because it is logically or practically impossible, or extremely improbable.

If A is bigger than B, and B is bigger than C, then C can’t be bigger than A.

It can’t be Emily at the door. She’s in Ireland. (not It mustn’t be Emily . . .)

She’s not answering the phone. She can’t be at home.

However, mustn’t is used in question tags (▶ 305-306) after must, especially in British English.

It must be nice to be a cat, mustn’t it? (not . . . can’t it?)

And must not is occasionally used, especially in American English, to say that there is evidence that something is not the case (▶ 69.8 below).

3 need not / does not have to

Need not / needn’t is used (especially in British English) to say that something is not necessarily so; does not have to can also be used. Must not is not used in this sense.

‘Look at those tracks. That must be a dog.’ ‘It needn’t be — it could be a fox.’

(or . . . It doesn’t have to be . . .) (not . . . It mustn’t be . . .)

4 That must have been nice.

We can use must have + past participle to express certainty about the past.

‘We went to Rome last month.’ ‘That must have been nice.’

‘A woman phoned while you were out.’ ‘It must have been Kate.’

Can is used in questions and negatives.

Where can Jack have put the matches? He can’t have thrown them away. →
5 **will**

*Will* can express certainty or confidence about present or future situations.

*As I’m sure you will understand, we cannot wait any longer for our order.*

*Don’t phone them now – they’ll be having dinner.*

*‘There’s somebody coming up the stairs.’ ‘That’ll be Emily.’*

*Tomorrow will be cloudy, with some rain.*

**Will have** + past participle refers to the past.

*Dear Sir, You will recently have received a form . . .*

*We can’t go and see them now – they’ll have gone to bed.*

For more about *will* as a future auxiliary, ► 38.

6 **indirect speech**

*Must* can be used in past indirect speech as if it were a past tense.

*I felt there must be something wrong.*

7 **must and should**

**Should** can be used as a weaker form of *must* (► 70). Compare:

*Anna must be at home by now.* (= I’m certain she’s at home.)

*Anna should be at home by now.* (= I think she’s very probably at home.)

8 **a British-American difference: can’t and must not**

In American English, *must not* is often used when something is not logically impossible, but when there is strong evidence for believing that it is not the case. Compare:

– *He only left the office five minutes ago. He can’t be home yet.* (It’s logically impossible that he’s home.)

*She’s not answering the doorbell. She must not be at home.* (It’s not logically impossible that she’s home, but it seems pretty certain that she isn’t.)

– *The restaurant can’t be open – the door’s locked.*

*That restaurant must not be any good – it’s always empty.*

In British English, *can’t* is normal for both meanings (though some people use *must not* for the ‘seems pretty certain’ meaning). Compare:

*She walked past without saying ‘Hello’. She must not have seen you.*

(AmE; some British speakers.)

*She walked past without saying ‘Hello’. She can’t have seen you.*

(most British speakers.)

Note that the contracted form *mustn’t* is rare in AmE.

9 **must**: not used for predictions

*Must* is not often used for predictions about the future – to say what people expect to happen. *Will* is used to express certainty (► 38); *should* or *ought to* suggest that things are probable (► 70).

– *It will be fine tomorrow.* (not *It must be fine tomorrow.*)

*Next week’s exam should/ought to be easy.* (not *Next week’s exam must be easy.*)

grammar • 69 deduction (deciding that something is certain): *must, can’t, etc*
Modal Auxiliary Verbs

Section 7

70 deduction (deciding that something is probable): should, ought to, etc

1 present or future

*Should* can be used to express the deduction or conclusion that something is probable now or in the future: it is expected, normal or logical.

- I've bought three loaves – *that should be* enough.
- I'll phone Ruth – *she should* be home by now.
- 'We’re spending the winter in Miami.' ‘*That should be* nice.’

*Ought to* (► 76.3) is used in a similar way, but is much less common.

- Henry *ought to* be here soon – he *left* home at six.
- The weather *ought* to improve after the weekend.

2 past: should have / ought to have . . .

We do not normally use *should* + *infinitive* to talk about the past. However, we can use *should have* / *ought to have* + *past participle* to make guesses or draw conclusions about things which are not certain to have happened.

- James *should have* got back home yesterday. Has anybody seen him?
  (not *James should get back home yesterday* . . .)

We can also use this structure to talk about actions which we expect to have been completed by now or at a future time.

- Ten o'clock. *She should have* arrived at her office by now. I’ll try calling her.
- *We ought to* have finished painting the house by the end of next week.

3 be supposed to

We can use *be supposed to* to say that something is or was normal or expected.

- *Cats are supposed to* be afraid of dogs, but ours isn’t.
- *Bill was supposed to* get back home yesterday.

Note the pronunciation: /saˈpoʊst to/, not /saˈpoʊzd to/.

For *be supposed to* to express obligation, ► 78.

For more about structures with *ought*, ► 76.3.

71 chances: may, might and could

1 You may be right; We may go climbing.

We often use *may, might* and *could* to talk about the chance (possibility) that something will happen, or is happening.

- *We may* go climbing in the Alps next summer.
- ‘I think Labour are going to win.’ ‘*You may* be right.’
- Daniel *might* phone. If he does, ask him to ring later.
- ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘I don’t know. She *might* be out running, I suppose.’
- They’ve agreed, but they *could* change their minds.

*May well, might well* and *could well* suggest stronger possibilities.

- ‘I think it’s going to rain.’ ‘*You may well* be right – the sky’s really black.’

grammar • 71 chances: may, might and could
Can is not normally used to talk about the chance that something will happen or is happening.

NOT It can rain this afternoon.
NOT Emma can be out-running.

2 **may, might and could**: the difference

Might and could are not often used as past forms of may and can: more often they are used to talk about the present or future. Might and could are less definite or more hesitant than may, suggesting a smaller chance – they are used when people think something is possible but not very likely. Compare:

I **may** go to London tomorrow. (perhaps a 50% chance)
Joe **might** come with me. (perhaps a 30% chance)

3 **questions: may not used**

May is not normally used to ask about the chance of something happening.

Are you likely to go camping this summer? (not May you go camping . . .?)
Has Emma gone running. I wonder? (not May Emma have gone running?)

But may is possible in indirect questions (for example after Do you think).

Do you think you **may** go camping this summer?

Might can be used in direct questions, but this is rather formal.

Might you go camping? (less natural than Do you think you may/might . . .?)

4 **two negatives: may/might not and can’t**

There are two ways to make may/might negative: with may/might not (= It is possible that . . . not . . .) and with can’t (= It is not possible that . . .) Compare:

She **may** be at home. (= Perhaps she is at home.)
She **may not** be at home. (= Perhaps she is not at home.)
She can’t be at home. (= She is certainly not at home.)

You **might** win. (= Perhaps you will win.)
You **might not** win. (= Perhaps you won’t win.)
You can’t win. (= You certainly won’t win.)

Couldn’t is possible with the same meaning as can’t, but is less common.

5 **might meaning ‘would perhaps’**

Might and could (but not may) can have a conditional meaning (= would perhaps).

Don’t play with knives. You might/could get hurt.
(= Perhaps you would get hurt.)

If you went to bed for an hour, you might feel better.
(= . . . perhaps you would feel better.)

6 **indirect speech: might/could**

Might/could is used in past indirect speech when may was used in direct speech.

'I **may** go to Scotland.' 'What?' 'I said I **might** go to Scotland.'

7 **past: might/could + infinitive not used**

Might/could + infinitive is not normally used to talk about past possibility (except in indirect speech).

I felt very hot and tired. Perhaps I was ill. (not I **might** be ill.)

But I thought I **might** be ill.
8 **may/might/could have** . . .: She may have missed her train.
However, to say that it is possible that something happened or was true in the past, we can use **may/might/could have + past participle**.
   "Polly's very late. She **may have missed** her train." (= It is possible that she missed . . .)
   "What was that noise? It **might/could have been** a cat."
May/might have . . . can sometimes refer to the present or future.
   I'll try phoning him, but he **may have gone** out by now.
   By the end of this year I **might have saved** some money.

9 **might/could have** . . .: You might/could have killed yourself.
To say that something was possible but did not happen, we can use **might/could have**.
   You were stupid to try climbing up there. You **might/could have killed** yourself.
   If she hadn't been so bad-tempered, I **might/could have married** her.
May have . . . is now sometimes used with this meaning too; some people feel that this is not correct.
   You were stupid to try climbing up there. You **may have killed** yourself.
   (More normal: . . . You **might/could have killed** yourself.)

For **might/could have** . . . used to criticise people for not doing things, ▶ 80.3.

10 the difference between **may/might/could** and **should/ought to**
We use **should** and **ought to** to express a deduction that something is probable: they suggest that we have a good reason for this belief.
May, might and could simply say that something is possible, without suggesting that we have a good reason for thinking it is true or will happen. Compare:
   – **Anna should be** in the office now – it's ten o'clock.
   – Dan **may be** in the office now – I don't know what time he starts work.
   – I've got all John's keys here. One of them **ought to** open the safe.
   – Let's ask Amy. She **might know** which is the right one. It's worth a try.

72 **may and might:** some special uses

1 **may in wishes and hopes**
   May (but not might) is used in formal expressions of wishes and hopes.
   I hope that the young couple **may** enjoy many years of happiness together.
   Let us pray that peace **may** soon return to our troubled land.
May often comes at the beginning of the sentence.
   **May you both be very happy!**  **May God be with you.**
   **May the New Year bring you all your heart desires.**
   **May she rest in peace.** (prayer for a dead person)
2 *may/might . . . but*

*May* (and sometimes *might*) can be used in a discussion rather like *although* or *even if* to say that something is true, but that this makes no difference to the main argument. They are often followed by *but.*

He *may* be clever, but he hasn’t got much common sense. (= Even if he’s clever, he . . . or Although he’s clever, he . . .)

*It may be a comfortable car, but it uses a lot of fuel."

*She might have had a lovely voice when she was younger, but . . ."

Note that in this structure, *may* and *might* can be used to talk about things that are definitely true, not just possible.

You *may* be my boss, but that doesn’t mean you’re better than me.

3 *may/might as well*

This structure is used informally to suggest that one should do something because there is nothing better, nothing more interesting or nothing more useful to do. There is little difference between *may* and *might* in this case.

*There’s nobody interesting to talk to. We may as well go home.*

*‘Shall we go and see Fred?’* ‘OK, *might as well.*’

Note the difference between *may/might as well* and *had better* (► 77). Compare:

*We may as well eat.* (= There is nothing more interesting to do.)

*We’d better eat.* (= We ought to eat; there is a good reason to eat.)

*Might as well* is also used to compare one unpleasant situation with another.

*This trip isn’t much fun. We might just as well be back home.* (= Things wouldn’t be any different if we were at home.)

*You never listen – I might as well talk to a brick wall.*

73 **strong obligation: must, will**

The following explanations apply particularly to British English. Americans often use *have (got) to* where British people use *must* (► 75). However, this use of *have (got) to* is becoming more common in British English under American influence. And note that *must* is becoming less common in both British and American English.

1 **statements:** *I really must stop smoking.*

In affirmative statements, we can use *must* to say what is necessary, and to give strong advice and orders to ourselves or other people.

Plants *must* get enough light and water if they are to grow well.

British industry *must* improve its productivity.

I *really must* stop smoking.

You *must* be here before eight o’clock tomorrow.

*Must* is common in emphatic invitations.

You really *must* come and see us soon.

2 **questions:** *Must I . . .?*

In questions, we use *must* to ask about what the hearer thinks is necessary.

*Must I clean all the rooms?*

*Why must you always bang the door?*
3 negatives: You mustn’t/can’t . . .

We use must not / mustn’t to say that it is wrong to do things, or to tell people not to do things. Can’t is also possible.

_The government mustn’t/can’t expect people to work for no money._

You mustn’t/can’t open this parcel until Christmas Day.

4 mustn’t and needn’t / don’t have to

Mustn’t is not used to say that things are unnecessary. This idea is expressed by needn’t (BrE), don’t need to (► 532) or don’t have to.

You needn’t work tomorrow if you don’t want to. (BrE) OR You don’t have to work . . . (NOT You mustn’t . . . if you don’t want to.)

You don’t need to get a visa to go to Scotland. OR You don’t have to get a visa . . . (NOT You mustn’t get a visa to go to Scotland.)

5 past necessity and obligation: They had to work very hard.

Must is not normally used to talk about past obligation (except in indirect speech – see below). This is because must is used mainly to influence people’s behaviour – for example through orders or advice – and one cannot do this in the past. Had to is used to talk about obligation that existed in the past.

_I had to cycle three miles to school when I was a child._

My parents had to work very hard to build up their business.

Note the difference between had to + infinitive and must have + past participle. The structure with must have . . . is used to express certainty about the past (► 69). Compare:

_Nadia isn’t in her office. She had to go home._ (= It was necessary for her to go home.)

_Nadia isn’t in her office. She must have gone home._ (= It seems certain that she has gone home.)

6 orders with will: Will you be quiet!

We use will you to tell people what to do.

*Will you send me the bill, please? Come this way, will you? Will you be quiet?*

Will can be used in affirmative structures to give impersonal, military-type orders.

_All staff will submit weekly progress reports._

7 indirect speech: He said I must stop.

Must can be used after a past reporting verb as if it were a past tense.

_The doctor said that I must stop smoking._

Obligation can also be reported with had to and would have to.

_The doctor said that I had to / would have to stop smoking._

8 must and should

Should can be used as a weaker form of must (► 76). Compare:

_That carpet must be cleaned._ (= It is absolutely necessary.)

_That carpet should be cleaned._ (= It would be a good idea.)
74 strong obligation: have (got) to

1 meaning: obligation, certainty

We can use have (got) + infinitive to talk about obligation: things that it is necessary to do. The meaning is quite similar to must; for differences, ► 75.1.

Sorry, I’ve got to go now. Do you often have to travel on business?

2 grammar: with or without do; got

In this structure, have can be used like an ordinary verb (with do in questions and negatives), or like an auxiliary verb (without do). Got is usually added to present-tense auxiliary-verb forms in an informal style.

When do you have to be back?
When have you (got) to be back?

Have got to is not normally used to talk about repeated obligation.

I usually have to be at work at eight. (not I’ve-usually-got to . . .)

Progressive forms are possible to talk about temporary continued obligation.

I’m having to work very hard at the moment.

For more details of the use of do-forms and got-forms of have, ► 24.

3 pronunciation of have to; gotta

Have to is often pronounced /'haeftə/.

He’ll have to /'haeftə/ get a new passport soon.

Note the spelling gotta, sometimes used in informal American English (for instance in cartoon strips) to show the conversational pronunciation of got to.

I gotta call home. A man’s gotta do what a man’s gotta do.

75 have (got) to and must

1 Where does the obligation come from?

In statements about obligation with must the obligation most often comes from the speaker (and in questions, from the hearer). To talk about an obligation that comes from ‘outside’ (for instance a regulation, or an order from somebody else), we usually prefer have to. Compare:

- I must do some more work; I want to pass my exam.
  In my job I have to work from nine to five. (More natural than . . . I must work from nine to five.)

- We must go to New York soon – we haven’t seen your mother since Christmas.
  My wife’s an interpreter: she often has to go to New York. (More natural than . . . she must often go to New York.)

- I must stop smoking. (I want to.)
  I’ve got to stop smoking. (Doctor’s orders.)

- This is a terrible party. We really must go home.
  This is a lovely party, but we’ve got to go home because of the children.

- I’ve got bad toothache. I must make an appointment with the dentist.
  I can’t come to work tomorrow morning because I’ve got to see the dentist.
You really must go to church next Sunday – you haven’t been for ages.
(I am telling you to.)
Catholics have to go to church on Sundays. (Their religion tells them to.)

Must you wear dirty old jeans all the time? (Is it personally important for you?)
Do you have to wear a tie at work? (Is there a regulation?)

Have to can also be used to talk about obligation coming from the speaker or hearer, in the same way as must. This is normal in American English (which uses must less often in this sense), and is becoming very common in British English.

I really have to stop smoking. (or I really must . . .)
Do I have to clean all the rooms? (or Must I . . .?)

2 future obligation: will have to, have (got) to and must

Will have to is used to talk about future obligation (will must is impossible, ► 68.1); but have (got) to is preferred when arrangements for the future have already been made. Compare:

When you leave school you’ll have to find a job.
I’ve got to go for a job interview tomorrow.

Going to have to is also possible.
We’re going to have to repair that window.

Must can be used to give orders or instructions for the future.

You can borrow my car, but you must bring it back before ten.
Will have to can be used to ‘distance’ the instructions (► 311), making them sound less like direct orders from the speaker.

You can borrow my car, but you’ll have to bring it back before ten.
Will need to can be used in the same way (► 532.4).

For have to and have got to, ► 74. For the use of got with have, ► 24.5-24.6.

76 weaker obligation: should and ought to

1 use

Should and ought to are very similar, and can often replace each other.

They ought to be more sensible, shouldn’t they?
They are both used to talk about obligation and duty, to give and ask for advice, and to say what we think it is right for people to do. Should is much more frequent than ought to, especially in negatives and questions.

You should/ought to see ‘Daughter of the Moon’ – it’s a great film.
You shouldn’t say things like that to Granny.

Applications should be sent before December 30th. (More polite than
Applications must be sent . . .)
He ought to get a medal for living with her.

In questions, should is used to ask for advice or instructions, like a less definite form of shall (► 80).

Should I go and see the police, do you think?
What should we do?

Should and ought to are not used in polite requests.

Could you move your head a bit? I can’t see. (Not You should move . . .)
2 past use: should have . . .

Should and ought to are not normally used to talk about past obligation. Instead, we can use, for example, was/were supposed to (► 78).

It was going to be a long day. I was supposed to clean the whole house.

(Not I should clean . . .)
But should/ought to have + past participle can be used to talk about unfulfilled past obligations: things which weren't done, or which may or may not have been done.

I should have phoned Ed this morning, but I forgot.
Alice ought to have spoken to James, but I'm not sure she did.

3 ought: forms

After ought, we use the infinitive with to before other verbs. (This makes ought different from other modal auxiliary verbs.)

You ought to see a dentist.

To is not used in question tags.

We ought to wake Ella, oughtn't we? (Not . . . oughtn't we to?)

Mid-position adverbials (► 200) can go before or after ought. The position before ought is more common in an informal style.

You always ought to count your change when you buy things.

You ought always to count your change . . . (more formal; rare in AmE)

In American English, interrogative and contracted negative forms of ought to are rare; should is generally used instead.

He ought to be here soon, shouldn't he?

In some English dialects, questions and negatives are made with did (e.g. She didn't ought to do that), but this structure is not used in standard English.

77 weaker obligation: had better

1 meaning

We use had better to give strong advice, or to tell people what to do (including ourselves).

You'd better turn that music down before your dad gets angry.

It's seven o'clock. I'd better put the meat in the oven.

Had better refers to the immediate future. It is more urgent than should or ought. Compare:

'I really ought to go and see Fred one of these days.' 'Well, you'd better do it soon – he's leaving for South Africa at the end of the month.'

Had better is not used in polite requests. Compare:

Could you help me, if you've got time? (request)

You'd better help me. If you don't, there'll be trouble. (order/threat)
2 forms

*Had better* refers to the immediate future, but the form is always past (*have better* is impossible). After *had better* we use the infinitive without *to*.

It's late - you *had better hurry up*. (Not ... *you have better...* or ... *you had better hurrying/to hurry...*)

We normally make the negative with *had better not + infinitive*.

You’d better not wake me up when you come in. (You hadn’t better wake me... is possible in British English but very unusual.)

A negative interrogative form *Hadn’t... better...?* is possible.

**Hadn’t we better tell him the truth?**

Normal unemphatic short answer forms are as follows:

‘Shall I put my clothes away?’ *You’d better!*

‘He says he won’t tell anybody.’ *He’d better not.*

*Had* (’d) is sometimes dropped in very informal speech.

You better go now. I better try again later.

78 expectations: *supposed to*

*Be supposed + infinitive* is used to say what people have to do (or not do) according to the rules or the law, or to say what is (not) expected to happen.

*Catholics are supposed to go to church on Sundays.*

*We’re supposed to pay the Council Tax at the beginning of the month.*

*You’re not supposed to park on double yellow lines.*

There is often a suggestion that things do not happen as planned or expected.

*This country is supposed to be a democracy.*

*Lucy was supposed to come to lunch. What’s happened?*

Questions with *supposed to* can suggest that there are problems.

*The train’s already left. What are we supposed to do now?*

*How am I supposed to finish all this work by ten o’clock?*

*That’s a lovely picture, but what’s it supposed to be?*

Another use of *supposed to* is to say what is generally believed.

*He’s supposed to be quite rich, you know.*

*This stuff is supposed to kill flies. Let’s try it.*

Note the pronunciation: /'sə'pəust tə/, not /'sə'pəuzd tə/.

79 willingness: *will, can*

1 announcing decisions: *I’ll answer it.*

We often use *will* when we tell people about a decision as we make it, for instance if we are agreeing to do something.

OK. I’ll buy the tickets. You can buy supper after the show.

‘The phone’s ringing.’ *I’ll answer it.* (Not I’m going to answer it.)

‘Remember to phone Joe, won’t you?’ *Yes, I will.*

Note that the simple present is not normally used to announce decisions.

*I think I’ll go to bed.* (Not I think I go to bed.)

‘There’s the doorbell.’ *I’ll go.* (Not... I go.)
To announce decisions that have already been made, we generally prefer going to . . . or the present progressive (► 35–36).
Well, we’ve agreed on a price, and I’m going to buy it.
I’ve made my decision and I’m sticking to it.
Stressed will can express determination.
I will stop smoking! I really will!

2 refusals: I won’t do it!
Will not or won’t is used to refuse, or to talk about refusals.
I don’t care what you say – I won’t do it! The car won’t start.

3 promises and threats: I’ll phone you tonight.
We often use will’ll in promises and threats. Note that the simple present is not possible in these cases.
I promise I won’t smoke again. (NOT I promise I don’t smoke . . .)
I’ll phone you tonight. (NOT I phone . . .)
I’ll hit you if you do that again. You’ll suffer for this!
Shall is also possible in British English after I and we, but it is much less common than will.
I shall give you a teddy bear for your birthday.
In older English, shall was often used with second- and third-person subjects in promises and threats. This is now very unusual.
You shall have all you wish for. He shall regret this.

4 offers: Can I carry your bag?
We often use can when we offer to do things for people.
‘Can I carry your bag?’ (= Would you like me to . . .) ‘Oh, thank you.’
‘I can babysit for you this evening if you like.’ ‘No, it’s all right, thanks.’
Could is possible if we want an offer to sound less definite.
I could fix your bicycle for you, if that would help.

80 instructions and requests: will, would, can, could, might, shall

1 instructions, requests and suggestions: will, would, can, could, might
We can use will you . . .? to tell people to do things. Would you . . .? is less direct and more polite.
Will you get me a newspaper while you’re out?
Will you be quiet, please! Make me a cup of coffee, will you?
Would you open a window, please?
If you will/would . . . can be used in polite requests.
If you’ll just wait here for a moment, I’ll see if Mr Andrews is free.
If you would come this way . . .
Can and could are used to give instructions or make requests. Could is less direct and more polite.
Can you put the children to bed?
Could you lend me £5 until tomorrow?
Do you think you could help me for a few minutes? Could and might are often used in suggestions. When you've finished the dishes you could iron the clothes, if you like. If you don't know what to do, you could sort out your photos. You might see if John's free this evening.

For more about if... will, ► 243.

2 asking for instructions and decisions: shall

Questions with shall I/we are used (in both British and American English) to ask for instructions or decisions, to offer services, and to make suggestions. In American English, this is rather formal. Will is not used in this way.

Shall I open a window? (not Will I open a window?)
Shall I carry your bag?
What time shall we come and see you?
What on earth shall we do?
Shall we go out for a meal? Let's go and see Lucy, shall we?

3 criticisms: You could have told me...

Could and might can be used to criticise people for not doing things.

You could ask before you borrow my car.
You might try to be nicer to my mother.

Could/might have... + past participle can be used in criticisms about past behaviour.

You could have told me you were getting married.
She might have warned us she was going to stay out all night.

81 permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to

1 asking for, giving and refusing permission: Can I...?

We use can to ask for and give permission.

'Can I ask you something?' 'Yes, of course you can.'
You can go now if you want to.

Cannot/can't are used to refuse permission (often with other words to soften the refusal).

'Can I have some more cake?' 'No, I'm afraid you can't.'

We also use could to ask for permission; it is more polite or formal than can.

We do not use could to give or refuse permission (it suggests respect, so is more natural in asking for permission than in giving it).

'Could I ask you something?' 'Yes, of course you can.' (not...of course you could.)

May and might are also used to ask for permission, and may to give permission.

They are more formal than can/could, and are less common. Might is very polite and formal, and is mostly used in indirect question structures.

May I switch on the TV?
I wonder if I might have a little more cheese?
May not (but not might not) can be used to refuse permission.  
'May I smoke?' 'I'm sorry, you may not.'

There is an old belief that may/might are more 'correct' than can/could in these uses, but this does not reflect actual usage.

Must not (► 73.3) can also be used to refuse permission; it is more emphatic than can't/may not.

2 talking about permission: Can everybody . . . ?

Can is used to talk about permission that has already been given or refused, and about things that are allowed by rules or laws. May is not normally used in this way.

Can everybody park here? (not May everybody park here?)

3 past permission: could is not always possible

In talking about the past, we use could (but not might) to say that somebody had permission to do something at any time ('general permission'), but we do not use could to talk about permission for one particular action in the past.

Compare:
When I was a child, I could watch TV whenever I wanted to.

Yesterday evening, Daniel was allowed to watch TV for an hour.

(Daniel could watch TV for an hour)

But could not can be used to talk about one particular action.

Daniel couldn't watch TV yesterday because he was naughty.

(The difference between could and was/were allowed to is similar to the difference between could and was/were able to. ► 82.4.)

4 indirect speech

Can, could, may and might can however all be used to report the giving of permission (general or particular). Can/may are used after present reporting verbs, and could/might after past verbs.

She says we can park here. They told us we couldn't go in yet.

The manager says we may leave our coats in the waiting room.

Mr Newson agreed that I might look round. (very formal)

5 be allowed to

Modal verbs have no infinitives or participles. When necessary, permission is expressed in other ways: for example with forms of be allowed to.

She's always been allowed to do what she liked. (not She's always could . . .)
82 ability: can and could

1 knowledge, skill, strength, etc: I can read Italian.
We use can to say what people and things are able (or unable) to do because of their knowledge, skill, strength, nature, design, etc.
I can read Italian, but I can't speak it. These roses can grow anywhere.
Dogs can't climb trees.
Henry can lift 100 kilos.
Be able to (► 85) is used with similar meanings, especially when we are talking about people's ability.
Henry is able to lift 100 kilos.

2 possible in the situation: We can go to Paris.
We also use can to say what we are able (or unable) to do because of the circumstances that we are in - what is possible in the situation.
We can go to Paris this weekend, because I don't have to work.
I can't come out this evening: I have to see my brother.
There are three possibilities: we can go to the police, we can talk to a lawyer, or we can forget all about it.
'What can we do?' 'We can try asking Lucy for help.'
Anybody who wants to can join the club.

3 past: She could read when she was four.
We use could to talk about general ability in the past.
She could read when she was four.
My grandmother could sing like an angel.
My last car could do 160mph. In those days everybody could find a job.
It could be quite frightening if you were alone in our big old house.
Was/were able to is also possible, especially to talk about people's ability.
She was able to read when she was four.

4 past: could is not always possible
We use could for 'general ability' - for example to say that somebody could do something at any time, whenever he/she wanted.
When I was younger, I could run 10km in under 40 minutes.
We do not normally use could to say that somebody did something on one occasion. Instead, we use other expressions.
I managed to run 10km yesterday in under an hour. (not I could run 10km yesterday...)
How many eggs were you able to get? (not... could you get?)
After six hours' climbing, we succeeded in getting to the top of the mountain.
(not... we could get to the top...)
I found a really nice dress in the sale. (not I could find...)
However, we use couldn't to say that something did not happen on one occasion.
I managed to find the street, but I couldn't find her house.
5 other uses of could

Could is not only past: we also use it as a ‘softer’, less definite form of can.
‘What shall we do tomorrow?’ ‘Well, we could go fishing.’
When you’re in Spain, you could go and see Alex.
Could can mean ‘would be able to’.
You could get a better job if you spoke a foreign language.
Could is used in past indirect speech, when can was used in direct speech.
‘Can you help me?’ ‘What did you say?’ ‘I asked if you could help me.’

6 could have...

We use a special structure to talk about unrealised past ability or opportunities - to say that somebody was able to do something, but did not do it; or that something was possible, but did not happen.

could have + past participle

I could have married anybody I wanted to.
I was so angry I could have killed her!
Why did you jump out of the window? You could have hurt yourself.
I could have won the race if I hadn’t fallen.
This structure can be used to criticise people for not doing things.
You could have helped me – why did you just sit and watch?
Negative sentences suggest that somebody would not have been able to do something even if they had wanted or tried to.
I couldn’t have won, so I didn’t go in for the race.
I couldn’t have enjoyed myself more – it was a perfect day.
The structure is sometimes used to talk about past events which are not certain to have happened (like may/might have, ► 71.8).
‘Who sent those flowers?’ ‘I’m not sure. It could have been your mother.’
This structure can also refer to present situations which were possible but which have not been realised.
He could have been Prime Minister now if he hadn’t decided to leave politics.
We could have spent today at the beach, but we thought it was going to rain so we decided not to go.

7 chances: Will it happen? / Is it happening? – can not used

We do not use can to talk about the chances (probability) that something will actually happen, or is actually happening. Instead, we use may (► 71).
We may go camping this summer. (NOT We can go...)
‘Where’s Sarah?’ ‘She may be with Joe. (NOT She can be...’)
However, could is possible in this sense.
It could rain later this evening, perhaps. (BUT NOT It can rain later...)

grammar • 82 ability: can and could
Modal Auxiliary Verbs

83 ability: advanced points

1 future: can or will be able
We use *can* to talk about future actions which we will be able to do because of present ability, present circumstances, present decisions, etc.

She can win the race tomorrow if she really tries.
I’ve bought the tent, so we can go camping next weekend if we want to.
I haven’t got time today, but I can see you tomorrow.
Can you come to a party on Saturday?

In other cases we prefer other structures, for example *will be able to*.

I’ll be able to speak French at the end of this course.

(Not *I can speak French...*)

One day people will be able to go to the moon for the weekend. (or it will be possible to go...)

2 could in the past

*Could* is not normally used to say that somebody did something on one occasion in the past (► 82.4).

I managed to buy a really nice coat yesterday. (Not *I could buy a really nice coat yesterday.*)

However, *could* can refer to one occasion with certain verbs: see, hear, taste, feel, smell, understand, remember and guess (► 84).

I could smell something burning.
I could understand everything she said.

And we can use *could* to talk about one occasion with words like hardly or only, that have a negative sense.

She could hardly believe her eyes. I could only get six eggs.

*Could* can also sometimes refer to one occasion in subordinate clauses.

I’m so glad that you could come.

3 languages and instruments: *She speaks Greek.*

We often leave out *can* when we are talking about the ability to speak languages or to play instruments.

*She speaks Greek.* / *She can speak Greek.*

Do/Can you play the piano?

4 can/could always

*Can/could always* can mean ‘can/could ... if there is nothing better’.

‘I don’t know what to get Mark for his birthday.’ ‘Well, you can always give him a gift card.’

‘What are we going to eat?’ ‘We could always warm up that soup.’
84 can and could with see, hear, etc

1 see, hear, feel, smell, taste

When these verbs refer to perception (receiving information through the eyes, ears, etc), we do not normally use progressive forms. To talk about seeing, hearing, etc at a particular moment, we often use *can see, can hear*, etc (especially in British English).

- *I can see Susan coming.* (not *I'm seeing...*)
- *Can you hear somebody coming up the stairs?*
- *What did you put in the stew? I can taste something funny.*
- *Suddenly she realised she could smell something burning.*

In American English, *I see/heard*, etc are common in this sense.

2 guess, tell

*Can* and *could* are often used with *guess* and with *tell* (meaning *see, know*).

- *Can/could* are not normally used with *know* in the sense of 'find out' (► 504.5).

- *I could guess what she wanted.*
- *You can tell he's Irish from his accent. (not *You can know...*)*

3 understand, follow, remember

*Can/could* is often used with these verbs too. It does not always add very much to the meaning.

- *I can't/don't understand what she's talking about.*
- *Do/Can you follow what he's saying?*
- *I (can) remember your grandfather.*

85 be able to

We use *able* especially in the structure *be able to + infinitive*. This often has the same meaning as *can* (► 82). There is a negative form *unable*.

- *Some people are able to / can walk on their hands.*
- *I am unable to / can't understand what she wants.*

*Can* is preferred in the sense of 'know how to', and in expressions like *can see, can hear*, etc (► 84).

- *Can you knit?* (More natural than *Are you able to knit?*)
- *I can see a ship.* (More natural than *I am able to see a ship.*)

*Be able to* is used most often for people or other living things. Compare:

- *Jake can lift / is able to lift 150 kilos.*
- *This crane can lift 30 tonnes.* (More natural than *This crane is able to lift 30 tonnes.\*)

*Be able to* is used in cases (e.g. future, present perfect) where *can/could* is not grammatically possible because it has no infinitive or participles (► 68.1).

- *One day scientists will be able to find a cure for cancer.*
  (not... will can find...)
- *What have you been able to find out? (not *What have you could...*)

*Able* is not often followed by passive infinitives.

- *He can't be understood.* (More natural than *He's not able to be understood.*)

For differences between *could* and *was able to*, ► 82.4, 83.2.
86 typical behaviour: can, could, may, might, will, would

1 can, could, may and might

These verbs can be used to talk about typical behaviour and occurrences, in the sense of what is possible. May and might are a little more formal than can and could, and are common in scientific and academic language.

- Amy can really get on your nerves.
- Scotland can be very warm in summer.
- In the days of sailing ships, a voyage round the world could take years.
- A female crocodile may lay 30–40 eggs.
- The flowers may have five or six petals, red or white in colour.
- In those days, a man might be hanged for stealing a sheep.

2 will and would

These verbs can also describe typical behaviour, often in the sense of what is habitual or regular.

- She'll sit talking to herself for hours.
- When you look at clouds they will often remind you of animals.
- If something breaks down and you kick it, it will often start working again.
- Anything that can go wrong will go wrong.
- Sulphuric acid will dissolve most metals.
- Sometimes he would bring me little presents without saying why.
- On Sundays when I was a child we would all get up early and go fishing.
- Every summer he would go away for a month, without saying where or why.

3 criticisms: She will fall in love with the wrong people.

Stressed will and would can be used to criticise people’s behaviour.

- She will fall in love with the wrong people.
- Well, if you will keep telling people what you think of them . . .
- He was a nice boy, but he would talk about himself all the time.

Would can be used to criticise a single past action, with the suggestion 'That's typical of you/him, etc'.

- You would tell Emily about the party – I didn't want to invite her.
87 typical behaviour: used to + infinitive

1 meaning
We use used to + infinitive to talk about past habits and states which are now finished.

I used to smoke, but now I've stopped. (not I was used to smoke . . .)
That casino used to be a cinema.

2 only past
Used to . . . has no present form (and no progressive, perfect, infinitive or -ing forms). To talk about present habits and states, we usually just use the simple present tense (► 31).

He smokes. (not He uses to smoke.) Her brother still collects stamps.

3 questions and negatives
When questions and negatives are written, they often have did . . . used instead of did . . . use. Many people consider this incorrect.

What did people use(d) to do in the evenings before TV?
I didn't use(d) to like opera, but now I do.
The contraction usedn't is also possible, especially in British English.
I usedn't to like opera.
But the most common negative is never used . . .
I never used to like opera.
In a formal style, questions and negatives without do are possible, but these are not very common, and are rare in American English.
I used not to like opera, but now I do. (or I used to not like opera . . .) (BrE)
Used you to play football at school? (BrE)
These forms are not used in tags.
You used not to like him, did you? (not . . . used you?)

4 when used to . . . is not used
Used to refers to things that happened at an earlier stage of one's life and are now finished; there is an idea that circumstances have changed. The structure is not used simply to say what happened at a particular past time, or how long it took, or how many times it happened.

I worked very hard last month. (not I used to work very hard last month)
I lived in Chester for three years. (not I used to live in Chester for three years.)
I went to France seven times last year. (not I used to go to France seven times last year.)

5 word order
Mid-position adverbials (► 200) can go before or after used. The position before used is more common in an informal style.

I always used to be afraid of dogs. (informal)
I used always to be afraid of dogs. (formal, and rare in AmE)

6 pronunciation
Note the pronunciation of used /juːst/ and use /juːs/ in this structure.

7 used + infinitive and be used to . . . ing
Used + infinitive has a quite different meaning from be used to . . . ing (► 615).

Compare:
I didn’t use to drive a big car. (= Once I didn’t drive a big car, but now I do.)
(not I wasn’t used to drive a big car.)
I wasn’t used to driving a big car. (= Driving a big car was a new and difficult experience – I hadn’t done it before.)

8 used to and would
Used to and would can both refer to repeated actions and events in the past.
When she was old, she used to / would sit in the corner talking to herself for hours.
Sometimes he used to / would bring me little presents without saying why.
But only used to can refer to past states. Compare:
When we were children we used to / would go skating every winter.
I used to have an old Rolls-Royce. (but not I would have an old Rolls-Royce.)
And we use used to, not would, to talk about regular and important habitual behaviour.
Robert used to play a lot of football. (not Robert would play . . . )
I used to smoke. (not I would smoke.)
Section 8 Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles

INTRODUCTION

This Section, and Sections 9–10, deal with verb forms like (to) write (infinitive), speaking (-ing form) and seen (past participle). These forms do not themselves have any time reference (unlike for example writes or spoke), and grammarians call them 'non-finite'. However, they can be used together with auxiliary verbs to form tenses: e.g. will write, is speaking, has seen (► 15). They also have various other uses which are explained in Sections 8–10.

-ing forms have two grammatical names. They are often called ‘gerunds’ when they are used in similar ways to nouns, as subjects or objects. Gerunds may correspond to infinitives in some other languages.

Smoking is dangerous.
I enjoy skiing.

They are called ‘present participles’ when they are used more like verbs or adjectives:
She ran out laughing.

faster than a speeding bullet

The names ‘present participle’ and ‘past participle’ are misleading, because these forms do not have any particular time reference.
The dividing line between participles and adjectives is not always clear, ► 96.

All of these verb forms can begin clauses (► Section 10).
I'd like to look at those papers again. (infinitive clause)
She ran out laughing like a hyena. (participle clause)
Cooked in a slow oven, it will taste delicious. (participle clause)

For the sake of simplicity, ‘infinitive’ and ‘participle’ are used for infinitive and participle clauses in the following explanations unless the longer term is needed.
Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

- Try to not be late. ► 89.5
- I wanted go home. ► 89.6
- I must to go now. ► 91.1
- He shouting gets on my nerves. ► 94.3
- Thank you for your waiting. ► 94.3
- We're all excited about his arriving. ► 94.6
- I was very interesting in the lesson. ► 96.3
- Look at all those stopped cars at the crossroads. ► 96.4
- The questioned people gave very different opinions. ► 96.6
- He's a speaking-French Canadian. ► 96.5
- Britain's trade position has been very weakened by inflation. ► 96.8
- He's very known in the art world. ► 96.8

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

88 infinitives: introduction
89 infinitives: forms
90 use of perfect infinitives: glad to have left.
91 infinitives without to: I saw you come in.
92 infinitive as subject or complement
93 -ing forms: introduction
94 -ing form as subject, object or complement
95 infinitive or -ing form?
96 participles: -ing and -ed forms used like adjectives
Infinitives have many functions. An infinitive can be used, for example, after do or a modal auxiliary verb as part of a verb phrase.

*Do you think she’s ready? We must get some more light bulbs.*

An infinitive can also be used, alone or with other words:

- as the subject or complement of a clause (► 92)
  
  *To watch him eating really gets on my nerves.*
  
  *The main thing is to relax. It’s nice to talk to you.*

- as the object or complement of a verb, adjective or noun (► 97–98, 101–102)
  
  *I don’t want to talk. I’m anxious to contact your brother.*
  
  *You have the right to remain silent.*

- to express a person’s purpose (► 112)
  
  *He came to London to look for work.*

For full details of the uses of infinitives, see the following sections.

**Infinitives: forms**

Infinitives are most often used with to (e.g. to go, to start). For infinitives without to, ► 91. Besides simple infinitives, there are also progressive infinitives (e.g. (to) be writing), perfect infinitives (e.g. (to) have written), and passive infinitives (e.g. (to) be written).

1 **progressive infinitive**: (to) be . . .ing

Like other progressive forms (► 3), progressive infinitives suggest that situations are / were / will be continuing around the time that we are talking about.

*It’s nice to be sitting here with you.*

*I noticed that he seemed to be smoking a lot.*

*This time tomorrow I’ll be lying on the beach.* (future progressive tense: ► 41)

*Why’s she so late? She can’t still be working.*

2 **perfect infinitive**: (to) have + past participle

Perfect infinitives can have the same kind of meaning as perfect tenses (► 6) or past tenses (► 44–45).

*It’s nice to have finished work for the day.*

*(= It’s nice that I have finished . . .)*

*I’m sorry not to have come on Thursday.* *(= . . . that I didn’t come . . .)*

We often use perfect infinitives to talk about ‘unreal’ past events: things that did not happen, or that may not have happened (► 90).

3 **passive infinitive**: (to) be + past participle

Passive infinitives have the same kind of meaning as other passive forms (► 57).

*There’s a lot of work to be done.* *(She ought to be told about it.)*

*That window must be repaired before tonight.*

Sometimes active and passive infinitives can have similar meanings, especially after a noun or be (► 106).

*There’s a lot of work to do / to be done.*
4 **combinations**: to have been sitting; could have been killed

Perfect progressive and perfect passive infinitives are common.

*I’d like to have been sitting* there when she walked in.

They were lucky – they could have been killed.

Progressive passive infinitives are possible but unusual.

‘What would you like to be doing right now?’ ‘I’d like to be being massaged.’

Progressive perfect passive infinitives (e.g. *It must have been being built at the time*) are very unusual.

5 **negative forms**: Try not to be late.

Negative infinitives are normally made by putting *not* before the infinitive.

Try not to be late. *(Not usually Try to not be late, or Try to don’t be late:)*

You were silly not to have locked your car.

He’s very busy. I’m afraid he can’t be disturbed.

6 **to**

Note that the infinitive marker *to* (as in *He wanted to go*) is not a preposition.

After the preposition *to* we use -ing forms (► 104.2).

For the use of *to* instead of a whole infinitive (e.g. *I’d like to*), ► 280.

7 **split infinitive**: to really understand

A ‘split infinitive’ is a structure in which *to* is separated from the rest of the infinitive by an adverb.

I’d like to really understand philosophy.

He began to slowly get up off the floor.

Split infinitive structures are quite common in English, especially in an informal style. There is an old rule which says that split infinitives are incorrect. This is not true, but people who believe in the rule try to avoid split infinitives by putting the adverb in another position.

He began slowly to get up off the floor.

90 **use of perfect infinitives**: glad to have left

1 **perfect or past meaning**

Perfect infinitives (*to have gone, to have left*, etc) can have the same kind of meaning as perfect or past tenses.

I’m glad to have left school at last. (= I’m glad that I have left . . .)

She was sorry to have missed James. (= . . . that she had missed James.)

We hope to have finished the job by next Saturday. (= . . . that we will have finished . . .)

2 **perfect infinitive for ‘unreal’ past**

After some verbs (e.g. *mean, be, would like*), perfect infinitives can refer to ‘unreal’ past situations that are the opposite of what really happened.

I meant to have telephoned, but I forgot. *(or I meant to telephone . . .)*

He was to have been the new ambassador, but he fell ill.

I would like to have seen Harry’s face when Nadia walked in.
With *would like*, *would prefer* and one or two other verbs, a double perfect infinitive is sometimes used in informal speech; the extra perfect infinitive does not change the meaning.

I *would have liked to have seen* Harry’s face.

3 modals: He *could have killed himself.*

After the modal verbs *could, might, ought, should, would* and *needn’t* (BrE), perfect infinitives are also often used to refer to unreal situations.

*Did you see him fall? He *could have killed himself.* (He did not kill himself.)*

*You should have called – I was getting worried. (The person did not call.)*

*I would have gone to university if my parents had had more money.*

*She *needn’t have sent me flowers.* (BrE) (She did send flowers.)*

Modal verbs with perfect infinitives can also refer to situations that are not unreal, but uncertain.

*She *could/should/ought to/may/will/must have arrived by now.*

For more details, see the entries for the different modal verbs.

91 infinitives without *to*: *I saw you come in.*

We usually use *to* with infinitives (e.g. *I want to know*). But we use the infinitive without *to* (sometimes called the ‘bare infinitive’) in some cases.

1 after modal auxiliary verbs

After the modal auxiliary verbs *will, shall, would, should, can, could, may, might* and *must*, we use the infinitive without *to*.

*I must go now.*  *(not I must to go now.)*  *Can you help me?*

*Do you think she might be joking?  I would rather go alone.*

We also use the infinitive without *to* after *had better* (► 77), and sometimes after *dare* and *need* (► 431, 532).

*You’d better see what she wants.  I daren’t go out at night. (BrE)*

*She needn’t do the washing up.*

2 after *let, make, hear, etc*

Certain verbs expressing perception and causation are followed by object + infinitive without *to*. They include *let, make, see, hear, feel, watch and notice.*

*She lets her children stay up very late.*  *(not She lets her children to stay. . .)

*I made them give me the money back.*  *I didn’t see you come in.*

*We both heard him say that he was leaving.*  *Did you feel the earth move?*

*Help* can also be used in this way (► 483).

*Could you help me (to) unload the car?*

This structure is also possible with *have* (► 109) and *know* (► 504).

*Have Mrs Hansen come in, please. (especially AmE)*

*I’ve never known him (to) pay for a drink.*

In passive versions of these structures the infinitive with *to* is used.

*He was made to pay back the money.*

*She was heard to say that she disagreed.*

For more information about structures with *let*, ► 512. For *make*, ► 107.

For more information about *see, hear, watch, etc + object + verb*, ► 110.

For verbs that are followed by object + *to*-infinitive, ► 98.
3 after why (not)

We can introduce questions and suggestions with why (not) + infinitive without to. For more details, ► 630.

Why pay more at other shops? We have the lowest prices.
Why stand up if you can sit down? Why sit down if you can lie down?
You’re looking tired. Why not take a break?

4 after and, or, except, but, than, as and like

When two infinitive structures are joined by and, or, except, but, than, as or like, the second is often without to.

I’d like to lie down and sleep.
Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later?
We had nothing to do except look at the sea.
I’m ready to do anything but work on a farm.
It’s easier to do it yourself than explain to somebody else how to do it.
It’s as easy to smile as frown.
I have to feed the animals as well as look after the children.
Why don’t you do something useful like clean the kitchen?
Rather than is usually followed by an infinitive without to.
Rather than wait any more, I decided to go home by taxi.

5 after do

Expressions like All I did was, What I do is, etc can be followed by an infinitive without to.

All I did was (to) give him a little push.
What a fire-door does is (to) delay the spread of a fire.
The only thing we can do is (to) accept.

92 infinitive as subject or complement

1 subject: To practise is important. It’s important to practise.

An infinitive (or a clause beginning with an infinitive) can be the subject of a sentence.

To practise regularly is important.
To wait for people who were late made him angry.
In modern English, this is unusual, and especially unusual in an informal style.
We more often use a structure with it as a preparatory subject (► 268).
It’s important to practise regularly.
It made him angry to wait for people who were late.

We can also use an -ing structure at the beginning of a sentence as the subject, instead of an infinitive (clause) (► 94).

Selling insurance is a boring job. (More natural than To sell insurance . . .)

2 complement: Your task is to get across the river.

An infinitive (clause) can be used after be as a subject complement.

Your task is to get across the river without being seen.
My ambition was to retire at thirty.
Sentences like these can also be constructed with preparatory *it* (► 268).

*It is your task to get across the river without being seen.*

*It was my ambition to retire at thirty.*

For infinitives or infinitive clauses as the objects of verbs, ► 97.

For structures like *He made it difficult to refuse*, ► 269.

93 *-ing forms*: introduction

1 ‘*participles and ‘gerunds*’

We can use *-ing* forms (e.g. *smoking, walking*) not only as verbs, but also like adjectives or nouns. Compare:

*You’re smoking too much these days.* *(verb: part of present progressive)*

*There was a smoking cigarette end in the ashtray.* *(adjective-like: description of cigarette end)*

*Smoking is bad for you.* *(noun-like: subject of sentence)*

When *-ing* forms are used verbally or adjectivally, they are often called ‘present participles’. *(This is not a very suitable name, because these forms can refer to the past, present or future.) When they are used more like nouns, they are often called ‘gerunds’.*

Before nouns, both noun-like *-ing* forms (gerunds) and adjective-like *-ing* forms (participles) can be used. The two structures do not have quite the same kind of meaning. Compare:

*– a waiting room* (= a room for waiting. *Waiting* is a gerund, used rather like a noun. Compare *a guest room.*)

*– a waiting train* (= a train that is waiting. *Waiting* is a participle, used rather like an adjective. Compare *an early train.*)

*– a sleeping pill* (*sleeping* is a gerund)

*– a sleeping child* (*sleeping* is a participle)

*– working conditions* (gerund)

*– working men and women* (participle)

2 perfect, passive and negative *-ing* forms

Note the structure of perfect, passive and negative *-ing* forms.

*Having slept for twelve hours, I felt marvellous.* *(perfect)*

*She loves being looked at.* *(passive)*

*Not knowing what to do, I went home.* *(negative)*

*She’s angry about not having been invited.* *(negative perfect passive)*

3 ‘*participles*’ and ‘*gerunds*’: an unclear difference

The distinction between ‘participles’ and ‘gerunds’ is not always clear-cut, and it can sometimes be difficult to decide which term to use. For this reason, some grammarians prefer to avoid the terms ‘participle’ and ‘gerund’. For a detailed discussion of this point, see Section 17.54 of *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, by Quirk, Greenbaum, Leech and Svartvik (Longman, 1985).

In *Practical English Usage* the expression ‘*-ing form’ is used except when there is a good reason to use one of the other terms.

For spelling of *-ing* forms, ► 346–347.
94 -ing form as subject, object or complement

1 **Smoking is bad for you.**
An -ing form (gerund) can be used, just like a noun, as the subject or complement of a verb.

- **Smoking is bad for you.** (subject)
- **My favourite activity is reading.** (complement)

Infinitives (e.g. To smoke is bad for you) are possible in these cases, but are formal and uncommon.

- **-ing forms** can also be used as objects after certain verbs (► 100).

- **I hate packing.** (object)

2 **-ing form with its own object**
The -ing form subject, complement or object is used like a noun, but it is still a verb and can have its own object.

- **Smoking cigarettes is bad for you.** My favourite activity is reading thrillers.
- **I hate packing suitcases.**

3 **the opening of Parliament; my smoking**
We can often use determiners (for example *the, my, this*) with -ing forms.

- **the opening of Parliament** Does my smoking annoy you?
- **I hate all this useless arguing.**

Possessive 's forms are also possible.

- **Jack’s going to sleep during the wedding was rather embarrassing.**
- **She was angry at Lina’s trying to lie to her.**

Subject pronouns are not possible.

- **His shouting gets on my nerves.** (but not *He shouting . . .*)

Note that possessives and pronouns are not used before -ing forms if it is already clear who is being talked about.

- **Thank you for waiting.** (not *Thank you for your waiting.*)

When an -ing form is used with an article, it cannot usually have a direct object.

Instead, we can use an of-structure.

- **the smoking of cigarettes (NOT the smoking cigarettes)**

No is often used with an -ing form to say that something is not allowed, or is impossible. This often happens in notices and after *there is.*

- **NO SMOKING NO PARKING NO WAITING**

She's made up her mind; there's no arguing with her.

4 **object forms: Do you mind me smoking?**

In an informal style it is more common to use object forms (like *me, Jack*) instead of possessives ( *my, Jack’s*) with -ing forms, especially when these come after a verb or preposition.

- **Do you mind me smoking?**
- **She was angry at Lina lying to her.**

After some verbs (e.g. *see, hear, watch, feel*) possessives are not normally used with -ing forms, in formal or informal language.

- **I saw him getting out of the car.** (not *I saw his getting . . .*)
5  It's nice being with you.

We can use it as a preparatory subject or object for an -ing form (► 268–269).

It's nice being with you.
I thought it pointless starting before eight o'clock.

This is common with any/no good, any/no use and (not) worth (► 634).

It's no good talking to him – he never listens.
Is it any use expecting them to be on time?
It's no use his/him apologising – I will never forgive him.
I didn't think it worth complaining about the meal.

6 nouns and -ing forms

When there is a noun which has a similar meaning to an -ing form, the noun is usually preferred.

We're all excited about his arrival, (not ... about his arriving.)

95 infinitive or -ing form?

Infinitives and -ing forms are often used in similar ways. For instance, they can follow certain verbs, adjectives or nouns (► Section 9). Compare:

He agreed to wait.
He suggested waiting. (NOT He suggested to wait.)

She's ready to listen.
She's good at listening. (NOT She's good to listen.)

the need to talk
the idea of talking (NOT the idea to talk)

Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which verbs, adjectives and nouns are followed by -ing forms, and which are followed by infinitives. It is best to check in a good dictionary.

Expressions with -ing forms can be used both as subjects in sentences, or as complements after be. Infinitives are less common, especially in informal English. Compare:

Smoking cigarettes can kill you. (More natural than To smoke cigarettes can kill you.)

My favourite activity is reading thrillers. (More natural than My favourite activity is to read thrillers.)

A bad rule

Students' grammars sometimes say that infinitives are used when the reference is forward in time, and -ing forms in other cases (as in I expected to see Megan; I enjoyed meeting her parents). Unfortunately, this is not a reliable rule: it's true when it's true, but there are too many exceptions. (Compare I anticipated seeing her brother; I was sorry not to meet him.)
96 participles: -ing and -ed forms used like adjectives

1 names

When -ing forms are used in similar ways to adjectives, they are called 'present participles'. Forms like broken, sung, opened, started are called 'past participles'. But note that both forms can be used for the past, present or future.

- We were nearly hit by falling rocks.
- We haven’t got a single working computer in the office.
- The house is going to be full of screaming children.
- I was taken to hospital with a broken arm.

These cakes are beautifully cooked. Daniel will be surprised to see you.

(The same terms are used when these forms are used as parts of verb tenses, ► Section 1).

2 active and passive

When -ing forms are used like adjectives, they have similar meanings to active verbs.

falling leaves (= leaves that fall)
a meat-eating animal (= an animal that eats meat)

Most past participles have passive meanings when they are used like adjectives.

a broken heart (= a heart that has been broken)
The house looked abandoned. (= . . . as if it had been abandoned.)

3 participles and adjectives: interested and interesting, etc

Some adjectives look like present or past participles (and the difference between adjectives and participles is not always clear). They are discussed here for convenience. These adjectives, too, may have an active/passive contrast. For example, interesting, boring, exciting and confusing have active meanings: they describe things that interest people, bore them and so on. Interested, bored, etc have passive meanings: they show how people are made to feel. Compare:

- The lesson was really interesting.
  I was very interested in the lesson. (not I was very interesting in the lesson.)
- It was a terribly boring party.
  I didn’t enjoy the party because I was bored. (not . . . because I was boring.)
- Granny takes the kids to exciting places.
  The kids get excited when Granny comes. (not . . . The kids get exciting . . .)
- He’s a very confusing writer.
  She explained everything, but I was still very confused.
  (not . . . very confusing.)

4 active past participles: a fallen leaf; advanced students

Some past participles can be used as adjectives with active meanings before nouns.

a fallen leaf (= a leaf that has fallen)
advanced students
developed countries
increased activity
vanished civilisations

a retired general
a collapsed building
a grown-up daughter
an escaped prisoner
faded colours
swollen ankles
Most of these can be used after *be*.

She is retired now. This class is the most advanced.
My family are all grown up. My wrist is swollen.
Those curtains are badly faded.

Some others are used after *be*, but not before nouns.

Why are all those cars stopped at the crossroads? (but not . . . a stopped car)
I hope you’re fully recovered from your operation.
We’re camped in the field across the stream.
I’ll be finished in a few minutes. Those days are gone now.

*Sat* and *stood* are often used like this in informal speech in British English.

When I saw her she was sat on the ground crying.

Why is that man stood in the doorway?

A few past participles are used with active meanings in expressions with adverbials but not otherwise.

*a well-read person* (but not *a read person*)
*a much-travelled man* recently-arrived immigrants
The train just arrived at platform six is the delayed 13.15 from Hereford.

5 **compound structures: English-speaking Canadians**

Participles used as adjectives can have objects. Note the word order.

*English-speaking Canadians*. (not speaking-English Canadians.)
*a fox-hunting man* Is that watch self-winding?

Other compound structures with participles are also common before nouns.

*quick-growing trees* government-inspired rumours
*home-made cake* the above-mentioned point
*a recently-built house*

6 **after nouns: the people questioned**

We often use participles after nouns in order to define or identify the nouns, in the same way as we use identifying relative clauses (► 234).

We couldn’t agree on any of the problems discussed. (= . . . the problems that were discussed.) (not . . . the discussed problems.)

The people questioned gave very different opinions. (= The people who were questioned . . .) (not The questioned people . . .)

I watched the match because I knew some of the people playing. (not . . . the playing people.)

I got the only ticket left. (not . . . the only left ticket.)

Those is often used with a participle to mean ‘the ones who are/were’.

*Most of those questioned* refused to answer.

Those selected will begin training on Monday.

7 **differences of meaning**

A few participles change their meaning according to their position. Compare:

- *a concerned expression* (= a worried expression)
  *the people concerned* (= the people who are/were affected)
- *an involved explanation* (= a complicated explanation)
  *the people involved* (= the same as *the people concerned*)
- *an adopted child* (= a child who is brought up by people who are not his/her biological parents)
  *the solution adopted* (= the solution that is/was chosen)
8 much admired; very frightened

When a past participle is part of a passive verb, we can put much or very much before it, but not very.

He’s (very) much admired by his students. (NOT... very admired...)
Britain’s trade position has been (very) much weakened by inflation.

(NOT... very weakened...)

When a past participle is used as an adjective, we usually prefer very. This is common with words referring to mental states, feelings and reactions.

a very frightened animal (NOT a much frightened animal)
a very shocked expression The children were very bored.

She looked very surprised.

Common exceptions:
That’s Alice, unless I’m (very) much mistaken. (NOT... unless I’m very mistaken)

He’s well known in the art world. (NOT... very known...)

With amused, very and (very) much are both possible.

I was very amused / much amused / very much amused by Miranda’s performance.

9 frightened by / frightened of

By is used after passive verbs to introduce the agent (the person or thing that does the action, ► 58).

Most of the damage was caused by your sister.

After past participles that are used like adjectives, we prefer other prepositions.

Compare:
– She was frightened by a mouse that ran into the room.
  (Frightened is part of a passive verb referring to an action.)

She’s always been terribly frightened of dying.
  (Frightened is an adjective referring to a state of mind.)

– The kids were so excited by the music that they kept screaming.
  Joe’s excited about the possibility of going to the States.

– I was annoyed by the way she spoke to me.
  I’m annoyed with you.

– The burglar was surprised by the family coming home unexpectedly.
  I’m surprised at/by your attitude.

– He was badly shocked by his fall.
  We were shocked at/by the prices in London.

Other examples:

His whereabouts are known to the police.
The hills are covered in snow. The room was filled with thick smoke.

10 special past participle forms: drunken laughter

A few older forms of past participles are still used as adjectives before nouns in certain expressions.

drunken laughter/singing, etc a sunken wreck/ship, etc
a shrunken head rotten fruit/vegetables, etc
INTRODUCTION

**verb + verb**

Infinitive structures can be used after many verbs; structures with *-ing* forms can be used after many others.

*I want to stop now. (NOT I want stopping now.)*

*We enjoyed visiting Edinburgh. (NOT We enjoyed to visit Edinburgh.)*

Some verbs can also be followed by *object + infinitive* or *object + -ing form*.

*I expected him to say something.*

*Jack didn’t hear me calling him.*

After some verbs, more than one of these structures is possible, sometimes with a difference of meaning.

*I don’t remember seeing her before.*

*Remember to buy coffee.*

After some verbs (e.g. *get*, *have*, *hear*), structures with past participles and passive meanings are also possible.

*We had our car broken into.*

*I’ve just seen a man arrested.*

**structures after nouns, adjectives and prepositions**

Many nouns and adjectives can also be followed by structures with infinitives, and many by *preposition + -ing*.

*the need to invest*

*an excuse for leaving*

*happy to see you*

*worried about getting old*

Unfortunately, there is no good way of knowing which verbs, nouns and adjectives are followed by which kind of structure. The more important cases are dealt with in this Section; if in doubt, check in a good dictionary.

Note that prepositions are always followed by *-ing* forms.

*She left without saying goodbye. (NOT . . . without to say goodbye.)*
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

X I enjoy to sail. ► 97
X We don’t expect that you stay. ► 98
X I suggested her to go home. ► 98
X He’s finished to repair the car. ► 100.1
X Cricket is not very interesting to watch it. ► 101.4
X Iron is easy to rust. ► 101.4
X The thought to fail never entered his head. ► 103.1
X Always check the oil before to start the car. ► 104.1
X I look forward to hear from you. ► 104.2
X I forgot buying the soap. ► 105.1
X I wouldn’t advise to take the car. ► 105.4
X I slowly began understanding how she felt. ► 105.10
X Responsible managers never stop to question their decisions. ► 105.12
X Susan was nowhere to find. ► 106.2
X I made her crying. ► 107.1
X I can’t make work the washing machine. ► 107.1
X I can make myself understand in Japanese. ► 107.2
X The rain made wet the grass. ► 107.3
X You have made me be a happy man. ► 107.3
X I must have repaired my watch. ► 109.2
X I saw Emily’s crossing the road. ► 110.2

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

97 infinitives after verbs:
   It’s beginning to rain.
98 verb + object + infinitive:
   I want you to listen.
99 try and . . . , go and . . . , etc
100 -ing forms after verbs:
   I enjoy travelling.
101 infinitives after adjectives:
   pleased to see you
102 infinitives after nouns and pronouns: my decision to leave
103 -ing forms after nouns and adjectives: tired of listening
104 -ing forms after prepositions:
   without breaking eggs
105 infinitives or -ing forms: both possible with different uses
106 active and passive infinitive with similar meaning
107 causative structures with make
108 causative and similar structures with get
109 causative and similar structures with have
110 hear, see, etc + object + verb form
97 infinitives after verbs: It’s beginning to rain.

After many non-auxiliary verbs, we can use the infinitives of other verbs.

It’s beginning to rain.
I don’t want to see you again.
She seems to be crying.
I expect to have finished by tomorrow evening.
The car needs to be cleaned.

Common verbs that can be followed by infinitives (for more detailed entries on some of these, see the Index):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afford</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>fail</th>
<th>intend</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>seem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
<td>choose</td>
<td>go on</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>pretend</td>
<td>swear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>consent</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>propose</td>
<td>trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>manage</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attempt</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(can’t) bear</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>hesitate</td>
<td>neglect</td>
<td>regret</td>
<td>wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of these verbs can be followed by object + infinitive (e.g. I want her to be happy). For details, ➤ 98. A few verbs are followed by verb + for + object + infinitive (e.g. I arranged for her to have violin lessons). For details of these, ➤ 113.7.

After some verbs we can use not only an infinitive but also an -ing form (sometimes with a difference of meaning). For details, ➤ 105.

After some verbs, it is not possible to use an infinitive. Many of these can be followed by -ing forms (➤ 100).

I enjoy sailing. (not I enjoy to sail.)

For perfect infinitives after verbs, ➤ 90. For have + infinitive (e.g. I have to go now), ➤ 74.
For be + infinitive (e.g. You are to start tomorrow), ➤ 42.
For information about the structures that are possible with a particular verb, see a good dictionary.

98 verb + object + infinitive: I want you to listen.

Many verbs are followed by object + infinitive.

I want you to listen.

With some verbs (e.g. want, allow), a that-clause is impossible.

She didn’t want me to go. (not She didn’t want that I go.)
They don’t allow people to smoke. (not They don’t allow that people smoke.)
I didn’t ask you to pay for the meal. (not I didn’t ask that you pay for the meal.)
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc

Some common verbs that can be followed by object + infinitive:

- advise
- forbid
- love
- request
- allow
- force
- mean
- teach
- ask
- get (also ►  108)
- need
- tell
- (can’t) bear
- hate
- oblige
- tempt
- beg
- help (also ► 483)
- order
- trouble
- cause
- instruct
- permit
- want
- command
- intend
- persuade
- warn
- compel
- invite
- prefer
- wish (also ► 632)
- encourage
- leave
- recommend
- expect
- like
- remind

Let, make, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, have, and sometimes know and help, are followed by object + infinitive without to (► 91).

Why won’t you let me explain? I heard her open the door and go out.

Some verbs cannot be followed by object + infinitive; for example suggest.

I suggested that she should go home. (NOT I suggested her to go home.)

Many of the verbs listed above can also be followed by other structures such as an -ing form or a that-clause. For complete information, see a good dictionary.

For passive structures with these verbs, ► 64.
For verbs that are followed by for + object + infinitive (e.g. I arranged for her to go early), ► 113.7.
For object + to be + complement after verbs of thinking and feeling (e.g. I considered him to be an excellent choice), ► 10.3-10.4. For structures with take (e.g. The ferry took two hours to unload), ► 602.

99 try and . . . , go and . . . , etc

1 try / be sure / wait and . . .

We often use and . . . instead of to after try / be sure. This is informal.

Try and eat something – you’ll feel better if you do.
I’ll try and phone you tomorrow morning.
Be sure and ask Uncle Joe about his garden.

Note also the common expression Wait and see.

‘What’s for lunch?’ ‘Wait and see.’

We only use this structure with the simple base forms try / be sure / wait. It is not possible, for example, with tries, trying, was sure or waited. Compare:

I try and keep a straight face when he talks, but I can’t help smiling.
She tries to keep a straight face . . . (NOT She tries and keeps . . .)
Try and eat something.
I tried to eat something. (NOT I tried-and ate something.)

We waited to see what would happen. (NOT We waited and saw . . .)

2 come/go, etc and . . .

Come and . . ., go and . . ., run and . . ., hurry up and . . ., stay and . . . are often used informally.

Come and have a drink. Stay and have dinner. Hurry up and open the door.

With these verbs, the structure is not only used with the base form.

He often comes and spends the evening with us.
She stayed and played with the children.
She thought of going and getting him.
3 American English

In informal American English, *and* is sometimes dropped after the base forms *go* and *come.*

*Let's go see if Anne's home.*  *Go jump in the river.*  *Come sit on my lap.*

100 *-ing* forms after verbs: *I enjoy travelling.*

1 verbs that can be followed by *-ing* forms

After some verbs we can use an *-ing* form (gerund), but not normally an infinitive.

*I enjoy travelling.*  (*not* *I enjoy to travel*)
*He's finished repairing the car.*  (*not* *He's finished to repair...*)
*She's given up smoking.*  (*not* ... *given up to smoke.*)
*The doctor suggested taking a long rest.*  (*not* *The doctor suggested to take...*)

Some common verbs that are normally followed by *-ing* forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>admit</th>
<th>dislike</th>
<th>give up</th>
<th>practise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
<td>endure</td>
<td>(can't) help</td>
<td>put off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>resent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst out (crying/laughing)</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>involve</td>
<td>resist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>face</td>
<td>keep (on)</td>
<td>risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contemplate</td>
<td>fancy</td>
<td>mention</td>
<td>(can't) stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>miss</td>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detest</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>postpone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs can be followed by both *-ing* forms and infinitives (*► 100.4 below*). Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which structures are possible after a particular verb. It is best to check in a good dictionary.

2 verb + object + *-ing* form: *I dislike people telling me...*

Some of the verbs listed above, and some others, can be followed by object + *-ing* form.

*I dislike people telling me what to think.*
*I can't imagine him working in an office.*
*Nobody can stop him doing what he wants to.*
*He spends all his time gardening.*
*I caught the next-door children stealing my apples.*
*We found a dead mouse lying on the kitchen floor.*

*Stop* (in an informal style) and *prevent* are often followed by object + *from* + *-ing* form.

*Try to stop/prevent them (from) finding out.*

Note that after many verbs we can use possessive + *-ing* form rather than object + *-ing* form, especially in a formal style. (*► 94.3 for details.*)
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc

3 **-ing form with passive meaning:** Your hair needs cutting.
   After deserve, need and require, the -ing form has a passive sense. This structure is more common in British than American English.

   I don't think his article deserves reading. (= . . . deserves to be read.)
   Your hair needs cutting. (= . . . needs to be cut.)
   In informal British English, want can also be used like this.
   The car wants servicing. (= . . . needs to be serviced.)

4 **-ing form or infinitive**
   After some verbs, either an -ing form or an infinitive can be used. These include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advise</th>
<th>forbid</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>start</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>intend</td>
<td>propose</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't bear</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>regret</td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>go on</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continue</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>permit</td>
<td>see</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   In some cases there is a difference of meaning: ► 105, 110.

101 **infinitives after adjectives:** pleased to see you

1 **reactions and feelings:** pleased to see you
   Infinitives are often used after adjectives describing reactions and feelings.
   I'm pleased to see you. We're happy to be here. She's anxious to go home.
   Jack was surprised to get Anna's message.
   I was shocked to see how ill he was.
   Most people are afraid to hear the truth about themselves.
   Not all adjectives of this kind are followed by infinitives. Some are followed by
   preposition + -ing form ► 103), or by that-clauses (► 192). Some adjectives (e.g. afraid, sure) can be followed by either an infinitive or an -ing form, often with a difference of meaning; for details, ► 105.13-105.16.

   For structures with for (e.g. She's anxious for the children to go home), ► 113.

2 **other adjectives:** certain to win
   Besides adjectives referring to reactions and feelings, many other adjectives can be followed by infinitives. Examples: right, wrong, stupid, certain (► 105.15), welcome, careful, due, fit, able (► 85), likely (► 516), lucky.
   We were right to start early. Be careful not to wake the children.
   I was stupid to believe him. It's very likely to rain.
   She's certain to win. You were lucky not to be killed.
   You're welcome to stay as long as you like.

   For structures with preparatory it (e.g. It is important to get enough sleep), ► 268.

3 **superlatives, etc:** the oldest athlete to win . . .
   Superlatives can be followed by an infinitive structure. The meaning is similar to an identifying relative clause (► 234).
He's the oldest athlete ever to win an Olympic gold medal. (= . . . who has ever won . . .)
This structure is also common with first, second, third, etc, next, last and only.
Who was the first person to climb Everest without oxygen?
The next to arrive was Mrs Patterson.
She's the only scientist to have won three Nobel prizes.
This structure is only possible when the superlative has a subject relationship with the infinitive.
Is this the first time that you have stayed here? (Not . . . the first time for you to stay here. Time is not the subject of stay.)

4 easy to please
Some adjectives can be used with infinitives in a special structure, in which the subject of the clause is really the object of the infinitive. Examples are easy, hard, difficult, impossible, good, ready, and adjectives after enough and too.
He's easy to please. (= To please him is easy. or It is easy to please him.)
Japanese is difficult for Europeans to learn. (= It is difficult for Europeans to learn Japanese.)
His theory is impossible to understand. (= It is impossible to understand his theory.)
Are these berries good to eat? The apples were ripe enough to pick.
The report is ready for you to check. The box was too heavy to lift.
The structure often ends with a preposition (► 209.5).
She's nice to talk to. He's very easy to get on with.
It's not a bad place to live in.
There is no object pronoun after the infinitive or preposition in these cases.
Cricket is not very interesting to watch. (Not Cricket is not very interesting to watch it.)
She's nice to talk to. (Not She's nice to talk to her.)
When the adjective is before a noun, the infinitive is usually after the noun.
It's a good wine to keep. (Not It's a good to keep wine.)
Easy, difficult and impossible cannot be used in this structure when the subject of the clause is the subject of the following verb.
She has difficulty learning maths. (Not She is difficult to learn maths.)
Iron rusts easily. (Not Iron is easy to rust.)
This material can't possibly catch fire. (Not This material is impossible to catch fire.)

For more about enough/too + adjective + infinitive, ► 450, 610.
For so + adjective + infinitive (e.g. Would you be so kind as to help me?), ► 584.8.
For information about the structures that are possible with a particular adjective, see a good dictionary.

102 infinitives after nouns and pronouns: my decision to leave

1 nouns related to verbs: no wish to change
We can use infinitives after some nouns which are related to verbs that can be followed by infinitives (e.g. wish, decide, need).
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc

I have no wish to change. (= I do not wish to change.)
I told her about my decision to leave. (= I told her that I had decided to leave.)
Is there any need to ask Jasmine? (= Do we need to ask Jasmine?)

Not all nouns can be followed by infinitives in this way.

I hate the thought of getting old. (NOT . . . the thought to get old.)
And note that not all related verbs and nouns are followed by the same structures. Compare:
- I hope to arrive.
  There’s no hope of arriving.
- She prefers to live alone.
  I understand her preference for living alone.
- I do not intend to return.
  I have no intention of returning.

Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which structures are possible after a particular noun. It is best to check in a good dictionary.

2 nouns related to adjectives: You were a fool to agree.

We can also use infinitives after some nouns which are related to adjectives, or which have an adjectival sense.

You were a fool to agree. (= You were foolish to agree.)
What a nuisance to have to go! (= How annoying to have to go!)
It’s a pleasure to see you again. (= It’s pleasant to see you again.)

3 purpose: a key to open the door

An infinitive can be used after a noun, or an indefinite pronoun like something, to explain the purpose of a particular thing: what it does, or what somebody does with it. The noun or pronoun can be like the subject of the infinitive.

Have you got a key to open this door? (The key will open the door.)
It was a war to end all wars. I'd like something to stop my toothache.

The noun or pronoun can also be like the object of the infinitive.

I need some more books to read. (I will read the books.)
Is there any milk to put on the cornflakes?
Did you tell her which bus to take? Is there anything to drink?

If the noun or pronoun is the object of the infinitive, we do not add an object pronoun after the infinitive.

I gave her a paper to read. (NOT ... a paper to read it.)
He needs a place to live in. (NOT . . . a place to live in it.)

Some/any/nowhere can also be followed by infinitives.

The kids want somewhere to practise their music.

4 enough, too much, etc

Quantifiers like enough, too much/many/little/few, plenty, etc are often followed by noun + infinitive.

There was enough light to see what I was doing.
There’s too much snow (for us) to be able to drive.
We’ve got plenty of time to see the British Museum.

Enough is often dropped before room and time.

There’s hardly (enough) room to breathe in here.
Do you think we’ll have (enough) time to do some shopping?
5 infinitive with preposition: a friend to play with

A noun can be followed by infinitive + preposition.

Emily needs a friend to play with. They're looking for a room to meet in.

In a very formal style, another structure is possible: noun + preposition + whom/which + infinitive.

Emily needs a friend with whom to play.

They're looking for a room in which to meet.

This is not possible when there is no preposition. One cannot say, for example, I need a book which to read.

6 the life to come, etc

In expressions like the life to come (= life after death), the world to come, his wife to be (= his future wife), the infinitive has a future meaning, and is similar to a relative clause with be (= the life/world that is to come, etc).

For infinitives used to talk about people’s purposes, ► 112.
For passive infinitives (e.g. There’s work to be done), ► 106.
For for + object + infinitive (e.g. Is there any need for us to stay?), ► 113.5.
For infinitives after first, next, last or superlative + noun (e.g. the first woman to climb Everest), ► 101.3.
For more about structures with prepositions at the end, ► 209.

103 -ing forms after nouns and adjectives: tired of listening

1 the idea of getting old; tired of listening

Some nouns and adjectives can be followed by -ing forms. A preposition is normally used to connect the noun/adjective to the -ing form. Nouns/adjectives that are followed by -ing forms cannot usually be followed by infinitives (► 105.11, 105.13–105.16 for some exceptions with adjectives).

I hate the idea of getting old. (not... the idea to get old.)

The thought of failing never entered his head. (not The thought to fail...)

I’m tired of listening to this. (not I’m tired to listen...)

She’s very good at solving problems. (not... good to solve...)

Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which nouns and adjectives can be followed by -ing forms. It is best to check in a good dictionary.

2 purpose: a machine for cutting

For + -ing form can be used after a noun, or after an indefinite pronoun such as something or anything, to explain the purpose of an object or material – what it is for.

A strimmer is a machine for cutting grass and weeds.

Have you got any stuff for cleaning silver?

I need something for killing flies.

This structure is mostly used to talk in general about types of object and material. When we talk about somebody’s purpose in using a particular object, we are more likely to use an infinitive (► 468.2).

I must find something to kill that fly.
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc

3 -ing form or infinitive

After a few nouns and adjectives, we can use either an -ing form or an infinitive. Normally there is little or no difference of meaning (► 105.13–105.16 for some exceptions with adjectives).

We have a good chance of making / to make a profit.
I’m proud of having won / to have won.

For be used to . . .ing.► 615.

104 -ing forms after prepositions: without breaking eggs

1 after all prepositions

When we put a verb after a preposition, we normally use an -ing form (gerund), not an infinitive.

- You can’t make an omelette without breaking eggs. (NOT . . . without to break eggs.)
- Always check the oil before starting the car. (NOT . . . before to start the car.)
- We got the job finished by working sixteen hours a day.
- He’s talking about moving to the country.
- I like to cycle to work instead of driving. (NOT . . . instead to drive . . .)

2 to as a preposition: I look forward to . . .ing

To is actually two different words. It can be an infinitive marker, used to show that the next word is an infinitive (e.g. to swim, to laugh). It can also be a preposition, followed for example by a noun (e.g. She’s gone to the park, I look forward to Christmas).

When to is a preposition, it can be followed by the -ing form of a verb, but not normally by the infinitive. Common expressions in which this happens are look forward to, object to, be used to, prefer (doing one thing to doing another), get round to, in addition to.

In the following examples, note how the preposition to can be followed by either a noun or an -ing form.

- I look forward to your next email.
  I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT . . . to hear from you.)
- Do you object to Sunday work?
  Do you object to working on Sundays?
- I’m not used to London traffic.
  I’m not used to driving in London.
- I prefer the seaside to the mountains.
  I prefer swimming to walking.
- I’ll get round to the bills sooner or later.
  I’ll get round to paying the bills sooner or later.

A few verbs and adjectives are used with to before nouns, but are followed by the infinitives of verbs. Examples are agree, consent, entitled, inclined, prone.

She agreed to our plan. / She agreed to do what we wanted.
He’s inclined to anger. / He’s inclined to lose his temper.

Accustomed can be followed by to + -ing form or an infinitive (► 105.11).
object + infinitive after for: for her to arrive

Note that some verbs are followed by for + object + infinitive. An -ing form is not usually possible in these cases.

We're still waiting for her to arrive. (NOT . . . waiting for her arriving.)
Can you arrange for us to get tickets? (NOT . . . for our getting tickets?)

For the difference between used to + infinitive and be used to + -ing form, ► 87.
For -ing forms after conjunctions (e.g. When planning a trip . . .), ► 115.6.
For time clauses with on + -ing form, ► 115.6.

105 infinitives or -ing forms: both possible with different uses

Some verbs and adjectives can be followed by either -ing forms or infinitives (► 100.4).

I started playing / to play the violin when I was 10.
She was proud of having / to have won.

With some of these verbs and adjectives, there is a difference of meaning.

1 remember and forget

Remember/forget + -ing form looks back at the past – at things that one did.
Forget . . . ing is used mostly in the phrase I’ll never forget . . . ing, and expressions with similar meanings.

I still remember buying my first bicycle.
I’ll never forget meeting the Queen.

Remember/forget + infinitive looks forward in time – at things that one still has or still had to do at the moment of remembering or forgetting.

You must remember to fetch Mr Lewis from the station tomorrow.
I forgot to buy the soap.

2 go on

Go on + -ing form means ‘continue’.
She went on talking about her illness until we all went to sleep.
Go on + infinitive refers to a change of activity.
She stopped talking about that and went on to describe her other problems.

3 regret

Regret + -ing form looks back at the past – at something that one is sorry that one did.

I regret leaving school at 16 – it was a big mistake.
Regret + infinitive is used mostly in announcements of bad news.
We regret to inform passengers that the 14.50 train is one hour late.
We regret to say that we are unable to help you.
4 advise, allow, permit and forbid

In active clauses after these verbs, we use an -ing form if there is no object.
If there is an object we normally use an infinitive. Compare:
- I wouldn't advise taking the car – there's nowhere to park.
  I wouldn't advise you to take the car . . .
- We don't allow/permit smoking in the lecture room.
  We don't allow/permit people to smoke in the lecture room.
- The headmistress has forbidden singing in the corridors.
  The headmistress has forbidden children to sing . . .

Note the corresponding passive structures.
- Smoking is not allowed/permitted in the lecture room.
  People are not allowed/permitted to smoke in the lecture room.
- Singing is forbidden.
- Children are forbidden to sing.
- Early reservation is advised.
  Passengers are advised to reserve early.

5 see, watch and hear

After these verbs, the difference between object + -ing form and object + infinitive is like the difference between progressive and simple tenses. With -ing forms the verbs suggest that one pays attention to events or actions that are already going on; infinitives usually refer to complete events/actions which are seen/heard from beginning to end. (Note that these verbs are followed by the infinitive without to.) Compare:
- I looked out of the window and saw Emily crossing the road.
  I saw Emily cross the road and disappear into the bank.
- As I passed his house I heard him practising the piano.
  I once heard Brendel play all the Beethoven concertos.

For more details, ► 110.

6 try

To talk about doing something to see what will happen, we use try + -ing.
  I tried sending her flowers, writing her letters, giving her presents, but she still
  wouldn't speak to me.
To talk about making an effort to do something difficult, we can use either
try + infinitive or try + -ing.
  I tried to change the wheel, but my hands were too cold. (or I tried changing
  the wheel . . .)

7 mean

Mean in the sense of 'involve', 'have as a result' (► 526) can be followed by an
-ing form.
  If you want to pass the exam, it will mean studying hard.
In the sense of 'intend', mean is followed by an infinitive.
  I don't think she means to get married for the moment.

8 learn and teach

These verbs (and others with similar meanings) are followed by -ing forms
mostly when we are referring to lessons or subjects of study.
She goes to college twice a week to learn coding.
Mr Garland teaches skiing in the winter.
Infinitives are preferred when we talk about the result of the study – about successfully learning a skill.

She learned to read German at school, but she learned to speak it in Germany.

I taught myself to code.

9 like, love, hate and prefer

After these four verbs, both infinitives and -ing forms can often be used without a great difference of meaning.

I hate working / to work at weekends.
I don’t get up on Sundays. I prefer staying / to stay in bed.

Like + infinitive is used to talk about choices and habits. Compare:

I like climbing / to climb mountains. (Like = ‘enjoy’: both forms possible)
When I pour tea I like to put the milk in first. (Like = ‘choose’: infinitive more natural)

Hate + infinitive can be used to introduce unwelcome news.

I hate to tell you this, but we’re going to miss the train.

After would like, would prefer, would hate and would love, infinitives are most often used.

I’d like to tell you something. (NOT I’d like telling you something.)
‘Can I give you a lift?’ ‘No thanks, I’d prefer to walk.’

(Not . . . I’d prefer walking.)

Compare:

Do you like dancing? (= Do you enjoy dancing?)
Would you like to dance? (= Do you want to dance now?)

For more about like, ► 514. For details of structures with prefer, ► 560.

10 begin and start

Begin and start can be followed by infinitives or -ing forms. Usually there is no important difference.

She began playing / to play the guitar when she was six.
He started talking / to talk about golf, and everybody went out of the room.

After progressive forms of begin and start, infinitives are preferred.

I’m beginning to learn karate. (NOT I’m beginning learning karate.)

Infinitives are also preferred with understand, realise and know.

I slowly began to understand how she felt. (NOT . . . began understanding . . .)

He started to realise that if you wanted to eat you had to work. (NOT . . . started realising . . .)

11 attempt, intend, continue, can’t bear, be accustomed to, be committed to

After these words and expressions we can generally use either an -ing form or an infinitive without much difference of meaning.

I intend telling / to tell her what I think.
I’m not accustomed to giving/give personal information about myself to strangers.

For details of structures with to + -ing, ► 104.2.
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles after Nouns, Verbs, etc

12 -ing form or infinitive of purpose: stop
Some verbs that are followed by -ing forms can also be followed by an infinitive of purpose (► 112). A common example is stop. Compare:

I stopped running. (not . . . I stopped to run.)
I stopped to rest. (= . . . in order to rest.)

13 afraid
To talk about fear of things that happen accidentally, we prefer afraid of + -ing.

I don’t like to drive fast because I’m afraid of crashing.

‘Why are you so quiet?’ ‘I’m afraid of waking the children.’

In other cases we can use afraid of + -ing or afraid + infinitive with no difference of meaning.

I’m not afraid of telling / to tell her the truth.

14 sorry
Sorry for/about + -ing is used to refer to past things that one regrets.

(That-clauses are also very common in an informal style.)

I’m sorry for/about losing my temper this morning. (or I’m sorry that I lost my temper.)

Sorry + perfect infinitive (more formal) can be used with the same meaning.

I’m sorry to have woken you up. (or I’m sorry that I woke you up.)

Sorry + infinitive is used to apologise for current situations – things that one is doing or going to do, or that one has just done.

Sorry to disturb you – could I speak to you for a moment?

I’m sorry to tell you that you failed the exam.

Sorry to keep you waiting – we can start now.

15 certain and sure
Certain/sure of + -ing are used to refer to the feelings of the person one is talking about.

Before the game she felt certain of winning, but after a few minutes she realised it wasn’t going to be so easy.

You seem very sure of passing the exam. I hope you’re right.

Certain/sure + infinitive refer to the speaker’s or writer’s own feelings.

The repairs are certain to cost more than you think. (Note The repairs are certain of costing . . .

Kroftova’s sure to win – the other girl hasn’t got a chance. (= ‘I am sure she will win.’)

16 interested
To talk about reactions to things one learns, interested + infinitive is commonly used.

I was interested to read in the paper that scientists have found out how to talk to whales.

I’m interested to see that Alice and Jake are going out together.

I shall be interested to see how long it lasts.

To talk about a wish to find out something, both interested in + -ing and interested + infinitive are common.

I’m interested in finding out / to find out what she did with all that money. →
 Aren't you interested in knowing / to know whether I'm pregnant?  
To talk about a wish to do something, we use interested in with an -ing form. 
I'm interested in working in Switzerland. Do you know anybody who could 
help me? (not I'm interested to work in Switzerland...)

106 active and passive infinitive with similar meaning

1 obligation
We can use noun + infinitive to talk about obligation – things that people have 
to do. Active and passive infinitives are often both possible.
- There's a lot of work to do / to be done.
- Give me the names of the people to contact / to be contacted.
- The people to interview / to be interviewed are in the next room.

We prefer active infinitives if we are thinking more about the person who will do 
the action.
- I've got work to do. (NOT I've got work to be done.)
- They've sent Megan a form to complete.

We use passive infinitives if we are thinking more about the action, or the 
person/thing that the action is done to.
- The carpets to be cleaned are in the garage. (NOT The carpets to clean...)
- His desk is covered with forms to be filled in.

After be, we normally use passive infinitives.
- These sheets are to be washed. (NOT These sheets are to wash.)
- This form is to be filled in in ink. (NOT This form is to fill in...)
- The cleaning is to be finished by midday. (NOT... is to finish...)

2 to be seen/found/congratulated, etc
Note the expressions anywhere/nowhere to be seen/found.
- He wasn't anywhere to be seen. (NOT... anywhere to see.)
- Susan was nowhere to be found. (NOT... nowhere to find.)

We also use passive infinitives to express value judgements with verbs like 
congratulate, encourage, avoid.
- You are to be congratulated. (NOT... to congratulate.)
- This behaviour is to be encouraged.

But note the common expression to blame, meaning 'responsible' (for some 
unfortunate event).
- Nobody was to blame for the accident.

3 nothing to do and nothing to be done, etc
Note the difference between nothing to do and nothing to be done.
- I'm bored – there's nothing to do. (= There are no entertainments.)
- There's nothing to be done – we'll have to buy a new one. (= There's no way 
of putting it right.)

For structures like She's easy to amuse, ► 101.4.
For structures with take (e.g. The ferry took two hours to unload), ► 602.
For more about be + infinitive, ► 42.
107 causative structures with make

1 object + infinitive

After *make* + object, we use the infinitive without *to* (► 91).

*I made her cry.* (NOT *I made her to cry* or *I made her crying*)

Note that the infinitive must follow the object.

*I can’t make the washing machine work.* (NOT *I can’t make work the washing machine*)

In passive structures the infinitive with *to* is used.

*She was made to repeat the whole story.*

2 make oneself understood, etc

In a few cases *make* can be followed by *myself, yourself, etc*, and a past participle. The structure is common with *understood* and *heard*.

*I don’t speak good Japanese, but I can make myself understood.*

(NOT . . . *make myself understand.*)

*She had to shout to make herself heard.*

3 with object + object complement: make people welcome, etc

We can talk about an effect or change with *make* + object + adjective/noun (► 10).

*She made everybody welcome.*

*The rain made the grass wet.* (NOT *The rain made wet the grass.*)

We do not use *make . . . be* in this structure.

*You have made me a happy man.* (NOT *You have made me be a happy man.*)

108 causative and similar structures with get

1 causative: Don’t get him talking.

*Get* + object + . . . *ing* means ‘make somebody/something start . . . *ing’.

*Don’t get him talking about his illnesses.*

*Once we got the heater going the car started to warm up.*

2 causative: Get Penny to help us.

*Get* + object + infinitive means ‘make somebody/something do something’ or ‘persuade somebody/something to do something’: there is often an idea of difficulty.

*I can’t get that child to go to bed.* *Get Penny to help us if you can.*

*See if you can get the car to start.*

For *have* + object + infinitive (meaning ‘order/instruct somebody to do something’), ► 109.1.
3 causative: *get something done*

*Get* + *object* + *past participle* can mean 'cause something to be done by somebody else'. The past participle has a passive meaning.

> I must get my watch repaired. (= I want my watch to be repaired.)

> I'm going to get my hair cut this afternoon.

*Have* is used in a similar structure, ► 109.2.

4 experience: *We got our roof blown off.*

*Get* + *object* + *past participle* can sometimes be used in the sense of 'experience'.

> We got our roof blown off in the storm last week.

This idea is more often expressed with *have* (e.g. *We had our roof blown off*).

> ► 109.4

5 *Get the children dressed.*

We can also use *get* + *object* + *past participle* to talk about completing work on something.

> It will take me another hour to get the washing done.

> After you've got the children dressed, can you make the beds?

109 causative and similar structures with *have*

*Have* can be followed by *object* + *infinitive* (without *to*), *object* + *-ing*, and *object* + *past participle*.

1 causative: *have somebody do/doing something*

*Have* + *object* + *infinitive* can mean 'cause somebody to do something'. This is mostly used in American English, to talk about giving instructions or orders.

> I'm ready to see Mr Smith. Have him come in, please.

> The manager had everybody fill out a form.

The structure with an *-ing* form can mean 'cause somebody to be doing something' (BrE and AmE).

> He had us laughing all through the meal.

For *get* + *object* + *infinitive* (meaning 'persuade somebody/something to do something'), ► 108.2.

2 causative: *have something done*

*Have* + *object* + *past participle* can mean 'cause something to be done by somebody else'. The past participle has a passive meaning.

> I must have my watch repaired. (= I want my watch to be repaired.)

> I'm going to have my hair cut this afternoon. (= I want my hair to be cut.)

*Get* is used in a similar structure, ► 108.3.

3 experience: *have something happen/happening*

In the structure *have* + *object* + *infinitive*/*-ing*, *have* can mean 'experience'.

> I had a very strange thing happen to me when I was fourteen.

> We had a tax inspector come to the office yesterday.
It's lovely to have children playing in the garden again.
I looked up and found we had water dripping through the ceiling.

Note the difference between the infinitive in the first two examples (for things that happened), and the -ing form in the last two (for things that are/were happening). This is like the difference between simple and progressive tenses (► 3.2).

4 experience: We had our roof blown off.

*Have + object + past participle* can also be used in the sense of 'experience'.
Again, the past participle has a passive meaning.

We had our roof blown off in the storm.
I had my car stolen last week.

5 I won't have . . .

*I won't have + object + verb form* can mean 'I won't allow . . .'

I won't have you telling me what to do.
I won't have my house turned into a hotel.

110 hear, see, etc + object + verb form

1 I heard him go/going.

*Hear, see, watch, notice* and similar verbs of perception can be followed by
object + *infinitive* (without to) or object + *-ing form*.

*I heard him go down the stairs. OR I heard him going down the stairs.*
(Not I heard him went down the stairs.)

There is often a difference of meaning. After these verbs, an infinitive suggests that we hear or see the whole of an action or event; an -ing form suggests that we hear or see something in progress, going on. Compare:

- I saw her cross the road. (= I saw her cross it from one side to the other.)
- I saw her crossing the road. (= I saw her in the middle, on her way across.)
- I once heard him give a talk on Japanese politics.
- As I walked past his room I heard him talking on the phone.
- Watch me jump over the stream.
- I like to watch people walking in the street.
- I heard the bomb explode. (Not I heard the bomb exploding.)
- I saw the book lying on the table. (Not I saw the book lie . . .)

A progressive form can suggest repetition.

I saw her throwing stones at the other children.

After *can see/hear* (which refer to actions and events that are in progress, ► 84), only the -ing structure is used.

I could see Jack getting on the bus. (Not I could see Jack get . . .)

These structures can be used after passive forms of *hear* and *see*. In this case, the infinitive has to.

He was never heard to say 'thank you' in his life. (Not He was never heard say . . .)

Justice must not only be done; it must be seen to be done.
She was seen walking away from the accident.

Passive forms of *watch* and *notice* are not used in this way.
2 possessives not used

After these verbs, possessives cannot be used with -ing forms.

*I saw Chloe talking to Mia. (not I saw Chloe's talking to Mia.)*

3 I heard my name repeated.

In this structure, the past participle has a passive meaning.

*I heard my name repeated several times. (= My name was repeated.)

Have you ever seen a television thrown through a window?
The idea of 'action or event in progress' can be given by a progressive form (being + past participle).

As I watched the tree being cut down . . .
I woke up to hear the bedroom door being opened slowly.

4 Look at him eating!

*Look at* can be followed by object + -ing form, and in American English also by object + infinitive.

Look at him eating! Look at him eat! (AmE)

For more about verbs that can be followed by both infinitives and -ing forms, ➤ 105.

For the difference between hear and listen, ➤ 481. For see, look and watch, ➤ 575.
INTRODUCTION

Infinitives, -ing forms and participles can all begin clauses.

I'd like to look at those papers again. (infinitive clause)
She ran out laughing like a hyena. (participle clause)
Cooked in a slow oven, it will taste delicious. (participle clause)

This Section deals with a few more complex structures of this kind.

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

× I can’t understand why to do it. ► 111.1
× How to tell her? ► 111.2
× Looking out of our window, the mountains were marvellous. ► 115.4
× I’m going to Austria for learning German. ► 112.1
× It's probable for her to be in a bad temper. ► 113.4
× I need for you to help me. ► 113.7

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

111 infinitives after question words: who to . . ., etc
112 infinitive of purpose: I sat down to rest.
113 for . . . to . . .
114 infinitives: other uses
115 participle clauses
111 infinitives after question words:
who to . . . , etc

1 indirect questions: **Tell us what to do.**

In indirect speech (► 262.2), we can use an infinitive after the question words who, what, where, etc (but not usually why). This structure expresses ideas such as obligation and possibility.

* I wonder **who to invite.** (= . . . who I should invite.)
  * Tell us **what to do.**
  * Can you show me **how to get to the station?** (= . . . how I can get to the station?)
  * I don’t know **where to put the car.**
  * Tell me **when to pay.**
  * I can’t decide **whether to answer her email.**
    *(BUT NOT I can’t understand why to do it.)*

2 direct questions: **What shall we do?**

We do not usually begin a direct question with **How to . . . ?, What to . . . ?,** etc. After question words, we often use shall and should.

* **How shall I tell her?** (NOT How to tell her?)
  * **What shall we do?** (NOT What to do?)
  * **Who should I pay?** (NOT Who to pay?)

3 titles: **What to do if fire breaks out.**

* **How to . . . , What to . . . ,** etc are often found as titles for instructions, information leaflets, books, etc. (Note: these are not questions.)
  * HOW TO IMPROVE YOUR PRONUNCIATION
  * WHAT TO DO IF FIRE BREAKS OUT

For questions beginning Why (not) + infinitive, ► 630.

112 infinitive of purpose: **I sat down to rest.**

1 **I sat down to rest.**

We often use an infinitive to talk about a person’s purpose – why he or she does something.

* **I sat down to rest.** (NOT I sat down for resting / for to rest.)
  * He went abroad to forget.  I’m going to Austria to learn German.
  * **To switch on,** press red button.
2 **in order to; so as to**

We can also use *in order to* . . . (more formal) or *so as to* . . .

- He got up early *in order to* have time to pack.
- I watched him *in order to* know more about him.
- I moved to a new flat *so as to* be near my work.

*In order to* / *so as to* are normal before negative infinitives.

- *I'm going to leave now, so as not to be late.* (More natural than *I'm going to leave now, not to be late.*)

A *for*-structure (► 113) can be used to talk about a purpose that involves action by somebody else.

- *I left the door unlocked for Harriet to get in.*

113 **for ... to ...**

1 **infinitive with its own subject**

The structure *for* + noun/pronoun + infinitive is very common in English. It is used when an infinitive needs its own subject. Compare:

- *Anna will be happy to help you.* (Anna will help.)
- *Anna will be happy for the children to help you.* (The children will help.)
- *My idea was to learn Russian.*
- *My idea was for her to learn Russian.*
- *To ask Joe would be a big mistake.*
- *For you to ask Joe would be a big mistake.* (NOT *You to ask Joe would be* . . . )

Note that the subject of the infinitive is the object of the preposition *for*. Object forms of pronouns are used.

- *Anna will be happy for them to help you.* (NOT . . . for they to help you.)

2 **use**

The structure is often used when we are referring to possibility, necessity or frequency, when we are expressing wishes, suggestions or plans for the future, and when we are giving personal reactions to situations. Like other infinitive structures, it is used especially after adjectives, nouns and verbs; it can also act as the subject of a clause. It often has the same meaning as a *that*-clause, but is generally less formal and often more natural. Compare:

- *It's important for the meeting to start on time.*
- *It's important that the meeting should start on time.*

3 **after adjectives**: anxious for us to see . . .

The structure *for* + object + infinitive can be used after certain adjectives which express wishes and other personal feelings about the importance or value of future events (e.g. anxious, eager, delighted, willing, reluctant).

- *She's anxious for us to see her work.*
- *I'm eager for the party to be a success.*
- *Robert says he'd be delighted for Emily to come and stay.*

grammar • 113 for . . . to . . .
4 It's impossible for . . . to . . .

For-structures with preparatory it (► 268) are common with many adjectives expressing possibility, necessity, importance, urgency, frequency and value judgements.

\[
\text{it + verb + adjective + for + object + infinitive}
\]

\[
\text{verb + it + adjective + for + object + infinitive}
\]

It's impossible for the job to be finished in time.
Would it be easy for you to phone me tomorrow?
It's important for the meeting to start at eight.
It seems unnecessary for him to start work this week.
I consider it essential for the school to be well heated.
Is it usual for foxes to come so close to the town?
I thought it strange for her to be out so late.
It's not good for the oil tank to be so close to the house.

Other common adjectives that are used in this way include vital, necessary, pointless, unimportant, common, normal, unusual, rare, right, wrong. Note that likely and probable are not used like this.

She's likely to arrive this evening. (NOT It's likely for her to arrive this evening.)
It's probable that she'll be in a bad temper. Or She'll probably be . . .
(NOT It's probable for her to be . . .)

5 after nouns: It's a good idea for us to . . .

The structure can also be used after nouns in expressions with meanings similar to the adjectives listed above. Examples are: time, a good/bad idea, plan, aim, need, request, mistake, shame.

It's time for everybody to go to bed.
It's a good idea for us to travel in separate cars.
There's a plan for Jack to spend a year in Japan.
Our aim is for students to learn as quickly as possible.
It was a big mistake for them not to keep John as manager.
It was a real shame for them not to win after all their work.

6 something for me to do

Something, anything, nothing and similar words are often followed by for + object + infinitive.

Have you got something for me to do?
There's nothing for the cats to eat.
Is there anybody for Louise to play with in the village?
I must find somewhere for him to practise the piano.
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles: Other Uses

Section 10

7 after verbs: ask for... to...

For-structures are not normally used as objects after verbs.

I need you to help me. (not I need for you to help me.)

However, verbs which are normally followed by for (e.g. ask, hope, wait, look, pay, arrange) can often be used with for + object + infinitive.

Anna asked for the designs to be ready by Friday.

I can't wait for them to finish talking.

Can you arrange for the gold to be delivered on Monday? (not... for the gold being delivered)

A few other verbs can be used like this, e.g. suit and take (time).

When will it suit you for us to call?

It took twenty minutes for the smoke to clear.

In informal American English, like, hate, mean, intend and some other verbs with similar meanings can be used with a for-structure. This is not usually possible in British English.

I would like for you to stay as long as you want.

She hates for people to feel sad.

Did you mean for Jack to take the car?

8 after too and enough

A for-structure is often used after too and enough.

This is much too heavy for you to lift.

There are too many people here for me to talk to all of them.

Do you think it's warm enough for the snow to melt?

I explained enough for her to understand what was happening.

9 as subject

The for-structure can be the subject of a clause.

For us to fail now would be a disaster.

For her to lose the election would make me very happy.

However, it is more common for a structure with preparatory it to be used (► 113.4 above).

It would make me very happy for her to lose the election.

10 for there to be

The infinitive of there is (there to be) can be used after for.

I'm anxious for there to be plenty of time for discussion.

It's important for there to be a fire escape at the back of the building.

11 that-clauses

Instead of for + object + infinitive, a that-clause with should or a subjunctive (► 232) is often possible, especially when we want to express wishes, recommendations, suggestions and plans for the future. A that-clause is usually more formal than a for-structure.

It is important that there should be a fire escape.

I'm anxious that the party should be a success.

His idea is that we should travel in separate cars.

It is essential that the meeting start at eight.

For sentences like He made it difficult for us to refuse, ► 269.
114 infinitives: other uses

1 I arrived home to find . . .

Infinitive clauses can be used to say what somebody found out or learnt at the end of a journey or task.

*I arrived home to find that the house had been broken into.*
The idea of surprise or disappointment can be emphasised by using only.

*At last we got to Amy's place, only to discover that she was away.*
*He spent four years studying, only to learn that there were no jobs.*

2 To hear her talk, you'd think . . .

The infinitives of *see* and *hear* can be used to explain the reason for a false impression. The infinitive structure is usually followed by *you'd think* or a similar expression.

*To see them, you'd think they were married. But they only met yesterday.*
*To see him walk down the street, you'd never know he was blind.*
*To hear her talk, you'd think she was made of money.*

3 to be honest

Some infinitive phrases are used to show the speaker’s attitude or purpose in speaking.

*To be honest, I think you're making a mistake.*
*To tell the truth, I'm not sure what to do now.*
*To sum up, I think we all accept John's proposal.*
*To put it another way, we're spending more than we're earning.*

115 participle clauses

1 structures

Participles can combine with other words into participle clauses with active or passive meanings.

*There's a woman crying her eyes out over there.*
*Most of the people invited to the reception were old friends.*
*Not knowing what to do, I telephoned the police.*
*Served with milk and sugar, it makes a delicious breakfast.*
*Who's the old man sitting in the corner?*
*Rejected by society, he decided to become a monk.*
Infinitives, -ing forms and Past Participles: Other Uses

2 after nouns: the people invited to the party

Participle clauses can be used after nouns and pronouns.

*We can offer you a job cleaning cars.*
*There's Neville, eating as usual.*
*In came the first runner, closely followed by the second.*
*I found him sitting at a table covered with papers.*

Participle clauses used like this are 'reduced relative clauses' (► 237.11).

*Who's the girl dancing with your brother?* (= ... the girl who is dancing ...)
*Anyone touching that wire will get a shock.* (= Anyone who touches ...)
*Half of the people invited to the party didn't turn up.* (= ... who were invited ...)

Perfect participles are not often used in this way.

*Do you know anybody who's lost a cat?* (not *Do you know anybody having lost a cat?*)

3 adverbial clauses: Putting down my paper, I ... 

Participle clauses can also be used in similar ways to full adverbial clauses, expressing condition, reason, time relations, result, etc. (This can only happen, of course, when the idea of condition, reason, etc is so clear that no conjunction is needed to signal it.) Adverbial participle clauses are usually rather formal.

*Used economically, one can will last for six weeks.* (= If it is used ...)
*Having failed my medical exams, I took up teaching.* (= As I had failed ...)
*Putting down my newspaper, I walked over to the window.* (= After I had put down my newspaper, ...)
*It rained for two weeks on end, completely ruining our trip.* (= ... so that it completely ruined our trip.)

Note that -ing clauses can be made with verbs like *be*, *have*, *wish* and *know*, which are not normally used in progressive tenses (► 4). In these cases, the participle clause usually expresses reason or cause.

*Being unable to help in any other way, I gave her some money.*
*Not wishing to continue my studies, I decided to become a dress designer.*
*Knowing her pretty well, I realised something was wrong.*

4 misrelated participles: Looking out of the window, the mountains ...

Normally the subject of an adverbial participle clause is the same as the subject of the main clause in a sentence.

*My wife had a talk with Sophie, explaining the problem.* (My wife is the subject of explaining.)

It is often considered incorrect to make sentences with misrelated participles (often called 'dangling participles'), where an adverb clause has a different subject from the main clause.

*Looking out of the window of our hotel room, the mountains were covered with snow.* (This could sound as if the mountains were looking out of the window.)

*Wrapped in red and gold gift paper, I delivered the parcel to my girlfriend.* →

grammar • 115 participle clauses
However, sentences like these are common and often seem quite natural, particularly when the main clause has preparatory *it* or *there* as a subject.  

*Being French, it's surprising that she's such a terrible cook.*  
*Having so little time, there was not much that I could do.*  

Misrelated participles are normal in some fixed expressions referring to the speaker's attitude. Examples:  

*Generally speaking, men can run faster than women.*  
*Broadly speaking, dogs are more faithful than cats.*  
*Judging from his expression, he's in a bad mood.*  
*Considering everything, it wasn't a bad year.*  
*Supposing there was a war, what would you do?*  
*Taking everything into consideration, they ought to get another chance.*

5 participle clauses with their own subjects  
A participle clause can have its own subject. This happens most often in a rather formal style.  

*Nobody having any more to say, the meeting was closed.*  
*All the money having been spent, we started looking for work.*  
*A little girl walked past, her doll dragging behind her on the pavement.*  
*Hands held high, the dancers circle to the right.*  

The subject is often introduced by *with* when the clause expresses accompanying circumstances.  

*A car roared past with smoke pouring from the exhaust.*  
*With Daniel working in Birmingham, and Lucy travelling most of the week, the house seems pretty empty.*

6 participle clauses after conjunctions and prepositions  
-ing clauses can be used after many conjunctions and prepositions. They are common with *after, before, since, when, while, on, without, instead of, in spite of* and *as.*  

*After talking to you I always feel better.*  
*After having annoyed everybody he went home.*  
*Switch off printer before replacing roller.*  
*She's been quite different since coming back from America.*  
*When telephoning from abroad, dial 1865, not 01865.*  
*On being introduced, British people often shake hands.*  
*They left without saying goodbye.*  
*She struck me as being a very nervy kind of person.*  

Clauses with past participles are possible (mostly in a formal style) after *if, when, while, once and until.*  

*If asked to look after luggage for someone else, inform police at once.*  
*When opened, consume within three days.*  
*Once deprived of oxygen, the brain dies.*  
*Leave in oven until cooked to a light brown colour.*

For clauses like *when ready*, ► 251.5.
7 object complements

The structure object + participle (clause) is used after verbs of sensation (e.g. see, hear, feel, watch, notice, smell) and some other verbs (e.g. find, get, have, make).

I saw a small girl standing in the goldfish pond.
I found her drinking my whisky.
We’ll have to get the car repaired before Tuesday.
Do you think you can get the radio working?
We’ll soon have you walking again.
I can make myself understood pretty well in English.
Section 11  Nouns and Noun Phrases; Agreement

INTRODUCTION

Nouns are words like house, team, idea, arrival, confusion, Canada. Together (usually) with other words such as determiners or adjectives, they form noun phrases, which act as subjects, objects and complements in sentences.

Our house was miles from anywhere.
Anna's had a great idea.
The discussion left us in considerable confusion.

Names of people, places, events, etc, (e.g. Alice, Canada, Christmas) are called proper nouns; they are grammatically different from other (common) nouns in some ways – for instance, they may not have articles (► 136.6).

countable/uncountable

English makes a distinction between countable and uncountable (or mass) nouns. Countable nouns (e.g. horse, microphone) are typically words for classes of separable things that can be counted; uncountable nouns (e.g. water, oxygen) are typically words for mass-like materials, substances, etc that can’t be separated into countable units. Countable nouns can be singular or plural (e.g. horse, horses); uncountable nouns are generally singular in form; and there are other grammatical differences between the two groups.

The countable-uncountable distinction is partly to do with the way things really are: clearly horses and microphones are separate objects, water and oxygen aren’t. But it is also partly to do with the way things are seen. Wool can be seen as a mass or as separate strands: English chooses to make wool uncountable. Aggression and attack express similar ideas, but the first is generally uncountable and the second countable.

possessive

Besides singular and plural forms, nouns can also have possessive forms (e.g. horse’s, microphones’).

agreement

1. Singular noun-phrase subjects are generally used with a special present-tense verb form (e.g. works, goes). For information about noun-verb agreement in some special cases, ► 128–130.

2. Some determiners (e.g. an, each, many, much) are only used with certain kinds of noun: singular, plural or uncountable. ► Sections 12–13 for details.

nouns in combination

English can put two or more nouns together in three ways:
• possessive noun + noun (e.g. the doctor’s secretary)
• noun + noun (e.g. garden furniture)
• noun + preposition + noun (e.g. the head of the department).
This is a very complicated area of English grammar. General guidelines are given in entries 124–127, but, unfortunately, there is no easy way to be quite sure which structure is used to express a particular compound idea. The most common expressions will be learnt by experience; in case of doubt a good dictionary will often show which form is correct or most natural.

**Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?**

- The children were climbing like monkies. ►  116.1
- A new disease is affecting much cattle. ►  117.7
- A number of people has replied to my advertisement. ►  128.2
- Half of them lives in Scotland. ►  128.2
- Where are those five pounds I lent you? ►  129.1
- Tell the children to blow their nose. ►  131.1
- Did you have a good travel? ►  119.3
- Let me give you an advice. ►  119.3
- Good evening. Here are the news. ►  117.3
- Is there a parking near here? ►  119.3
- We’re having a terrible weather. ►  119.1
- You speak an excellent English. ►  120.4
- I’m doing an interesting work. ►  119.3
- We were shown the childrens’ room. ►  123.1
- How did the cat get onto the house’s roof? ►  124.3
- I eat an awful lot of chocolate milk. ►  125.1
- My sister works in a shoes shop. ►  125.2
- All the staff were showing tiredness signs. ►  126.1
- Can you change a hundred euros note? ►  125.3
- Please stop kicking the table’s leg. ►  127.3

**CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION**

116 spelling of plurals 126 classifying expressions: noun + noun or preposition structure?
117 irregular and special plurals 127 classifying expressions with ’s: a child’s toy; cow’s milk
118 pronunciation of plurals 128 singular expressions with plural verbs
119 countable and uncountable nouns: basic information 129 plural expressions with singular verbs
120 countable and uncountable nouns: advanced points 130 mixed singular and plural: other structures
121 piece- and group-words: a blade of grass; a bunch of flowers 131 distributive plural: Tell them to bring raincoats.
122 noun + complement: What can follow a noun? 132 turning verbs into nouns: a cough, a taste
123 possessives: noun + ’s (forms)  
124 nouns in combination: my father’s house
125 nouns in combination: milk chocolate
116 spelling of plurals

The plural of most nouns is made by just adding -s to the singular. But there are some special cases.

1 plural of nouns ending in consonant + y

If the singular ends in consonant + y (for example -by, -dy, -ry, -ty), the plural is normally made by changing y to i and adding -es.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lady</td>
<td>ladies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferry</td>
<td>ferries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>parties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the singular ends in vowel + y (e.g. day, boy, guy, donkey), the plural is made by adding -s (days, boys, guys, donkeys).

Proper names ending in consonant + y usually have plurals in -ys.

Do you know the Kennedys? (NOT ...the Kennedies?) I hate Februaries.

2 plural of nouns ending in -sh, -ch, -s, -x or -z

If the singular ends in -sh, -ch, -s, -x or -z, the plural is made by adding -es.

Exceptions: words ending in ch pronounced /k/ (e.g. stomach/stomachs, monarch/monarchs).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>church</td>
<td>churches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>crashes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buzz</td>
<td>buzzes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns ending in a single -z have plurals in -zzes: quiz/quizzes, fez/fezzes.

3 plural of nouns ending in -o

Most nouns ending in -o have plurals in -s. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avocado</td>
<td>avocados</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commando</td>
<td>commandos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerto</td>
<td>concertos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euro</td>
<td>euros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kilo</td>
<td>kilos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logo</td>
<td>logos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>photo</td>
<td>photos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>pianos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solo</td>
<td>solos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soprano</td>
<td>sopranos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoo</td>
<td>zoos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some nouns ending in -o have plurals in -es. The most common:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>echo</td>
<td>echoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hero</td>
<td>heroes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following nouns can have plurals in -s or -es; -es is more common.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buffalo</td>
<td>buffalo(e)s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cargo</td>
<td>cargo(e)s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosquito</td>
<td>mosquito(e)s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

117 irregular and special plurals

1 irregular plurals in -ves

The following nouns ending in -f(e) have plurals in -ves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calf</td>
<td>calves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elf</td>
<td>elves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>halves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaf</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loaf</td>
<td>loaves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dwarf, hoof, scarf and wharf can have plurals in either -fs or -ves. Hooves, scarves and wharves are more common than the plurals in -fs.

Other words ending in -f(e) have regular plurals, for example roofs, beliefs, safes.

2 other irregular plurals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goose</td>
<td>geese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>louse</td>
<td>lice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The regular plural pennies can be used to talk about separate penny coins (and one-cent coins in the USA); pence is used to talk about prices and sums of money. Some British people now use pence as a singular (e.g. That'll be three pounds and one pence, please).

Persons is sometimes used as a plural of person in official language. There is also a singular noun people (plural peoples) meaning 'nation'.

grammar • 117 irregular and special plurals
3 plural same as singular

Some words ending in -s do not change in the plural. Common examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barracks</td>
<td>barracks</td>
<td>series</td>
<td>series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crossroads</td>
<td>crossroads</td>
<td>species</td>
<td>species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headquarters</td>
<td>headquarters</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means</td>
<td>means</td>
<td>works (= factory)</td>
<td>works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that some singular uncountable nouns end in -s. These have no plurals. Examples are *news, billiards, draughts* (and some other names of games ending in -s), *measles* (and some other illnesses).

*Here is the news.* (NOT *Here are the news.*)

Most words ending in -ics (e.g. *mathematics, physics, athletics*) are normally singular uncountable and have no plural use.

*Too much mathematics is usually taught in schools.* (NOT *Too many mathematics are...*)

Some words ending in -ics (e.g. *politics, statistics*) can also have plural uses.

*Politics is a complicated business.* (BUT *What are your politics?*)

*Statistics is useful in language testing.* (BUT *The unemployment statistics are disturbing.*)

Other nouns which do not change in the plural are *craft* (meaning ‘vehicle’), *aircraft, hovercraft, spacecraft, Chinese, Japanese* (and other nationality nouns ending in -ese), *sheep, deer, fish*, and the names of some other living creatures, especially those that are hunted or used for food. *Fish* has a rare plural *fishes*, but the normal plural is *fish*.

*Dozen, hundred, thousand, million, stone (= 14 pounds) and foot (= 12 inches)* have plurals without -s in some kinds of expressions. For details, ► 322.14.

*Dice* (used in board games) is originally the plural of an old noun *die*. In modern English it is used as both singular and plural.

*Data* is originally the plural of *datum*, which is not now used. In modern English *data* can be used either as an uncountable noun (*this data is...*) or as a plural (*these data are...*), with no difference of meaning. The uncountable use is more common in modern English.

*Media* is originally the plural of *medium*. The plural expression *the media* (meaning ‘radio, TV, newspapers, the internet...’) is now quite often used as an uncountable noun with a singular verb.

4 foreign plurals

Some words which come from foreign languages have special plurals. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>analyses (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appendix</td>
<td>appendices (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacterium</td>
<td>bacteria (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basis</td>
<td>bases (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cactus</td>
<td>cacti (Latin) or cactuses (less common)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>corpora (Latin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nouns and Noun Phrases; Agreement

Section 11

Singular Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crisis</td>
<td>crises (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criterion</td>
<td>criteria (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diagnosis</td>
<td>diagnoses (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formula</td>
<td>formulae (Latin) or formulas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungus</td>
<td>fungi (Latin) or funguses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypothesis</td>
<td>hypotheses (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kibbutz</td>
<td>kibbutzim (Hebrew)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nucleus</td>
<td>nuclei (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oasis</td>
<td>oases (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenomenon</td>
<td>phenomena (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius</td>
<td>radii (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stimulus</td>
<td>stimuli (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertebra</td>
<td>vertebrae (Latin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that some foreign plurals (e.g. agenda, spaghetti) are singular in English (► 119.5).

5 plurals in 's

An apostrophe (') can be used before the -s in the plurals of letters of the alphabet, and sometimes in the plurals of dates and abbreviations.

- She wrote 'necessary' with two c's.
- I loved the 1990's. (the 1990s is more common)
- PC's are getting cheaper. (PCs is more common)

It is not correct to use '-s' in other plurals, e.g. jean's.

6 compound nouns

In noun + adverb combinations, the plural -s is usually added to the noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passer-by</td>
<td>passers-by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runner-up</td>
<td>runners-up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of mother-in-law and similar words is generally mothers-in-law, etc, but some people use mother-in-laws, etc. The plural of court martial (= military court or military trial) is either courts martial (more formal) or court martials (less formal).

In noun + noun combinations, the first noun is usually singular in form even if the meaning is plural (e.g. shoe shop). There are some exceptions. (► 125.4).

7 plurals with no singular forms

Cattle is a plural word used to talk collectively about bulls, cows and calves; it has no singular, and cannot be used for counting individual animals (one cannot say, for instance, three cattle).

- At one time many cattle suffered from a disease called BSE. (NOT Much cattle suffered . . .)
- Police, staff and crew are generally used in the same way.

The police are looking for a fair-haired man in his twenties. (NOT The police is looking . . . OR A police . . .)

The staff are on strike, but a member of staff said . . . (NOT A staff . . .)

However, numbers are sometimes used before these three words (e.g. four staff, six crew).
The expressions the British, the Dutch, the English, the French, the Irish, the Spanish and the Welsh are also plural, with no singular forms. In 1581 the Dutch declared their independence from Spain. (But a Dutchman came into the shop. Not a Dutchman.)

Trousers, jeans, pyjamas (AmE pajamas), pants, tights, shorts, scales, scissors, glasses, spectacles (meaning ‘glasses’), goggles, binoculars, pliers, and the names of many similar objects that consist of two parts are plural, and have no singular forms. (The equivalent words in some other languages are singular.)

Your jeans are too tight. (Not your jean-is.) ‘Where are my glasses?’ ‘They’re on your nose.’

To talk about individual items, we can use a pair of.

Have you got a pair of nail scissors?

Other common words which are normally plural and don’t have singular forms include:

arms (= guns, etc), clothes (► 423), congratulations, contents, customs (at a frontier), earnings, funds (= money), goods, groceries, leftovers, lodgings, manners (= social behaviour), the Middle Ages (a period in history), oats (but corn, wheat, barley and rye are singular uncountable), odds (= chances), odds-and-ends, outskirts, premises (= building), proceeds, refreshments, regards, remains, savings, supplies, surroundings, thanks, troops, valuables, wages.

Congratulations on your new job. (Not congratulation.)

She lives on the outskirts of Cambridge. (Not the outskirt.)

For cases where plural nouns are used with singular verbs and pronouns (and the opposite), ► 128–129.

118 pronunciation of plurals

1 nouns ending in /s/, /z/ and other sibilants

After one of the sibilant sounds /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/ and /dʒ/, the plural ending -es is pronounced /iz/.

buses /ˈbaːsɪz/  
quizzes /ˈkwɪzɪz/  
watches /ˈwɒtʃɪz/

2 nouns ending in other unvoiced sounds

After any other unvoiced sound (/p/, /f/, /θ/, /t/ or /k/), the plural ending -(e)s is pronounced /s/.

cups /kʌps/  
beliefs /bɪˈliːfs/  
books /bʊks/

cloths /kloʊθz/  
plates /pleɪts/

3 nouns ending in other voiced sounds

After vowels, and all voiced consonants except /z/, /ʒ/ and /dʒ/, the plural ending -(e)s is pronounced /z/.

days /deɪz/  
boys /boɪz/  
trees /triːz/  
knives /naivz/  
clothes /kloʊðz/  
legs /legz/  
enews /endz/  
grams /ˈɡrɑːmz/  
hills /hɪlz/  
songs /ˈsɒŋz/
4 plurals with irregular pronunciation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>house /haʊs/</td>
<td>houses /'hauziz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bath /bɑːθ/</td>
<td>baths /bɑːθz/ or /bɑːðz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth /maʊθ/</td>
<td>mouths /maʊθz/ or /maʊðz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path /pɑːθ/</td>
<td>paths /pɑːθz/ or /paːðz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof /ruːf/</td>
<td>roofs /ruːfs/ or /ruːvz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truth /truːθ/</td>
<td>truths /truːθz/ or /truːðz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wreath /riːθ/</td>
<td>wreaths /riːθz/ or /riːðz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youth /juːθ/</td>
<td>youths /juːθz/ or /juːðz/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Third person singular forms (e.g. catches, wants, runs) and possessive forms (e.g. George’s, Mark’s, Joe’s) follow the same pronunciation rules as regular plurals.

119 countable and uncountable nouns: basic information

1 the difference

Countable nouns are the names of separate objects, people, ideas, etc, which can be counted. We can use numbers and the article a/an with countable nouns; they have plurals.

a cat a newspaper three cats two newspapers

Uncountable (or mass) nouns are the names of materials, liquids, abstract qualities, collections and other things which we see as masses without clear boundaries, and not as separate objects. Some examples:

oil water steel
oxygen plastic granite
baggage clothing cutlery
crockery equipment furniture
jewellery luggage machinery
underwear weather

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns, and most are singular with no plurals. We do not normally use a/an with uncountable nouns, though there are some exceptions (► 120.4).

clear water (not a clear water, two clear waters)
pure wool (not a pure wool, two pure wools)
bad weather (not a bad weather, three bad weathers)

Some determiners can only be used with countable nouns (e.g. many, few); others can only be used with uncountables (e.g. much, little). Compare:

How many hours do you work? How much money do you earn?

Note that very many nouns are not simply countable or uncountable: they have countable or uncountable uses (► 119.4–119.7 below).
2 problems

Usually it is easy to see whether a noun is countable or uncountable. Obviously house is normally a countable noun, and water is not. But it is not always so clear: compare a journey (countable) and travel (uncountable); a glass (countable) and glass (uncountable); vegetables (countable) and fruit (uncountable). The following rules will help, but to know exactly how a particular noun can be used, it is necessary to check in a good dictionary.

3 travel and a journey; a piece of advice

Travel and journey have very similar meanings, but travel is normally uncountable (it means ‘travelling in general’, and we do not talk about ‘a travel’), while journey is countable (a journey is one particular movement from one place to another) and can have a plural: journeys.

I like travel, but it's often tiring. Did you have a good journey?

Often we can make an uncountable word countable by putting a piece of or a similar expression in front of it.

He never listens to advice. Can I give you a piece of advice?

Here are some other examples of general–particular pairs. (Note that some words that are uncountable in English have countable equivalents in other languages.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uncountable</th>
<th>Countable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accommodation</td>
<td>a place to live (not an accommodation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>a piece/item of baggage; a case/trunk/bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>a piece/slice/loaf of bread; a loaf; a roll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chess</td>
<td>a game of chess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chewing gum</td>
<td>a piece of chewing gum (not a chewing gum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equipment</td>
<td>a piece of equipment; a tool, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>a piece/article of furniture; a table, chair, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>a piece of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>a fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lightning</td>
<td>a flash of lightning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luck</td>
<td>a piece/bit/stroke of luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>a piece/item of luggage; a case/trunk/bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>a note; a coin; a sum of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>a piece of news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poetry</td>
<td>a poem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress</td>
<td>a step forward; an advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publicity</td>
<td>an advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
<td>a piece of research; a study; an experiment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish</td>
<td>a piece of rubbish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slang</td>
<td>a slang word/expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thunder</td>
<td>a clap of thunder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>cars, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocabulary</td>
<td>a word; an expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>a piece of work; a job</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

grammar • 119 countable and uncountable nouns: basic information
Note that some English uncountable nouns or -ing forms may be borrowed into other languages and turned into countable nouns. This happens, for instance, with parking: in English it means the activity of parking in general; French uses un parking to mean ‘a car park’. The same has happened with training and planning (used in several other languages, but not usually in English, to mean ‘training session/course’ and ‘planning operation/meeting’ respectively).

**4 materials: glass, paper, etc**

Words for materials are uncountable, but we can often use the same word as a countable noun to refer to something made of the material. Compare:

- I’d like some typing paper.
  - I’m going out to buy a paper (= a newspaper)
- The window’s made of unbreakable glass.
  - Would you like a glass of water?

Nouns for materials, liquids, etc can be countable when they are used to talk about different types.

Not all washing powders are kind to your hands.
We have a selection of fine wines at very good prices.

The same thing happens when we talk about ordering drinks. Compare:

Have you got any coffee?
Could I have two coffees? (= cups of coffee)

**5 fruit, rice, wheat, spaghetti, hair; vegetables, peas, grapes**

Many things (e.g. rice, grapes) can be seen either as a collection of separate elements or as a mass. Some names for things of this kind are uncountable, while others are countable (usually plural). Things that come in small grains (e.g. sand, rice) are usually uncountable; collections made of larger grain-like things (e.g. peas, grapes) are more often countable. But the difference is not very systematic: compare gravel and pebbles. Note that some words of this kind (e.g. grapes) may be countable in English and uncountable in certain other languages.

**Uncountable:** fruit, rice, spaghetti, macaroni (and other pasta foods), sugar, salt, corn, wheat, barley, rye, maize, gravel.

**Countable:** vegetable(s), bean(s), pea(s), grape(s), lentil(s), pebble(s).

Fruit is very expensive, but vegetables are cheap.
Is the spaghetti ready? These grapes are sour.

Hair is normally uncountable in English.

His hair is black.

But one strand of hair is a hair (countable).
So why has he got two blonde hairs on his jacket?

For words that are used to talk about one ‘piece’ of uncountable collections (e.g. a grain of corn, a blade of grass), ▶ 121.

**6 abstract nouns: time, life, experience, etc**

Many abstract nouns can have both uncountable and countable uses, often corresponding to more ‘general’ and more ‘particular’ meanings. Compare:

- Don’t hurry – there’s plenty of time.
  - Have a good time.
  - There are times when I just want to stop work.
Life is complicated.
  He’s had a really difficult life.
She hasn’t got enough experience for the job.
  I had some strange experiences last week.
It’s hard to feel pity for people like that.
  It’s a pity it’s raining.
Your plan needs more thought.
  I had some frightening thoughts in the night.
I need to practise conversation.
  Megan and I had a very interesting conversation.

For more about time, ►  608; for life, ►  513.

7 illnesses
The names of illnesses are usually singular uncountable in English, including those ending in -s.
  If you’ve already had measles, you can’t get it again.
  There is a lot of flu around at the moment.
The words for some minor ailments are countable: e.g. a cold, a sore throat, a headache. However, toothache, earache, stomach ache and backache are usually uncountable in British English. In American English, these words are generally countable if they refer to particular attacks of pain. Compare:
  I’ve got toothache. (BrE)    I have a toothache. (AmE)

For the with measles, flu, etc. ►  142.15.

For more information on the use of articles with countable and uncountable nouns, ►  137.

120 countable and uncountable nouns: advanced points

1 20 square metres of wall
Singular countable nouns are sometimes used as uncountables (e.g. with much, enough, plenty of or a lot of) in order to express the idea of amount.
  There’s enough paint for 20 square metres of wall.
  I’ve got too much nose and not enough chin.
  If you buy one of these, you get plenty of car for your money.

2 not much difference
Some countable abstract nouns can be used uncountably after little, much and other determiners. Common examples are difference, point, reason, idea, change, difficulty, chance and question.
  There’s not much difference between ‘begin’ and ‘start’.
  I don’t see much point in arguing about it.
  We have little reason to expect prices to fall.
  I haven’t got much idea of her plans.
  There isn’t any change in his condition.
They had little difficulty in stealing the painting.
Do you think we have much chance of catching the train?
There’s some question of our getting a new Managing Director.
Note the expression have difficulty (in) ...ing.
I have difficulty (in) remembering faces. (NOT I have difficulties . . .)

3 in all weathers; on your travels
A few uncountable nouns have plural uses in fixed expressions.
He goes running in all weathers.
Did you meet anybody exciting on your travels?
Gulliver’s Travels (novel by Jonathan Swift)

4 a/an with uncountable nouns: a first-class knowledge
With certain uncountable nouns – especially nouns referring to human
emotions and mental activity – we often use a/an when we are limiting their
meaning in some way.
We need a secretary with a first-class knowledge of German.
(SHE has always had a deep distrust of strangers.
That child shows a surprising understanding of adult behaviour.
My parents wanted me to have a good education.
You’ve been a great help.
I need a good sleep.
Note that these nouns cannot normally be used in the plural, and that most
uncountable nouns cannot be used with a/an at all, even when they have an
adjective.
My father enjoys very good health. (NOT ...a very good health.)
We’re having terrible weather. (NOT ...a terrible weather.)
He speaks excellent English. (NOT ...an excellent English.)
It’s interesting work. (NOT ...an interesting work.)
His speech did serious damage to his chances of election. (NOT ...a serious
damage...)

5 plural uncountables: the groceries; the customs
Some uncountable nouns are plural. They have no singular forms with the same
meaning, and cannot normally be used with numbers.
I’ve bought the groceries. (BUT NOT ...a grocery, or ...three groceries.)
The Dover customs have found a large shipment of cocaine.
(BUT NOT The Dover custom has...)
Many thanks for your help. (BUT NOT Much thank . . .)
121 piece- and group-words: a blade of grass; a bunch of flowers

1 uncountable nouns: pieces

To talk about a limited quantity of something we can use a word for a piece or unit, together with of, before an uncountable noun. The most general words of this kind are piece and bit. Bit (informal) suggests a small quantity.

- a piece/bit of cake/bread
- some pieces/bits of paper/wood

Other words are less general, and are used before particular nouns. Some common examples:

- a bar of chocolate/soap
- a blade of grass
- a drop of water/oil/vinegar
- a grain of sand/salt/rice/corn/dust/truth
- an item of information/news/clothing/furniture
- a length of material
- a loaf of bread
- a lump of sugar/coal
- a slice of bread/cake/meat
- a speck of dust
- a sheet of paper/metal/plastic
- a stick of dynamite/chalk/coal

2 not a . . . of . . .

Some words for small pieces can be used in a negative structure meaning 'no . . . at all'.

- There's not a grain of truth in what he says.
- There hasn't been a breath of air all day.
- We haven't got a scrap/bite (of food) to eat.
- He came downstairs without a stitch of clothing on.

3 pair

Pair is used for many things that normally go in twos, and with plural nouns that refer to some two-part objects (► 117.7).

- a pair of shoes/boots/socks/earrings
- a pair of glasses/binoculars
- a pair of trousers/jeans/shorts/pyjamas/leggings/tights (BrE)/panthyose (AmE)
- a pair of scissors/pliers/tweezers

4 plural nouns: collections

Special words are used before certain plural nouns to talk about groups or collections.

- a bunch of flowers
- a crowd of people
- a flock of sheep/birds
- a herd of cattle/goats
- a pack of cards (AmE a deck of cards)

Set is used before many uncountable and plural nouns referring to groups which contain a fixed number of things.

- a set of napkins/dishes/cutlery (AmE flatware/silverware)/spanners (AmE wrenches)

For a bit as a modifier before adjectives and adverbs, ► 406.
For an amount, a lot, a large number, etc, ► 172. For sort, type, kind, etc, ► 592.
122 noun + complement: What can follow a noun?

Many nouns, especially abstract nouns, can be followed by 'complements' – other words and expressions that 'complete' their meaning. These complements can be prepositional phrases, infinitive expressions or clauses (with or without prepositions).

- I hate the thought of leaving you.
- Does she understand the need to keep everything secret?
- I admire your belief that you are always right.
- There's still the question of whether we're going to pay her.

Many nouns can be followed by more than one kind of complement.

- He didn't give any reason for the changes.
- You've no reason to get angry.
- The main reason why I don't believe her is this: . . .

Not all nouns can be followed by all kinds of complement.

- the idea of marriage
  the idea that I might get married
  (but not the idea to get married)
- freedom to choose
  freedom of choice
  (but not freedom of choosing)

Note that a related noun and verb may have different kinds of complement.

- I have no intention of resigning.
- I do not intend to resign.

Nouns (possessive or not) can also act as modifiers of following nouns.

- my father's company
  garden furniture

For details of noun + noun structures, ► 123–126.

Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which structures are possible after a particular noun. It is best to check in a good dictionary.

For more information about -ing forms after nouns, ► 103. For infinitives after nouns, ► 102.
For should in clauses after nouns, ► 264.6. For subjunctives in clauses after nouns, ► 232.
For the prepositions that are used after some common nouns, ► 213.
For prepositions before clauses, ► 210.
For relative clauses after nouns (e.g. the people who live next door), ► Section 21.

123 possessives: noun + 's (forms)

Forms like John’s, parents’, children’s are generally called ‘possessive’, although they express other ideas as well as possession.

1 spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular noun + 's</th>
<th>my father's car</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural noun + '</td>
<td>my parents' house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular plural + 's</td>
<td>the children's room, men's clothes, women's rights, an old people's home</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We sometimes just add an apostrophe (') to a singular noun ending in -s, especially in literary and classical references.

Socrates’ ideas  Dickens’ novels

But ‘s is more common.

Mr Lewis’s dog

We can add ‘s or ’ to a whole phrase.

the man next door’s wife  Henry the Eighth’s six wives

the Smiths’ new house

Note the difference between, for example:

Joe and Anna’s children (one lot of children: Joe and Anna are their parents)

Joe’s and Anna’s children (two separate lots of children: Joe’s and Anna’s)

2 pronunciation

The ending ‘s is pronounced just like a plural ending (► 118).

doctor’s /ˈdɒktəz/  Jack’s /dʒæks/  Madge’s /ˈmeɪdʒiz/  
dog’s /dɒgz/  Alice’s /ˈælɪsiz/  James’s /ˈdʒeɪmziz/  
president’s /ˈprɛzɪdənts/  

The apostrophe in a word like parents’ does not change the pronunciation at all. But with singular classical (ancient Greek and Roman) names ending in s’, we often pronounce a possessive ‘s even when it is not written.

Socrates’ /ˈsɒkrətəz/ ideas.

124 nouns in combination: my father’s house

1 possessive ‘s and other determiners

A possessive ‘s structure acts as a determiner (► Section 12) in a noun phrase. Compare:

a car  this car  his car  Jack’s car

A noun cannot normally have an article or other determiner with it as well as a possessive word (► 143.3). Definite articles are usually dropped when possessives are used.

the car that is Jack’s = Jack’s car (NOT the Jack’s car OR Jack’s the car)

But a possessive word may of course have its own article.

the car that is the boss’s = the boss’s car

When we want to use a noun with a/an or this/that, etc as well as a possessive, we usually use the of mine, etc construction (► 177).

She’s a cousin of Jack’s. (NOT . . . a Jack’s cousin.)

I saw that stupid boyfriend of Angie’s yesterday. (NOT . . . that Angie’s stupid boyfriend . . .)

2 meanings of the ‘s structure

We use the ‘s structure most often to talk about possessions, relationships and physical characteristics, especially when the first noun refers to a person or animal, or to a country, organisation or other group of living creatures.

That’s my father’s house. (NOT . . . the house of my father)

Emily’s brother is a lawyer. (NOT The brother of Emily . . .)

I don’t like Alice’s friends much.  Dan’s eyes are like yours.
There's something wrong with the cat's ear.
Scotland's climate is getting warmer.
What do you think of the company's management?

We also use the structure to talk about things that people, etc produce.
I didn't believe the girl's story. Have you read Jack's email?
What are Norway's main exports?
The government's decision was extremely unwise.

With some words for people's actions, we can use either 's or a structure with of.

the Queen's arrival OR the arrival of the Queen
the committee's second meeting OR the second meeting of the committee

An of-structure is preferred when the 'possessing' expression is very long.

Compare:
my sister's husband
the husband of the woman who sent you those papers

3 's not used: the name of the street

With nouns which are not the names of people, animals, countries, etc, 's is less common, and a structure with a preposition (usually of) is more normal.

the name of the street (NOT the street's name)
the back of the room (NOT the room's back)
the roof of the house (NOT the house's roof)
the top of the page (NOT the page's top)

However, both structures are possible in some expressions.

the earth's gravity or the gravity of the earth
the plan's importance or the importance of the plan
the concerto's final movement or the final movement of the concerto
the train's arrival or the arrival of the train
the world's oldest mountains or the oldest mountains in the world

(NOT...of the world), ❯ 206.7

Unfortunately, it is not possible to give useful general rules in this area: the choice of structure often depends on the particular expression.

4 like a subject

Note that the 's structure often corresponds to a sentence in which the first noun is the subject of have or some other verb.

Joe's brother (Joe has a brother) the dog's tail (the dog has a tail)
America's gold reserves (America has gold reserves)
the manager's decision (the manager made a decision)
Harris's novel (Harris wrote a novel)

In a few cases, the first noun may correspond to the object of a verb.

the prisoner's release (they released the prisoner)

5 measurement of time: a day's journey

The 's structure (or the plural with s') is often used to say how long things last.

a day's journey twenty minutes' delay

Noun + noun structures are also possible in expressions with numbers (❯ 125.3).

a three-hour journey a twenty-minute delay

grammar • 124 nouns in combination: my father's house
6 other expressions of time: yesterday's news
We can also use the 's structure to talk about particular moments and events.
  yesterday's news  last Sunday's match  tomorrow's weather

7 worth
Note the use of the 's structure before worth.
  a pound's worth of walnuts  three dollars' worth of popcorn

For the 's structure in compound nouns (e.g. a doll's house, cow's milk). ► 126.

8 possessive without a noun
We can use a possessive without a following noun, if the meaning is clear.
  'Whose is that? 'Daniel's.'
We often talk about shops, companies, churches and people's houses in this way. The apostrophe is often dropped in the names of shops and companies.
  I bought it at Smiths.  She got married at St Joseph's.
  We had a nice time at Jack and Susan's last night.

In modern English, expressions like the doctor, the dentist, the hairdresser, the butcher are often used without 's.
  Alice is at the dentist('s).

125 nouns in combination: milk chocolate

1 milk chocolate; chocolate milk
Many common ideas in English are expressed by noun + noun compounds. In this structure, the first noun modifies or describes the second, a little like an adjective. Compare:
  - milk chocolate (a kind of chocolate)
  - chocolate milk (a kind of milk)
  - a horse race (a kind of race)
  - a race horse (a kind of horse)
  - a garden flower (a kind of flower)
  - a flower garden (a kind of garden)

Noun + noun expressions are often related to structures where the second noun becomes a subject.
  - an oil well (the well produces oil)
  - a sheepdog (the dog looks after sheep)
  - a Birmingham man (the man comes from Birmingham)
  - the airport bus (the bus goes to the airport)

2 the first noun is singular: a shoe shop
Note that the first noun is usually singular in form, even if it has a plural meaning. (For exceptions, ► 125.4.)
  - a shoe shop (= a shop that sells shoes)
  - a toothbrush (= a brush for teeth)
  - a ticket office (= an office that sells tickets)
  - a horse race (= a race for horses)
  - coat pockets (= pockets in coats)
Nouns and Noun Phrases; Agreement

3 measurement: a five-litre can

Noun + noun is used in measurements, with a number before the first noun. The number is usually joined to the first noun by a hyphen (-). Note that the first noun is normally singular in form in these cases.

- a five-litre can (not a five-litres can)
- a ten-pound note (not a ten-pounds note)
- a hundred-dollar bill a six-pound chicken a three-mile walk
- a five-day course a two-person tent ten two-hour lessons

The number one is often left out.

- a (one-)pint mug

In fractions, the plural -s is not usually dropped.

- a two-thirds share (not a two-third share)

Exception: three quarters (a three-quarter length coat)

4 exceptions: first noun plural – a clothes shop

Some nouns are plural in this structure, especially in British English. These include nouns which have no singular form (like clothes), nouns which are not used in the singular with the same meaning (like customs), and some nouns which are more often used in the plural than in the singular (like savings).

In some cases, e.g. antique(s), drug(s), usage is divided, and both singular and plural forms are found. In general, plurals are becoming more common in this structure. Examples:

- a clothes shop
- a glasses case
- a customs officer
- arms control
- a savings account
- the accounts department
- the sales department
- the outpatients department

The number one is often left out.

- a (one-)pint mug

In fractions, the plural -s is not usually dropped.

- a two-thirds share (not a two-third share)

Exception: three quarters (a three-quarter length coat)

5 articles

Articles belonging to the first (modifying) noun are dropped in noun + noun combinations.

- army officers (= officers in the army)
- a sun hat (= a hat that protects you against the sun)
6  more than two nouns

More than two nouns can be put together. A group of two nouns can modify a third noun, these can modify a fourth, and so on.

- oil production costs  road accident research centre

This kind of structure is very common in newspaper headlines (► 292) because it saves space.

FURNITURE FACTORY PAY CUT PROTEST

7  pronunciation

Most noun + noun combinations have the main stress on the first noun.

- a bicycle factory  a fruit drink  ski boots  coffee beans

However, there are quite a number of exceptions.

- a garden chair  a fruit 'pie

The difference between noun modifiers and adjectival modifiers is sometimes shown by stress. Compare:

- a 'German teacher (noun modifier: a person who teaches German)
- a German 'teacher (adjective modifier: a teacher who is German)

To be sure of the stress on a particular combination, it is necessary to check in a good dictionary. Note that there are occasional British–American differences.

For the stressing of road and street names, ► 570.

8  spelling

Some short common noun + noun combinations are generally written together like single words.

- bathroom toothbrush seaside

Other combinations are generally written separately (e.g. furniture shop, railway station). Sometimes usage varies (e.g. lampshade or lamp shade), but except with very short common combinations like bathroom, it is usually acceptable to write the two words separately. Noun + noun combinations often used to be written with hyphens (e.g. spectacle-case), but this is now unusual.

For more information about the spelling of different kinds of compounds, ► 342.
For information about the most common current spelling of particular noun + noun expressions, see a good dictionary.

9  other structures

Not all compound ideas can be expressed by a noun + noun structure. Sometimes it is necessary to use a structure with of or another preposition; sometimes a structure with possessive 's is used.

- a feeling of disappointment (NOT a-disappointment feeling)
- letters from home (NOT home-letters)
- cow's milk (NOT cow-milk)

For more details, ► 126.
126 classifying expressions: noun + noun or preposition structure?

1 classifying expressions: a sheepdog

The noun + noun structure is mostly used to make ‘classifying’ expressions, which name a particular kind of thing.

- mountain plants (a special group of plants)
- mineral water (a sort of water)
- a sheepdog (a particular kind of dog)

We use noun + noun especially to talk about things that belong to common well-known classes (so that the two nouns really describe a single idea). In other cases we prefer a preposition structure. Compare:

- the postman, the milkman (well-known kinds of people who may call regularly at a British home)
- a man from the health department (not a regular kind of visitor)

More examples:
- He was reading a history book. (a common class of book)
- He was reading a book about the moon. (NOT a moon book)
- She was sitting at a corner table in the restaurant. (Restaurants often have corner tables.)
- Who's the girl in the corner? (NOT Who's the corner girl?)
- What does that road sign say?
- She was showing signs of tiredness. (NOT . . .tiredness signs.)

2 containers: a matchbox; a box of matches

Noun + noun is used for particular kinds of container.

- a matchbox a paint tin a coffee cup

But we use the preposition structure (with of) to talk about a container together with its contents.

- a box of matches a tin of paint a cup of coffee

3 units, selections and collections: piece, group, etc

We also prefer the of-structure with words that refer to units, selections and collections, like piece, slice, lump (of sugar), bunch (of flowers), blade (of grass), pack (of cards), herd, flock, group and so on.

- a piece of paper (NOT a paper piece)
- a bunch of flowers (NOT a flower bunch)

4 'made of': a silk dress; silken skin

Noun + noun is normally used to say what things are made of.

- a silk dress a stone bridge an iron rod a gold ring

In older English, the of-structure was more common in this case (e.g. a dress of silk, a bridge of stone), and it is still used in some metaphorical expressions.

- He rules his family with a rod of iron.
- The flowers were like a carpet of gold.
A few pairs of nouns and adjectives (e.g. gold, golden) are used as modifiers with different meanings. Generally the noun simply names the material something is made of, while the adjective has a more metaphorical meaning. Compare:

- a gold watch, golden memories
- silk stockings, silken skin
- a lead pipe, a leaden sky (grey and depressing)
- a stone roof, a stony silence

But wooden and woollen just mean ‘made of wood/wool’.

## 127 classifying expressions with ‘s: a child’s toy; cow’s milk

### 1 noun + ‘s + noun: children’s clothes; a bird’s nest

In some classifying expressions we use a structure with possessive ‘s. This is common when we are talking about things that are used by a person or animal: the first noun refers to the user.

- children’s clothes, a man’s sweater
- women’s magazines, a bird’s nest

Generally, either both nouns are singular or both are plural.

- a child’s toy, children’s clothes
- but a women’s magazine

Not all ‘used by’ expressions have possessive ‘s.

- baby clothes, a birdcage

British and American usage sometimes differ. Compare:

- a baby’s bottle (BrE) vs a baby bottle (AmE)
- a baby’s pram (BrE) vs a baby carriage (AmE)
- a doll’s house (BrE) vs a doll house (AmE)

### 2 noun + ‘s + noun: cow’s milk; a hen’s egg

The ‘s structure is often used for products from living animals.

- cow’s milk, lamb’s wool, a hen’s egg
- sheep’s wool, a bird’s egg (but camel hair, horsehair)

When the animal is killed to provide something, we usually use noun + noun.

- calf skin, chamois leather, fox fur
- chicken soup, a lamb chop, tortoise shell

### 3 parts: a man’s leg; a table leg

We use the ‘s structure to talk about parts of people’s and animals’ bodies.

- a man’s leg, an elephant’s trunk, a sheep’s heart

But to talk about parts of non-living things, we usually use the noun + noun structure.

- a table leg (not a table’s leg), a car door (not usually a car’s door)
4 pronunciation

Classifying expressions with possessive 's most often have the main stress on the first noun. Compare:
- a *doll's house* (a kind of house)
  
  *my brother's house* (not a kind of house)
- *goat's milk* (a kind of milk)
  
  *the goat's tail* (not a kind of tail)

Here, too, there are exceptions.
- *a child's bicycle* (a kind of bicycle)

For the use of structures with 's to talk about possession, relationships, etc, ► 124.

128 singular expressions with plural verbs

1 groups of people: *The team is/are . . .*

In British English, singular words like *family, team, government*, which refer to groups of people, can have either singular or plural verbs and pronouns.

*The team is/are going to lose.*

Plural forms are common when the group is seen as a collection of people doing personal things like deciding, hoping or wanting. Singular forms are more common when the group is seen as an impersonal unit. Compare:
- *My family have decided to move to York. They're going in April.*
  
  *The average family has 3.6 members. It is smaller than 50 years ago.*
- *My company are wonderful. They do all they can for me.*
  
  *My company was founded in the 18th century.*

We prefer *who* as a relative pronoun with plural forms, and *which* with singular forms. Compare:

*The committee, who are hoping to announce important changes, . . .*

*The committee, which is elected at the annual meeting, . . .*

When a group noun is used with a singular determiner (e.g. *a/an, each, every, this, that*), singular verbs and pronouns are normal. Compare:

*The team are full of enthusiasm.*

*A team which is full of enthusiasm has a better chance of winning.*

(More natural than *A team who are full . . .*)

Sometimes singular and plural forms are mixed.

*The group gave its first concert in June and they are now planning a tour.*

Examples of group nouns which can be used with both singular and plural verbs in British English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bank</th>
<th>company</th>
<th>government</th>
<th>public</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the BBC</td>
<td>England (the football team)</td>
<td>jury</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choir</td>
<td>family</td>
<td>ministry</td>
<td>staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>firm</td>
<td>orchestra</td>
<td>team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>club</td>
<td></td>
<td>party</td>
<td>union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>committee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In American English singular verbs are normal with most of these nouns in all cases (though *family* can have a plural verb). Plural pronouns can be used.

*The team is in Detroit this weekend. They expect to win.*
2 A number of people have . . .
Many singular quantifying expressions (► 172) can be used with plural nouns and pronouns; plural verbs are normally used in this case.

A number of people have tried to find the treasure, but they have all failed.
(More natural than A number of people has tried . . .)

A group of us are going to take a boat through the Dutch canals.
A couple of my friends plan to open a travel agency. (NOT A couple of my friends plans. . .)

A lot of social problems are caused by unemployment. (NOT A lot of social problems is caused. . .)

The majority of criminals are non-violent.
Some of these people are relations and the rest are old friends.

Half of his students don’t understand a word he says. (NOT Half of his students doesn’t. . .)

For more about some of these expressions, ► 172. For the rest, ► 569. For (a) few, ► 168.
For singular and plural nouns with fractions, ► 130.10.

129 plural expressions with singular verbs

1 amounts and quantities: that five pounds
When we talk about amounts and quantities we usually use singular determiners, verbs and pronouns, even if the noun is plural.

Where is that five pounds I lent you? (NOT Where are those five pounds . . .?)
Twenty miles is a long way to walk.
‘We’ve only got five cans of juice left.’ ‘That isn’t enough.’
More than 41 inches of snow has fallen on the city this winter.

2 calculations
Singular verbs are often possible after plural number subjects in spoken calculations.

Two and two is/are four.
Ten times five is fifty. (OR Ten fives are fifty.)

For more about spoken calculations, ► 322.21–322.22.

3 more than one
More than one is generally used with a singular noun and verb.

More than one person is going to have to find a new job.

4 one of . . .
Expressions beginning one of normally have a plural noun and a singular verb.

One of my friends is getting married. (NOT One of my friends are . . .)

For singular and plural verbs in relative clauses after one of . . ., ► 130.1.
Nouns and Noun Phrases; Agreement

Section 11

5 **and**

Some expressions joined by *and* have singular determiners, verbs and pronouns (► 130.4). This happens when the two nouns are used together so often that we think of them as a single idea.

*This gin and tonic isn’t very strong, is it?*

*Your toast and honey is on the table.*

6 **countries and organisations:** The United States is . . .

Plural names of countries usually have singular verbs and pronouns.

*The United States is anxious to improve its image in Latin America.*

Plural names of organisations may also have singular verbs and pronouns.

*Consolidated Fruitgrowers has just taken over Universal Foodstores.*

130 **mixed singular and plural:** other structures

In some complex structures, the same verb seems to belong with two different expressions, one singular and the other plural. And some noun phrases mix singular and plural elements.

1 **one of the few women who have climbed Everest**

After expressions like *one of the . . .* (► 544), singular and plural verbs are both used in relative clauses beginning *who, which* or *that.*

*She’s one of the few women who have/has climbed Everest.*

*This is one of those books that are/is read by everybody.*

Strictly speaking, a plural verb is correct (to agree with the few women who or those books that). However, singular verbs are also very common in these structures. More examples:

*One of the things that really make/makes me angry is people who don’t answer emails.*

*We’ve got one of those Japanese cars that never break/breaks down.*

2 **A serious problem is wasps.**

In English a verb normally agrees with the subject of a sentence, not with a following complement.

\[
\text{S} \quad \text{V} \quad \text{C}
\]

*The biggest timewaster is meetings.*

*(NOT The biggest timewaster are meetings.)*

\[
\text{S} \quad \text{V} \quad \text{C}
\]

*A serious problem in our garden is wasps.*

*(NOT A serious problem . . . are wasps.)*

However, if the subject is a long way from the verb, people sometimes make the verb agree with a complement.
The most interesting thing on radio and television last weekend, without any doubt, was/were the tennis championships.

This often happens, too, when the subject is a relative what-clause, especially when the complement is long.

What I am most interested in is/are your immediate personal reactions.

What we need is/are a few bright young engineers.

For singular and plural verbs after interrogative what and who, ► 130.5.

3 singular subject, plural continuation, plural verb

When a singular subject is modified by a following plural expression, people sometimes use a plural verb. This is not usually considered correct.

Nobody except his best friends like him. (More correct: Nobody . . . likes him.)

A good knowledge of three languages are necessary for this job.

(More correct: A good knowledge . . . is . . .)

For singular or plural after kind(s), sort(s), type(s), etc, ► 592.

4 co-ordinated subjects: A and B, A or B, A as well as B, etc

When two singular subjects are joined by and, the verb is normally plural.

Alice and Joseph are going to be late.

But note that some phrases with and are treated like single ideas, and used with singular verbs (► 129.5).

Bacon and eggs is a popular British breakfast.

When two subjects are joined by as well as, together with or a similar expression, the verb is usually singular if the first subject is singular.

The Prime Minister, as well as several Cabinet Ministers, believes in a tough financial policy.

The Managing Director, together with his heads of department, is preparing a new budget.

When two subjects are joined by or, the verb is usually singular if the second subject is singular, and plural if it is plural. Compare:

There’s no room – either two chairs or a table has got to be moved.

There’s no room – either a table or two chairs have got to be moved.

When two singular subjects are joined by neither . . . nor, the verb is normally singular in a formal style, but can be plural in an informal style.

Neither she nor her husband has arrived. (formal)

Neither she nor her husband have arrived. (informal)
5 who and what

In a who or what question, if the answer is the subject of a clause, the verb with who or what is usually singular, even when the answer is plural.

'Who is working tomorrow?' 'Jake, Lucy and Shareena (are working tomorrow).' (More natural than Who are working tomorrow?)

Who was at the party? (More natural than Who were at the party?)

'What lives in those little holes?' 'Rabbits (do). (not What live . . .)'

With verbs like be, where the answer to a who or what question is the complement of a clause, the verb with who or what can be plural.

'Who are your closest friends?' '(My closest friends are) Naomi and Bridget.'

'What are your politics?' '(My politics are) extreme left-wing.'

Relative what-clauses are normally the subject of a singular verb.

What she needs is friends. (More natural than What she needs are friends.)

However, plural verbs are often used before longer plural complements, especially if what is a long way from the verb.

What we need most of all are some really new ideas.

6 here's, there's and where's

In an informal style, here's, there's and where's are common with plural nouns.

Here's your keys. There's some children at the door.

Where's those books I lent you?

7 another, a/an + adjective

Plural expressions of quantity can be used with another (► 550) and with a/an + adjective.

I want to stay for another three weeks.

We'll need an extra ten pounds.

He's been waiting for a good two hours.

She spent a happy ten minutes looking through the photos.

I've had a very busy three days.

Note also the expression a good many/few + plural (informal).

I've lain awake a good many nights worrying about you.

I bet that house could tell a good few stories.

8 kind, sort and type

In an informal style, we sometimes mix singular and plural forms when we use demonstratives with kind, sort or type. For details, ► 592.

I don't like those kind of boots.

9 every (frequency)

Every (which is normally used with singular nouns) can be used before plural expressions in measurements of frequency.

I go to Ireland every six weeks.

10 fractions

Fractions between 1 and 2 are normally used with plural nouns (► 322.2).

It weighs one and a half tons. (not . . . one and a half ton.)

The tallest plants grow to about 1.75 feet.
131 distributive plural: Tell them to bring raincoats.

1 people doing the same thing
   To talk about several people each doing the same thing, English usually prefers a plural noun for the repeated idea.
      Tell the kids to bring raincoats to school tomorrow. (More natural than
      Tell the kids to bring a raincoat . . .)
   Plural forms are almost always used in this case if there are possessives.
      Tell the children to blow their noses. (not . . . to blow their nose.)
      Six people lost their lives in the accident.
   Uncountable nouns cannot of course be used in the plural.
      They were all anxious to increase their knowledge. (not . . . their knowledges.)

2 repeated events
   In descriptions of repeated single events, singular and plural nouns are both possible. When no details are given, plural nouns are more natural.
      I often get headaches. (More natural than I often get a headache.)
      She sometimes goes for rides over the hills.
   When details of the time or situation are given, nouns are often singular.
      I often get a headache when I've been working on the computer.
      She often goes for a ride over the hills before supper.
   Singular nouns may also be used to avoid misunderstanding.
      I sometimes throw a stone into the river and wish for good luck. (clearer than
      I sometimes throw stones . . . - only one stone is thrown each time)
   To refer to the time of repeated events, both singular and plural expressions are often possible with little difference of meaning.
      We usually go and see my mother on Saturday(s).
      He's not at his best in the morning(s).

3 generalisations and rules
   In generalisations and rules, singular and plural nouns are both possible.
      We use a past participle in a perfect verb form. (or We use past participles in
      perfect verb forms.)
      All documents must be accompanied by a translation of the original. 
      (or All documents must be accompanied by translations of the originals.)
   Mixtures of singular and plural are possible.
      Subjects agree with their verb.
      Children may resemble both their father and their mother in different ways.
      This often happens with fixed singular expressions like at the beginning.
      Discourse markers often come at the beginning of sentences.
1 using nouns for actions

It is very common to refer to an action by using a noun instead of a verb. Nouns of this kind often have the same form as the related verbs. The structure is especially common in an informal style.

- There was a loud crash. Did I hear a cough?
- I need a rest. Would you like a taste?
- What about a drink? Come on – one more try!

2 common structures

Nouns of this kind are often introduced by 'general-purpose' verbs such as have, take, give, make, go for.

- I’ll have a think and let you know what I decide. (informal BrE)
- Let’s have a talk about your plans.
- Let your sister have a go on the swing. (BrE)
- Just take a look at yourself.
- I like to have/take a bath before I go to bed.
- If it won’t start, let’s give it a push.
- I don’t know the answer, but I’m going to make a guess.

Go for... is common with nouns for physical activity (► 475).

- I try to go for a run every day. Let’s go for a walk.

We can use -ing forms in a similar way after do (► 435.3).

- She does a bit of painting, but she doesn’t like to show people.

These structures are very common when we talk about casual, unplanned or unsystematic recreational activity.

- Let’s have a swim. (More natural than Let’s swim.)

For details of ‘action-nouns’ with have, and a list of common expressions, ► 23.
Section 12 Determiners: 
*a/an* and *the*; *my, your, etc*; *this, that, etc*

INTRODUCTION

What are determiners?

Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before any adjectives. They mostly show which or how much/many we are talking about.

- *the* manager
- *a* nice day
- *my* fat old cat
- *this* house
- *some* problems
- *either* arm
- *every* week
- *enough* oil
- *several* young students

They fall into two main groups from a grammatical point of view.

1. **Articles** (*a/an* and *the*), possessives (*my, your, etc*) and demonstratives (*this, that, etc*).

These help to show which members or which part of a class or category we are talking about. Possessives and demonstratives are called ‘adjectives’ in older grammars and dictionaries, but they are quite different from adjectives.

2. **Quantifiers** (e.g. *all*, *some*, *each, much, most, several*) and one or two others.

These mostly show how much or how many we are talking about.

The first group are covered in this Section, and the others in Section 13.

**articles**

Article use is one of the most difficult points in English grammar, particularly for learners whose languages do not have article systems. Articles are difficult for several reasons:

- The two articles (and the use of *no article* or ‘zero article’) express several different meanings, and it is not always possible to draw clear lines between them.
- These meanings are relatively abstract and not easy to explain.
- Languages which have articles (e.g. French, Swedish, Portuguese) do not always use them in the same way as their English equivalents, especially when talking about things in general (» 140).
- Sometimes article use is more a matter of vocabulary than grammar: we happen to use *the* in one expression, and *a* or no article in another similar expression, for no very good reason.

- *on the radio*** vs. *on TV*
- *I’ve got backache.* (BrE) *I’ve got a headache.*
- *We took a wrong turning and went to the wrong address.*

However, much article use is regular; and the explanations in the following entries should help a good deal. Also, article mistakes do not usually matter very much for practical purposes: they rarely cause misunderstandings.

**possessives**: terminology

There are problems of terminology with possessives. *My, your, etc* (» 143) are sometimes called ‘possessive adjectives’, while *mine, yours, etc* (» 176) are...
generally called ‘possessive pronouns’. In fact, both types of possessive are pronouns, because they stand for noun phrases. My replaces the noun phrase the speaker’s; mine replaces the more complex noun phrase the speaker’s possession. The real difference is that my, etc function as determiners in noun phrases while mine, etc are free-standing, used instead of noun phrases. None of this matters much from a practical point of view: the important thing is to use possessives correctly, not to worry about what they are called.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

1. Give it to cat. ▶ 135.2
2. You shouldn’t go out without coat. ▶ 137.4
3. Annie is engineer. ▶ 137.3 c
4. I used my shoe as hammer. ▶ 137.3 c
5. My uncle used to be a MP. ▶ 137.7
6. The life is complicated. ▶ 140.1
7. The most birds can fly. ▶ 140.1
8. It’s not always easy to fit in with the society. ▶ 140.1
9. She’s very interested in the nature. ▶ 140.1
10. Lying by the road we saw a wheel of a car. ▶ 141.6
11. He’s a wrong man for me. ▶ 141.6
12. The America’s economic problems are becoming serious. ▶ 142.3
13. I was surprised at the amount of the money collected. ▶ 142.7
14. They appointed him the Head Librarian. ▶ 142.12
15. What a lovely dress! ▶ 142.14
16. What a nonsense! ▶ 142.14
17. Katy broke the arm climbing. ▶ 142.16
18. They’re walking in Himalayas. ▶ 142.18
19. She studied at the Oxford University. ▶ 142.18
20. Granny’s lost the her keys again. ▶ 143.3
21. The teacher told the children to open their book. ▶ 143.4
22. He stood there, the eyes closed and the hands in the pockets. ▶ 143.5
23. The dog’s in a good mood. Its just had it’s breakfast. ▶ 143.6
24. I don’t know what I’m doing in that country. ▶ 144.3
25. Have you ever heard from this Scottish boy you used to go out with? ▶ 144.4

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

133 articles: introduction
134 articles: basic information (A)
135 articles: basic information (B)
136 more about the
137 more about a/an
138 no article with plural and uncountable nouns
139 the difference between some/any and no article
140 talking in general
141 the: difficult cases
142 special rules and exceptions
143 possessive determiners: my, your, etc
144 this and that
145 this/that and it: things that have just been mentioned

grammar • Section 12 Determiners: a/an and the; my, your, etc; this, that, etc
133 articles: introduction

1 What are articles?
Articles are small words that are often used at the beginning of noun phrases. There are two: the (the definite article) and a/an (the indefinite article). They belong to a group of words called ‘determiners’.

2 What are articles used for?
Articles can show whether we are talking about identifiable things, which are known both to the speaker/writer and listener/hearer (‘definite’), or not (‘indefinite’).

3 How much do articles matter?
The correct use of the articles is one of the most difficult points in English grammar. Fortunately, most article mistakes do not matter too much. Even if we leave all the articles out of a sentence, it can usually be understood.

Please can you lend me pound of butter till end of week?
However, it is better to use the articles correctly if possible. Entries 134–142 give the most important rules and exceptions.

4 speakers of Western European languages
Most languages of Western European origin, and one or two others, have article systems quite like English. However, there are some differences in the way articles are used in English and these other languages. The most important differences are explained in 134. Students should go to 134 first if they speak one of the following languages perfectly or very well: French, German, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Norwegian, Icelandic, Spanish, Catalan, Italian, Portuguese, Greek, Romanian. There is more detailed information on difficult points in 136–142.

5 speakers of other languages
If a student’s language is one (e.g. Russian or Japanese) that is not listed in 133.4, he or she may have more difficulty with the correct use of articles. The most important rules are explained in 135, and students should read this first. There is more detailed information on difficult points in 136–142.

134 articles: basic information (A)

(Article is for students who speak a language that has articles: e.g. French, German, Swedish, Norwegian, Spanish, Italian, Greek. If you speak a language without articles – for example Russian or Japanese – read entry 135.)

Articles are often used in similar ways in English and other languages, but there are some differences. The most important are as follows.

1 talking in general: Life is complicated.
In English, when we are talking about people or things in general, we do not usually use the with uncountable or plural nouns.
Life is complicated. (not The life is complicated.)
My sister loves horses. (not ...the horses.)

2 talking about jobs, types, etc: She's a dentist.
In English, we normally put \( a/an \) with a singular noun that is used for classifying
- saying what job somebody has, what class, group or type somebody or
something belongs to, what we use something for, etc.

She's a dentist. (not She's dentist.)
I'm looking forward to being a grandmother.
I used my shoe as a hammer.
For more detailed information about articles, ▶ 136–142.

135 articles: basic information (B)

(This entry is for students who speak languages (e.g. Russian or Japanese) that
do not have articles like English \( a/an \) and the. Students who speak languages
which have articles (e.g. German or Portuguese) should read entry 134.)

1 two basic rules
• To say 'You know which I mean', we put \( the \) before a noun.
  I've been to the doctor. (You know which one: my doctor.)
  Have you fed the dogs? (You know which ones I mean.)
  Could you pass the salt? (You can see the salt that I want.)
• When we can't say 'You know which I mean', we:
  - put \( a/an \) before a singular countable noun (▶ 137).
    There's a rat in the kitchen! I need an envelope.
  - put no article with a plural or uncountable noun.
    She's afraid of rats. I need help.

2 four common mistakes to avoid
• Don't use \( a/an \) with plural or uncountable nouns.
  Jack collects stamps. (not ...a stamps.)
  Our garden needs water. (not ...a water.)
• Don’t use the to talk about things in general. The does not mean ‘all’.  
  (For exceptions, ► 140.2.)
  Elephants can swim very well. (NOT The elephants can swim . . .)
  Gas is expensive. (NOT The gas . . .)
• Don’t use articles together with my, this, or other determiners.
  my work (NOT the my work)
  a friend of mine (NOT a my friend)
  this problem (NOT the this problem)
• Don’t use singular countable nouns alone, without an article or other determiner. We can say a cat, the cat, my cat, this cat, any cat, either cat or every cat, but not just cat. (For exceptions, ► 142.)
  Give it to the cat. (NOT Give it to cat.)
  Annie is a doctor. (NOT Annie is doctor.)
For more detailed information about articles, see the following sections.

136 more about the

1 the = ’you know which one(s)’

The usually means something like ‘you know which I mean’. We use the before a noun (singular, plural or uncountable) when our listener/reader knows (or can easily see) which particular person(s), thing(s), etc we are talking about.

Compare:
  - I’m going to the bank. (The listener knows which: the usual one.)
  Is there a bank near here? (any bank)
  - I didn’t like the film. (the one that the speaker and listener saw)
    Let’s go and see a film. (The speaker doesn’t say which one.)
  - She arrived on the 8.15 train. (The speaker says which train.)
    She arrived in an old taxi. (The speaker doesn’t say which old taxi.)
  - Did you wash the clothes? (The listener knows which clothes.)
    I need to buy clothes. (No one knows exactly which clothes will be bought.)
  - What did you do with the coffee I bought? (The speaker says which coffee.)
    I don’t drink coffee. (any coffee)

Our listener/reader may know which one(s) we mean because:

a we have mentioned it/them before

  She’s got two children: a boy and a girl. The boy’s fourteen and the girl’s eight.
  ‘So what did you do then?’ ‘Gave the money right back to the policeman.’
  (The listener has already heard about the money and the policeman.)

b we say which one(s) we mean

  Who are the girls over there with Tom?
  Tell Amy the story about Jack and Susie.
  He’s already lost the phone he bought last week.

c it is clear from the situation which one(s) we mean

  Could you close the door? (Only one door is open.)
  Anna’s in the kitchen.  I can’t find the car papers.
  Did you enjoy the party?  What’s the time?
2 **the** = ‘the only one(s) around’

The listener may know which one we mean because there is no choice – there is only one (e.g. the sun, the moon, the earth, the world, the universe, the future) or there is only one in our part of the world (e.g. the government).

- *I haven’t seen the sun for days.** Do you trust the government?*
- *People used to think the earth was flat.*
- *Do you know the Aldersons? (It is clear to the listener that there can only be one family of that name around.)*
- *Go straight over two sets of traffic lights and then turn right after the supermarket. (The listener doesn’t know the supermarket, but has enough information to identify it.)*

3 **superlatives:** *I’m the oldest.*

We usually use *the* with superlatives (► 208.6) because there is normally only one best, biggest, etc individual or group (so it is clear which one(s) we are talking about). For the same reason, we usually use *the* with *first, next, last, same* and *only.*

- *I’m the oldest in my family.* Can I have the next pancake?

4 **the** meaning ‘the well-known’

After a name, an identifying expression with *the* is often used to make it clear that the person referred to is ‘the well-known one’.

- *She married Brad Pitt, the actor.*
- *I’d like you to meet Cathy Parker, the novelist.*

5 **possessives and demonstratives**

We do not use *the* with possessives or demonstratives.

- *This is my uncle.* (not . . . *the my uncle.*)
- *Is that Emily’s car? (not . . . *the Emily’s car?)*
- *I like this beer.* (not . . . *the this beer.*)

6 **proper nouns (names)**

We do not usually use *the* with singular proper nouns (there are some exceptions, ► 142.18–142.19).

- *Emily lives in Switzerland.* (not *The Emily lives in the Switzerland.*)

But note the use of *the* (pronounced /ði:/) with a person’s name to mean ‘the well-known’.

- *'My name’s Emma Watson.' 'What, not the Emma Watson?''*

7 **things in general**

We usually use no article, not *the*, to talk about things in general – *the* does not mean ‘all’. (For details and exceptions, ► 140.)

- *Books are expensive.* (not *The books are expensive.*)
- *Life is hard.* (not *The life is hard.*)

8 **pronunciation**

*The* is normally pronounced /ði:/ before a vowel and /ðə/ before a consonant. →

---

Dentimers: *alan and the; my, your, etc; this, that, etc*
Compare:

the ice /diː ɪs/  the snow /dəʊ ˈsnəʊ/  

The choice between /diː/ and /də/ depends on pronunciation, not spelling. We pronounce /diː/ before a vowel sound, even if it is written as a consonant.

the hour /diː ˈaʊə(r)/  the MP /də ˈemˈpiː/  

And we pronounce /də/ before a consonant sound, even if it is written as a vowel.

the university /də ˈjuːniˈvɜːsəti/  
the one-pound coin /də ˌwʌnˈpaʊnd ˈkəʊn/  

We sometimes pronounce a stressed /diː/ before a hesitation, or when we want to stress the noun phrase, even if the noun begins with a consonant.

He’s the /dəiz/ – just a moment – deputy assistant vice-president.  
I’ve found the /dəis/ present for Angela!

For the town, the country, the sea, the mountains, etc. ► 141.4.  
For on the bus, at the dentist’s, etc. ► 141.5.  
For other advanced points, ► 141.

137 more about a/an

1 countable and uncountable nouns
Countable nouns are the names of separate objects, people, ideas, etc which we can count.

a cat – three cats  
a secretary – four secretaries  
a plan – two plans

Uncountable nouns are the names of materials, liquids and other things which we do not usually see as separate objects.

wool (but not a wool, two wools)  
water (but not a water, three waters)  
weather (but not a weather, four weathers)  
an energy, several energies

For more detailed information, ► 119–120.

2 a/an with singular countable nouns
We normally use a/an only with singular countable nouns.

a secretary  an office  
but not a salt or an offices

For expressions like a good two hours, ► 130.7.

3 uses of a/an
A/an does not add much to the meaning of a noun – it is like a weak form of ‘one’. It has several common uses.

a one person or thing
We can use a/an when we mention one person or thing for the first time.

There’s a police car outside.  My brother’s married to a doctor.  
Andy lives in an old house.
b any one member of a class.

We can use *a/an* when we talk about any one *member* of a class.

- A *doctor* must like people. (= any doctor)
- I would like to live in *an old house*. (= any old house)

c classifying and defining

We can use *a/an* when we classify or define people and things – when we say what they are, what job they do, or what they are used for.

- *She’s a doctor*. I’m looking forward to being *a grandmother*.
- *A glider is a plane* with no engine. Don’t use your plate as *an ashtray*.

d descriptions

*A/an* is common before nouns that are used in descriptions.

- *She’s a nice person*. That was *a lovely evening*.
- *He’s got a friendly face*. It’s *an extremely hot day*.

4 when *a/an* cannot be left out

We do not normally leave out *a/an* in negative expressions, after prepositions or after fractions.

- ‘Lend me your pen.’ ‘I haven’t got *a pen*. (not *I haven’t got pen*.’)
- You shouldn’t go out *without a coat*. (not *... without coat*.)
- *three-quarters of a pound* (not *three-quarters of pound*)

And we do not leave out *a/an* when we say what jobs people have, or how things are used (see above).

- *She’s an engineer*. (not *She’s engineer.*)
- *I used my shoe as a hammer*. (not *... as hammer.*)

5 when *a/an* is not used: adjectives alone; possessives

*A/an* cannot normally be used with an adjective alone (without a noun). Compare:

- *It’s a good car*. *It’s good*. (not *It’s a good.*)

*A/an* cannot be used together with a possessive. Instead, we can use the structure *a ... of mine/yours*, etc (► 177).

- *He’s a friend of mine*. (not *He’s a my friend.*)
- *I used my shoe as a hammer*. (not *... as hammer.*)

6 *a/an* and *the*

Instead of *a/an*, we use *the* when we want to say ‘You and I both know which one I mean’. Compare:

- *She lives in a big house*. (The hearer doesn’t know which one.)
- *She lives in the big house over there*. (The hearer knows which one.)

For details, ► 136.

7 *a* and *an*: the difference

We do not normally pronounce the sound /ə/ before a vowel. So before a vowel, the article *a* (/ə/) changes to *an* /ən/. Compare:

- *a rabbit*  a *lemon*  *an elephant*  *an orange*

The choice between *a* and *an* depends on pronunciation, not spelling. We use *an* before a vowel sound, even if it is written as a consonant.

- *an hour* /ən 'aʊə(r)/  *an MP* /ən em 'pi:/

And we use *a* before a consonant sound, even if it is written as a vowel.

- *a university* /ə ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/  *a one-pound coin* /ə ,wʌŋ 'paund 'kɔɪn/
Some people say \textit{an}, not \textit{a}, before words beginning with \textit{h} if the first syllable is unstressed.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{an} \textit{hotel} (a \textit{hotel} is more common)
  \item \textit{an} \textit{historic} \textit{occasion} (a \textit{historic} \ldots is more common)
  \item \textit{an} \textit{hypothesis} (a \textit{hypothesis} is more common)
\end{itemize}

\textbf{BUT NOT} \textit{an} \textit{housewife} – the first syllable is stressed.

\textit{A} is sometimes pronounced /\textit{ei}/ before a hesitation, when we want to emphasise the following word, or when we want to make a contrast with \textit{the}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{I think I’ll have a /\textit{ei}/ - chocolate ice cream.}
  \item \textit{It’s a /\textit{ei}/ reason – it’s not the only reason.}
\end{itemize}

\section*{138 no article with plural and uncountable nouns}

\subsection*{1 a/an not used}

Plural and uncountable nouns (e.g. \textit{cats}, \textit{wool} \textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{137.1}}} cannot normally be used with \textit{a/an} (because \textit{a/an} has a similar meaning to ‘one’). Instead, we most often use no article.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{There were cats in every room}. (not \ldots \textit{-a-cats-} \ldots)
  \item \textit{Doctors generally work long \textit{hours}}. \textit{He’s got very big ears}.
  \item \textit{Her coat is made of pure \textit{wool}}. \textit{‘What’s that?’ ‘I think it’s \textit{salt}.’}
\end{itemize}

\subsection*{2 confusing nouns}

Some nouns that are countable in some other languages are uncountable in English (\textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{119.3}}} for a list).

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{I need information and advice}. (not \ldots \textit{an} \textit{information} and \textit{an} \textit{advice})
  \item \textit{You’ve made very good \textit{progress}}. (not \ldots \textit{a} \textit{very good} \textit{progress}.)
\end{itemize}

And note that we never use \textit{a/an} with \textit{weather} or \textit{English}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{We’re having \textit{terrible} \textit{weather}}. (not \ldots \textit{a} \textit{terrible} \textit{weather}.)
  \item \textit{She speaks \textit{very good} \textit{English}}. (not \ldots \textit{a} \textit{very good} \textit{English}.)
\end{itemize}

\subsection*{3 some and any}

Instead of no article, we can sometimes use \textit{some} or \textit{any}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{We met \textit{some} \textit{nice} Danish \textit{girls} in \textit{Scotland}}. \textit{Have you got \textit{any} matches?}
\end{itemize}

For details, \textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{139}}}.

\subsection*{4 the}

Instead of no article, we use \textit{the} when we want to say ‘You and I both know which I mean’ (\textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{136}}}). Compare:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{I’m working with \textit{children}}. (The hearer doesn’t know which ones.)
  \item \textit{How are the \textit{children}?} (= the hearer’s children)
  \item \textit{We need \textit{salt}}. (= any salt)
  \item \textit{Could you pass the \textit{salt}?} (The hearer can see the salt that is wanted.)
\end{itemize}

But we usually use no article, not \textit{the}, to talk about people, things, etc in general (\textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{140}}}).

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{Are dogs more intelligent than \textit{cats}}? (not \ldots \textit{the} \textit{dogs} \ldots \textit{the} \textit{cats})
  \item \textit{Everybody likes \textit{music}}. (not \ldots \textit{the} \textit{music}.)
\end{itemize}

For expressions like \textit{a coffee}, \textit{a knowledge of Spanish}, \textbf{\footnotesize{\ref*{119.4}, 119.6.}}
the difference between *some/any* and no article

1 **use with uncountable and plural nouns**

Uncountable and plural nouns can often be used either with *some/any* or with *no article*. There is not always a great difference of meaning.

We need *(some)* cheese.  
*I didn’t buy *(any)* eggs.*

*Some* is used especially in affirmative sentences; *any* is more common in questions and negatives (for details, ► 161).

2 **some/any or no article?**

We prefer *some/any* when we are thinking about limited but rather indefinite numbers or quantities – when we don’t know, care or say exactly how much/many. We prefer *no article* when we are thinking about unlimited numbers or quantities, or not thinking about numbers/quantities at all. Compare:

- *We’ve planted some roses in the garden.* (A limited number; the speaker doesn’t say how many.)
  
  *I like roses.* (No idea of number.)

- *We got talking to some students.* (A limited number.)

*Our next-door neighbours are students.* (The main idea is classification, not number.)

- *I’ve just bought some books on computing.* (A limited number.)

*There were books on the desk, on the floor, on the chairs, . . .*  
(A large number.)

- *Would you like some more rice?* (An indefinite amount – as much as the listener wants.)

*We need rice, sugar, eggs, butter, beer, and toilet paper.* (The speaker is thinking just of the things that need to be bought, not of the amounts.)

- *Is there any water in the fridge?* (The speaker wants a limited amount.)

*Is there water on the moon?* (The interest is in the existence of water, not the amount.)

- *This heating system hardly uses any oil.* (The interest is in the amount.)

*This heating system doesn’t use oil.* (The interest is in the type of fuel, not the amount.)

We do not use *some/any* when it is clear exactly how much/many we are talking about. Compare:

*You’ve got some great books.*

*You’ve got pretty toes.* (A definite number – ten. *You’ve got some pretty toes* would suggest that the speaker is not making clear how many of them are pretty – perhaps six or seven!)

For full details of the uses of *some*, ► 158; for *any*, ► 159.
140 talking in general

1 the does not mean ‘all’

We do not use the with uncountable or plural nouns to talk about things in general – to talk about all books, all people or all life, for example. The does not mean ‘all’. Instead, we use no article. Compare:

- Move the books off that chair and sit down. (= particular books)
  Books are expensive. (NOT The books are expensive.)
- I’m studying the life of Beethoven. (= one particular life)
  Life is complicated. (NOT The life . . .)
- ‘Where’s the cheese?’ ‘I ate it.’
  I love cheese.
- I’ve joined the local Dramatic Society.
  It’s not always easy to fit in with society.
- I never really understood the nature of my father’s work.
  She’s very interested in nature, especially animals and birds.
- Write your name in the space at the bottom of the page.
  Would you like to travel into space?
- Why has the light gone out?
  Nothing can travel faster than light.

Note that most (meaning ‘the majority of’) is used without the.

Most birds can fly. (NOT The most birds . . .)
Most of the children got very tired. (NOT The most of the children . . .)

2 generalisations with singular countable nouns

Sometimes we talk about things in general by using the with a singular countable noun.

Schools should concentrate more on the child and less on exams.
This is common with the names of scientific instruments and inventions, and musical instruments.

Life would be quieter without the telephone.
The violin is more difficult than the piano.
We can also generalise by talking about one example of a class, using a/an (meaning ‘any’) with a singular countable noun.

A baby deer can stand as soon as it’s born. A child needs plenty of love.
Note that we cannot use a/an in this way when we are generalising about all of the members of a group together.

The tiger is in danger of becoming extinct. (NOT A tiger is in danger of becoming extinct. The sentence is about the whole tiger family, not about individuals.)
Do you like horses? (NOT Do you like a horse?)

For the use of the + adjective to generalise about groups (e.g. the old, the blind), ► 188.
141 the: difficult cases

When we generalise about members of a group, meaning 'any/every individual', we usually use no article. For example, we use no article to generalise with uncountable and plural words (► 140); but we use the to show that the listener/reader knows which people or things we are talking about (► 136). Sometimes both these meanings come together, and it is difficult to know which form is correct. The grammatical distinctions in this area are not very clear; often the same idea can be expressed both with the and with no article. The following notes may help.

1 groups: nurses or the nurses; railways or the railways?

When we generalise about members of a group, we usually use no article. But if we talk about the group as a whole – as if it was a well-known unit – we are more likely to use the. Compare:

- Nurses mostly work very hard. (nearly every individual)
- The nurses have never gone on strike. (the well-known professional body)
- Stars vary greatly in size. (every one is different)
- The stars are really bright tonight. (the whole of our familiar night sky)
- Farmers often vote Conservative. (individuals vote)

What has this government done for the farmers? (the whole professional body)

- It's difficult for railways to make a profit. (any railways)
- The railways are getting more and more unreliable. (our well-known railways)

This often happens when we talk about nationalities. Compare:

New Zealanders don't like to be mistaken for Australians.
The Australians suffered heavy losses in the First World War.

2 French painters; the Impressionists

We are more likely to use the if we are talking about a ‘closed’ group or class with a relatively definite, limited number of members. Compare:

- French painters (a large indefinite group)
- the Impressionists (a particular artistic movement; we know more or less who belonged to the group)
- 19th-century poets
- the Romantic poets (Shelley, Keats, Byron, Wordsworth and a few others)

Specialists are likely to use the for groups or classes that they study or know about. Compare:

Metals are mostly shiny.
Next term we’re going to study the metals in detail.

3 1960s music; the music of the 1960s

Some expressions are ‘half-general’ – in the middle between general and particular. If we talk about 1960s music, eighteenth-century history or poverty in Britain, we are not talking about all music, history or poverty, but these are still rather general ideas (compared with the music we heard last night, the history I did at school or the poverty I grew up in). In these ‘half-general’ expressions,
we usually use no article. However, the is often used when the noun is followed by a limiting, defining phrase, especially one with of. Compare:

- 1960s music  the music of the 1960s
- African butterflies  the butterflies of Africa

4 physical environment: the town, the sea

The is used with a number of rather general expressions referring to our physical environment – the world around us and its climate. The suggests that everybody is familiar with what we are talking about. Examples are:

- the town, the country, the mountains, the sea, the seaside, the wind, the rain, the weather, the sunshine, the night.

My wife likes the seaside, but I prefer the mountains.

British people talk about the weather a lot. I love listening to the wind.

But note that no article is used with nature, society or space when these have a ‘general’ meaning (► 140).

5 on the bus; at the gym

We use the (with a singular countable noun) when we talk about some kinds of thing that are part of everybody’s lives, like ‘the bus’ or ‘the hairdresser’. In this case the bus, for example, does not mean ‘one bus that you know about’; we use the to suggest that taking a bus is a common experience that we all share.

- I have some of my best ideas when I’m on the bus.
- Most of my friends go to the gym two or three times a week.

Do you sing in the bath?

I’ve stopped reading the newspaper because it’s too depressing.

For similar expressions with no article (e.g. in bed, in hospital), ► 142.1.

6 She kicked him on the knee.; He sat at the side.

We sometimes use the even when it is not exactly clear which of several particular persons or things we are talking about. This can happen when there are several similar possibilities, and it is unnecessary to be more definite.

Lying by the side of the road we saw the wheel of a car.

(Not... a wheel of a car.)

Jack Perkins is the son of a rich banker. (who may have more than one son)

She kicked him on the knee.

The is often used like this with side and wrong.

- I usually sit at the side in church. He’s the wrong man for me.
- (on the phone) I’m sorry. You’ve got a/the wrong number.

142 special rules and exceptions

1 common expressions without articles: in bed; at school

In some common fixed expressions to do with place, time and movement, normally countable nouns are treated as uncountables, without articles. Examples are:

- to/at/in/from school/university/college  to/at/in/into/from church
- to/in/into/out of bed/prison  to/in/into/out of hospital (BrE)
- to/at/from work  to/at sea  to/in/from town
Determiners: *a/an* and *the*; *my, your, etc*; *this, that, etc*

Section 12

at/from home  
leave home

leave/start/enter school/university/college

by day  
at night

by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/tube/boat  
on foot

by radio/phone/letter/mail/email/text

With place nouns, expressions with or without articles may have different meanings. Compare:

- I met her at college.  
  (when we were students)
- I'll meet you at the college.  
  (The college is just a meeting place.)
- Megan's in hospital.  
  (as a patient)
- I left my coat in the hospital when I was visiting Megan.

In American English, *university* and *hospital* are not used without articles.

She was unhappy at the university.

Say that again and I'll put you in the hospital.

2 double expressions: *with knife and fork*

Articles are often dropped in double expressions, particularly with prepositions.

- *with knife and fork*
- *on land and sea*
- *day after day*

- *with hat and coat*
- *arm in arm*
- *husband and wife*

- *from top to bottom*
- *inch by inch*

For cases like *the bread and (the) butter*, ► 276.

3 possessive 's

Nouns lose their articles after possessive 's.

- *the coat that belongs to Jack = Jack's coat*  
  (NOT Jack's the coat)
- *the economic problems of America = America's economic problems*  
  (NOT the America's economic problems)

But the possessive noun itself may have an article.

- the wife of the boss = the boss's wife

4 noun modifiers

When a noun modifies another noun, the first noun's article is dropped.

- lessons in how to play the guitar = guitar lessons
- a spot on the sun = a sunspot

5 both and all

We often leave out *the* after both.

- Both (the) children are good at languages.

And we generally leave out *the* between *all* and a number.

- All (the) three brothers were arrested.

We usually leave out *the* after all in *all day, all night, all week, all year, all winter* and *all summer*.

- He's been away all week.  
  I haven't seen her all day.

6 kind of, etc

We usually leave out *a/an* after kind of, sort of, type of and similar expressions  
(► 592).

- What kind of (a) person is she?  
  Have you got a cheaper sort of radio?
- They've developed a new variety of sheep.
7 amount and number

The is dropped after the amount/number of.

I was surprised at the amount of money collected. (Not...of the money)
The number of unemployed is rising steadily.

8 man and woman

Unlike other singular countable nouns, man and woman can be used in a general sense without articles.

Man and woman were created equal.

But we more often use a woman and a man, or men and women.

A woman without a man is like a fish without a bicycle. (Old feminist joke)

Men and women have similar abilities and needs.

Man is also commonly used to mean 'the human race', though many people regard this usage as sexist and prefer to avoid it (► 328.6).

How did man first discover fire?

9 days, months and seasons

We drop the when we mean 'the day/month before or after this one'.

Where were you last Saturday? See you on Thursday.

I was away in April. We're moving next September.

To talk about the seasons in general, we can say spring or the spring, summer or the summer, etc. There is little difference.

Rome is lovely in (the) spring. I like (the) winter best.

When we are talking about particular springs, summers, etc, we are more likely to use the.

I worked very hard in the summer that year.

10 musical instruments

We often use the + singular when we talk about musical instruments in general, or about playing musical instruments.

The violin is really difficult. Who's that on the piano?

But the is often dropped when talking about jazz or pop, and sometimes when talking about classical music.

This recording was made with Miles Davis on trumpet.

She studied oboe and saxophone at the Royal Academy of Music.

11 (the) radio, (the) cinema, (the) theatre and television

When we talk about our use of these forms of entertainment, we generally say the radio, the cinema (BrE), the theatre, but television or TV.

I always listen to the radio while I'm driving.

It was a great treat to go to the cinema or the theatre when I was a child. (BrE)

What's on TV?

The is often dropped in all four cases when we talk about these institutions as art forms or professions.

Cinema is different from theatre in several ways.

He's worked in radio and television all his life.
12 jobs and positions: He was elected President.
The is not used in titles like Queen Elizabeth, President Obama. Compare:
Queen Elizabeth had dinner with President Obama.
The Queen had dinner with the President.
And the is not usually used in the complement of a sentence, when we say that somebody has or gains a unique position (the only one in the organisation).
Compare:

They appointed him Head Librarian. Where's the librarian?
He was elected President in 1879. I want to see the president.

13 addressing people: Good morning, children.
We don’t address groups of people directly by using the with the name of the group.
Good morning, children. (NOT Good morning, the children.)

14 exclamations: What a . . .!
We use a/an with singular countable nouns in exclamations after What.
What a lovely dress! (NOT What lovely dress!)
Note that a/an cannot be used in exclamations with uncountable nouns.
What nonsense! (NOT What a nonsense!) What luck!

15 illnesses
The names of illnesses and pains are usually uncountable, with no article,
in standard British English (for more details, ► 119.7).
Have you had appendicitis? I’ve got toothache again.
A/an is used in a few cases such as a cold, a headache.
I’ve got a horrible cold. Have you got a headache?
The can be used informally with a few common illnesses.
I think I’ve got (the) flu. (AmE always the flu)
She’s never had (the) measles.
American usage is different in some cases.
I’ve got a toothache / an earache / a backache / a stomach ache.
(BrE I’ve got toothache/earache, etc)

16 parts of the body, etc
When talking about someone’s possessions, or parts of their body, we usually use possessives, not the.
He stood in the doorway, his coat over his arm. (NOT . . . -the coat over the arm.)
Katy broke her arm climbing. (NOT Katy broke the arm-climbing.)
But the is common after prepositions, especially when we are talking about blows, pains and other things that often happen to parts of people’s bodies (► 143.5).
She hit him in the stomach. He was shot in the leg.
Can’t you look me in the eye?

17 measurements: by the hour; twice a week
Note the use of the in measuring expressions beginning with by.
Do you sell eggs by the kilo or by the dozen?
He sits watching TV by the hour. Can I pay by the month?

grammar • 142 special rules and exceptions
A/an is used to relate one measuring unit to another.

sixty pence a kilo  thirty miles an hour  twice a week

18 place names

We use the with these kinds of place names:
- seas (the Atlantic)
- mountain groups (the Himalayas)
- island groups (the West Indies)
- rivers (the Rhine)
- deserts (the Sahara)
- most hotels (the Grand Hotel)
- most cinemas and theatres (the Odeon; the Playhouse)
- most museums and art galleries (the British Museum; the Frick)

We usually use no article with:
- continents, countries, states, counties, departments, etc (Africa, Brazil, Texas, Berkshire, Westphalia)
- towns (Oxford)
- streets (New Street, Willow Road)
- lakes (Lake Michigan)

Exceptions: places whose name is (or contains) a common noun like republic, state, union (e.g. the People's Republic of China, the United Kingdom, the United States). Note also the Netherlands, and its seat of government The Hague. There are a few countries whose names used to have the, but are now normally used with no article: (The) Ukraine, (The) Lebanon, (The) Gambia, (The) Sudan.

The is unusual in the titles of the principal public buildings and organisations of a town, when the title begins with the town name.

Oxford University (not the Oxford University)
Hull Station (not the Hull Station)
Salisbury Cathedral  Manchester City Council
Birmingham Airport  Cheltenham Football Club

With the names of less important institutions, usage varies.

(The) East Oxford Community Centre.  (The) Newbury School of English.

Names of single mountains vary. Most have no article.
- Everest  Kilimanjaro  Snowdon  Table Mountain

But definite articles are usually translated in the English versions of European mountain names, except those beginning Le Mont.
- The Meije (= La Meije)
- The Matterhorn (= Das Matterhorn)
- BUT Mont Blanc (not the Mont Blanc)

19 newspapers and magazines

The names of newspapers usually have the.
- The Times  The Washington Post

The names of magazines do not always have the.
- New Scientist
### 20 abbreviated styles

We usually leave out articles in abbreviated styles (► 291).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>newspaper headlines</th>
<th>MAN KILLED ON MOUNTAIN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>headings</td>
<td>Introduction Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picture captions</td>
<td>Mother and child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notices, posters, etc</td>
<td>Open packet at other end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructions</td>
<td>Go through door A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numbering and labelling</td>
<td>Control to Car 27: can you hear me?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(™ native-speaker) dictionary entries

| lists | take car to garage; pay phone bill; . . . |
| notes | I thinks company needs new office |

For articles with abbreviations (NATO, the USA), ◗ 336.2-336.3.
For the in double comparatives (the more, the better), ◗ 206.5.
For a with few and little, ◗ 168.
For a with hundred, thousand, etc, ◗ 322.10.
For the in double comparatives (the more, the better), ◗ 206.5.
For the in double comparatives (the more, the better), ◗ 206.5.
For the in double comparatives (the more, the better), ◗ 206.5.
For the instead of enough, ◗ 450.6.
For another two days, a good three weeks, etc, ◗ 130.7.

### 143 possessive determiners: my, your, etc

#### 1 What kind of words are they?

*My, your, his, her, its, our and their* are pronouns, because they stand for possessive noun phrases: *my younger brother* means ‘the speaker’s younger brother’; *their plans* means for example ‘those people’s plans’ or ‘the children’s plans’.

They are used at the beginning of noun phrases, and function as determiners. They are not adjectives, though they are sometimes called ‘possessive adjectives’ in older grammars and dictionaries.

Like all ‘possessive’ words and structures, they can express various ideas besides possession.

Note that *mine, yours*, etc (► 176) are also pronouns (of a different kind), but they are not used as determiners.

#### 2 one’s and whose

*One’s* (► 181.5) and *whose* (► 235, 628) are also possessive determiners/pronouns.

*It’s easy to lose one’s temper when one is criticised.*

*An orphan is a child whose parents are dead. Whose bicycle is that?*

#### 3 not used with other determiners

*My, your, etc* are not used with other determiners like *the, a/an or this.*

*She’s lost her keys.* (NOT . . . the her keys.)

If we want to use *a/an or this, that,* etc with a possessive, we use the ‘. . . of mine’ structure (► 177).

*A friend of mine has just invited me to Italy.* (NOT A my friend . . .)

*How’s that brother of yours?* (NOT . . . that your brother?)
4 **distributive use:** *She told them to open their books, etc*

After a plural possessive, we do not normally use a singular noun in the sense of 'one each'. (For details, ► 131.)

*The teacher told the children to open their books.* *(not . . . their book:)*

5 **articles instead of possessives:** *a pain in the head*

We sometimes use articles instead of *my, your, etc.* This happens in common prepositional phrases which refer to the subject or object, mostly when we are talking about blows, pains and other things that often happen to parts of people's bodies.

*The ball hit him on the head.*  *She's got a pain in the stomach.*

In other cases we do not normally use articles instead of possessives (► 142.16).

*She's got a parrot on her shoulder.* *(not She's got a parrot on the shoulder:)*

*Mia broke her leg playing football.* *(not Mia broke the leg . . .)*

*He stood there, his eyes closed and his hands in his pockets, looking half asleep.* *(not . . . the eyes closed and the hands in the pockets . . .)*

6 **spelling:** *its, whose*

The possessives *its* and *whose* have no apostrophes. *It's* and *who's* are not possessives, but contractions (► 337): they mean 'it is' or 'it has'; 'who is' or 'who has'. Compare:

*The dog's in a good mood. It's just had its breakfast.*

'Whose little girl is that?' 'You mean the one who's making all that noise?'

For structures like *Do you mind my smoking?*, ► 94.3.  *For my own, your own, etc*, ► 552.

For the older English form *thy*, ► 318.10.  *For southern AmE you all's*, ► 174.8.

### 144 **this and that**

1 **determiners or pronouns**

*This/that/these/those* are often called 'demonstratives' in grammars. They can be used as determiners at the beginning of noun phrases. (They are not adjectives, though they are sometimes called 'demonstrative adjectives' in older grammars and dictionaries.)

*Look at that butterfly.*  *Let me show you these patterns.*

They can also be used without nouns, as 'demonstrative pronouns'.

*Look at this.*  *That's terrible!*

Determiner and pronoun uses are both covered in this entry for convenience.

2 **people and things**

*This/that/these/those* can be used as determiners with nouns that refer to either people or things.

*This child*  *that house*

But when they are used without nouns ('pronoun' use), *this/that/these/those* normally only refer to things.

*This costs more than that.* *(but not This says he's tired:)*

*Put those down - they're dirty.* *(This says he's tired, p go away:)*
Determiners: *a/an* and *the*; *my, your, etc*; *this, that, etc*

However, *this, etc* can be used without nouns for people when we say who the people are.

*Hello. This is Elisabeth. Is that Ruth? That looks like Mrs Walker.*

*Who’s that? These are the Smiths.*

Note also *Those who* . . . (► 144.7 below).

For a similar use of *it* to refer to people, ► 173.9.

### 3 the difference

We use *this/these* for people and things which are close to the speaker.

*This is very nice – can I have some more? Get this cat off my shoulder.*

*I don’t know what I’m doing in this country. (NOT . . . in that country.) Do you like these earrings? Joseph gave them to me.*

We use *that/those* for people and things which are more distant from the speaker, or not present.

*That smells nice – is it for lunch? Get that cat off the piano.*

*All the time I was in that country I hated it. I like those earrings. Where did you get them?*

### 4 time

*This/these* can refer to situations and events which are going on or just about to start.

*I like this music. What is it? Listen to this. You’ll like it. (NOT Listen to that . . .) Watch this. This is a police message.*

*That/those* can refer to situations and events which have just finished, or which are more distant in the past.

*That was nice. What was it? (NOT This was nice . . .) Did you see that? Who said that? Have you ever heard from that Scottish boy you used to go out with? (NOT . . . this Scottish boy you used to go out with.) That can show that something has come to an end. . . . and that’s how it happened. ‘Anything else?’ ‘No, that’s all, thanks.’ (in a shop) OK. That’s it. I’m leaving. It was nice knowing you.*

### 5 acceptance and rejection

We sometimes use *this/these* to show acceptance or interest, and *that/those* to show dislike or rejection. Compare:

*Now tell me about this new boyfriend of yours. I don’t like that new boyfriend of yours.*

### 6 on the telephone

On the telephone, British people use *this* to identify themselves, and *that* to ask about the hearer’s identity.

*Hello. This is Max. Is that Alex?*

Americans can also use *this* to ask about the hearer’s identity.

*Who is this?*
7 *that, those* meaning ‘the one(s)’

In a formal style, *that* and *those* can be used with a following description to mean ‘the one(s)’. *Those who . . . means ‘the people who . . .’

A dog’s intelligence is much greater than *that* of a cat.

*Those who can, do. Those who can’t, teach.*

8 *this and that* meaning ‘so’

In an informal style, *this* and *that* are often used with adjectives and adverbs in the same way as *so*.

*I didn’t realise it was going to be *this* hot.*

*If your boyfriend’s *that* clever, why isn’t *he* rich?*

In standard English, only *so* is used before a following clause.

*It was *so* cold that I couldn’t feel my fingers. (not *It was *that* cold that . . .)*

*Not all *that* can be used to mean ‘not very’.
*‘How was the play?’ ‘Not all *that* good.’*

9 *other uses*

Note the special use of *this* (with no demonstrative meaning) in conversational story-telling.

*There was this travelling salesman, you see. And he wanted . . .*

*That/those* can suggest that an experience is familiar to everybody.

*I can’t stand *that* perfume of hers.*

This use is common in advertisements.

*When you get *that* empty feeling – break for a snack.*

*Earn more money during *those* long winter evenings. Call . . .*

The differences between *this* and *that* are similar to the differences between *here* and *there* (► 484), *come and go* (► 424) and *bring and take* (► 409). For this one, that one, etc, ► 182.

For these and *those* with singular *kind of, sort of*, ► 592. For *that which*, ► 237.21.

145 *this/that* and *it*: things that have just been mentioned

1 *referring back*

*This, that* and *it* can all be used to refer back to things or situations that have just been talked or written about. *It* does not give any special emphasis.

*So she decided to paint her house pink. It upset the neighbours a bit.*

*This and that* are more emphatic; they ‘shine a light’, so to speak, on the things or situations, suggesting ‘an interesting new fact has been mentioned’.

*So she decided to paint her house pink. *This/That* really upset the neighbours, as you can imagine.*

*This* is preferred when there is more to say about the new subject of discussion.

*So she decided to paint her house pink. *This* upset the neighbours so much that they took her to court, believe it or not. The case came up last week . . .*

*Then in 1917 he met Andrew Lewis. *This* was a turning point in his career: the two men entered into a partnership which lasted until 1946, and . . .* (More natural than . . . *That* was a turning point . . .)
Determiners: a/an and the; my, your, etc; this, that, etc

2 more than one thing
When more than one thing has been mentioned, it generally refers to the main subject of discussion; this and that generally refer to a new subject that has been introduced (often the last thing mentioned). Compare:

- We keep the ice-cream machine in the spare room. It is mainly used by the children, incidentally. (The machine is used by the children.)
- We keep the ice-cream machine in the spare room. This/That is mainly used by the children, incidentally. (The spare room is used by the children.)
- I was carrying the statue to my office when I dropped it on the kitchen table. It was badly damaged. (The statue was damaged.)
- I was carrying the statue to my office when I dropped it on the kitchen table. This was badly damaged. (The table was damaged.)

3 focus
It is only used to refer to things which are ‘in focus’ – which have already been talked about. This is preferred when we ‘bring things into focus’ before anything has been said about them. Compare:

I enjoyed ‘Vampires’ Picnic’. It/This is a film for all the family...
VAMPIRES’ PICNIC: This is a film for all the family... (NOT VAMPIRES’ PICNIC: It is a film for all the family...)

4 referring forward
Only this can refer forward to something that has not yet been mentioned.
Now what do you think about this? I thought I’d get a job in Spain for six months, and then... (NOT Now what do you think about that/it...)

For more about it, ► 173.
Section 13  Determiners: Quantifiers

INTRODUCTION

Determiners in this group are mainly quantifiers: they show how much of a class or category we are talking about (all, most, some, none, . . .).

other uses

Besides their use as determiners in noun phrases, these words can generally be used without following nouns if the meaning is clear. Compare:

- He doesn’t eat any meat, and not much fish.
- Fish? He eats some, but not much.

This ‘pronoun’ use of quantifiers is dealt with here, and not in Section 14, for convenience, along with some other uses of these words. For uses not included here, see the Index.

A few words which can have determiner and non-determiner uses (e.g. other, only, such, which, what and numbers) are covered elsewhere – see the Index.

putting determiners together: use of of

Quantifiers can be put together if the combination makes sense.

- We meet every few days.
- Have you got any more coffee?

When a quantifier is put together with a ‘group 1’ determiner (article, possessive or demonstrative, ► Section 12), we use a structure with of. Compare:

- some people
  - some of the people
- each child
  - each of my children
- neither door
  - neither of these doors

The same thing happens before a pronoun. Compare:

- most horses
  - most of them

A quantifier with of can be used directly before a noun in a few cases. This happens with proper nouns such as place names, and sometimes with uncountable nouns that refer to the whole of a subject or activity.

- Most of Wales was without electricity last night.
- Much of philosophy is concerned with questions that have no answers.

Many, most, little, least, few and fewest can follow ‘group 1’ determiners directly in some cases.

- his many friends
  - the most money
- a little time
  - the least difficulty
- these few poems
  - the fewest problems
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

× All of children can be difficult. ► 147.1
× We all can swim. ► 147.2–148
× All stood up. ► 149.1
× All what I have is yours. ► 149.2
× She lost all. ► 149.2
× The every plate was broken. ► 152.2
× I’ve written to my every friend. ► 152.2
× I see her every days. ► 151.1
× Every room are being used. ► 151.1
× Each new day are different. ► 153.1
× He’s lost nearly each friend he had. ► 154.3
× Both my brothers carried the piano upstairs. ► 155.1
× The both children have fair hair. ► 155.3
× Come on Tuesday or Wednesday. Either days are OK. ► 156.1
× Please be quiet. Some of people want to get to sleep. ► 158.6
× She’s unhappy because she’s got any friends. ► 159.3
× I can write with any hand. ► 160
× ‘Which newspaper would you like?’ ‘It doesn’t matter. Every one.’ ► 162
× Not any tourists ever came to our village. ► 163.4
× None of my parents could be there. ► 163.5
× No one of my friends wished me a happy birthday. ► 164.1
× He’s got much money. ► 165.4
× The most children like ice cream. ► 167.1
× Most of cheese is made from cow’s milk. ► 167.1
× A lot of my friends wants to emigrate. ► 172.2
× The majority of criminals is non-violent. ► 172.5

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

146 all: introduction
147 all (of) with noun phrases and pronouns
148 all with the verb: We can all swim.
149 all, everybody/everyone and everything
150 all and whole
151 every (one)
152 every and all
153 each
154 each and every: the difference
155 both
156 either
157 neither
158 some
159 any
160 any = ‘it doesn’t matter who/which/what’
161 some and any: the main differences
162 any and every: the difference
163 no, none, and not a/any
164 no one and none
165 much and many
166 more
167 most
168 (a) little and (a) few
169 less and fewer
170 least and fewest
171 enough
172 quantifying expressions: a lot, lots, a great deal, the majority, etc
146 all: introduction

1 three or more items

All refers to three or more items. Compare:

I'll take all three shirts, please.
I'll take both shirts. (not . . . all two shirts.)

2 all (of) with noun phrases and pronouns

All modifies noun phrases or pronouns.

All (of) the people were singing. I haven't read all of it.
Give my love to them all.

For details of word order, and the use of all of, ► 147.

3 with the subject or the verb

When all modifies the subject, it can go either with the subject or with the verb.

All the people were singing. The people were all singing.

For more examples, ► 147–148.

4 all without a noun

All can sometimes be used without a noun to mean ‘everything’ but only in certain structures (► 149).

All that matters is to be happy. That's all.

5 all with adjectives, adverbs, etc: all alone

All can be used to emphasise some adjectives, prepositions and adverbs.

You're all wet. She walked all round the town.
I was all alone. Tell me all about your plans.
It's all because of you. I looked all round, but I couldn't see anything.

All, both and half follow similar grammar rules. For both, ► 155; for half, ► 478.

147 all (of) with noun phrases and pronouns

1 all and all of

All (of) can modify noun phrases and pronouns, especially in American English. Before a noun with a determiner (for example the, my, this), all and all of are both possible. All is more common than all of in British English.

She's eaten all (of) the cake. All (of) my friends like riding.

Before a noun with no determiner, we do not normally use of.

All children can be difficult. (not All of children . . .)

2 all of + personal pronoun

With personal pronouns, we use all of + us/you/them.

All of us/you/them can be a subject or object.

All of us can come tomorrow. (not All we . . .)
She's invited all of you. Emily sent all of them her love.
Determiners: Quantifiers

3 pronoun + all

We can put all after pronouns used as objects.

*She's invited you all.*  *Emily sent her love to them all.*
*I've made us all something to eat.*

This does not generally happen with complement pronouns (after be) or in short answers.

*I think that's all of them.*  *(not I think that's them all.)*
*'Who did she invite?' 'All of us.'  *(not Us all.)*

All can follow a subject pronoun (e.g. *They all went home*), but in this case it is positioned with the verb (► 148) and may be separated from the pronoun (e.g. *They have all gone home*).

For the American plural pronoun you all, ► 174.8.

4 types of noun

*All* is used mostly before uncountable and plural noun phrases.

*all the water  all my friends*

However, *all* can be used before some singular countable nouns referring to things that can naturally be divided into parts.

*all that week  all my family  all the way*

We can also use *all (of)* before proper nouns (e.g. the names of places or writers), especially in BrE.

*All (of) London knew about her affairs.*
*I've read all (of) Shakespeare.*

With other singular countable nouns, it is more natural to use *whole* (e.g. *the whole story*). For details, ► 150.

5 leaving out the

After all, we sometimes leave out *the* before numbers.

*all (the) three brothers*

And we usually leave out *the* in *all day, all the day, all week, all year, all winter* and *all summer.*

*She stayed here all day.*  *(not ... all the day).*

6 not all . . .

It is not very common to use *all + noun* as the subject of a negative verb (e.g. *All Americans don't like hamburgers*). We more often use *not all + noun + affirmative verb.*

*Not all Americans like hamburgers.*

Note the difference between *not all* and *no.* Compare:

*Not all birds can fly.  No birds can play chess.*

148 all with the verb: We can all swim.

When *all* refers to the subject of a clause, it can go with the verb, in ‘mid-position’ (for details of word order, ► 200).

*We can all swim.*
*Those apples were all bad.*
*The guests have all arrived.*
*My family all work in education.*
Note that these meanings can also be expressed by using *all (of)* with the subject (▶ 147).

*All of us can swim.*  *All (of) the guests have arrived.*

### 149 all, everybody/everyone and everything

**1 all and everybody/everyone**

We do not normally use *all* without a noun phrase to mean ‘everybody’.

Compare:

- *All the people stood up.*
- *Everybody/Everyone stood up.* (not *All stood up.*)

**2 all and everything**

*All* (without a noun phrase) can mean ‘everything’, but usually only in the structure *all* + relative clause (*all that . . .*). Compare:

- *All (that) I have is yours.* (not *All what I have . . .*)
- *Everything is yours.* (not *All is yours.*)
- *She lost all (that) she owned.*
- *She lost everything.* (not *She lost all.*)

This structure often has a rather negative meaning, expressing ideas like ‘nothing more’ or ‘the only thing(s)’.

- *This is all I’ve got.*  *All I want is a place to sit down.*
- *All that happened was that he went to sleep.*

Note also *That’s all* (= It’s finished; There’s no more).

**3 older English**

In older English, *all* could be used alone to mean ‘everybody’ or ‘everything’ (e.g. *Tell me all; All is lost; All are dead*). This only happens regularly in modern English in dramatic contexts like newspaper headlines (e.g. *SPY TELLS ALL*).

### 150 all and whole

**1 pronunciation**

*all /ɔːl/*  *whole /həʊl/*

**2 word order**

*All (of)* (especially BrE) and *whole* can be used with singular noun phrases to mean ‘complete’, ‘every part of’. The word order is different.

- *Julie spent all (of) the summer at home.*
- *Julie spent the whole summer at home.*
- *all (of) my life*
- *my whole life*
3 indefinite reference

*All* is not generally used before indefinite articles.

*She's eaten a whole loaf.* (not... *all a loaf.*)

4 uncountable nouns

With most uncountable nouns we prefer *all (of).*

*I've drunk all (of) the milk.* (not... *the whole milk.*)

5 the whole of (mainly BrE)

Instead of *whole,* the *whole of* is also possible, especially in British English.

*Julie spent the whole of the summer at home.*

*the whole of my life*

Before proper nouns (names) and pronouns we always use *the whole of,* not *whole.* *All (of)* is also possible.

*The whole of / All of Venice was under water.* (not... *Whole Venice...*)

*I've just read the whole of / all of 'War and Peace'.*

*I've read the whole of / all of it.*

6 plural nouns

With plural nouns, *all* and *whole* have different meanings. *All* is like *every,* *whole* means *complete,* *entire.* Compare:

*All Indian tribes suffered from white settlement in America.* (= *Every Indian tribe suffered...*)

*Whole Indian tribes were killed off.* (= Complete tribes were killed off; nobody was left alive in these tribes.)

151 every (one)

1 every + singular

*Every* is a determiner. We normally use it before a singular noun (but ► 151.5 below). If the noun is a subject, its verb is also singular.

*every + singular noun (+ singular verb)*

*I see her every day.* (not... *every days.*)

*Every room is being used.* (not *Every room are...*)

2 every one of

We use *every one of* before a pronoun or a determiner (for example *the,* *my,* *these*). The pronoun or noun is plural, but a following verb is singular.

*every one of us / you / them (+ singular verb)*

*every one of + determiner + plural noun (+ singular verb)*

*His books are wonderful. I've read every one of them.*

*Every one of the children was crying.*

3 every one without a noun

We can drop a noun and use *every one* alone, if the meaning is clear.

*His books are great. Every one's worth reading.*
4 negative structures
To negate every, we normally use not every.

Not every kind of bird can fly. (More natural than Every kind of bird cannot fly.)

5 every + plural noun
Every is used before a plural noun in expressions that refer to intervals.
I see her every few days. There's a meeting every six weeks.
She had to stop and rest every two or three steps.

6 everybody, etc
Everybody, everyone, everything and everywhere are used with singular verbs, like every.

Everybody has gone home. (not Everybody have . . .)
Everything I like is either illegal, immoral or fattening.
I found that everywhere was closed.

When possessives and pronouns refer back to everybody/everyone, they can usually be either singular (more formal) or plural (less formal). Sometimes only a plural word makes sense. Compare:

Has everybody got his or her ticket? (more formal)
Has everybody got their tickets? (less formal)

When everybody had finished eating, the waiters took away their plates.

(NOT . . . his or her plate.)

Note that everyone (= 'everybody') does not mean the same as every one (which can refer to things as well as people).

7 everyday
Everyday is an adjective meaning 'ordinary', 'usual', 'routine'. It is not the same as the adverbial expression every day. Compare:

In everyday life, you don't often find an elephant in a supermarket.
You don't see elephants every day.

8 common expressions
Note the following common expressions with every.

every single
She visits her mother every single day.

every other
We meet every other Tuesday. (= . . . every second Tuesday.)

every so often; every now and then
We go out for a drink together every so often / every now and then.

For the difference between every and each, ► 154. For every and all, ► 152. For every and any, ► 162.
For more information about everybody/everyone, ► 180.
Determiners: Quantifiers

152 every and all

Every and all can both be used to talk about people or things in general, or about all the members of a group. There is little difference of meaning; every often suggests ‘without exception’. The two words are used in different structures.

1 every with singular nouns; all with plurals

Every is used with a singular noun. To give the same meaning, all is used with a plural noun. Compare:

- Every child needs love. (not All child needs love.)
  All children need love.
- Every light was out.
  All (of) the lights were out.

2 every not used with determiners

We can use all (of), but not normally every, with certain determiners (articles, possessives or demonstratives). Compare:

- All (of) the plates were broken.
  Every plate was broken. (not Every the plate / The every plate . . .)
- I've written to all (of) my friends.
  I've written to every friend I have. (not . . . every my friend / my every friend.)

3 all with uncountables

We can use all, but not every, with uncountable nouns.

I like all music. (not . . . every music.)

4 all day and every day, etc

Note the difference between all day/week, etc and every day/week, etc.

She was here all day. (= from morning to night)
She was here every day. (Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, . . .)

For the difference between every and each, ▶ 154.

153 each

1 each + singular

Each is a determiner. We use it before a singular noun.

I enjoy each moment. (not . . . each moments.)

A following verb is also singular.

Each new day is different. (not . . . are different.)

2 each of

We use each of before a plural pronoun, or before a determiner (for example the, my, these) with a plural noun.

Each of us sees the world differently.

I phone each of my children once a week.
A following verb is normally singular.
Each of them has problems.

3 position with object
Each can follow an object (direct or indirect), but does not normally come at the end of a clause.
She kissed them each on the forehead. (but not She kissed them each.)
I want them each to make their own decision.
I sent the secretaries each a Christmas card.
However, each can come at the end of a clause in expressions referring to exact amounts and quantities.
They cost £3.50 each. I bought the girls two pairs of trainers each.

4 without a noun
We can drop a noun after each, if the meaning is clear. However, each one or each of them is more common in an informal style.
I’ve got five brothers, and each (one/of them) lives in a different city.

5 with the verb
When each refers to the subject, it can also go with a verb in mid-position, like all and some adverbs (for details of word order, ► 200). In this case plural nouns, pronouns and verbs are used.
They have each been told.
We can each apply for our own membership card.
You are each right in a different way.
The plans each have certain advantages and disadvantages.

For the difference between each and every, ► 154.

154 each and every: the difference

1 each with two or more; every with three or more
Each and every are both normally used with singular nouns. Each can be used to talk about two or more people or things; every is normally used to talk about three or more.
The business makes less money each/every year. (not...each/every years.)
She had a child holding on to each hand. (not...every hand.)

For expressions like every two years, every three steps, ► 130.9.

2 meaning
Each and every can often be used without much difference of meaning.
You look more beautiful each/every time I see you.
But we prefer each when we are thinking of people or things separately, one at a time. And every is more common when we are thinking of people or things together, in a group. (Every is closer to all.) So we are more likely to say:
Each person in turn went to see the doctor.
BUT
Every patient came from the same small village.
3 structures

We do not use *each* with words and expressions like *almost, practically, nearly* or *without exception*, which stress the idea of a whole group.

*She’s lost nearly every friend she had.* (NOT . . . *nearly each friend* . . .)

*Each* can be used in some structures where *every* is impossible.

*They each said what they thought.* (BUT NOT *They-every* . . .)

*Each of them spoke for five minutes.* (BUT NOT *Every of them* . . .)

For more details, ► 153 (*each*) and ► 151 (*every*).

155 *both*

1 meaning

*Both* means ‘each of two’.

*Both my parents were born in Scotland.*

When the meaning is not ‘each of two’, we normally use a different expression.

*My two brothers carried the piano upstairs.* (More natural than *Both my brothers carried the piano upstairs* – they didn’t each carry it separately.)

2 *both and both of*

Before a noun with a determiner (e.g. *the, my, these*), *both* and *both of* are equally possible.

*She’s eaten both (of) the chops.*  *Both (of) these oranges are bad.*

*He lost both (of) his parents when he was a child.*

We often drop *the* or a possessive after *both*; *of* is not used in this case.

*She’s eaten both chops.*  (NOT . . . *both of chops*)

*He lost both parents when he was a child.*

3 *the not used before both*

Note that we do not put *the* before *both*.

*both (the) children*  (NOT *the both children*)

4 personal pronouns: *both of*

With personal pronouns, we use *both of* + *us/*you/*them*. *Both of us/*you/*them* can be a subject or object.

*Both of them can come tomorrow.*  *She’s invited both of us.*

*Emily sends both of you her love.*

We can put *both* after pronouns used as objects.

*She’s invited us both.*  *Emily sends you both her love.*

But this structure is not used in complements (after *be*) or in short answers.

‘Who broke the window – Sarah or Alice?’  ‘It was both of them’.

*NOT . . . *them both.*

‘Who did she invite?’  ‘Both of us.’  (NOT *Us both.*)

5 position with verb

When *both* refers to the subject of a clause, it can go with the verb, in ‘mid-position’, like *all* and *each* (for details of word order, ► 200).

*We can both swim.*  *Those oranges were both bad.*

*The children have both gone to bed.*  *My sisters both work in education.*

grammar • 155 *both*
Note that these meanings can also be expressed by using both (of) with a subject (see above).

Both of us can swim. Both (of) the children have gone to bed.

6 negative structures
Instead of both . . . not, we normally use neither (► 157).
Neither of them is here. (NOT Both of them are not here.)

156 either

1 either + singular
We use either with a singular noun to mean 'one or the other' of two.
Come on Tuesday or Thursday. Either day is OK. (NOT Either days . . .)
She didn’t get on with either parent. (NOT . . . either parents)

2 either of
We use either of before a determiner (for example the, my, these) or a pronoun.
A following noun is plural.
You can use either of the bathrooms.
I don’t like either of my history teachers.
I don’t like either of them.
A verb after either of is more often singular, but it can sometimes be plural in an informal style.
Either of the children is perfectly capable of looking after the baby.
She just doesn’t care what either of her parents say(s).

3 without a noun
We can use either alone if the meaning is clear.
‘Would you like tea or coffee?’ ‘I don’t mind. Either.’

4 pronouns
When a pronoun is used later in a clause to refer back to either + noun/pronoun, the later pronoun can be singular (more formal) or plural (more informal).
If either of the boys phones, tell him/them I’ll be in this evening.

5 either side/end
In these expressions, either sometimes means ‘each’.
There are roses on either side of the door.

6 pronunciation
Either is pronounced /'aɪðə(r)/ or /'iːðə(r)/ (in American English usually /'iːdɔr/).

For either . . . or, ► 228. For not . . . either, neither and nor, ► 227–228.
157 neither

1 neither + singular noun
We use neither before a singular noun to mean 'not one and not the other (of two)'.

'Can you come on Monday or Tuesday?' 'I'm afraid neither day is possible.'

2 neither of + plural
We use neither of before a determiner (for example the, my, these), and before a pronoun. The noun or pronoun is plural.

Neither of my brothers can sing. (NOT Neither my brothers can sing.)
Neither of us saw it happen.

After neither of + noun/pronoun, we use a singular verb in a formal style.
Neither of my sisters is married.

In an informal style, a plural verb is possible.
Neither of my sisters are married.

3 neither used alone
We can use neither without a noun or pronoun, if the meaning is clear.

'Which one do you want?' 'Neither.'

4 pronunciation
In British English, neither can be pronounced both /'nəidə(r)/ and /'niːidə(r)/.
In American English, the usual pronunciation is /'niidər/.

For neither . . . nor, ► 228.

158 some

1 meaning: indefinite quantity/number
Some is a determiner. It often suggests an indefinite quantity or number, and is used when it is not important to say exactly how much/many we are thinking of.

I need some new clothes.
Would you like some tea?

2 pronunciation
When some has this indefinite meaning, it usually has a 'weak' pronunciation /s(3)m/ before (adjective +) noun.

some /s(3)m/ new clothes 
some /s(3)m/ tea

For more about 'strong' and 'weak' pronunciations, ► 315.

3 some and any
With this meaning, some is most common in affirmative clauses, and in questions which expect or encourage the answer 'Yes'. In other cases, any is generally used. For details, ► 161.
Compare:
- There are some children at the front door.
  Do you mind if I put some music on?
- Did you meet any interesting people on the trip?
  She hasn’t got any manners.

4 some and a/an
Some (in this sense) is used in similar ways to the indefinite article a/an (► 137). However, it is not normally used with the same kind of nouns. Compare:
- I need a new coat. (singular countable noun) (not . . . some new coat.)
- I need some new shirts. (plural countable noun)
- I need some help. (uncountable noun)

5 when some is not used
With an uncountable or plural noun, some usually suggests the idea of an indefinite (but not very large) quantity or number. When there is no idea of a limited quantity or number, we do not usually use some. For details, ► 139. Compare:
- We’ve planted some roses in the garden. (a limited number)
  I like roses. (no idea of number)
- Bring some food in case we get hungry.
  The President has appealed for food for the earthquake victims.

6 some and some of; some with no following noun
Before another determiner (article, demonstrative or possessive word) or a pronoun, we use some of. Compare:
- I’ve got tickets for some concerts next month. (not . . . some of concerts . . .)  
  Dan’s coming to some of the concerts. (not . . . some the concerts . . .)
- Some people want to get to sleep. (not . . . some of people . . .)
  Some of us want to get to sleep. (not Some us . . .)
Nouns can be dropped after some, if the meaning is clear.
I’ve got too many strawberries. Would you like some?
Before of, or with no following noun, some is pronounced /sʌm/.
  some /ˈsʌm/ of us  Would you like some /ˈsʌm/?

7 contrast with others, etc
Some (pronounced /sʌm/) can have a more emphatic meaning, contrasting with others, all or enough.
Some people like the sea; others prefer the mountains.
Some of us were late, but we were all there by ten o’clock.
I’ve got some money, but not enough.

8 an unknown person or thing
Some (/sʌm/) can refer to an unknown person or thing (usually with a singular countable noun).
Some idiot has taken the bath plug.
There must be some job I could do.
She’s living in some village in Yorkshire.
We can use this structure to suggest that we are not interested in somebody or something, or that we do not think much of him/her/it.
Emily's gone to America to marry some sheep farmer or other.
I don't want to spend my life doing some boring little office job.

9 some party!
In informal speech, some can show enthusiastic appreciation.

It was some party!

10 with numbers
Some (/sAm/) with a number suggests that the number is high or impressive.

We have exported some four thousand tons of bootlaces this year.

For somebody and anybody, something and anything, etc. ➞ 180.
For some time, sometime and sometimes, ➞ 590.

159 any

1 meaning: indefinite amount or number
Any is a determiner. It generally suggests an indefinite amount or number, and is used when it is not important to say how much/many we are thinking of. Because of its 'open', non-specific meaning, any is often used in questions and negative clauses, and in other cases where there is an idea of doubt or negation.

Is there any more coffee?
We didn't have any problems going through customs.
You never give me any help.
The noise of the party prevented me from getting any sleep.
I suddenly realised I'd come out without any money.

Any is common after if.

If you find any blackberries, keep some for me.

Sometimes any means 'if there is/are any' or 'whatever there is/are'.

Any fog will clear by noon. (= If there is any fog, it will clear by noon.)
Perhaps you could correct any mistakes I've made.

Any can be used to emphasise the idea of open choice: 'it doesn't matter who/what/which'.

You can borrow any book you want.

For details of this use, ➞ 160.

2 any and some
Any often contrasts with some, which is most common in affirmative clauses.

Compare:
I need some razor blades. Do you have any razor blades?
Sorry, I don't have any razor blades.

For details of the difference, ➞ 161.

3 any and not any
Any alone does not have a negative meaning. It is only negative when used with not.

She's unhappy because she hasn't got any friends. (not...because she has got any friends.)

No (➤ 163) means the same as not any, but is more emphatic.

She's got no friends.
Not any cannot begin a sentence; no is used instead.

No cigarette is harmless. (not Not any cigarette . . )

No tourists came to the town that year.

We do not usually use not any with singular countable nouns (but ► 160).

She hasn’t got a job. (not She hasn’t got any job.)

4 when any is not used

With an uncountable or plural noun, any usually suggests the idea of an indefinite but limited amount or number. When there is no idea of a limited quantity or number, we do not usually use any. Compare:

- Is there any water in that can?
  Is there water on the moon? (The interest is in the existence of water, not its amount.)
- Dad hasn’t got any hair. (He has lost the amount he had.)
  Birds have feathers, not hair. (No idea of amount.)
- None of her children have got any sense. (Not even a small amount.)
  Anna looks like her mother, but she hasn’t got blue eyes. (not . . . she hasn’t got any blue eyes – people have a definite number of eyes: two.)

5 any and any of

Before a determiner (definite article, demonstrative or possessive word) or a pronoun, we use any of. Compare:

- I didn’t go to any lectures last term. (not . . . any of lectures . . . )
  I wasn’t interested in any of the lectures. (not . . . any the lectures.)
- Do any books here belong to you?
  Do any of these books belong to you?
- I don’t think any staff want to work tomorrow.
  I don’t think any of us want to work tomorrow.

Note that when any of is followed by a plural subject, the verb can be singular or plural. A singular verb is more common in a formal style.

If any of your friends is/are interested, let me know.

6 without a noun

A noun can be dropped after any, if the meaning is clear.

‘Did you get the oil?’ ‘No, there wasn’t any left.’

Instead of not any without a noun, none (► 163) can be used. This is often more emphatic.

There was none left.

We don’t use any or not any alone as answers.

‘What day should I come?’ ‘Any day. (not Any.)’
‘How much money do you have?’ ‘None. (not Not any.)’

7 compounds

Many of the rules given above also apply to the compounds anybody, anyone, anything and anywhere. For more information about these, ► 180.

For the use of any and no as adverbs, ► 373. For any . . but, ► 413. For any and every, ► 162.
Determiners: Quantifiers

160 any = ‘it doesn’t matter who/which/what’

Any can be used to emphasise the idea of free choice, with the meaning of ‘it doesn’t matter who/which/what’. With this meaning, any is common in affirmative clauses as well as questions and negatives, and is often used with singular countable nouns as well as uncountables and plurals. In speech, it is stressed.

Ask any doctor — they’ll all tell you that alcohol is a poison.

My brother’s looking for work. He’ll take any job he can get.

‘When should I come?’ Any time.’

We can use just any if necessary to make the meaning clear.

I don’t do just any work — I choose jobs that interest me. (I don’t do any work . . . could be misunderstood.)

Note that we use either (►156), not any, to talk about a choice between two alternatives.

I can write with either hand. (Not . . . any hand.)

161 some and any: the main differences

1 indefinite quantities

Both some (►158) and any (►159) can refer to an indefinite quantity or number. They are used when it is not easy, or not important, to say exactly how much/many we are thinking of.

I need some new clothes. Is there any milk left?

Used in this sense, some is most common in affirmative clauses; any is a ‘non-affirmative’ word (►222) and is common in questions and negatives. Compare:

I need some flour. Do you have any flour?

Sorry, I don’t have any flour. (Not Sorry, I don’t have some flour.)

2 some in questions

We use some in questions if we expect people to answer ‘Yes’, or want to encourage them to say ‘Yes’ — for example in offers and requests.

Have you brought some paper and a pen? (The hearer is expected to bring them.)

Shouldn’t there be some instructions with it?

Would you like some more meat?

Could I have some brown rice, please?

Have you got some glasses that I could borrow?

At all (►387) is often used to emphasise the meaning of (not) any.

I’ll do any job at all — even road-sweeping.

She doesn’t speak any English at all.
3 any in affirmative clauses

We use *any* in affirmative clauses after words that have a negative or limiting meaning: for example *never, hardly, without, little.*

*You never give me any help.* I forgot to get *any* bread.
*There's hardly any tea left.* We got there *without any* trouble.
*There is little point in doing any more work now.*
*The guards prevented us from asking any questions.*

4 if-clauses

Both *some* and *any* are common in *if-* clauses.

*If you want some/any help, let me know.*

Sometimes *any* is used to suggest 'if there is/are any'.

*Any cars parked in this road will be towed away.* (= If there are any cars parked in this road, they will . . .)

For the 'free choice' use of *any* (e.g. *Any child could do this*), § 160.

162 any and every: the difference

*Any* and *every* can both be used to talk in general about all the members of a class or group.

*Any/Every child can learn to swim.*

The meaning is not quite the same. *Any* looks at things one at a time: it means ‘whichever one you choose’. *Every* looks at things together: its meaning is closer to ‘all’. Compare:

‘Which newspaper would you like?’ ‘It doesn’t matter. Any one.’ (= one or another or another) (NOT . . . *Every one.*)

*On the stand there were newspapers and magazines of every kind.* (= one and another and another) (NOT . . . magazines of *any kind.*)

For more information about *any*, § 159. For *every*, § 151.

163 no, none and not a/any

1 no: emphatic

*No* can be used instead of *not a* or *not any* when we want to emphasise a negative idea.

*Would you believe it? There’s no mirror in the bathroom!* (More emphatic than . . . *There isn’t a mirror . . .*)

*Sorly I can’t stop. I’ve got no time.* (More emphatic than . . . *I haven’t got any time.*

*There were no messages for you this morning, I’m afraid.* (More emphatic than . . . *There weren’t any messages . . .*)

2 none of

Before a determiner (e.g. *the, my, this*) or a pronoun, we use *none of*.

*She’s done none of the work.* (NOT . . . *no of the work.*

*We understood none of his arguments.* I’ve been to *none of those places.*

*None of us speaks Greek.*
Determiners: Quantifiers

When we use none of with a plural noun or pronoun, the verb can be singular (a little more formal) or plural (a little more informal).

None of my friends is interested. (more formal)
None of my friends are interested. (more informal)

We can use none alone if the meaning is clear.

‘How many of the books have you read?’ ‘None.’

3 not a/any

We prefer not a/any in objects and complements when the sense is not emphatic. Compare:

He's no fool. (= He’s not a fool at all. – emphatic negative)
A whale is not a fish. (NOT A whale is no fish – the sense is not emphatic.)

4 subjects

Not any cannot normally be used in subjects. No and none of are used instead.

No brand of cigarette is completely harmless. (NOT Not any brand...)
No tourists ever came to our village. (NOT Not any tourists...)
None of my friends lives near me. (NOT Not any of my friends...)

5 not used to talk about two

We use neither, not or none, to talk about two people or things (► 157).

Neither of my parents could be there. (NOT None of my parents...)

6 nobody, etc

Nobody, nothing, no one and nowhere are used in similar ways to no.

I saw nobody. (More emphatic than I didn’t see anybody.)
Nobody spoke. (NOT Not anybody spoke.)

For no and not, ► 536. For more about any, ► 159. For none and no one, ► 164.
For no as a modifying adverb (e.g. no better), ► 373.

164 no one and none

1 no one

No one (also written no-one in British English) means the same as nobody.

It cannot be followed by of.

No one wished me a happy birthday. (NOT No one of my friends...)
I stayed in all evening waiting, but no one came.

2 none

To express the idea ‘not a single one (of)’, we can use none (of), not any (of) or not one (of) (more emphatic). No one is not used in this way.

None of my friends wished me a happy birthday.
I haven’t read any of his books.
Not one of my shirts is clean. (NOT Not one of my shirts...)
‘Have you found any blackberries?’ ‘Not one.’

For more about none, ► 163.
165 much and many

1 the difference

*Much* is used with singular (uncountable) nouns; *many* is used with plurals.

*I haven’t got much time.*

*I don’t know many of your friends.*

2 much/many of

We use *much/many of* before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun. Compare:

- She didn’t eat *much* breakfast. (NOT . . . *much of* breakfast.)
  - She didn’t eat *much of* her breakfast.
  - She didn’t eat *much of* it.
- There aren’t *many* large glasses left.
  - There aren’t *many of* the large glasses left.
  - There aren’t *many of* them left.

However, *much of* can be used directly before personal and geographical names.

*I’ve seen too much of Howard recently.*

*Not much of* Denmark is hilly.

3 much/many without a noun

We can drop a noun after *much* or *many*, if the meaning is clear.

*You haven’t eaten much.*

‘Did you find any mushrooms?’ ‘Not many.’

Note that *much* and *many* are only used like this when a noun has been dropped.

*There wasn’t much (food).* (BUT NOT *The food wasn’t much.* No noun has been dropped. You couldn’t say *The food wasn’t much food.*)

*Many* is not usually used alone to mean ‘many people’.

*Many people think it’s time for a change.* (More natural than *Many think . . .* )

4 not used in affirmative clauses

In an informal style, we use *much* and *many* mostly in questions and negative clauses. In most informal affirmative clauses they are unusual (especially *much*); other words and expressions are used instead.

‘*How much money have you got?’ ‘I’ve got plenty.*’ (NOT *I’ve got much.*)

*He’s got lots of men friends, but he doesn’t know many women.*

(More natural than *He’s got many men friends . . .*)

‘*Did you buy any clothes?’ ‘Yes, lots.*’ (NOT *Yes, many.*)

In a formal style, *much* and *many* are more common in affirmative clauses.

*Much* has been written about unemployment. *In the opinion of many economists, . . .*

*Far and long (= a long time)* are also used mostly in questions and negative clauses. ► 461, 517
5 after so, as and too

So much/many, as much/many and too much/many are quite natural in affirmative clauses.

- *There was so much traffic that it took me an hour to get home.*
- *I play as much tennis as I can.*
- *You make too many mistakes.*

6 my many friends, etc

Note that many can follow possessives in expressions like *my many friends,* *her many prizes.* This is rather formal.

7 much as adverb

We can use *much* as an adverb in questions and negative clauses.

- *Do you work much at weekends?*  
  *I don't travel much these days.*

We can also use *much* before comparative adjectives and adverbs, in affirmative clauses as well as questions and negatives.

- *She's much older than her brother.*  
  *I don't drive much faster than you.*

*Much* can be used before some verbs expressing enjoyment, preference and similar ideas, in affirmative clauses as well as questions and negatives, especially in a formal style.

- *I much appreciate your help.*  
  *We much prefer the country to the town.*
- *I didn't much enjoy the concert.*
- *Very much* can be used in affirmative clauses as an adverb.
  - *I very much like your new hairstyle.*  
  *Thank you very much.*

For *much* and very with past participles (e.g. *much/very amused*), ➤ 96.8

166 more

1 more (of)

We can use *more* as a determiner before uncountable or plural nouns. Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use *more of.*

Compare:

- *We need more butter.*
  - *We need more of that salted butter.*
  - *We need more of it.*
- *More climbers have been found.*
  - *More of the missing climbers have been found.*
  - *More of them have been found.*

However, *more of* can be used directly before personal and geographical names.

- *It would be nice to see more of Ray and Barbara.*
- *Five hundred years ago, much more of Britain was covered with trees.*

2 more without a noun

We can drop a noun after *more* if the meaning is clear.

- *I'd like some more, please.*

3 one more, etc

Note the structure *one more, two more,* etc. In this case *more* can be used before a countable noun.

- *There's just one more river to cross.*

grammar • 166 more
4 *more* as an adverb

*More* can also be used as an adverb.

*I couldn’t agree more.*

*More and more* is used to talk about continual increase.

*I hate this job more and more as the years go by.*

For *more* in comparatives (e.g. *more comfortable*), ► Section 17.

For *no more, not any more/longer*, ► 535. For *far more, much more, many more*, etc, ► 207.

167 *most*

1 *most* (of)

We can use *most* as a determiner before uncountable or plural nouns. Note that we do not use *the* before *most* in this case.

*Most children* like *ice cream.* (*NOT* *The* most children...)

Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use *most of*. Compare:

- Most fruit is imported.
- Most of our fruit is imported.
- Most of it is imported.

- Most people can sing a little.
- Most of these people can sing a little.
- Most of them can sing a little.

However, *most of* can be used directly before personal and geographical names.

*I've read most of Shakespeare.* *The Romans conquered most of England.*

2 *most* without a noun

We can drop a noun after *most* if the meaning is clear.

*Some people had difficulty with the lecture, but most understood.*

3 *the most* (= ‘more than any other/others’) with nouns

In comparisons (when *most* means ‘more than any other/others’) it is normally used with *the* before nouns.

*Susan found the most blackberries.*

*The* is sometimes dropped in an informal style.

*Who earns (the) most money in your family?*

4 *the most* as an adverb

*(The) most* can also be used as an adverb. *The* is often dropped in an informal style.

*They all talk a lot, but your little girl talks (the) most.* *The truth hurts most.*

For *most* in superlatives (e.g. *the most beautiful*), ► Section 17.

168 *(a) little* and *(a) few*

1 uncountable and plural

We use the determiner *(a) little* with singular (usually uncountable) words, and we use *(a) few* with plurals. Compare:

*I have little interest in politics.* *Few politicians are really honest.*

*We’ve got a little bacon and a few eggs.*
Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use
(a) little of and (a) few of. Compare:
- Could I have a little butter?
  Could I have a little of that butter?
  Could I have a little of that?
- Few people always tell the truth.
  Few of the people questioned told the truth.
  Few of them told the truth.

2 use of a

There is a difference between little and a little, and between few and a few.
Without a, little and few usually have rather negative meanings, close to no or none. They may suggest 'not as much/many as one would like', 'not as much/many as expected', and similar ideas.

The average MP has little real power.

Few people can speak a foreign language perfectly.

A little and a few are more positive: their meaning is generally closer to some.
They may suggest ideas like 'better than nothing' or 'more than expected'.

Would you like a little soup?
You don’t need to go shopping. We’ve got a few potatoes and some steak.

Compare:
- Cactuses need little water. (not much water)
  Give the roses a little water every day. (not a lot, but some)
- His ideas are difficult, and few people understand them.
  His ideas are difficult, but a few people understand them.

Quite a few (informal) means 'a considerable number'.
We've got quite a few friends in the village.

3 formal and informal language

Little and few (with no article) are rather formal. In an informal style (e.g. ordinary conversation), we generally prefer not much/many, or only a little/few.

Come on! We haven’t got much time!

Only a few people remembered my birthday.

However, very little and very few are possible in an informal style.

He’s got very little patience and very few friends.

4 (a) little and (a) few without nouns

We can drop a noun and use (a) little/few alone, if the meaning is clear.

'Some more soup?' ‘Just a little, please.’

5 not used after be

(A) little and (a) few are determiners. They are normally used before nouns, but not after be.

They had little hope. (but not Their hope was little.)

6 his few friends, etc

Note that few can follow possessives in expressions like his few friends, my few visits to Scotland. This is rather formal.

For a little with comparatives (e.g. a little better), ► 207.1. For the adjective little, ► 580.
169 less and fewer

1 the difference

Less is the comparative of little (used especially before uncountable nouns). Fewer is the comparative of few (used before plural nouns). Compare:

I earn less money than a cleaner. I’ve got fewer problems than I used to have.

In an informal style, less is quite common before plural nouns. Some people consider this incorrect.

I’ve got less problems than I used to have.

2 less/fewer with and without of

Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use less of and fewer of. Compare:

- If you want to lose weight, eat less food. (NOT less of food.)
  Fewer people make their own bread these days. (NOT fewer of people...)
- I’d like to spend less of my time answering emails.
  At the college reunions, there are fewer of us each year.

3 less and fewer without nouns

Nouns can be dropped after less and fewer if the meaning is clear.

Some people go to church, but less/fewer than 20 years ago.
Less can be used as an adverb (the opposite of the adverb more).

I worry less than I used to.

For lesser, ► 510.

170 least and fewest

1 the least as determiner: superlative of little

The least can be used as a determiner before uncountable nouns; it is the superlative of little (= not much, ► 168), and the opposite of the most.

I think I probably do the least work in this office.

The least can be used without a noun if the meaning is clear.

Jess earns the most money in our family; Dan earns the least.

We use the least of before plural abstract nouns to mean 'the smallest of'.

‘What will your mother think?’ ‘That’s the least of my worries.’

2 ‘any . . . at all’

With singular abstract nouns, the least can mean ‘any . . . at all’.

Do you think there’s the least chance of Smith winning the election?
‘What’s the time?’ ‘I haven’t got the least idea.’

3 the fewest as determiner: superlative of few

The fewest can be used before plural nouns as the superlative of few (► 168).

The translation with the fewest mistakes isn’t always the best.

Least is often used instead of fewest before plural nouns ( . . . the least mistakes), especially in an informal style. Some people feel this is incorrect.

For other uses of least, see the Index.
4 (the) least with adjectives: the opposite of (the) most or (the) ...est

(The) least is used before adjectives in the same way as (the) most or (the) ...est (► 204), but with the opposite meaning.

*The least expensive trips are often the most interesting.*

*I'm least happy when I have to work at weekends.*

For the use of the with superlatives, ► 208.

5 least as adverb

Least can be used as an adverb (the opposite of most).

*She always arrives when you least expect it.*

*I don’t much like housework, and I like cooking least of all.*

6 at least

At least means ‘not less than (but perhaps more than)’.

*‘How old do you think he is? ’*At least thirty.’

*He’s been in love at least eight times this year.*

We can also use at least as a discourse marker (► 284.3) to suggest that one thing is certain or all right, even if everything else is unsatisfactory.

*We lost everything in the fire. But at least nobody was hurt.*

7 not in the least

We can use not in the least in a formal style to mean ‘not at all’, especially when talking about personal feelings and reactions.

*I was not in the least upset by her bad temper.*

For less and fewer, ► 169.

171 enough

1 enough + noun

Enough can be used before a noun as a determiner.

*Have you got enough milk? There aren’t enough glasses.*

Enough is occasionally used after a noun, but this is rare in modern English except in a few expressions.

*If only we had time enough . . . * I was fool enough to believe him.*

Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use enough of. Compare:

- I don’t know enough Spanish to read this. (not . . . enough of Spanish . . . )
  
  I don’t understand enough of the words in the notice.

- We haven’t got enough blue paint. (not . . . enough of blue paint.)
  
  We haven’t got enough of that blue paint.

- You didn’t buy enough cards. (not . . . enough of cards)
  
  You didn’t buy enough of them.
Note the idiomatic structure *I've had enough of* . . . This can be followed by a noun without a determiner.

*I've had enough of* mathematics; I'm going to give it up.
*She's had enough of* England; she's going back home.

2 without a noun

*Enough* can be used alone without a noun to refer to an amount, if the meaning is clear.

Half a pound of carrots will be enough.
That's enough, thank you. *Enough is enough.*
**BUT NOT** The meat is enough. (The meat is not an amount.)

For other uses of *enough*, and word order with nouns and adjectives, ► 450.

172 quantifying expressions: *a lot, lots, a great deal, the majority, etc*

1 introduction; use of *of*

Expressions of this kind have similar meanings to the determiners *much, many* and *most*, but the grammar is not quite the same. In particular, *of* is used after these expressions even before nouns with no determiner. Compare:

- *There's not a lot of meat left.* (*NOT There's not a lot meat left.*)
- *There's not much meat left.* (*NOT There's not much of meat left.*)
- *Plenty of shops open on Sunday mornings.* (*NOT Plenty shops . . .*)
- *Many shops open on Sunday mornings.* (*NOT Many of shops . . .*)

2 *a lot of* and *lots of*

These are rather informal. In a more formal style, we prefer *a great deal of,*
*a large number of,* *much* or *many.* There is not much difference between *a lot of* and *lots of,* they are both used mainly before singular uncountable and plural nouns, and before pronouns. It is the subject, and not the form *lot/lots,* that makes a following verb singular or plural. So when *a lot of* is used before a plural subject, the verb is plural; when *lots of* is used before a singular subject, the verb is singular.

*A lot of time is needed to learn a language.*
*Lots of patience are needed, too.* (*NOT Lots of patience are needed, too.*)
*A lot of my friends want to emigrate.* (*NOT A lot of my friends want . . .*)
*Lots of us think it's time for an election.*

3 *plenty of*

*Plenty of* is usually rather informal. It is used mostly before singular uncountables and plurals. It suggests 'enough and more'.

*Don't rush. There's plenty of time.*
*Plenty of shops sell batteries.*

4 *a great deal of,* *a large amount of* and *a large number of*

These are used in similar ways to *a lot of* and *lots of,* but are more formal.

*A great deal of* and *a large amount of* are generally used with uncountable nouns.

*Mr Lucas has spent a great deal of time in the Far East.*
*I've thrown out a large amount of old clothing.*
A large number of is used before plurals, and a following verb is plural.

A large number of problems still have to be solved. (More common than
A large amount of problems . . . or A great deal of problems . . .)

Some people think it is a mistake to use a plural noun after a large amount or
a great deal, but the usage is quite common in standard English speech.

5 the majority of

The majority of (= ‘most’ or ‘most of’) is mostly used with plural nouns and
verbs.

The majority of criminals are non-violent.

However, if it is used with a singular noun, any following verb is singular.

The majority of his work is concerned with children’s artistic development.

6 not used with measurement nouns

These expressions are not generally used before words for units of measure, like
pounds, years or miles. Other words have to be used.

It cost several pounds. (not It cost a lot of pounds.)
They lived many miles from the town. (not They lived plenty of miles from the town.)

7 use without following nouns

These expressions can be used without nouns if the meaning is clear. In this
case, of is not used.

‘How much money did it cost?’ ‘A lot.’ (not A lot of.)

We should be all right for cheese – I’ve bought plenty.

He does not often speak, but when he does he says a great deal.

For a couple of, ► 128.2.
INTRODUCTION

Pronouns are words that are used instead of noun phrases, when it is unnecessary or impossible to use a more precise expression. Examples:

- *I* – meaning ‘the speaker’
- *it* – referring to a thing that has already been mentioned
- *your* – meaning ‘belonging to or associated with the hearer(s)’
- *somebody* – referring to an unknown or undefined person
- *one* – meaning for example ‘people in general’

Most pronouns are covered in this Section. For relative pronouns, ► Section 21. For the interrogative pronouns *who, what, which,* ► 625–627. For *whoever, whatever, whichever,* ► 252.

Some determiners (e.g. *this, both, most*) can be used alone without following nouns, like pronouns, when the determiner alone makes the meaning clear.

- Look at this. (= ‘this thing that you can see’)
- ‘Which scarf would you like?’ ‘I’ll take both.’ (= ‘both scarves’)
- Not all bears can climb trees, but most can. (= ‘most bears’)

These pronoun-like uses of determiners are covered in ► Sections 12–13, along with their other uses.
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- She loved the picture because reminded her of home. 173.4
- The forecast it was reasonably accurate. 173.5
- ‘Who’s that over there?’ ‘He’s John Cook.’ 173.9
- Everybody except he can come. 174.2
- It’s for he to decide. 174.4
- He who leaves last should lock the door. 174.9
- Why don’t I and you go away for the weekend? 174.10
- Can I borrow your keys? I can’t find the mine. 176
- I met another Lucy’s boyfriend yesterday. 177
- We got out of the water and dried us. 178.2
- She took her dog with herself. 178.4
- Do you shave yourself on Sundays? 178.10
- His book’s selling itself well. 178.10
- Try to concentrate yourself. 178.10
- Susan and Daniel talk to themselves on the phone every day. 179.4
- One speaks English in this shop. 181.3
- One speaks a strange dialect where I come from. 181.3
- In the 16th century one believed in witches. 181.4
- We’re looking for a house. We’d like a one with a garden. 182.2
- If you haven’t got fresh juice I’ll take canned one. 182.4
- I’ll take both ones. 182.6
- A grandparent’s job is easier than a parent’s one. 182.7
- Do you need coffee cups or tea ones? 182.8
- Let’s go and ask the old one for advice. 182.9

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

173 personal pronouns: basic information
174 personal pronouns: advanced points
175 singular they
176 possessive pronouns: mine, yours, etc
177 a friend of mine, etc
178 reflexive pronouns: myself, etc
179 reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another
180 somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, etc
181 one, you and they: used for people in general
182 one (substitute word): a big one
173 personal pronouns: basic information

1 terminology and use

The words I, me, you, he, him, she, her, it, we, us, they and them are usually called 'personal pronouns'. (This is a misleading name: it, they and them refer to things as well as people.)

Personal pronouns are used when more exact noun phrases are not necessary.

I'm tired. (I replaces the name of any speaker.)

Jack's ill. He'll be away for a few days. (not Jack'll be away . . .)

Tell Emily I miss her. (not Tell Emily I miss Emily.)

2 subject and object

Personal pronouns (except you and it) have one form when they are used as subjects, and a different form for other uses – for example, when they are the objects of verbs or prepositions.

Subject: I he she we they

Object: me him her us them

Compare:

- I like dogs.
- Dogs don't like me.

- We sent her some flowers.
- She sent us some flowers.

3 other uses of object forms: It was her.

Me, him, her, us and them are used not only as objects, but also as complements after be, and in short answers, especially in an informal style.

'Who said that?' 'It was her.' 'Who's there? 'Me.'

In a more formal style, we use subject form + verb where possible.

'Who said that?' 'She did.' (but not She.)

It is possible to use a subject form alone after be (e.g. It is I; It was he), but this is extremely formal, and is usually considered over-correct.

Object forms are also common in coordinated subjects in informal speech.

Jack and me are going skiing this weekend.

This is considered incorrect in more formal usage (► 174.1).

For sentences like It's me that needs help. ► 174.3.

4 Personal pronouns cannot be left out.

We cannot normally leave out personal pronouns, even if the meaning is clear without them (for some exceptions ► 174.11).

It's raining. (not Is-raining.)

She loved the picture because it reminded her of home. (not . . . because reminded her of home.)

They arrested Alex and put him in prison. (not . . . and put in prison.)

'Have some chocolate.' 'No, I don't like it.' (not . . . I don't like.)

5 One subject is enough.

One subject is enough. We do not usually use a personal pronoun to repeat a subject that comes in the same clause.

My car is parked outside. (not My car it is parked outside.)
The budget forecast was reasonably accurate. (not it was reasonably accurate.)
The situation is terrible. (not It is terrible the situation.)
There are exceptions in very informal speech (► 299).
He’s not a bad bloke, Jeff. It’s a horrible place, London.

For it as a preparatory subject or object, ► 268–269.

6 personal and relative pronouns: one or the other, not both
We do not use personal pronouns to repeat the meaning of relative pronouns (► 233.6).
That’s the girl who lives in the next room. (not . . . who she lives . . .)
Here’s the money (that) you lent me. (not . . . (that) you lent me it.)

7 it referring to nothing, the situation, etc
It not only refers to particular things. It can also refer to a whole fact, event or situation.
Our passports were stolen. It completely ruined our trip.
I did all I could, but it wasn’t enough.
It’s terrible – everybody’s got colds, and the central heating isn’t working.
Wasn’t it lovely there!
Nothing happened, did it?
Everything’s all right, isn’t it?

8 it as ‘empty’ subject: It’s ten o’clock.
We use it as a meaningless subject with expressions that refer to time, weather, temperature or distances.
It’s ten o’clock. (not is ten o’clock.) It’s Monday again.
It rained for three days. It’s thirty degrees.
It’s ten miles to the nearest garage.

9 it used to identify
We use it for a person when we are identifying him or her.
‘Who’s that over there?’ ‘It’s Jack Cook.’ (not He’s Jack Cook.)
‘Is that our waiter?’ ‘No, it isn’t.’ (not No, he isn’t.)
It’s your sister who plays the piano, isn’t it?

10 we women, you men
We and plural you (but not other personal pronouns) can be put directly before nouns.
We women know things that you men will never understand.
(but not I woman know . . . or . . . they men will never understand.)

For you used for people in general, ► 181. For the personal pronoun one, ► 181.
For the use of he and she to refer to animals, ships, etc, ► 328.
For he, him, his referring to both sexes (and attitudes to this), ► 328.2.
For they, them, their with singular reference, ► 175.
For the interrogative personal pronoun who(m), ► 626.1.
174 personal pronouns: advanced points

1 Jack and me went; between you and I; us women understand

We often use object forms in coordinated subjects in informal speech and writing. And I is often used informally in coordinated objects. Some authentic examples from speakers of standard British English:

- Jack and them are going skiing this weekend.
- Me and Clio will be coming to see you and Mum on Sunday.
- Between you and I, I think his marriage is in trouble.
- Really nice picture of Josh and I taken at the weekend by my friend Joe.
- Thanks, Andrew – Feb. 23rd is good for both Jack and I.
- I often think of the old days and how you helped Bertie and I. (letter from Elizabeth, wife of the future King George VI, to King Edward VIII).

Us is sometimes used as a subject together with a noun.

Us women understand these things better than you men.

These structures are often condemned as ‘incorrect’, but they have been common in educated speech for centuries. (There are examples of me in coordinated subjects in Jane Austen’s novels, written around 1800.) They are, however, restricted to an informal style. They are not considered correct in formal speech or writing.

2 as, than, but and except + me or I

After as and than, object forms are generally used in an informal style.

- My sister’s nearly as tall as me. I can run faster than her.

In a more formal style, subject forms are used, usually followed by verbs.

- My sister’s nearly as tall as I am. I can run faster than she can.

But (meaning ‘except’) and except are normally followed by object forms.

- Everybody except him can come. (not Everybody except he can come.)
- Nobody but me knew the answer.

3 It is/was me that . . . / I who . . .

When a relative clause comes after an expression like It is/was me/I, there are two possibilities:

- object form + that (very informal)
  - It’s me that needs your help. It was him that told the police.

- subject form + who (very formal)
  - It is I who need your help. It was he who told the police.

We can avoid being too formal or too informal by using a different structure.

- He was the person / the one who told the police.

4 mixed subject and object: It’s for him to decide.

Sometimes a pronoun can be seen as the object of a verb or preposition, but the subject of a following infinitive or clause. Normally an object form is used in this case.

- It’s for him to decide. (not It’s for he to decide.)
I think it's a good idea for you and me to meet soon. (Considered more correct than . . . for you and I to meet soon.)
Everything comes to him who waits. (Considered more correct than . . . to he who waits.)

5 inclusive and exclusive we
Note that we and us can include or exclude the listener or reader. Compare:
Shall we go and have a drink? (We includes the listener.)
We're going for a drink. Would you like to come with us? (We and us exclude the listener.)

6 us meaning ‘me’
In very informal British speech, us is quite often used instead of me (especially as an indirect object).
Give us a kiss, love.

7 Poor you!
You can be modified by adjectives in a few informal expressions such as Poor/Clever/Lucky (old) you! (This occasionally happens also with me.)

8 you: different singular and plural forms
Although standard modern English uses you for both singular and plural, separate forms exist in certain varieties of English. Some speakers in Yorkshire use thou or tha as a singular subject form and thee as a singular object form. Some British dialects have a separate plural form ye, youse or yiz. Many Americans (and increasingly, British people) use you folks or you guys (to both men and women) as an informal second person plural.
Hi, you guys. Listen to this.
In southern US speech there is a second person plural form you all (pronounced y'all), used instead of you when people wish to sound friendly or intimate; there is also a possessive you all's (pronounced y'all's).
Hi, everybody. How're you all doing? What are you all's plans for Thanksgiving?

For the older English forms thee and thou, ► 318.10.

9 he/she who . . .
The structure he/she who . . . (meaning 'the person who . . .') is found in older literature.
He who hesitates is sometimes lost.
But this is very unusual in modern English.
The person who leaves last should lock the door. Or Whoever leaves last . . .
(Not He/She who leaves last . . .)

10 politeness
It is considered polite to use names or noun phrases, rather than he, she or they, to refer to people who are present.
‘Dad said I could go out.’ ‘No, I didn’t.’ (More polite than He said I could go out.)
This lady needs an ambulance.
However, pronouns need to be used to avoid repetition (► 287).

_Dad said he didn’t mind . . . (not Dad said Dad didn’t mind . . .)_

It is considered polite to mention oneself last in double subjects or objects.

_Why don’t you and I go away for the weekend? (not Why don’t I and you . . .?)_
_The invitation was for Tracy and me. (More polite than . . . for me and Tracy.)_

11 leaving out personal pronouns

Personal pronouns cannot usually be left out (► 173.4).

_She loved the picture because it reminded her of home. (not . . . because reminded her of home.)_

However, in informal speech, subject pronouns and/or auxiliary verbs are sometimes left out at the beginning of a sentence. For details of this, ► 277.

_Can’t help you, I’m afraid. (= I can’t . . .)_
_Seen Oliver? (= Have you seen Oliver?)_

We seldom put _it_ after _know_ (► 504.6 for details).

_‘It’s getting late.’ ‘I know.’ (not I know it.)_

After certain verbs (e.g. _believe, think, suppose_), we use _so_ rather than _it._
(For details, ► 585.)

_‘Is that the manager?’ ‘I believe so.’ (not . . . I believe (it).)_

And in British English, personal pronouns can be dropped after prepositions in descriptive structures with _have_ and _with._

_All the trees have got blossom on (them)._  
_He was carrying a box with cups in (it)._  

Object pronouns are not normally used in infinitive clauses if the object of the infinitive has just been mentioned (► 101.4).

_Sh’s easy to please. (not She’s easy to please her.)_
_The pie looked too nice to eat. (not . . . too nice to eat it.)_
_The bridge wasn’t strong enough to drive over. (not . . . to drive over it.)_
_This dish takes two hours to prepare._

175 singular they

1 _Somebody left their umbrella._

_They/them/their_ is often used to refer to a singular indefinite person. This is common after a _person, anybody/one, somebody/one, nobody/one, whoever, each, every, either, neither and no_. They has a plural verb in this case.

_If a person doesn’t want to go on living, they are often very difficult to help._
_If anybody calls, take their name and ask them to call again later._
_Somebody left their umbrella in the office. Would they please collect it?_  
_Nobody was late, were they? Whoever comes, tell them I’m not in._  
_Tell each person to help themselves to what they want._  
_Every individual thinks they’re different from everybody else._

This singular use of _they/them/their_ is convenient when the person referred to could be either male or female (as in the examples above). _He or she, him or her and his or her_ are clumsy, especially when repeated, and many people dislike the traditional use of _he/him/his_ in this situation (► 328).
However, *they/them/their* can also be used when the person's sex is known.

Two examples from interviews:

*I swear more when I'm talking to a boy, because I'm not afraid of shocking them.*

*No girl should have to wear school uniform, because it makes them look like a sack of potatoes.*

*They/them/their is* sometimes used for a definite person who is not identified.

I had a friend in Paris, and they disappeared for a month.

### 2 correctness

This use of *they/them/their* has existed for centuries, and is perfectly correct. It is most common in an informal style, but can also be found in formal written English. Here is an example from an old British passport application form:

*Dual nationality: if the child possesses the nationality or citizenship of another country they may lose this when they get a British Passport.*

#### 176 possessive pronouns: mine, yours, etc

Like all 'possessive' words and structures, *mine, yours, his, hers, ours* and *theirs* can express various ideas besides possession. They are similar to *my, your, etc,* but they are not determiners, and are used without following nouns. Compare:

- *That's my coat.*
  *That coat is mine.*
- *Which is your car?*
  *Which car is yours?*

*Whose* can be used with or without a following noun (► 143, 628).

- *Whose car is that? Whose is that car?*

We do not use articles with *mine, etc.*

- *Can I borrow your keys? I can't find mine.* (NOT *I can't find the mine.*)
- *One's cannot be used without a following noun; instead, we use one's own.*
  *It's nice to have a room of one's own.* (NOT . . . of one's.)
- *Its is not normally used without a following noun.*
  *I've had my breakfast, and the dog's had its breakfast too.* (NOT . . . and the dog's had its.)

For the older English form *thine,* ► 318.10.

#### 177 a friend of mine, etc

We cannot usually put a possessive between another determiner and a noun. We can say *my friend, Anna's friend,* a friend or *that friend,* but not *a my friend* or *that Anna's friend.* Instead, we use a structure with *of + possessive.*

**determiner + noun + of + possessive**

- *That policeman is a friend of mine.*
- *How's that brother of yours?*
- *He's a cousin of the Queen's.*
- *She's a friend of my father's.*
- *Have you heard this new idea of the boss's?*
- *My work is no business of yours.*
- *I met another boyfriend of Lucy's yesterday.*
The structure has a variant in which a noun does not have possessive 's: this is sometimes used when talking about relationships.

He's a cousin of the Queen. She's a friend of my father.
The word own is used in a similar structure (► 552).

I wish I had a room of my own.

178 reflexive pronouns: myself, etc

1 What are reflexive pronouns?
Reflexive pronouns are myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, oneself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

2 use: I cut myself shaving.
Reflexive pronouns are used as objects, in cases when the object refers to the same person(s) or thing(s) as the subject.

I cut myself shaving this morning. (not I cut me...)
We got out of the water and dried ourselves. (not...dried us.)
I need to get myself some new shoes.
Reflexive pronouns can refer back not only to subjects, but also to possessives or objects.

His conversations are all about himself.
I'm going to tell her a few facts about herself.
I love you for yourself, not for your money.

3 same clause
A reflexive only refers to a noun in the same clause. Compare:

Jack says that James talks to himself a lot. (James talks to James, not to Jack.)
Jack says that James talks to him a lot. (James talks to Jack, not to James.)

4 after prepositions: She took her dog with her.
After prepositions of place, we often use a personal pronoun (me, you, etc) if the meaning is clear without using a reflexive. Compare:

She took her dog with her. (not...with herself. She could hardly take her dog with somebody else.)
She's very pleased with herself. (She could be pleased with somebody else.)
Other examples:
Close the door after you. He was pulling a small cart behind him.

5 emphatic use: Do it yourself.
We can use reflexives as emphasisers, to mean 'that person/thing and nobody/ nothing else'.

It's quicker if you do it yourself. The manageress spoke to me herself.
The house itself is nice, but the garden's very small.
I'll go and see the President himself if I have to.

6 reflexives used instead of personal pronouns
Reflexives are sometimes used instead of personal pronouns after as, like, but (for) and except (for).
These shoes are designed for heavy runners like yourself. (or... like you.)
Everybody was early except myself. (or... except me.)

Reflexives can also be used instead of personal pronouns in co-ordinated noun phrases.
There will be four of us at dinner: Robert, Alison, Jenny and myself.
(or... and I/me.)

7 by oneself
By myself/yourself, etc means 'alone, without company' or 'without help'.
I often like to spend time by myself.
'Do you need help?' 'No, thanks. I can do it by myself.'

8 -selves and each other / one another
Note the difference between -selves and each other / one another (►179).
They talk to themselves a lot. (Each of them talks to him/herself.)
They talk to each other a lot. (Each of them talks to the other.)

9 own
There are no possessive reflexives. Instead, we use my own, your own, etc.
I always wash my own clothes. (not... myself's clothes.)
The children have both got their own rooms.

10 reflexives not used
Certain verbs (e.g. wash, dress, shave) have reflexive pronouns in some languages but not in English.
Do you shave on Sundays? (not Do you shave yourself on Sundays?)
However, reflexives can be used if it is necessary to make it clear who does the action.
She's old enough to dress herself now.
The barber shaves all the men in the town who don't shave themselves.
So does he shave himself or not?

Some other verbs which do not normally have reflexive pronouns:
Suddenly the door opened. (not Suddenly the door opened itself.)
His book's selling well. (not His book's selling itself well.)
Try to concentrate. (not Try to concentrate yourself.)
I feel strange. (not I feel myself strange.)

Hurry! (not Hurry yourself!)

For more about structures like The door opened and His book's selling well, ► 9.

179 reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another

1 no difference
Each other and one another mean the same.
Anna and I write to each other / one another every week.
Each other is more common than one another, especially in an informal style. ☟

grammar • 179 reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another
2 not used as subject

Each other and one another are not normally used as subjects (though this occasionally happens in subordinate clauses in very informal speech).

They each listened carefully to what the other said. (NOT USUALLY They listened carefully to what each other said.)

3 each other’s / one another’s

Both expressions have possessive forms.

They’ll sit for hours looking into each other’s / one another’s eyes.

4 -selves, possessives and each other / one another

Note the difference between -selves and each other / one another. Compare:

Jack and Emily are strange: they talk to themselves a lot. (Jack talks to Jack; Emily talks to Emily.)

Susan and Daniel talk to each other on the phone every day. (Susan talks to Daniel; Daniel talks to Susan.)

There is a similar difference between possessives and each other / one another. Compare:

My girlfriend and I are both very interested in our work. (I’m interested in mine; she’s interested in hers.)

My girlfriend and I are both very interested in each other’s work. (I’m interested in hers; she’s interested in mine.)

5 words used without each other / one another

We do not normally use each other / one another after words like meet or marry, where the verb itself makes the meaning clear.


180 somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, etc

These indefinite pronouns and adverbials replace more definite noun/adverbial phrases when it is not necessary, or not possible, to be more precise.

1 -body and -one

There is no significant difference between somebody and someone, anybody and anyone, everybody and everyone, or nobody and no one. The -one forms are more common in writing; the -body forms are more frequent in speech in British English.

2 some- and any-

The differences between somebody and anybody, something and anything, somewhere and anywhere, etc are the same as the differences between some and any (► 161 for details). Compare:

- There’s somebody at the door.
  Did anybody telephone?
- Can I get you something to drink?
  If you need something/anything, just shout.
- Let’s go somewhere nice for dinner.
  I don’t want to go anywhere too expensive.
3 singular

When these words are subjects they are used with singular verbs.

*Everybody likes her. (NOT Everybody likes her.)*

*Is everything ready? (NOT Are everything ready?)*

Somebody normally refers to only one person. Compare:

> There’s somebody outside who wants to talk to you.
> There are some people outside who want to talk to you.

4 use of they

They, them and their are often used with a singular meaning to refer back to somebody, etc (► 175).

> If anybody wants a ticket for the concert, they can get it from my office.
> ‘There’s somebody at the door.’ ‘Tell them I’m busy.’
> Someone left their umbrella on the bus. Nobody phoned, did they?

5 complementation: somebody nice, etc

Somebody, etc can be followed by adjectives or adverbial expressions.

> I hope he marries somebody nice.
> She’s going to meet someone in the Ministry.
> I feel like eating something hot. Let’s go somewhere quiet this weekend.

They can also be followed by else (► 447).

> Emily – are you in love with somebody else?
> I don’t like this place – let’s go somewhere else.

Note also the informal use of much after any- and no-.

> We didn’t do anything much yesterday.
> There’s nothing much on TV tonight.

6 someplace

In informal American English, someplace, anyplace, everyplace and no place are common.

> Let’s go someplace quiet.

7 anyone and any one; everyone and every one

Anyone means the same as anybody; any one means ‘any single one (person or thing)’. Compare:

> Does anyone know where Celia lives?
> You can borrow any one book at a time.

There is a similar difference between everyone and every one. Compare:

> Everyone had a good time at the party.
> There aren’t any cakes left – they’ve eaten every one.

8 sometime

Sometime (► 590) is not exactly part of this group. There are no words everytime or notime, and any time is written as two words. We say some other time, not sometime else.

For the difference between no one and none, ► 164.

For question tags after everything and nothing, ► 306.5. For some time, sometime and sometimes, ► 590.
1  **one and you:** meaning

We can use *one* or *you* to talk about people in general, including the speaker and hearer.

*One/You cannot learn a language in six weeks.*

*One/You should never give people advice.*

2  **one and you:** formality and class

*One* is more formal than *you* (and more common in writing than in speech).

Compare:

*If you want to make people angry, you just have to tell them the truth.*

*If one wishes to make oneself thoroughly unpopular, one has merely to tell people the truth.*

*One* is often considered typical of more upper-class and intellectual usage, and is avoided by many people for this reason. It is less common in American English than in British English.

3  **one and you:** only used in generalisations

*One* and *you* are only used in this way in very general statements, when we are talking about 'anyone, at any time'. Compare:

- *One/You can usually find people who speak English in Sweden.*
  *English is spoken in this shop.* OR *They speak English in this shop.*
  *(NOT One speaks English... – the meaning is not 'people in general'*)

- *One/You should knock before going into somebody's room.*
  *Somebody's knocking at the door.* *(NOT One is knocking...)*

- *It can take you/one ages to get served in this pub.*
  *Thanks, I'm being served.* *(NOT Thanks, one is serving me.)*

*One* generally has a singular meaning: 'any individual'; it is not used to refer to whole groups.

*We speak a strange dialect where I come from.* *(NOT One speaks a strange dialect where I come from.)*

4  **people including the speaker/hearer**

*One* is not used for people who could not include the speaker; *you* is not used for people who could not include the hearer. Compare:

*One/You must believe in something.*

*In the sixteenth century people believed in witches.* *(NOT... one/you believed in witches – this could not include the speaker or hearer.)*

5  **one*/you as subject, object, etc**

*One* can be a subject or object; there is a possessive *one's* and a reflexive pronoun *oneself*.

*He talks to one like a teacher.*

*One's family can be very difficult.*

*One should always give oneself plenty of time to pack.*

*You/your/yourself* can be used in similar ways.
Pronouns

Section 14

British English uses one/one’s for a reference back.

One should always try to keep one’s temper.

American English generally avoids this, traditionally preferring he/him/his.

One should always try to keep his temper.

However, the use of he/him/his for people in general is now seen as sexist and also avoided (► 328.2).

6 they

They has a rather different, less general kind of meaning than one and you. It usually refers to a particular but rather vague group (for example the neighbours, the people around, the authorities).

They don’t like strangers round here.

They’re going to widen the road soon.

I bet they put taxes up next year.

Note also the common expression they say (= people say).

They say her husband’s been seeing that Smith woman again.

(Not One says . . .)

182 one (substitute word): a big one

1 use

We often use one instead of repeating a singular countable noun.

‘Which is your boy?’ ‘The one in the blue coat.’

I’d like a cake. A big one with lots of cream.

‘Can you lend me a pen?’ ‘Sorry, I haven’t got one.’

2 a . . . one

We drop a if there is no adjective. Compare:

We’re looking for a house. We’d like a small one with a garden.

We’d like one with a garden. (Not . . . a one with a garden.)

3 ones

One has a plural ones.

‘I’d like to try on those shoes.’ ‘Which ones?’ ‘The ones in the window.’

Green apples often taste better than red ones.

‘What sort of sweets do you like?’ Ones with chocolate inside.’

4 uncountable nouns

We do not use one(s) for uncountable nouns. Compare:

If you haven’t got a fresh chicken I’ll take a frozen one.

If you haven’t got fresh juice, I’ll take canned (juice). (Not . . . canned one.)

5 which (one), this (one), etc

We can leave out one(s) immediately after which, this, that, another, either, neither and superlatives.

‘Which (one) would you like?’ ‘This (one) looks the nicest.’

Let’s have another (one). Either (one) will suit me.

I think my dog’s the fastest (one).

But we cannot leave out one(s) if there is an adjective.
This small one looks the nicest. (not This small looks . . .)
We nearly always leave out ones after these and those.
I don't think much of these. (More natural than . . . these ones.)

6 not used after my, etc, some, several, a few, both or a number
We do not use one(s) immediately after my, your, etc, some, several, (a) few, both or a number.
Take your coat and pass me mine. (not . . . pass me my one.)
'Are there any grapes?' 'Yes, I bought some today.'
(not . . . I bought some ones today.)
I'll take both. (not . . . both ones.)
She bought six. (not . . . six ones.)
But one(s) is used if there is an adjective.
I'll wear my old one. (not . . . my old.)
I bought some sweet ones today. (not I bought some sweet today.)
'Has the cat had her kittens?' 'Yes, she's had four white ones.'
(not . . . four white.)

7 that of
One(s) is not normally used after a noun with possessive 's. Instead, we can either just drop one(s), or use a structure with that/those of (more formal).
A grandparent's job is easier than a parent's. (not . . . than a parent's one.)
A grandparent's job is easier than that of a parent. (not . . . than the one of a parent.)
Trollope's novels are more entertaining than those of Dickens.
(not . . . than Dickens' ones / the ones of Dickens.)

8 noun modifiers
One(s) is not generally used after noun modifiers.
Do you need coffee cups or tea cups? (not . . . or tea ones?)

9 One(s) always refers back.
We use one(s) to avoid repeating a noun which has been mentioned before. It cannot normally be used in other cases.
Let's go and ask the old man for advice. (not . . . ask the old one . . .)
Section 15 Adjectives

INTRODUCTION

English has a large class of adjectives which can express a variety of meanings: classification, description, evaluation and many other ideas. Most European languages, and many others, have similar classes of adjectives. Some of the world’s languages, however, have few if any adjectives. In such languages the relevant ideas might be expressed by using nouns or verbs; so the equivalent of, for example, *She’s angry* could be something corresponding to ‘She has anger’ or ‘She rages’.

English adjectives are relatively easy to use, since (except for comparatives and superlatives, ► Section 17) an adjective can only have one possible form. There are some complications of position and word order: these and a few other points are covered in the following entries.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- He lives in a palace grand. ► 183.1
- She’s three years elder than me. ► 183.2
- an asleep baby ► 183.3
- It’s a political old idea. ► 184.1
- Look at the green beautiful mountains. ► 184.2
- an attractive, traditional, woollen dress ► 184.6
- an angry and young man ► 185.3
- After two days crossing the foothills, they reached the proper mountain. ► 186.3
- The tree is high thirty feet. ► 186.4
- They’re advertising for skilled in design people. ► 186.5
- It’s a difficult to solve problem. ► 186.5
- I like your so beautiful country. ► 187
- The most important is to be happy. ► 188.4
- The blind next door is getting a new job. ► 188.1
- This government isn’t interested in the poor’s problems. ► 188.1
- My sister’s marrying a Welsh. ► 188.2

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

183 adjectives: normal position
184 order of adjectives
185 adjectives with *and*
186 adjectives after nouns and pronouns
187 adjectives: position after *as, how, so, too*
188 adjectives without nouns
189 gradable and non-gradable adjectives
190 measurements: ‘marked’ and ‘unmarked’ forms
191 pronunciation of *aged, naked, etc*
192 What can follow an adjective?
183 adjectives: normal position

1 two positions
Most adjectives can go in two main places in a sentence.

a with a noun, usually before it. This is called ‘attributive position’.

The new secretary doesn’t like me.
He’s going out with a rich businesswoman.
In older English (► 318.10), it was quite common to put adjectives after nouns, especially in poetry and songs.

He came from his palace grand.
In modern English, this only happens in a few cases.

For adjectives before personal pronouns (e.g. Poor you!), ► 174.7.

b after be, seem, look, become and other linking verbs (► 11). This is called ‘predicative position’.

That dress is new, isn’t it? She looks rich. I feel unhappy.

2 adjectives used only before nouns
Some adjectives are used only (or mostly) before nouns. After verbs, other words must be used. Common examples:

elder and eldest Compare:

My elder sister is a pilot. She’s three years older than me.

live /laiv/ (meaning ‘not dead’) Compare:

a live fish It’s still alive.

do (referring to relationships that have lasted a long time)

an old friend (not the same as a friend who is old)

little (in BrE: ► 580) Compare:

a nice little house The house is quite small.

Some others:

He’s a mere child. (BUT NOT That child is mere.)

It’s sheer madness. (BUT NOT That madness is sheer.)

I was studying for my future career as a lawyer. (BUT NOT My career as a lawyer was future.)

This is the main problem! (BUT NOT This problem is main.)

3 adjectives used only after verbs
Some adjectives beginning with a-, and a few others, are used mainly after linking verbs, especially be. Common examples: ablaze, afloat, afraid, alight, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake. Compare:

– The baby’s asleep.

a sleeping baby (NOT an asleep baby) a frightened man

– The ship’s still afloat.

a floating leaf

The adjectives ill (► 494) and well (► 622) are most common after verbs. Before nouns, many people prefer other words.
Compare:
- He's very well.
- a healthy man
- You look ill.
- Nurses take care of sick people.

4 verb + object + adjective
Another possible position for adjectives is after the object, in the structure verb + object + adjective.
I'll get the car ready. Do I make you happy? Let's paint the kitchen yellow.

184 order of adjectives

When several adjectives come before a noun (or when nouns are used as modifiers before another noun), they are usually put in a more or less fixed order. However, this is a complicated grammatical area, and it is not possible to give simple reliable rules for adjective order. The following guidelines will help.

1 description before classification: an old political idea
Words which describe come before words which classify (say what type of thing we are talking about).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>description</th>
<th>classification</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an old</td>
<td>political</td>
<td>idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the latest</td>
<td>educational</td>
<td>reform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a green</td>
<td>wine</td>
<td>bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leather</td>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>shoes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 opinion before description: a wonderful old house
Words which express opinions, attitudes and judgements usually come before words that simply describe. Examples are lovely, definite, pure, absolute, extreme, perfect, wonderful, silly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>lovely</td>
<td>cool drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>old house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>silly</td>
<td>fat cat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 order of descriptive words
The order of descriptive words is not completely fixed. Words for origin and material usually come last. Words for size, age, shape and colour often come in that order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>size</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>shape</th>
<th>colour</th>
<th>origin</th>
<th>material</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>white</td>
<td></td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>grey</td>
<td></td>
<td>sweater</td>
<td>sweater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>leather</td>
<td>handbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>enormous</td>
<td></td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>mug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>modern</td>
<td>square</td>
<td></td>
<td>brick</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 numbers

Numbers usually go before adjectives.

\textit{six large eggs} \quad \textit{the second big shock}

First, next and last most often go before one, two, three, etc.

\textit{the first three days} (More common than \textit{the three first days})

\textit{my last two jobs}

5 noun modifiers after adjectives

Note that noun modifiers (which often classify, or refer to material) usually follow adjectives.

\textit{a big new car factory} \quad \text{enormous black iron gates}

6 commas

Before nouns, we generally use commas between adjectives (especially in longer sequences) which give similar kinds of information, as in physical descriptions.

\textit{a steep, slippery, grassy slope}

\textit{an expensive, ill-planned, wasteful project}

But commas can be dropped before short common adjectives.

\textit{a tall(,) dark(,) handsome cowboy}

We do not use commas between adjectives which give different kinds of information.

\textit{an attractive traditional woollen dress}

Commas are not used after numbers or other determiners.

\textit{ten green bottles (not \textit{ten, green bottles})}

\textit{these new ideas (not \textit{these, new ideas})}

For more details, \(\text{\textsuperscript{296.9}}\).

7 after a verb

The order of adjectives in predicative position (after \textit{be}, \textit{seem} and similar verbs, \(\text{\textsuperscript{11}}\)) is similar to the order before nouns. Note that noun modifiers are not used in this position.

\textit{a big, green wine bottle} \quad \text{but not \textit{The bottle is big, green and wine.}}

For \textit{and} with adjectives before nouns and after verbs, \(\text{\textsuperscript{185}}\).

185 adjectives with \textit{and}

When two or more adjectives (or other modifiers) come together, we sometimes put \textit{and} before the last one, and sometimes not. It depends partly on their position in the sentence, and partly the kinds of information they give.

1 after a verb

When adjectives come in predicative position (after \textit{be}, \textit{seem} and similar verbs, \(\text{\textsuperscript{11}}\)), we usually put \textit{and} before the last one.

\textit{He was tall, dark and handsome.}

\textit{You’re like a winter’s day: short, dark and dirty.}

In a very literary style, \textit{and} is sometimes left out.

\textit{My soul is exotic, mysterious, incomprehensible.}
2 before a noun

In attributive position (before a noun), and is less common.

a big beautiful garden
However, and is possible when the adjectives give similar kinds of information, especially when we are ‘piling up’ favourable or unfavourable descriptions.

a cruel (and) vicious tyrant a warm (and) generous personality
an ill-planned, expensive (and) wasteful project

And is necessary when two or more adjectives (or other modifiers) refer to different parts of something, or distinguish different types of thing.

a yellow and black sports car a concrete and glass factory
hot and cold drinks (= hot drinks and cold drinks)

We also use and when we say that something belongs to two or more different classes.

It’s a social and political problem.
She’s a musical and artistic genius.

3 and not used

We do not use and between adjectives that give different kinds of information.

an angry young man (not an angry and young man)
a ridiculous economic policy (not a ridiculous and economic policy)

4 nice and...

In an informal style, the expression nice and is often used before another adjective or an adverb. It means something like ‘pleasantly’ or ‘suitably’.

It’s nice and warm in front of the fire. (= pleasantly warm)
The work was nice and easy.
Now just put your gun down nice and slow.

For more information about and, ► 226.

186 adjectives after nouns and pronouns

Adjectives come immediately after nouns in a few special cases.

1 fixed phrases: Secretary General; court martial

Adjectives come after nouns in some fixed phrases.

Secretary General President elect
court martial (= military court) Attorney General
Poet Laureate

2 available, possible, etc

Some adjectives can be used after nouns in a similar way to relative clauses. This is common with adjectives ending in -able/-ible.

Send all the tickets available / available tickets. (= . . . tickets which are available.)
It’s the only solution possible / possible solution.

Some adverbs can also be used like this.

the woman upstairs the people outside
3 present, proper

Before a noun, present refers to time; after a noun it means 'here/there', 'not absent'. Compare:

the present members (= those who are members now)
the members present (= those who are/were at the meeting)

Before a noun, proper (especially in British English) means 'real', 'genuine'. After a noun it refers to the central or main part of something. Compare:

Snowdon's a proper mountain, not a hill.
After two days crossing the foothills, they reached the mountain proper.

For the position and meaning of opposite, ► 548.

4 expressions of measurement: two metres high

Adjectives usually follow measurement nouns.

two metres high ten years older two miles long six feet deep

Exception: worth (e.g. worth 100 euros). ► 634

5 adjectives with complements: people skilled in design

When an adjective has its own complement (e.g. skilled in design), the whole expression normally comes after a noun.

We are looking for people skilled in design. (NOT . . . skilled in design people.)

A relative clause is often more natural.

We are looking for people who are skilled in design.

In some cases an adjective can be put before a noun and its complement after it. This happens with different, similar, the same, next, last, first, second, etc; comparatives and superlatives; and a few other adjectives like difficult and easy.

a different life from this one the second train from this platform
the next house to the Royal Hotel the best mother in the world
(or the house next to the Royal Hotel) a difficult problem to solve

6 something, everything, etc

Adjectives come after something, everything, anything, nothing, somebody, anywhere and similar words.

Have you read anything interesting lately? Let's go somewhere quiet.

187 adjectives: position after as, how, so, too

After as, how, so, too and this/that meaning so, adjectives go before a/an. This structure is common in a formal style.

as/how/so/too/this/that + adjective + a/an + noun

I have as good a voice as you. She is too polite a person to refuse.

How good a pianist is he? I couldn't afford that big a car.

It was so warm a day that I could hardly work.

The structure is not possible without a/an.

I like your country – it's so beautiful. (NOT I like your so beautiful country.)

Those girls are too kind to refuse. (NOT They are too kind girls to refuse.)

For the structure with adjective + as in expressions like tired as I was . . . ► 255.
188 adjectives without nouns

We cannot usually leave out a noun after an adjective.

Poor little boy! (not Poor little!)  

The most important thing is to be happy. (not The most important is...)  

But there are some exceptions.

1 well-known groups: the old; the poor

The + adjective is used to talk about certain well-known groups of people who are in a particular physical or social condition. Common expressions:

- the blind
- the disabled
- the mentally ill
- the rich
- the dead
- the handicapped
- the old
- the unemployed
- the deaf
- the jobless
- the poor
- the young

The term handicapped is now often considered offensive; people with physical disabilities generally prefer the adjective disabled.

He’s collecting money for the blind.

The unemployed are losing hope.

The meaning is usually general; occasionally a limited group is referred to.

After the accident, the injured were taken to hospital.

These expressions are normally plural: the dead means ‘all dead people’ or ‘the dead people’, but not ‘the dead person’.

The dead have no further worries. (but not The dead has...)

Note that these expressions cannot be used with a possessive ‘s.

The problems of the poor or poor people’s problems (not the poor’s problems)

Adjectives are normally only used in this way with the or a determiner.

This government doesn’t care about the poor. (not... about poor.)

There are more unemployed than ever before.

However, adjectives without the are sometimes used in paired structures with both... and...

opportunities for both rich and poor

2 adjectives of nationality: the Irish; the Dutch

A few adjectives of nationality ending in -sh or -ch (321.3) are used after the without nouns. They include Irish, Welsh, English, British, Spanish, Dutch, French.

The Irish are very proud of their sense of humour.

These expressions are plural; singular equivalents are for example an Irishwoman, a Welshman (not a Welsh).

Where nouns exist, these are preferred to expressions with the...ish: we say the Danes or the Turks (not the Danish or the Turkish).

3 singular examples: the accused

In a few formal fixed phrases, the + adjective can have a singular meaning.

These include the accused, the undersigned, the deceased, the former and the latter.

The accused was released on bail.

... Stephen Gray and Susan Cook; the latter is a well-known designer.
4 abstract ideas: the supernatural

Adjectives are sometimes used after the to refer to general abstract ideas, especially in philosophical writing. (Examples: the beautiful, the supernatural, the unreal.) These expressions are singular.

She's interested in the supernatural.

The difficult we do immediately; the impossible takes a little longer.

5 choices: White or brown?

We sometimes leave out a noun that has already been mentioned, or which does not need to be mentioned, when thinking about a choice between two or more different kinds of thing.

'Have you got any bread?' 'Do you want white or brown?'

I'd like two large packets and one small.

Colour adjectives can sometimes have a plural -s in this situation, effectively becoming nouns.

Wash the reds and blues separately. (= red and blue clothes)

6 superlatives: We bought the cheapest.

Nouns are often left out after superlative adjectives.

I'm the tallest in my family. We bought the cheapest.

For other structures in which nouns can be left out, ► 278.

189 gradable and non-gradable adjectives

Adjectives can be divided into gradable and non-gradable. Gradable adjectives (e.g. difficult, important, happy, tired) are words for qualities that exist in different degrees. Things can be more or less difficult or important; people can be more or less happy or tired. Non-gradable adjectives (e.g. impossible, essential, alive, exhausted) are words for 'either-or' qualities. We don't generally say that some things are more impossible than others, or that somebody is not very exhausted: things are either impossible or not, and people are either exhausted or not.

Degree adverbs like very or more are mostly used with gradable adjectives, and it is mainly gradable adjectives that have comparative and superlative forms. Note that quite has different meanings in British English with gradable and non-gradable adjectives (► 564).

190 measurements: ‘marked’ and ‘unmarked’ forms

Many adjectives that are used in measurements come in pairs (e.g. tall/short, old/young, heavy/light, fast/slow). The word that is used for the 'top' end of the measurement scale can usually be used in another sense, to talk about the quality in general. For instance, one can ask how long something is even if it is relatively short. Grammarians call these uses 'unmarked'. Compare:

- She's very tall and he's very short. (marked)

Exactly how tall are they both? (unmarked) (NOT Exactly how short... )
Adjectives

Section 15

- Will you still love me when I'm old? (marked)
  He's only twenty-three years old. (unmarked) (not...years young.)
- Lead is one of the heaviest metals. (marked)
  Scales measure how heavy things are. (unmarked) (not...how light...)
Some nouns are used in similar 'unmarked' ways. Compare:
- Age brings wisdom but I'd rather have youth and stupidity. (marked)
  What is her exact age? (unmarked) (not What is her exact youth?)
- The worst thing about the film was its length. (marked)
  What's the length of the runway? (unmarked) (not What's the shortness...?)

191 pronunciation of aged, naked, etc

A few adjectives ending in -ed have a special pronunciation: the last syllable is pronounced /id/ instead of /d/ or /t/ (► 44.2).

- aged /'eidʒid/ (= very old)
- blessed /'blesid/
- beloved /'beləvid/
- dogged /'dɒgd/
- crooked /'krukid/
- learned /'laɪmd/
- cursed /'kɜːsd/
- sacred /'seɪkrəd/
- naked /'neɪkd/
- wicked /'wɪkd/
- ragged /'rægd/
- wretched /'rɛtʃɪd/
- rugged /'rʌɡd/
- one/three/four-legged /'lɛgd/

Note that aged is pronounced /'eidʒd/ when it means 'years old' (as in He has a daughter aged ten), or when it is a verb.

192 What can follow an adjective?

Many adjectives can be followed by ‘complements’ – words and expressions that ‘complete’ their meaning. Not all adjectives are followed by the same kind of complement. Some can be followed by preposition + noun/-ing (► 103).

- I'm interested in cookery. I'm interested in learning to cook.
Some can be followed by infinitives (► 101).
- You don't look happy to see me. The soup is ready to eat.
An infinitive may have its own subject, introduced by for (► 113).
- I'm anxious for her to get a good education. (= I'm anxious that she should get...)
Some adjectives can be followed by clauses (► 264).
- I'm glad that you were able to come.
- It's important that everybody should feel comfortable.
And many adjectives can have more than one kind of complement.
- I'm pleased about her promotion. I'm pleased to see you here.
- I'm pleased that we seem to agree.

We rarely put adjective + complement before a noun (► 186.5).
- He's a difficult person to understand. (not He's a difficult to understand person.)

For the structures that are possible with a particular adjective, see a good dictionary.
Section 16  Adverbs and Adverbials

INTRODUCTION

The term adverb is used for a wide variety of words with different kinds of use: for example, frankly, now, very, right, regularly. Their general function is to modify (add meaning to) sentences, clauses or various parts of clauses (but not nouns).

Frankly, I think she's crazy.
You did that very well.
Please answer now.
She went right up the stairs.
When I was a student, I went to the gym regularly.

Other longer expressions can modify sentences, clauses, verbs, etc in the same way as adverbs. To be honest, I think she's crazy.

You did that quite remarkably well.
Please answer right away.
She went all the way up the stairs.
When I was a student, I went to the gym every day.

It can be convenient to use a single word to talk about modifiers of this kind, whether they are adverbs, or longer expressions functioning like adverbs. In this Section they are called 'adverbials' when necessary. For adverbial clauses (e.g. When I was a student), ► Sections 20, 22–23.

Note that not all languages make a grammatical distinction between adverbs and adjectives. This can cause problems for some learners.
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- She danced happy into the room. ► 193.1
- I don’t remember him very good. ► 193.1
- It’s terrible cold today. ► 193.2
- They smiled friendly at us. ► 194.1
- You’re doing finely. ► 194.2
- I worked very hardly for the exam. ► 194.2
- The door was widely open. ► 194.2
- I get often headaches. ► 196.1
- She speaks very well English. ► 196.1
- Never I get up early. ► 198.1
- Here your bus comes. ► 201.2
- Put the butter at once in the fridge. ► 201.4
- I play always tennis on Saturdays. ► 200.1
- I never have seen a whale. ► 200.1
- He does probably not know. ► 200.2
- I often am late for work. ► 200.1
- I will completely have finished by next year. ► 198.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

193 adverbs of manner and adjectives
194 adverbs or adjectives: confusing cases
195 adverb particles: up, down, back, away, etc
196 position of adverbials: introduction
197 connecting and comment adverbials
198 indefinite frequency, certainty and completeness
199 focusing adverbials
200 mid-position: details
201 manner, place and time
202 adverbials modifying adverbials: terribly sorry, right past me
193 adverbs of manner and adjectives

1 adverbs of manner with verbs: He sang badly.
Adverbs of manner typically say how something happens or is done. Examples: happily, terribly, fast, badly, well
Adverbs of manner can modify verbs. They should not be confused with adjectives (happy, terrible, etc). Adjectives are not used to modify verbs.

Verb + adverb

She danced happily into the room. (not She danced happy...)
She sang badly. (not She-sang bad.)
I don't remember him very well. (not ...very good.)
But note that some adjective forms are sometimes used as adverbs in an informal style, especially in American English (► 194.4).
She talks funny.

For the use of adjectives after linking verbs like look or seem, ► 11.

2 other uses: terribly cold
These adverbs can also modify adjectives, past participles, other adverbs and prepositional phrases.

Adverb + adjective

It's terribly cold today. (not ...terrible cold.)

Adverb + past participle

This steak is very badly cooked. (not ...bad cooked.)

Adverb + adverb

They're playing unusually fast. (not ...unusual fast.)

Adverb + prepositional phrase

He was madly in love with her. (not ...mad in love...)

For adjectives ending in -ly, ► 194.1. For adverbs and adjectives with the same form, ► 194.2.
For the adjective well, ► 622. For the position of adverbs of manner, ► 201.1.
For spelling rules, ► 345.
1 adjectives ending in -ly: friendly, lively

Some words ending in -ly are adjectives, and not normally adverbs. Common examples: costly, cowardly, deadly, friendly, likely, lively, lonely, lovely, silly, ugly, unlikely.

She gave me a friendly smile. Her singing was lovely.

There are no adverbs friendly/friendlily, lovely/lovelily, etc.

She smiled in a friendly way. (not She smiled friendly.)

He gave a silly laugh. (not He laughed silly.)

Daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, early and leisurely are both adjectives and adverbs.

It's a daily paper. It comes out daily. an early train I got up early.

2 adjectives and adverbs with the same form; adverbs with two forms

Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form: for example, a fast car goes fast; if you do hard work, you work hard. In other cases, the adverb may have two forms (e.g. late and lately), one like the adjective and the other with -ly. There is usually a difference of meaning or use. Some examples follow; for more detailed information, check in a good dictionary.

clean The adverb clean means 'completely' before forget (informal) and some expressions of movement.

Sorry I didn't turn up - I clean forgot.

The explosion blew the cooker clean through the wall.

dead The adverb dead is used in certain expressions to mean 'exactly', 'completely' or 'very'. Examples: dead ahead, dead certain, dead drunk, dead right, dead slow, dead straight, dead sure, dead tired.

Note that deadly is an adjective, meaning 'fatal', 'causing death'. The adverb for this meaning is fatally.

Cyanide is a deadly poison. She was fatally injured in the crash.

direct Direct is often used informally as an adverb.

The plane goes direct from London to Houston without stopping.

50% cheaper — order direct from the factory!

easy Easy is used as an adverb in some informal expressions.

Go easy! (= Not too fast!) Take it easy! (= Relax!)

Easy come, easy go. Easier said than done.

fair Fair is used as an adverb after a verb in some expressions.

to play fair to fight fair to hit/win something fair and square

For the adverb of degree fairly, 460.
fast *Fast* can mean both ‘quick’ and ‘quickly’ (a *fast* car goes *fast*). *Fast* means ‘completely’ in the expression *fast asleep*, and it means ‘tight’, ‘impossible to remove’ in expressions like *hold fast*, *stick fast*, *fast colours*.

fine The adverb *fine* (= well) is used in some informal expressions.

That suits me *fine*.

You’re doing *fine*.

The adverb *finely* is used to talk about small careful adjustments and similar ideas.

*a finely tuned engine*  
*finely chopped onions* (= cut up very small)

flat *Flat* can be used as an adverb in a musical sense (*to sing flat* means ‘to sing on a note that is too low’). In most other cases, the adverb is *flatly*.

free The adverb *free* (used after a verb) means ‘without payment’; *freely* means ‘without limit or restriction’. Compare:

*You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like.*

*You can speak freely – I won’t tell anyone what you say.*

hard The adverb *hard* means ‘with a lot of force, energetically’.

*Hit it hard.*  
*I trained really hard for the marathon.*

Hardly means ‘almost not’.

*I’ve hardly got any clean clothes left.*

Compare:

Anna works *hard*.

Her brother *hardly* works.

For hardly . . . when in clauses of time, ► 480. For hardly any, ever, etc, ► 366.3.

high *High* refers to height; *highly* (rather formal) expresses an extreme degree (it often means ‘very much’). Compare:

– *He can jump really high.*
– *It’s highly amusing.*

*Throw it as high as you can.*  
*I can highly recommend it.*

just *Just* is an adverb with several meanings (► 503). There is also an adjective *just*, meaning ‘in accordance with justice or the law’; the adverb is *justly*.

*He was justly punished for his crimes.*

late The adverb *late* has a similar meaning to the adjective *late*; *lately* means ‘recently’. Compare:

*I hate arriving late.*  
*I haven’t been to the theatre much lately.*

loud *Loud* is often used informally as an adverb after a verb.

Don’t talk so *loud*(ly) – you’ll wake the whole street.

low *Low* is an adjective and adverb (*a low bridge, a low voice, bend low*).

most *Most* is the superlative and adverb (*a low bridge, a low voice, bend low*).

most The superlative of *much*, and is used to form superlative adjectives

Which part of the concert did you like *most*?  
*This is the most extraordinary day of my life.*

In a formal style, *most* can be used to mean ‘very’.

You’re a *most* unusual person.

Mostly means ‘mainly’, ‘most often’ or ‘in most cases’.

My friends are *mostly* non-smokers.
pretty The informal adverb of degree pretty is similar to rather (► 460). Prettily means ‘in a pretty way’. Compare:
I’m getting pretty fed up. Isn’t your little girl dressed prettily?

quick In an informal style, quick is often used instead of quickly, especially after verbs of movement.
I’ll get back as quick(ly) as I can.

real In informal American English, real is often used instead of really before adjectives and adverbs.
That was real nice. He cooks real well.

right Right with adverbials means ‘just’, ‘exactly’ or ‘all the way’.
She arrived right after breakfast.
The snowball hit me right on the nose.
Turn the gas right down.
Right and rightly can both be used to mean ‘correctly’. Right is only used after verbs, and is usually informal. Compare:
I rightly assumed that Henry was not coming. You guessed right.
It serves you right. (… rightly is not possible.)

sharp Sharp can be used as an adverb to mean ‘punctually’.
Can you be there at six o’clock sharp?
It also has a musical sense (to sing sharp means ‘to sing on a note that is too high’), and is used in the expressions turn sharp left and turn sharp right (meaning ‘with a big change of direction’).
In other senses the adverb is sharply.
She looked at him sharply.
I thought you spoke to her rather sharply.

short Short is used as an adverb in the expressions stop short (= ‘stop suddenly’) and cut short (= ‘interrupt’). Shortly means ‘soon’; it can also describe an impatient way of speaking.

slow Slow is used as an adverb in road signs (e.g. SLOW – DANGEROUS BEND), and informally after go and some other verbs. Examples: go slow, drive slow.

sound Sound is used as an adverb in the expression sound asleep. In other cases, soundly is used (e.g. She’s sleeping soundly).

straight The adverb and the adjective are the same. A straight road goes straight from one place to another.

sure Sure is often used to mean ‘certainly’ in an informal style, especially in American English.
‘Can I borrow your tennis racket?’ ‘Sure.’
Surely (not) is used to express opinions or surprise (► 600 for details).
Surely house prices will stop rising soon!
Surely you’re not going out in that old coat?

tight After a verb, tight can be used instead of tightly, especially in an informal style. Typical expressions: hold tight, packed tight (compare tightly packed).
well Well is an adverb corresponding to the adjective good (a good singer sings well). Well is also an adjective meaning ‘in good health’ (the opposite of ill). For details, ► 622.

wide The normal adverb is wide; widely suggests distance or separation. Compare:
The door was wide open. She's travelled widely.
They have widely differing opinions.
Note also the expression wide awake (the opposite of fast asleep).

wrong Wrong can be used informally instead of wrongly after a verb. Compare:
I wrongly believed that you wanted to help me.
You guessed wrong.

3 comparatives and superlatives
Informal uses of adjective forms as adverbs are especially common with comparatives and superlatives.
Can you drive a bit slower? Let's see who can do it quickest.

4 American English
In informal American English, many other adjective forms can also be used as adverbs of manner.
He looked at me real strange. Think positive.

195 adverb particles: up, down, back, away, etc

1 adverb particles and prepositions
Words like down, in, up are not always prepositions. Compare:
- I ran down the road.
  Please sit down.
- Something's climbing up my leg.
  She's not up yet.
- He's in his office.
  You can go in.
In the expressions down the road, in his office and up my leg, the words down, in and up are prepositions: they have objects (the road, his office and my leg). In sit down, go in and She's not up, the words down, in and up have no objects. They are adverbs, not prepositions.
Small adverbs like these are usually called ‘adverb(ial) particles’. They include above, about, across, ahead, along, (a)round, aside, away, back, before, behind, below, by, down, forward, in, home, near, off, on, out, over, past, through, under, up. Many words of this kind can be used as both adverb particles and prepositions, but there are some exceptions: for example back, away (only adverb particles); from, during (only prepositions).
Adverbs and Adverbials

Section 16

2 phrasal verbs: give up, break down

Adverb particles often join together with verbs to make two-word verbs, sometimes with completely new meanings (e.g. break down, put off, work out, give up). These are often called 'phrasal verbs'. For details of their use, ► 12.

3 adverb particles with be: I’m off!

Adverb particles are often used, rather like adjectives, as complements of the verb be.

Why are all the lights on? Hello! You’re back!
The match will be over by 4.30. I’m off – see you later!

For inverted word order in sentences beginning with an adverb particle (e.g. Out walked Sarah), ► 271.

196 position of adverbials: introduction

Different kinds of adverbials typically go in different positions in a clause. The very simple explanations below show the commonest patterns; entries ► 197–202 give some more detail. However, this is a very complicated area of grammar, and it is impossible to give reliable rules that apply all the time to all adverbials.

1 verb and object: She speaks English well.

We do not usually put adverbials between a verb and its object.

adverbial + verb + object

I often get headaches. (NOT I-get-often-headaches.)

verb + object + adverbial

She speaks English well. (NOT She.speaks.well.English.)

But an adverb particle like on, off, out can go between a verb and a noun object.

Could you switch off the light?

2 front, mid- and end position

There are three normal positions for adverbials:

a front position (at the beginning of a clause)

Yesterday morning something very strange happened.

b mid-position (with the verb – for exact details ► 200)

My brother completely forgot my birthday.
I have never understood her.

c end position (at the end of a clause)

What are you doing tomorrow?

3 What goes where?

Connecting adverbials (which join a clause to what came before) and comment adverbials (which show a speaker’s or writer’s opinion of what he/she is talking about) usually go in front position.

However, not everybody agreed. Fortunately, nobody was hurt.
Adverbials of indefinite frequency (e.g. always, often), certainty (e.g. probably, definitely) and completeness (e.g. completely, almost) usually go in mid-position.

*My boss often travels to America.*

*I've definitely decided to change my job.*

*The builder said he had almost finished, but it wasn't true.*

**Focusing adverbials (e.g. also, just, even)** can go in mid-position; other positions are possible, depending on the particular adverbial.

*He's even been to Antarctica.*

**Adverbials of manner** (how), place (where) and time (when) most often go in end position.

*She brushed her hair slowly.*

*I phoned Alex this morning.*

**Time adverbials** can also go in front position.

*Tomorrow I've got a meeting in Cardiff.*

**Emphasising adverbials** (e.g. terribly, really) usually go with the words they emphasise.

*I'm terribly sorry about last night.*

**Degree adverbials** (e.g. more, very much, most, a lot, so) go in various places, depending on their function in the sentence. Details are given in other entries.

For more details about the position of these and other kinds of adverbial, see the next four sections.

### 197 connecting and comment adverbials

**Examples of connecting adverbials:** then, next, after that, besides, anyway, suddenly, however, as a result, on the other hand

These words and expressions show how a clause connects with what came before. Naturally, they generally go in **front position**.

*I worked until five o'clock. Then I went home.*

*Next, I want to say something about the future.*

*Suddenly the door opened.*

*Some of us want a new system. However, not everybody agrees.*

*It was hard work; on the other hand, we really enjoyed the experience.*

**Examples of comment adverbials:** fortunately, surprisingly, in my opinion, arguably, as you might expect

These adverbials show a speaker's or writer's opinion of what he/she is talking about. They, too, most often go in **front position**.

*Fortunately, several people have decided to help us.*

*Stupidly, I did not read the contract before signing it.*

*Arguably, this is her finest novel since 'Flowers of Doom'.*  
*As you might expect, his remarks have attracted widespread criticism.*

Other positions are possible, especially with shorter adverbials.

*Not everybody, however, agrees.*

*I stupidly did not read the contract before signing it.*

For the use of some of these adverbials as discourse markers, ► 284, 301.
Adverbials in this group most often go in mid-position (before a one-part verb and after an auxiliary verb – for more exact details, ► 200).

1 adverbials of indefinite frequency: usually, often, etc

Examples: usually, normally, often, frequently, sometimes, occasionally, always, rarely, ever, hardly ever, seldom, never

We usually go to Scotland in August.
It sometimes gets very windy here. I have never seen a whale.
You can always come and stay with us if you want to.
Have you ever played American football?
My boss is often bad-tempered. I'm seldom late for work.
We have never been invited to one of their parties.
She must sometimes have wanted to run away.

Other positions are possible for most of them.
Sometimes I think I'd like to live somewhere else.
I see her occasionally.
Always, ever, rarely, seldom and never cannot normally go in front position.
Always/never get up early. (not Always/never I get up early.)

However, always and never can begin imperative clauses.

Always look in the mirror before starting to drive.
Never ask her about her marriage.

For rarely, seldom, never, hardly and scarcely in front position before verb + subject ('inversion'), ► 270.7.

2 adverbials of certainty: probably, certainly, etc

Examples: probably, certainly, definitely, clearly, obviously

He probably thinks you don't like him.
It will certainly rain this evening. There is clearly something wrong.
I definitely feel better today. The train has obviously been delayed.

Maybe and perhaps usually come at the beginning of a clause.

Maybe I'm right and maybe I'm wrong. Perhaps her train is late.

3 adverbials of completeness: practically, partly, etc

Examples: completely, practically, almost, nearly, quite, rather, partly, sort of, kind of, more or less, hardly, scarcely

I have completely forgotten your name.
Sophie can practically read. I kind of hope she wins.
It was almost dark. It hardly matters.

Adverbials of completeness usually follow all auxiliary verbs.

I will have completely finished by next June. (not I will completely have finished...)

Do you think the repair has been properly done?
4 longer adverbials: *from time to time*, etc

Longer adverbials do not usually go in mid-position. Compare:

I *sometimes* visit my old school.

I *visit my old school from time to time.* (NOT *I from time to time visit...*)

199 focusing adverbials

These adverbials 'point to' one part of a clause.

Examples: *also, just, even, only, mainly, mostly, either, or, neither, nor*

They often go in mid-position.

Your bicycle *just* needs some oil – that's all.

She *neither* said 'Thank you' *nor* looked at me.

He's been everywhere – he's *even* been to Antarctica.

We're *only* going for two days.

She's my teacher, but she's *also* my friend.

The people at the meeting were *mainly* scientists.

Some of these adverbials can also go in other places in a clause, directly before the words they modify. For details, see the entries on each adverbial.

*Only you could do a thing like that. I feel really tired.*

200 mid-position: details

1 What exactly is mid-position?

Mid-position adverbials usually go before one-word verbs (e.g. *play, won*). If a verb has more than one part (e.g. *has written, was trying*), they normally go after the auxiliary. And they go after *am/are/is/was/were*.

a before one-word verbs

*I always play tennis on Saturdays.* (NOT *I play always tennis...*)

*It certainly looks like rain. We nearly won the match.*

b after auxiliary verbs

*She has never written to me.* (NOT USUALLY *She never has written to me.*)

*He was definitely trying to get into the house.*

*The train will probably be late.* You *can almost see the sea from here.*

c after *am/is/are/was/were*

*She was always kind to me.* (NOT USUALLY *She always was kind to me.*)

*It is probably too late now.* I *am obviously not welcome here.*

When there are two or more auxiliaries, the adverbial usually goes after the first.

*You have definitely been working too hard.*

*She would never have been promoted if she hadn't changed jobs.*
When an auxiliary verb is used alone instead of a complete verb phrase (► 279), a mid-position adverbial comes before it.

‘Are you working?’ ‘I certainly am.’
I don’t trust politicians. I never have, and I never will.

2 mid-position (details): adverbials with negative verbs
In negative sentences, adverbials generally come before not if they emphasise the negative; otherwise they come after. Compare:

I certainly do not agree. I do not often have headaches.

Both positions are possible with some adverbials, often with a difference of meaning. Compare:

I don’t really like her. (mild dislike)
I really don’t like her. (strong dislike)

When adverbials come before not, they may also come before the first auxiliary verb; they always come before do.

I probably will not be there. (or I will probably not be there.)
He probably does not know. (not He does probably not know.)

Only one position is possible before a contracted negative.

I probably won’t be there.

3 mid-position (details): adverbials with emphatic verbs
When we emphasise auxiliary verbs or am/are/is/was/were, we put most mid-position adverbials before them instead of after. Compare:

– She has certainly made him angry.
  She certainly HAS made him angry!
– Polite people always say thank-you.
  Yes, well, I always DO say thank-you.
– I’m really sorry.
  I really AM sorry.

4 mid-position (details): American English
In American English (► 319), mid-position adverbials are often put before auxiliary verbs and am/are/is/was/were, even when the verb is not emphasised, especially in an informal style. Compare:

He has probably arrived by now. (normal in both AmE and BrE)
He probably has arrived by now. (also normal in AmE; emphatic in BrE)

As an extreme example, here are four sentences in a journalistic style taken from an American newspaper article on crime in Britain. The most normal British equivalents are given in brackets.

‘Britain long has been known as a land of law and order.’ (BrE Britain has long been known . . .)
‘. . . but it probably will lead to a vote . . .’ (BrE . . . but it will probably lead . . .)
‘. . . the Labor Party often has criticized police actions.’ (BrE . . . the Labour Party has often criticised . . .)
‘. . . he ultimately was responsible for the treatment . . .’ (BrE . . . he was ultimately responsible . . .)
201 manner, place and time

Adverbials of manner, place and time usually go in end position, often in that order.

1 manner

Adverbials of manner say how something happens or is done.

Examples: angrily, happily, fast, slowly, well, badly, nicely, noisily, quietly, hard, softly

He drove off angrily. You speak English well.
She read the notice slowly. Jack works really hard.

Adverbials in -ly can also go in mid-position if the adverb is not the main focus of the message.

She angrily tore up the letter. I slowly began to feel better again.

Mid-position (after all auxiliary verbs) is especially common with passive verbs.

The driver has been seriously injured

2 place

Examples: upstairs, around, here, to bed, in London, out of the window

The children are playing upstairs. Come and sit here.
Don’t throw orange peel out of the window.
She’s sitting at the end of the garden.

Front position is also possible, especially in literary writing and if the adverbial is not the main focus of the message. In this case the verb often comes before the subject (► 271.1).

On the grass sat an enormous frog. Down came the rain.

Here and there often begin clauses. Note the word order in Here/There is, Here comes and There goes.

Here comes your bus. (not Here your bus comes.)
There’s Alice. There goes our train!

Pronoun subjects come directly after here and there.

Here it comes. (not Here comes it.) There she is. (not There is she.)

Adverbials of direction (movement) come before adverbials of position.

The children are running around upstairs.

3 time and definite frequency

Examples: today, afterwards, in June, last year, finally, before, eventually, already, soon, still, last, daily, weekly, every year

I’m going to London today. What did you do afterwards?
She has a new hairstyle every week.

Front position is also common if the adverbial is not the main focus of the message.

Today I’m going to London. Every week she has a new hairstyle.
Finally, eventually, already, soon and last can also go in mid-position.
4 order

Most often, adverbials of manner, place and time go in that order.

*Put the butter in the fridge at once.* (not . . . at once in the fridge.)
*Let's go to bed early.* (not . . . early to bed.)
*I worked hard yesterday.* (not . . . hard yesterday.)

She sang beautifully in the town hall last night.

202 adverbials modifying adverbials: 
*terribly sorry; right past me*

Examples: *very, extremely, terribly, just* (meaning ‘exactly’ or ‘a short time’), *almost, really, right*

These adverbials go directly before the words that they modify.

*We all thought she sang very well.*
*Everybody was extremely annoyed with Julian.*
*I’m terribly sorry about last night.*
*I’ll see you in the pub just before eight o’clock.*
*He threw the ball almost over the house.*
*I’m really tired today.* (not . . . tired today.)
*She walked right past me.*

Almost can also go in mid-position (► 198.3).
Section 17  Comparison

INTRODUCTION

Various words and structures can be used for comparing. This Section deals particularly with structures used for expressing equality and inequality.

equality: as . . . as
To say that people, things, etc are equal in a particular way, we often use the structure as (much/many) . . . as (► 203).

My hands were as cold as ice. I earn as much money as you.

inequality: older than, more attractive than, laziest, most annoying, etc
To say that people, things, etc are unequal in a particular way, we can use comparative adjectives and adverbs, or more + adjective/adverb (► 204–208).

He's much older than her. The baby's more attractive than you.

To say which one of a group is outstanding in a particular way, we can use a superlative or most + adjective/adverb (► 204–208).

You're the laziest and most annoying person in the whole office.

inequality: less, least; not so/as . . . as
We can also talk about inequality by looking at the 'lower' end of the scale. One possibility is to use less (than) (► 169) or least (► 170).

The baby's less ugly than you.

I want to spend the least possible time working.

In informal usage, we more often use not so . . . as or not as . . . as (► 203).

The baby's not so ugly as you.

similarity and identity: as, like, so do I, too, the same, etc
If we want to say that people, things, actions or events are similar, we can use as or like (► 515); so/Neither do I and similar structures (► 309); or adverbs such as too, also and as well (► 369). To say that they are identical, we can use the same (as) (► 571).

He liked working with horses, as his father did.

Your sister looks just like you. She likes music, and so do I.

The fish was over-cooked and the vegetables were too.

His eyes are just the same colour as mine.
Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

- He's not so friendly like she is. ▶ 203.2
- Your hands are as cold like ice. ▶ 203.11
- He's the happyest person I know. ▶ 204.3
- The most easiest solution is to do nothing. ▶ 204.3
- Are humans really the intelligentest creatures? ▶ 204.4
- Would you mind talking quiedier? ▶ 205
- Emily's the taller of the four girls. ▶ 206.2
- Your accent is the worse in the class. ▶ 206.2
- We're going more slowly and more slowly. ▶ 206.4
- Older I get, more I am happy. ▶ 206.5
- The more it is dangerous, the more I like it. ▶ 206.5
- It's the longest river of the world. ▶ 206.7
- My boyfriend is very older than me. ▶ 207.1
- I'm not going out with a man who's twice older than me. ▶ 208.3
- She spent more money than it was sensible. ▶ 208.4
- Is this the first time for you to stay here? ▶ 208.5
- This dictionary is best I could find. ▶ 208.6
- He's the nicest when he's with children. ▶ 208.6

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

- 203 as . . . as; as much/many as
- 204 comparative and superlative adjectives
- 205 comparative and superlative adverbs
- 206 using comparatives and superlatives
- 207 much older, by far the oldest, etc
- 208 comparison: advanced points
1 use
We use as . . . as to say that people or things are equal in some way.

She’s as tall as her brother. Is it as good as you expected?
She speaks Spanish as well as the rest of us.
Take as much time as you need.

2 negative structures
After not, we can use so . . . as instead of as . . . as.
He’s not as/so friendly as she is. (more informal than He’s less friendly . . .)

3 as . . . as possible, etc
The structures as . . . as possible/necessary/ever/needed are common (and others using words with similar meanings).
Please get here as soon as possible.
I’ll spend as much as necessary. You’re as beautiful as ever.
We’ll do as much as practicable before the end of the week.

4 pronouns after as
In an informal style we can use object pronouns (me, him, etc) after as.

She doesn’t sing as well as me.
In a formal style, we prefer subject + verb after as.

She doesn’t sing as well as I do.
A subject form without a verb (e.g. as well as he) is unusual in this structure in modern English.

5 as much/many . . . as
We can use as much/many . . . as to talk about quantity.

I haven’t got as much money as I thought.
We need as many people as possible.
As much/many can be used without following nouns.

I ate as much as I could. She didn’t catch as many as she’d hoped.
And as much . . . can be used as an adverb.

You ought to rest as much as possible.

6 emphatic use: as much as 80kg
As much/many as can be used before a number to mean ‘the large amount/quantity of’.

Some of these fish can weigh as much as 80kg.
There are sometimes as many as 40 students in the classes.
As little/few can be used to mean ‘the small amount/quantity of’.

You can fly to Paris for as little as 20 euros.
7 half as ... as, etc

Half, twice, three times, etc can be used before as ... as.

You’re not half as clever as you think you are.
I’m not going out with a man who’s twice as old as me.
It took three times as long as I expected. (or ... three times longer than I expected, ► 208.3)

8 modification: nearly as...

Before as ... as we can use (not) nearly, almost, just, nothing like, every bit, exactly, not quite.

It’s not nearly as cold as yesterday. He’s just as strong as ever.
You’re nothing like as bad-tempered as you used to be.
She’s every bit as beautiful as her sister.
I’m not quite as tired as I was last week.

9 tenses

In as ... as-clauses (and other kinds of as-clauses), a present tense is often used to refer to the future, and a past tense can have a meaning similar to would + infinitive (► 231).

We’ll get there as soon as you do/will.
If you married me, I’d give you as much freedom as you wanted.

10 leaving out the second part: twice as long ...

The second part of the as ... as or so ... as structure can be left out when the meaning is clear from what comes before.

The train takes 40 minutes. By car it’ll take you twice as long.
I used to think he was clever. Now I’m not so sure.
In cases like this, not so is much more common than not as.

11 traditional expressions: as cold as ice

We use the structure as ... as ... in a lot of traditional comparative expressions.

as cold as ice as black as night as hard as nails

The first as can be dropped in these expressions in an informal style.

She’s hard as nails.

Note that as is usually pronounced /эг/ (► 315).
For as long as, ► 379. For as well as, ► 382.
For the word order in sentences like She’s as good a dancer as her brother, ► 187.
For as replacing subject or object (e.g. as many people as want it), ► 256.
For sentences like (As) cold as it was, we went out, ► 255.
One-syllable adjectives normally have comparatives and superlatives ending in -er, -est. Some two-syllable adjectives are similar; others have *more* and *most*. Longer adjectives have *more* and *most*.

1 one-syllable adjectives (regular comparison)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>older</td>
<td>oldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>taller</td>
<td>tallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>fatter</td>
<td>fattest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most adjectives: + -er, -est.

Adjectives ending in -e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>fatter</td>
<td>fattest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the pronunciation of:

- younger /ˈjʌŋɡə(r)/
- youngest /ˈjʌŋgɪst/ or /ˈjʌŋɡəst/
- longer /ˈlɒŋɡə(r)/
- longest /ˈlɒŋɡɪst/ or /ˈlɒŋɡəst/
- stronger /ˈstrɔːrɡə(r)/
- strongest /ˈstrɔːrɡɪst/ or /ˈstrɔːrgast/

2 irregular comparison

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther/further</td>
<td>farthest/furthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>older/elder</td>
<td>oldest/eldest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the pronunciation of:

- younger /ˈjʌŋɡə(r)/
- youngest /ˈjʌŋɡɪst/ or /ˈjʌŋɡəst/
- longer /ˈlɒŋɡə(r)/
- longest /ˈlɒŋɡɪst/ or /ˈlɒŋɡəst/
- stronger /ˈstrɔːrɡə(r)/
- strongest /ˈstrɔːrɡɪst/ or /ˈstrɔːrgast/
The determiners *little* and *much/many* have irregular comparatives and superlatives:

- **little** (► 168) | **less** (► 169) | **least** (► 170)
- **much/many** (► 165) | **more** (► 166) | **most** (► 167)

*Few* has two possible comparatives and superlatives: *fewer/less* and *fewest/least*. ► 169–170.

## 3 Two-syllable adjectives

Adjectives ending in *-y* have *-ier* and *-iest*.

- happy | happier | happiest
- easy | easier | easiest

Some other two-syllable adjectives can have *-er* and *-est*, especially adjectives ending in an unstressed vowel, /e/ or /ə(r)/.

- narrow | narrower | narrowest
- simple | simpler | simplest
- clever | cleverer | cleverest
- quiet | quieter | quietest

With many two-syllable adjectives (e.g. *polite, common*), *-er/-est* and *more/most* are both possible. With others (including adjectives ending in *-ing, -ed, -ful* and *-less*), only *more/most* is possible. In general, the structure with *more/most* is becoming more common. To find out the normal comparative and superlative for a particular two-syllable adjective, check in a good dictionary.

## 4 Longer adjectives

Adjectives of three or more syllables have *more* and *most*.

- intelligent | more intelligent | most intelligent
- practical | more practical | most practical
- beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful

Words like *unhappy* (the opposites of two-syllable adjectives ending in *-y*) are an exception: they can have forms in *-er* and *-est*.

- unhappy | unhappier / more unhappy | unhappiest / most unhappy
- untidy | untidier / more untidy | untidiest / most untidy

Some compound adjectives like *good-looking* or *well-known* have two possible comparatives and superlatives.

- good-looking | better-looking | best-looking
  or more good-looking
- well-known | better-known | most well-known
  or more well-known
5 more, most with short adjectives
Sometimes *more/most* are used with adjectives that normally have -er/-est.
This can happen, for example, when a comparative is not followed immediately by than; forms with -er are also possible.

*The road's getting more and more steep.* (or . . . steeper and steeper.)

When we compare two descriptions (saying that one is more suitable or accurate than another), we use *more*; comparatives with -er are not possible.

*He's more lazy than stupid.* (NOT He's lazier than stupid.)

In a rather formal style, *most* can be used with adjectives expressing approval and disapproval (including one-syllable adjectives) to mean 'very'.

*Thank you very much indeed. That is most kind of you.* (NOT . . . That is kindest of you.)
*You are most welcome.*

Real, right, wrong and like always have more and most.

*She's more like her mother than her father.* (NOT . . . She's lazier than stupid.)

205 comparative and superlative adverbs

Most comparative and superlative adverbs are made with *more* and *most*.

_Could you talk more quietly?* (NOT . . . quieter)

Adverbs that have the same form as adjectives (► 194), and a few others, have comparatives and superlatives with -er and -est. The most common are: fast, early, late, hard, long, near, high, low, soon, well (better, best), badly (worse, worst), and in informal English slow, loud and quick.

_Can't you drive any faster? Can you come earlier?_
\_Talk louder.\_ (informal)

_We've all got terrible voices, but I sing worst of all._

Note also the irregular comparatives and superlatives of far (farther/further, farthest/furthest, ► 462), much (more, most, ► 166 and ► 167), little (less, least, ► 169–170).

For the use of comparatives and superlatives, see the following entries.

206 using comparatives and superlatives

1 than

After comparatives we use *than*, not _that_ or _as._

*Today's hotter than yesterday.* (NOT . . . hotter _that_ . . . OR . . . hotter _as_ . . .)

2 the difference between comparatives and superlatives

We use a comparative to compare one person, thing, action, event or group with another person, thing, etc. We use a superlative to compare somebody/something with the whole group that he/she/it belongs to.
Compare:
- Emily’s taller than her three sisters.
  Emily’s the tallest of the four girls. (not ... the taller ...)
- Your accent is worse than mine.
  Your accent is the worst in the class. (not ... the worse ...)
- He plays better than everybody else in the team.
  He’s the best in the team.

3 groups with two members
When a group only has two members, we sometimes use a comparative instead of a superlative.
  I like Lily and Mia, but I think Mia’s the nicer/nicest of the two.
  I’ll give you the bigger/biggest steak: I’m not very hungry.
Some people feel that a superlative is incorrect in this case.

4 double comparatives: fatter and fatter; more and more slowly
We can use double comparatives to say that something is changing.
  I’m getting fatter and fatter.
  We’re going more and more slowly. (not ... more slowly and more slowly.)

5 the . . . the . . .
We can use comparatives with the . . . the . . . to say that things change or vary together.
Word order (in both clauses):
  the + comparative expression + subject + verb
  The older I get, the happier I am. (not Older I get, more I am happy.)
  The more dangerous it is, the more I like it. (not The more it is dangerous, . . .)
  The more I study, the less I learn.
Noun phrases with more can be used in this structure.
  The more money he makes, the more useless things he buys.
In longer structures, that is sometimes used before the first verb.
  The more information that comes in, the more confused the picture is.
A short form of this structure is used in the expression The more the merrier, and in sentences ending the better.
  ‘How do you like your coffee?’ ‘The stronger the better.’
Note that in this structure, the word the is not really the definite article – it was originally a form of the demonstrative pronoun, meaning 'by that much'.
6 than me; than I (am)
In an informal style, object pronouns (me, etc) are used after than. In a more formal style, subject pronouns (I, etc) are used (usually with verbs).

She's older than me. (informal)
She is older than I (am). (formal)

7 the happiest man in the world
After superlatives, we do not usually use of with a singular word referring to a place or group.

I'm the happiest man in the world. (not . . . of the world.)
She's the fastest runner in the class. (not . . . of the class.)

But of can be used before plurals, and before lot.
She's the fastest runner of them all. He's the best of the lot.

Note also the structure with possessive 's.

He thinks he's the world's strongest man.

8 than anybody; the best . . . ever
'Non-affirmative' words like ever, yet and any (► 222) often follow comparatives and superlatives.

It's the best book I've ever read. This is my hardest job yet.
You're more stubborn than anybody I know.

For tenses after than, ► 231. For the first/second/best, etc + present/past perfect, ► 56.

207 much older, by far the oldest, etc

1 much, far, etc with comparatives
We cannot use very with comparatives. Instead, we use, for example, much, far, very much, a lot (informal), lots (informal), any and no (► 373), rather, a little, a bit (informal), and even.

My boyfriend is much/far older than me. (not . . . very older than me.)
Russian is much/far more difficult than Spanish.
very much nicer    rather more quickly
a bit more sensible (informal)    She looks no older than her daughter.
a lot happier (informal)    a little less expensive
Is your mother any better? Your cooking is even worse than Harry's.
Quite cannot be used with comparatives except in the expression quite better, meaning 'recovered from an illness' (► 402.1). Any, no, a bit and a lot are not normally used to modify comparatives before nouns.

There are much/far nicer shops in the town centre.
(but not . . . a bit nicer shops . . .)
2 many more/less/fewer

When more (► 166) begins a plural noun phrase, it is modified by many instead of much. Compare:

much / far / a lot, etc more money
many / far / a lot, etc more opportunities

Much and many are not used to modify less or fewer, in plural noun phrases.

far fewer words (much/many fewer words)

3 much, by far, quite, etc with superlative noun phrases

Superlative noun phrases can be modified by much and by far, and by other adverbs of degree such as quite (meaning ‘absolutely’), almost, practically, nearly and easily. Much and quite are used in this way mostly in British English.

He’s much the most imaginative of them all. (BrE)
She’s by far the oldest. We’re walking by far the slowest.
He’s quite the most stupid man I’ve ever met. (BrE)
I’m nearly the oldest in the company.
This is easily the worst party I’ve been to this year.

4 very with superlatives

Note the special use of very to emphasise superlatives and first, next and last.

Bring out your very best wine – Michael’s coming to dinner.
You’re the very first person I’ve spoken to today.
This is your very last chance.

For modification of too. ► 610.3.

208 comparison: advanced points

1 comparative meaning ‘relatively’, ‘more than average’

Comparatives can suggest ideas like ‘relatively’, ‘more than average’. Used like this, comparatives make a less clear and narrow selection than superlatives.

Compare:

There are two classes – one for the cleverer students and one for the slower learners.
The cleverest students were two girls from York.

Comparatives are often used in advertising to make things sound less definite.

less expensive clothes for the fuller figure (Compare cheap clothes for fat people.)

2 all/any/none the + comparative

All the + comparative (more common in British English) suggests the idea of ‘even more . . .’.

I feel all the better for that swim.
Her accident made it all the more important to get home fast.

Any and none can be used in similar structures.

He didn’t seem to be any the worse for his experience.
He explained it all carefully, but I was still none the wiser.

Note that this structure is used mainly to express abstract ideas. We would not say, for example, Those pills have made him all the slimmer.

In this structure, the was originally a demonstrative, meaning ‘by that’. →
3 three times...er, etc
Instead of three/four, etc times as much (► 203.7), we can use three/four, etc times + comparative.
   She can walk three times faster than you.
   It was ten times more difficult than I expected.
Note that twice and half are not possible in this structure.
   She's twice as lively as her sister. (not...twice livelier...)

4 words left out after than
Than often replaces a subject or object pronoun or an adverbial expression, rather like a relative pronoun or adverb (► 256).
   She spent more money than was sensible. (not...than it was sensible.)
   There were more people than we had expected. (not...than we had expected them)
   I love you more than she does. (not...than how much she does)
(In some English dialects, the above sentences would be constructed with than what.)

5 the youngest person to...
After a superlative, an infinitive can mean the same as a relative clause.
   She's the youngest person ever to swim the Channel. (=...the youngest person who has ever swum...)
This structure is also common after first, last and next.
   Who was the first woman to climb Everest?
   The next to speak was Mrs Fenshaw.
Note that this structure is only possible in cases where the noun with the superlative (or first, etc) has a subject relationship with the following verb. In other cases, infinitives cannot be used.
   Is this the first time that you have stayed here? (not...the first time for you to stay here – time is not the subject of stay.)

6 superlatives with or without the
Nouns with superlative adjectives normally have the article the.
   It's the best book I've ever read.
After linking verbs, superlative adjectives also usually have the, though it is sometimes dropped in an informal style.
   I'm the greatest. Which of the boys is (the) strongest?
   This dictionary is (the) best.
The cannot be dropped when a superlative is used with a defining expression.
   This dictionary is the best I could find. (not This dictionary is best I could find.)
However, we do not use the with superlatives when we compare the same person or thing in different situations. Compare:
   - Of all my friends, he's (the) nicest. (comparing different people)
   - He's nicest when he's with children.
   (not He's the nicest when... – we're comparing the same person in different situations.)
She works (the) hardest in the family; her husband doesn’t know what work is. (A woman is being compared with a man – the is possible.) She works hardest when she's doing something for her family. (Not She works the hardest when... – a woman's work is being compared in different situations.)

The is sometimes dropped before superlative adverbs in an informal style. Who can run (the) fastest?
Section 18  Prepositions

INTRODUCTION

meanings and use
It is difficult to learn to use prepositions correctly in a foreign language. Most English prepositions have several different functions (for instance, one well-known dictionary lists fifteen main uses of at), and these may correspond to several different prepositions in another language. At the same time, different prepositions can have very similar uses (in the morning, on Monday morning, at night). Many nouns, verbs and adjectives are normally followed by particular prepositions: we say the reason for, depend on, angry with somebody. Often the correct preposition cannot be guessed, and one has to learn the expression as a whole. In some expressions English has no preposition where one may be used in another language; in other expressions the opposite is true.

word order
In English, prepositions can come at the ends of clauses in certain structures, especially in an informal style. For details, ► 209.

- ing forms
When we use verbs after prepositions, we use -ing forms, not infinitives. For details, ► 104, 211.

She keeps fit by going to the gym.

When to is a preposition, it is also followed by -ing forms. (► 104.2)

I look forward to seeing you soon.

prepositions before conjunctions
Prepositions are sometimes dropped before conjunctions and sometimes not. For details, ► 210.

I'm not certain (of) what I'm supposed to do.

The question (of) whether they should turn back was never discussed.

prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions
Words like on, off, up, down can function both as prepositions and as adverb particles. For the difference, ► 195. For verbs with prepositions and particles, ► 12–13.

She ran up the stairs. (preposition)

She picked it up. (adverb particle)

Some prepositions can also function as conjunctions: ► 249 (after), ► 250 (before) and ► 579 (since).
Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

X You bought it? What money with? ► 209.2
X I admired the patience she spoke with. ► 209.6
X Which period did it happen during? ► 209.6
X For whom is it, madam? ► 209.7
X To where shall I send it? ► 209.7
X In my family, about money was never spoken. ► 209.7
X I knew about that he had problems. ► 210.1
X The judge paid a lot of attention that the child was unhappy. ► 210.3
X He said the parents were responsible for that the child had run away. ► 210.3
X I’m worried where she is. ► 210.4
X I'm concerned about if you're ill. ► 210.4
X I don’t like the idea of to get married. ► 211
X Try to see it after my point of view. ► 212
X She looks much younger on this picture. ► 212
X I like walking under the rain. ► 212
X What time do we arrive to Cardiff? ► 213
X I’m not bad in tennis. ► 213
X She doesn’t want to depend of her parents. ► 213
X Who’s the woman dressed with green? ► 213
X We must discuss about your plans. ► 214.1
X See you on next Monday. ► 214.2

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

(This Section mostly contains information about the grammar of prepositions. Problems concerning particular prepositions and preposition contrasts (e.g. at, in and on, between and among, facing and opposite, above and over) are dealt with in Section 31. See the Index for their entry numbers.)

209 prepositions at the ends of clauses
210 prepositions before conjunctions
211 -ing forms and infinitives
212 prepositions before particular words and expressions
213 prepositions after particular words and expressions
214 expressions without prepositions
209 prepositions at the ends of clauses

1 introduction

A preposition often connects two things: (1) a noun, adjective or verb that comes before it, and (2) a prepositional object – a noun phrase or pronoun that comes after the preposition.

*This is a present for you.*  *He’s looking at her.*

*I’m really angry with Joe.*  *They live in a small village.*

In some structures we may put the prepositional object at or near the beginning of a clause. In this case, the preposition does not always go with it – it may stay together with ‘its’ noun, adjective or verb at the end of the clause. This happens especially in four cases:

- *wh*-questions: *Who’s the present for?*
- relative structures: *Joe’s the person that I’m angry with.*
- passives: *She likes to be looked at.*
- infinitive structures: *The village is pleasant to live in.*

2 *wh*-questions: *What are you looking at?*

When a question word is the object of a preposition, the preposition most often comes at the end of the clause, especially in informal usage.

*Who’s the present for?*  *(For whom is the present? is extremely formal.)*

*What are you looking at?*  *Who did you go with?*

*Where did she buy it from?*  *Which flight is the general travelling on?*

*What kind of films are you interested in?*

This also happens in indirect *wh*-questions, and in other *what*-clauses.

Tell me *what you’re worried about.*  *What a lot of trouble I’m in!*

Some questions consist simply of question word + preposition.

*What with?*  *Who for?*

However, this structure is unusual when there is a noun with the question word.

*With what money?*  *(Not *What money with?*)

3 relative clauses: *the house I told you about*

When a relative pronoun (∗233) is the object of a preposition, the preposition also often goes at the end of the clause, especially in informal usage.

*Joe’s the person that I’m angry with.*  *(Less formal than . . . with whom I am angry.)*

*This is the house (that) I told you about.*  *(Less formal than . . . about which I told you.)*

*You remember the boy (who) I was going out with?*

*She’s the only woman (who) I’ve ever really been in love with.*

*That’s what I’m afraid of*

Because *whom* is unusual in an informal style, it is very rare in clauses that end with prepositions (∗237.3).
4 **passives:** *She likes to be looked at.*

In passive structures (► Section 6), prepositions go with their verbs.

*She likes to be looked at.*
*I don’t know where he is – his bed hasn’t been slept in.*
*Kate was operated on last night.*

5 **infinitive structures:** *pleasant to live in*

Infinitive complements (► 101–102) can have prepositions with them.

*The village is pleasant to live in.*
*She needs other children to play with.*
*Can you get me a chair to stand on?*
*I’ve got lots of music to listen to.*
*Their house isn’t easy to get to.*

6 **exceptions:** *During which period . . . ?*

*During* and *since* are not normally put at the ends of clauses.

*During which period did it happen?* (NOT *Which period did it happen during?*)
*Since when have you been working for her?* (NOT *When have you been working for her since?*)

7 **formal structures:** *With whom . . . ?*

In a more formal style, a preposition is often put earlier in questions and relative structures, before the question word or relative pronoun.

*With whom did she go?*
*It was the house about which he had told them.*
*She was the only person with whom he could discuss his problems.*

This can also happen in infinitive complements, in a very formal style. A relative pronoun is used.

*She needs other children with whom to play.*
*It is a boring place in which to live.*

Note that after prepositions *which* and *whom* can be used, but not normally *who* and *that*.

Even in a very formal style, prepositions are not often put at the beginning of questions which have *be* as the main verb.

*Who is it for, madam?* (NOT *For whom is it?)

And the structures *where . . . to, what . . . like* and *what . . . for* have a fixed order.

*Where shall I send it to?* (BUT NOT *To where shall I send it?)
*What does she look like?* (BUT NOT *Like what does she look?*)
*What did you buy that for?* (BUT NOT *For what did you buy that?)

Prepositions cannot be moved away from passive verbs even in a formal style.

*In my family, money was never spoken about.* (NOT . . . about money was never spoken.)

For more information about formal and informal language, ► 281.

For sentences like *It’s got a hole in (it); I like cakes with cream on (them),* ► 275.13.
210 prepositions before conjunctions

Prepositions can be followed by conjunctions in some cases but not in others.

1 indirect speech: prepositions dropped before that
Prepositions are not used directly before the conjunction that. In indirect speech, after words that refer to saying, writing, thinking, etc, prepositions are usually dropped before that-clauses. Compare:

- I knew about his problems.
  I knew that he had problems. (NOT I knew about that he had problems.)
- She had no idea of my state of mind.
  She had no idea that I was unhappy. (NOT She had no idea of that I was unhappy.)
- I wasn’t aware of the time.
  I wasn’t aware that it was so late. (NOT I wasn’t aware of that it was so late.)

2 emotional reactions: prepositions dropped
Prepositions are also dropped before that after many common words that refer to emotional reactions. Compare:

- We are sorry about the delay.
  We are sorry that the train is late. (NOT . . . sorry about that the train is late.)
- I was surprised at her strength.
  I was surprised that she was so strong. (NOT . . . surprised at that she was . . .)

3 the fact that
In other cases (not involving indirect speech or words referring to emotional reactions) prepositions cannot so often be dropped before that-clauses. Instead, the expression the fact (► 264.3) is generally put between the preposition and that.

The judge paid a lot of attention to the fact that the child was unhappy at home. (NOT The judge paid a lot of attention (to) that the child . . .)
He said the parents were responsible for the fact that the child had run away.
  (NOT . . . responsible (for) that the child had run away.)

4 question words
After some very common words like tell, ask, depend, sure, idea, look, prepositions can be dropped before who, which, what, where, whether and other question words. This is especially common in indirect questions. Compare:

- Tell me about your trip.
  Tell me (about) where you went.
- I asked her about her religious beliefs.
  I asked her whether she believed in God. (More natural than I asked her about whether she believed in God.)
- We may be late – it depends on the traffic.
  We may be late – it depends (on) how much traffic there is.
- I’m not sure of his method.
  I’m not sure how he does it. (More natural than I’m not sure of how he does it.)
I've no idea of the owner.
I've no idea (of) who owns it.

Look at this.
Look (at) what I've got.

In other cases it is unusual or impossible to leave out the preposition.
I'm worried about where she is. (Not I'm worried where she is.)
The police questioned me about what I'd seen. (Not The police questioned me what I'd seen.)
There's the question of who's going to pay.
(More natural than . . . the question who's going to pay.)
People's chances of getting jobs vary according to whether they live in the North or the South. (Not . . . according whether . . .)
If does not normally follow prepositions; we use whether (► 261) instead.
I'm worried about whether you're happy. (Not I'm worried about if . . .)

For the structures (with and without prepositions) that are possible after a particular verb, noun or adjective, see a good dictionary.

211 -ing forms and infinitives

Prepositions are not normally used before infinitives in English. After verb/noun/adjective + preposition, we usually use the -ing form of a following verb.

He insisted on being paid at once. (Not He insisted on to be paid . . .)
I don't like the idea of getting married. (Not . . . the idea of to get married.)
I'm not very good at cooking. (Not . . . good at to cook.)

In some cases we drop the preposition and use an infinitive. Compare:

- He asked for a loan.
  He asked to borrow some money.
- She was surprised at his mistake.
  She was surprised to see what he had done.
- We're travelling for pleasure.
  We're travelling to enjoy ourselves.

Sometimes two structures are possible. There may be a difference of meaning (► 105 for some examples).

I'm interested in learning more about my family.
I was interested to learn that my grandfather was Jewish.

For details of the structures that are possible after a particular verb, noun or adjective, see a good dictionary.

212 prepositions before particular words and expressions

This is a list of a few expressions which often cause problems. For other preposition + noun combinations, see a good dictionary.

at the cinema (BrE); at the theatre; at a party; at university
What's on at the cinema this week?
a book (written) by Dickens; a concerto (composed) by Mozart; 
a film (directed) by Orson Welles (not of or from)

I've never read anything by Dickens.

by car/bike/bus/train/boat/plane/land/sea/air; on foot (but in the car, on a bus, etc)

Let's take our time and go by boat.

for . . . reason

My sister decided to go to America for several reasons.

from . . . point of view (not according to or after)

Try to see it from my point of view.

in . . . opinion (not according to or after)

In my opinion, she should have resigned earlier.

in the end (= finally, after a long time)

In the end, I got a visa for Russia.

at the end (= at the point where something stops)

I think the film's a bit weak at the end.

in pen, pencil, ink, etc

Please fill in the form in ink.

in a picture, photo, etc (not on)

She looks much younger in this photo.

in the rain, snow, etc

I like walking in the rain.

in a suit, raincoat, shirt, skirt, hat, etc

Who's the man in the funny hat over there?

in a . . . voice

Stop talking to me in that stupid voice.

on page 20, etc (not in/at)

There's a mistake on page 120.

on the radio; on TV; on the phone

Is there anything good on TV tonight?

It's Mrs Ellis on the phone: she says it's urgent.

on time (= at the planned time, neither late nor early)

Daniel wants the meeting to start exactly on time.

in time (= with enough time to spare, before the last moment)

He would have died if they hadn't got him to the hospital in time.

213 prepositions after particular words and expressions

It is not always easy to know which preposition to use after a particular noun, verb or adjective. Here are some of the most common combinations which cause difficulty to students of English. Alternatives are sometimes possible, and American and British usage sometimes differ. There is only room for very brief notes here; for more complete information about usage with a particular word, consult a good dictionary.
accuse somebody of something (not for)
  She accused me of poisoning her dog.

afraid of (not by)
  Are you afraid of spiders?

agree with a person, opinion or policy
  He left the company because he didn’t agree with their sales policy.
  I entirely agree with you.

agree about/on a subject of discussion
  We agree about/on most things.

agree on a matter for decision
  Let’s try to agree on a date.

agree to a suggestion or demand
  I’ll agree to your suggestion if you lower the price.

angry with (sometimes at) a person for doing something
  I’m angry with her for lying to me.

angry about (sometimes at) something
  What are you so angry about?

anxious about (= worried about)
  I’m getting anxious about money.

anxious for (= eager to have)
  We’re all anxious for an end to this misunderstanding.

anxious + infinitive (= eager, wanting)
  She’s anxious to find a better job.

apologise to somebody for something
  I think we should apologise to the Smiths.
  I must apologise for disturbing you.

arrive at or in (not to)
  What time do we arrive at Cardiff station?
  When did you arrive in England?

ask: ► 383.

bad at (not in)
  I’m not bad at tennis.

believe in God, Santa Claus, etc (= believe that . . . exists; trust)
  I half believe in life after death.
  If you believe in me, I can do anything.

BUT believe a person or something that is said (= accept as truthful/true — no preposition)
  Don’t believe her.
  I don’t believe a word she says.

belong in/on, etc (= go, fit, have its place in/on, etc)
  Those glasses belong on the top shelf.

belong to (= be a member of)
  I belong to a local athletics club.

blue with cold, red with anger, etc
  My hands were blue with cold when I got home

borrow: ► 408.

care: ► 419.

clever at (not in)
  I’m not very clever at cooking.
congratulate/congratulations on something
   I must congratulate you on your exam results.
   Congratulations on your new job!
congratulate/congratulations on/for doing something
   He congratulated the team on/for having won all their games.
crash into (not usually against)
   I wasn’t concentrating, and I crashed into the car in front.
depend/dependent on (not from or of)
   We may play football – it depends on the weather.
   He doesn’t want to be dependent on his parents.
   BUT independent of

details of
   Write now for details of our special offer.
die of/from
   More people died of flu in 1919 than were killed in the First World War.
   A week after the accident he died from his injuries.
different: ▶ 433.
difficulty with something, (in) doing something (not difficulties to...)
   I’m having difficulty with my travel arrangements.
   You won’t have much difficulty (in) getting to know people in Italy.
disappointed with/in somebody
   My father never showed if he was disappointed with/in me.
disappointed with/at/about something
   You must be pretty disappointed with/at/about your exam results.
discussion about something
   We had a long discussion about politics.
   BUT to discuss something (no preposition)
   We’d better discuss your travel plans.
divide into (not in)
   The book is divided into three parts.
dream of (= think of, imagine)
   I often dreamed of being famous when I was younger.
dream about/of (while asleep)
   What does it mean if you dream about/of mountains?
dress(ed) in (not with)
   Who’s the woman dressed in green?
drive into (not against)
   That idiot Kim drove into a tree again yesterday.

enter into an agreement, a discussion, etc
   We’ve just entered into an agreement with Carsons Ltd.
enter a place (no preposition)
   When I entered the room everybody stopped talking.
example of (not for)
   Sherry is an example of a fortified wine.
explain something to somebody (not explain somebody something)
   Could you explain this rule to me?
fight, struggle, etc with somebody
   I’ve spent the last two weeks fighting with the tax office.
fight, struggle, etc against something

As Schiller said, against stupidity even the gods fight in vain.

frightened of or by: ► 96.9.

going in(to) and out of a car, taxi or small boat

When I got into my car, I found the radio had been stolen.

going on(to) and off a train, plane, bus, ship, (motor)bike or horse

We’ll be getting off the train in ten minutes.

good at (not in)

Are you any good at tennis?

[the] idea of . . . ing (not the - idea - to . . .)

I don’t like the idea of getting married yet.

ill with

The boss has been ill with bronchitis this week.

impressed with/by

I’m very impressed with/by your work.

increase in activity, output, etc (not of)

I’d like to see a big increase in productivity.

independent, independence of or from

She got a job so that she could be independent of her parents.

When did India get its independence from Britain?

insist on (not to)

George’s father insisted on paying.

interest/interested in (not for)

When did your interest in social work begin?

Not many people are interested in grammar.

interested to do /in doing something: ► 105.16

kind to (not with)

People have always been very kind to me.

lack of

Lack of time prevented me from writing.

[to] be lacking in

She is lacking in tact.

but [to] lack (no preposition)

Your mother lacks tact.

laugh at

I hate being laughed at.

laugh about

We’ll laugh about this one day.

leave from somewhere (talking about the place)

Does the plane leave from Liverpool or Manchester?

leave somewhere (talking about the action of leaving)

I left London early, before the traffic got too heavy.

listen to

If you don’t listen to people, they won’t listen to you.

look at (= point one’s eyes at)

Stop looking at me like that.

look after (= take care of)

Thanks for looking after me when I was ill.
look for (= try to find)
  Can you help me look for my keys?

make, made of/from: ► 522.
marrige to; get/be married to (NOT with)
  Her marriage to Philip didn't last very long.
  How long have you been married to Hannah?
but marry somebody (no preposition)
  She married her childhood sweetheart.

near (to): ► 531.
nice to (NOT with)
  You weren't very nice to me last night.

operate on a patient
  They operated on her yesterday evening.

pay for something that is bought (NOT pay something)
  Excuse me, sir. You haven't paid for your drink.

pleased with somebody
  The boss is very pleased with you.

pleased with/about/at something
  I wasn't very pleased with/about/at my exam results.

polite to (NOT with)
  Try to be polite to Uncle Richard for once.

prevent . . . from . . . ing (NOT to)
  The noise from downstairs prevented me from sleeping.

proof of (NOT for)
  I want proof of your love. Lend me some money.

reason for (NOT of)
  Nobody knows the reason for the accident.

remind of (and ► 568)
  She reminds me of a girl I was at school with.

responsible/responsibility for (NOT of)
  Who's responsible for the shopping this week?

rude to (NOT with)
  Peggy was pretty rude to my family last weekend.

run into (= meet)
  I ran into Philip at Victoria Station this morning.

search for (= look for)
  The customs were searching for drugs at the airport.

search (without preposition) (= look through; look everywhere in/on)
  They searched everybody's luggage.
  They searched the man in front of me from head to foot.

shocked at/by
  I was terribly shocked at/by the news of Daniel's accident.

shout at (aggressive)
  If you don't stop shouting at me, I'll come and hit you.

shout to (= call to)
  Emily shouted to us to come in and swim.
smile at
If you smile at me like that, I’ll give you anything you want.
sorry about something that has happened (not the speaker’s fault)
I’m sorry about your exam results.
sorry for/about something that one has done (apologising)
I’m sorry for/about breaking your window.
sorry for a person (sympathy)
I feel really sorry for her children.
speak to; speak with (especially AmE)
Could I speak to/with your father for a moment?
suffer from
My wife is suffering from hepatitis.
surprised at/by
Everybody was surprised at/by the weather.
take part in (not at or of)
I don’t want to take part in any more conferences.
think of/about (not think to)
I’m thinking of studying medicine.
I’ve also thought about studying dentistry.
the thought of (not the thought to)
I hate the thought of going back to work.
throw . . . at (aggressive)
Stop throwing stones at the cars.
throw . . . to (in a game, etc)
If you get the ball, throw it to me.
translate into (not in)
Could you translate this into Greek for me?
trip over
He tripped over the cat and fell downstairs.
typical of (not for)
The wine’s typical of the region.
write: ► 8.
wrong with
What’s wrong with Rachel today?

For of after determiners like some, most, ► Section 13.

214 expressions without prepositions

This is a list of some common expressions in which we do not use prepositions, or can leave them out.

1 discuss, emphasise, enter, marry, lack, resemble and approach
These verbs are normally followed by direct objects without prepositions.
We must discuss your plans. (not . . . discuss about your plans.)
The Minister emphasised the need for secrecy. (not . . . emphasised on the need . . . )
Conversation stopped as we entered the church. (NOT ... entered into the church.)

She married a friend of her sister's. (NOT ... married with ...)

He's clever, but he lacks experience. (NOT ... lacks of ...)

The child does not resemble either of its parents. (NOT ... resemble to ...)

The train is now approaching Paddington. (NOT ... approaching to ...)

Note that the related nouns must have prepositions before complements:

- discussion of emphasis on entry into experience of resemblance to approach to marriage to

2 next, last, etc

Prepositions are not used before a number of common expressions of time beginning next, last, this, that (sometimes), one, every, each, some, any (in an informal style), all.

- See you next Monday. (NOT ... on next Monday.)
- The meeting's this Thursday. We met one Tuesday in August.
- I'll never forget meeting you that afternoon.
- Come any day you like. The party lasted all night.

Note also tomorrow morning, yesterday afternoon, etc.

3 days of the week

In an informal style, we sometimes leave out on before the names of the days of the week.

Why don't you come for a drink (on) Monday evening?

4 a meaning 'each'

No preposition is used in expressions like three times a day, sixty miles an hour, eighty pence a kilo.

Private lessons cost £20 an hour.

For per in expressions like these, ► 322.2.

5 What time ... ?, etc

We usually leave out at before what time.

What time does Granny's train arrive? (More natural than At what time ...) In an informal style, we can also leave out on before what/which day(s).

What day is your hair appointment?

Which day do you have your music lesson?

6 about

In an informal style, at is often dropped before about + time expression.

I'll see you (at) about three o'clock.

7 'how long'

In an informal style, for is often left out in expressions that say how long something lasts.

I've been here (for) three weeks now.

How long are you staying (for)?
8 measurement expressions, etc after be
Expressions containing words like height, weight, length, size, shape, age, colour are usually connected to the subject of the clause by the verb be, without a preposition.

- He is just the right height to be a police officer.
- She’s the same age as me. His head’s a funny shape.
- I’m the same weight as I was twenty years ago.
- What shoe size are you?
- What colour are her eyes? (not Of what colour . . . ?)

9 (in) this way, etc
We often leave out in (especially in informal speech) in expressions like (in) this way, (in) the same way, (in) another way, etc.

- They plant corn (in) the same way their ancestors used to 500 years ago.

10 home
We do not use to before home (► 489).

- I’m going home.

In informal English (especially American), at can be left out before home.

- Is anybody home?

11 place
In an informal style, to can be dropped in some expressions with the word place.

This is normal in American English.

- Let’s go (to) some place where it’s quiet.
- I always said you’d go places. (= become successful)

12 infinitive structures
Prepositions can sometimes be dropped in the structure noun + infinitive + preposition (► 102.5).

- She has no money to buy food (with).
- We have an hour to do it (in).

This is particularly common with the noun place.

- We need a place to live (in). She had no place to go (to).
Section 19 Basic Clause Types

INTRODUCTION

Simple (one-clause) sentences come in four main types from the point of view of structure:

- **declarative clauses**: typically used for making statements (positive or negative)
  
  *Your hair looks nice.* *The government haven't done it.*

- **interrogative clauses**: typically used for asking questions
  
  *Does my hair look OK?* *What haven't they done this time?*

- **imperative clauses**: typically used for giving instructions, making suggestions, etc
  
  *Try cutting it a bit shorter.* *Write to your MP about it.*

- **exclamatory clauses**: typically used (naturally) for exclaiming
  
  *What a good idea!* *How optimistic you are!*

Structure and meaning don't always go together.

*Your coat's on the floor.* (= 'Pick up your coat.' – declarative for instruction)

*What do you take me for?* (= 'I'm not stupid.' – interrogative for statement)

English has fairly fixed word order, especially in formal writing and speech. The main points are summarised in 215. Other entries in this Section deal separately with the structures used in questions, negatives, imperatives and exclamations. The grammar of more complex clauses and sentences is covered in Sections 20–24. Some structures typical of very formal usage (e.g. academic writing) are illustrated in 288; some structures mainly found in informal speech are discussed in 299.

English word order can cause problems for learners whose languages move grammatical elements around more freely. In many languages, sentences frequently start with the topic – what is being talked about – whether or not this is the grammatical subject. English, especially formal English, prefers to combine topic and grammatical subject in the same noun phrase, and to put this first in a declarative clause. Informal speech can separate topic and subject more easily, ► 299.
Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

- The train stopped not. ► 215.5
- I like very much mushrooms. ► 215.6
- When you are leaving? ► 216.1
- What means 'periphrastic'? ► 216.2
- What does the boss wants? ► 216.4
- Did you went climbing last weekend? ► 216.4
- When was made your reservation? ► 216.5
- So there are two models. Which does cost more? ► 216.6
- I like not this soup. ► 217.1
- I didn't thought it mattered. ► 217.1
- Expect not quick results. ► 217.2
- It's important to don't worry. ► 217.3
- Not George came, but his brother. ► 217.4
- 'Haven't you written to Emily?' 'Yes, I haven't.' ► 218.4
- I don't hope it rains tomorrow. ► 219.2
- I opened the door, but I couldn't see nobody. ► 220.1
- How it is cold! ► 223.1
- What nice dress! ► 223.2
- What a beautiful weather! ► 223.2
- What a beautiful smile has your sister! ► 223.3
- They're so kind people! ► 223.5
- Anybody don't say a word, OK? ► 224.5
- Remember always what I told you. ► 224.7

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

215 sentence structure: basic word order
216 questions: basic rules
217 negative structures: basic rules
218 negative questions
219 negative structures with think, hope, seem, etc
220 multiple negatives: I-couldn't see nobody.
221 ambiguous negatives
222 non-affirmative words: anybody, ever, yet, etc
223 exclamations
224 imperatives
225 let introducing imperatives
215 sentence structure: basic word order

1 subject – verb – object/complement

The basic word order of English clauses in positive statements is Subject – Verb – (Complement/Object).

Anna smiled. Sam is a doctor. My parents live in North Wales.

The boss has bought another new car.

In a few affirmative structures the verb can come before the subject (e.g. So can I, In came Mrs Parker, ► 270–271).

For sentences that begin with the object (e.g. Those people I can’t stand), ► 272.

In informal language, especially speech, word order often departs from the basic pattern, ► 299.

2 preparatory it and there

When the subject or object is an infinitive phrase or clause, we often put it at the end of a sentence, and use it as a preparatory subject or object (► 268–269).

It’s difficult to understand what he wants.

She made it clear that she disagreed.

There can be a preparatory subject for an indefinite expression (► 20).

There is a big spider in the bath.

3 direct and indirect objects

Indirect objects can come before direct objects (without a preposition) or after direct objects (with a preposition).

She sent the nurse some flowers. She sent some flowers to the nurse.

For details, ► 8.

4 questions: auxiliary before subject

Most written questions, and many spoken questions, have the order auxiliary verb – subject – main verb.

Have you seen Andrew? Where was she going? Did Emily phone?

Indirect questions (► 260) have the subject before the verb.

Do you know where she was going?

5 negatives: auxiliary + not

Negative structures have not after an auxiliary verb.

The train did not stop. (NOT The train stopped not.)

For word order in negative questions (e.g. Why didn’t she come? / Why did she not come?), ► 218.

6 adverbials: possible positions

Different adverbials can go in different places in a sentence: at the beginning, with the verb, or at the end. For details, ► 196–202.

Suddenly I had a terrible thought.

The children had probably gone home.

I was playing badly. I’ll see you at the club on Tuesday.

An adverbial cannot normally come between a verb and its object.

I like mushrooms very much. (NOT I like very much mushrooms.)
Basic Clause Types

Section 19

7 subordinate clauses (who . . ., after . . ., if . . ., because . . ., that . . ., etc)
Relative clauses usually follow the nouns that they modify (► 233).
The woman who phoned wanted to speak to the manager.
Other kinds of clause have various positions, depending on their function and
the overall sentence structure.
How you do it is your business.
Everybody agreed that they were wasting their time.
More than one position is often possible.
If you need help, call me. Call me if you need help.
For details, ► Sections 20–24.

8 prepositions: in what . . . / what . . . in
In an informal style, a preposition can be separated from its object in certain
structures. For details, ► 209. Compare:
In what hotel did the President stay? (formal)
What hotel did the President stay in? (informal)

For ways of arranging the information in a sentence, ► 267.
For word order in exclamations (e.g. How kind you are!), ► 223.
For word order with phrasal verbs (e.g. She put out the cat / She put the cat out), ► 124.
For structures like the older I get . . ., ► 206.5. For structures like cold as/though she was, ► 255.
For structures like so/how strange an experience,► 187. For the position and order of adjectives, ► 184.
For the position and order of determiners, ► Sections 12–13. For quite a . . . and rather a . . ., ► 564–565.
For word order with enough, ► 450.

216 questions: basic rules

These rules apply to most ordinary spoken and written questions. For
declarative questions (e.g. This is your car?), ► 302. For rhetorical questions
(e.g. What's the use of asking her?), ► 303. For echo questions (e.g. She's invited
how many?), ► 304. For reply questions (e.g. Did you, dear?), ► 307 For question
tags, ► 305–306.

1 auxiliary verb before subject: Have you . . .?
In a question, an auxiliary verb normally comes before the subject.
When is Oliver leaving? (NOT When Oliver is leaving?)
Have you received my email of June 17? (NOT You have received . . .?)
Why are you laughing? (NOT Why you are laughing?)
What are all those people looking at? (NOT What all those people are
looking at?)
How much does the room cost? (NOT How much the room costs?)
How much the room costs?)

2 do: Do you like . . .?
If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do, does or did to form a question.
Do you like Mozart? (NOT Like you Mozart?)
What does 'periphrastic' mean? (NOT What means 'periphrastic?)
Did you wash the car today?
3 do not used with other auxiliaries
   Do is not used together with other auxiliary verbs or with be.
   Can you tell me the time? (NOT Do you can tell me the time?)
   Have you seen Jack? (NOT Do you have seen Jack?)
   Are you ready?

4 infinitive after do: What does he want?
   After do, we use the infinitive (without to).
   What does the boss want? (NOT What does the boss wants?)
   Did you go climbing last weekend? (NOT Did you go to...? OR Did you to go...?)

5 only auxiliary verb before subject
   Only the auxiliary verb goes before the subject, not the whole of the verb phrase.
   Is your mother coming tomorrow? (NOT Is coming your mother tomorrow?)
   Is your daughter having a lesson today? (NOT Is having your daughter...?)
   When was your reservation made? (NOT When was made your reservation?)
   This happens even if the subject is very long.
   Where are the President and his family staying? (NOT Where are staying the
   President...?)

6 Who phoned? / Who did you phone?
   When who, which, what or whose is the subject (or part of the subject), do is not
   normally used. Compare:
   - Who phoned? (Who is the subject.)
   - Who did you phone? (Who is the object.)
   - What happened? (What is the subject.)
   - What did she say? (What is the object.)
   More examples:
   - Which costs more – the blue one or the grey one? (NOT Which does cost-
     more...?)
   - Which type of battery lasts longest? (NOT Which type of battery does last
     longest?)
   How many people work in your office? (NOT How many people do work...?)
   But do can be used after a subject question word for emphasis, to insist on an
   answer.
   - Well, tell us – what did happen when your father found you?
   - So who did marry the Princess in the end?
   For questions like Who do you wish that you’d married?, ► 264.

7 indirect questions: Tell me when you are leaving.
   In an indirect question, we do not put an auxiliary before the subject, and we do
   not use a question mark. For details, ► 260.
   Tell me what you want. (NOT Tell me what do you want?)
8 prepositions: What are you talking about?

Prepositions often come at the end of wh-questions, separated from their objects. (For details, ► 209.)

What are you talking about? (NOT About what are you talking?)
Who did you buy the ticket from? What did you clean the floor with?

For negative questions, ► 218. For ellipsis in questions (e.g. Seen Jack? Coming tonight?), ► 277.

217 negative structures: basic rules

1 negative verb forms: auxiliary + not

We make negative verb forms by putting not after an auxiliary verb.

We have not forgotten you. It was not raining. She can't swim.
Do is normally used if there is no other auxiliary verb.
I like the salad, but I don't like the soup. (NOT I like not the soup.)
Do is followed by the infinitive without to.
I didn't think. (NOT I didn't to think. OR I didn't thinking. OR I didn't thought.)
Do is not used with another auxiliary verb.
You mustn't worry. (NOT You don't must worry.)
Do is not normally used with be (even when be is not auxiliary).
The supper isn't ready. (NOT The supper doesn't be ready.)

For negative forms of have, dare, need and used, see the entries on these verbs.
For the dialect form ain't, ► 337.4.
For negatives without do in older English (e.g. I like him not), ► 318.10.
For negative subjunctives (e.g. It's important that he not be disturbed), ► 232.2.

2 imperatives: Don't worry.

Negative imperatives are made with do not / don't + infinitive (► 224).

Do not expect quick results. (NOT Expect not...)
Don't worry – I'll look after you. (NOT Worry not...)
Do not / don't is also used to make the negative imperative of be.
Don't be rude.

3 infinitives and -ing forms: It's important not to worry.

We put not before infinitives and -ing forms. Do is not used.
It's important not to worry. (NOT... to don't worry.)
The best thing about the weekend is not working.

4 other parts of a clause: not his wife, not before six

We can put not with other parts of a clause, not only a verb.
Ask Jake, not his wife. Come early, but not before six.
It's working, but not well.
We do not usually begin a sentence with not + subject. Instead, we use a structure with it (‘cleft sentence’, ► 273).
It was not George that came, but his brother. (NOT Not George came...)

For the difference between not and no with nouns, ► 536.
Other negative words: *never, seldom, etc*

Other words besides *not* can make a clause negative. Compare:

- He’s *not* at home. He’s *never* at home.
- He’s *seldom* / *rarely* / *hardly ever* at home.

We do not normally use the auxiliary *do* with these other words. Compare:

- He *doesn’t* work.
- He never *works*. (Not *He does never work.*)
- He seldom / rarely / hardly ever *works.* They *refuse* to listen to reason.
- The soup lacks salt. We’re *unhappy* about your decision.

However, *do* can be used for emphasis or contrast.

*I never did like her.*

**Question tags:** *You don’t . . . , do you?*

After negative clauses, question tags (► 305–306) are not negative.

- You *don’t* work on Sundays, *do you?*
- You seldom work on Saturdays, *do you?* (Not *You seldom work on Saturdays; don’t you?*)

She never smiled, *did she?*

The same thing happens after clauses with *little* and *few* (► 168).

- There’s *little* point in doing anything about it, *is there?* (Not . . . *isn’t there?*)
- He has few reasons for staying, *has he?*

**‘Non-affirmative’ words:** *any, etc*

We do not usually use *some, somebody, etc* in negative clauses. Instead, we use the ‘non-affirmative’ words *any, anybody, etc* (► 222). Compare:

*I’ve found some mushrooms. I haven’t found *any* mushrooms.*

**218 Negative questions**

**1 Structure:** *Doesn’t she understand? / Does she not understand?*

Contracted and uncontracted negative questions have different word order. (Uncontracted negative questions are usually formal.)

 auxiliary verb + *n’t + subject . . .

- Doesn’t she understand? Why haven’t you reserved your flight yet?

 auxiliary verb + subject + *not . . .

- Does she not understand? Why have you not reserved the flight yet?

Non-auxiliary *have* (in British English) and *be* go in the same position as auxiliary verbs.

- Hasn’t she any friends to help her? Aren’t you ready?
- Have they not at least a room to stay in? Is Mrs Allen not at home?
2 two meanings

Negative questions can have two different kinds of meaning. It is usually clear from the situation and context which kind of question is being asked.

a ‘It's true that . . ., isn't it?’

A negative question can ask for confirmation of a positive belief. In this case the question expects the answer Yes, and means ‘It’s true that . . ., isn’t it?’

Didn’t you go and see Ella yesterday? How is she? (= I believe you went and saw Ella yesterday . . .)

Expressions of opinion and suggestions can be made less definite by expressing them as negative questions (so that they ask for agreement).

Wouldn’t it be better to switch the lights on?

Negative questions of this kind are common in exclamations (► 223) and rhetorical questions (► 303).

Isn’t it a lovely day!

‘She’s growing up to be a lovely person.’ ‘Yes, isn’t she?’

Isn’t the answer obvious? (= Of course the answer is obvious.)

b ‘Is it true that . . . not . . .?’

A negative question can also ask for confirmation of a negative belief. In this case the question expects the answer No, and means ‘Is it true that . . . not . . .?’

Don’t you feel well? (= Am I right in thinking you don’t feel well?)

Oh, dear. Can’t they come this evening?

This kind of negative question can show that the speaker is surprised that something has not happened or is not happening.

Hasn’t the mail come yet?

Didn’t the alarm go off? I wonder what’s wrong with it.

3 polite requests, invitations, offers, complaints and criticisms

Pressing invitations and offers often begin Won’t you . . .?, Wouldn’t you . . .? or Why don’t you . . .?

Won’t you come in for a few minutes?

Wouldn’t you like something to drink?

Why don’t you come and spend the weekend with us?

Why don’t you . . .? can also introduce aggressive suggestions.

Why don’t you shut up?

But in other cases we do not usually use negative questions to ask people to do things. This is done with ordinary questions, or with negative statement + question tag (especially British English).

Excuse me, can you help me for a moment? (ordinary question, used as a request)

You can’t help me for a moment, can you? (negative statement + question tag, common in informal requests)

But not Can’t you help me for a moment?

Negative questions may be understood as complaints or criticisms.

Can’t you lend me your pen for a minute? (= something like ‘Are you too selfish to lend me . . .?’)

Don’t you ever listen to what I say?
4 yes and no
In a reply to a negative question, Yes suggests an affirmative verb, and No suggests a negative verb. Compare:
- 'Haven't you written to Emily?' 'Yes.' (= I have written to her.)
- 'Haven't you told her about us?' 'No.' (= I haven't told her about us.)
- 'Didn't Dan call this morning?' 'Yes, he did.'
- 'Didn't he give you a message for me?' 'No, he didn't.'

219 negative structures with think, hope, seem, etc

1 I don't think...
When we introduce negative ideas with think, believe, suppose, imagine and words with similar meanings, we usually make the first verb (think, etc) negative, not the second.
I don't think you've met my wife. (More natural than I think you haven't met my wife.)
I don't believe she's at home. (More natural than I believe she isn't at home.)
However, surprise is often expressed with I thought + negative.
'Would you like a drink?' I thought you'd never ask.'
Hello! I thought you weren't coming.

2 I hope that... not...
This does not happen with hope.
I hope it doesn't rain. (NOT I don't hope it rains.)

3 short answers: I suppose not.
In short answers, most of these verbs can be followed by not (► 585).
'Are we going to see Luke again?' I believe/suppose/hope not.'
Another possible short answer construction is I don't... so (► 585).
'Do you think it'll snow?' I don't believe/suppose/think so.'
Hope is not used in this structure.
I hope not. (NOT I don't hope so.)
I don't think so is more common than I think not, which is rather formal.

4 verbs followed by infinitives
Many verbs can be followed by infinitives (► 97). In an informal style we often prefer to make the first verb negative rather than the infinitive, although this may not change the meaning at all. This happens, for example, with appear, seem, expect, happen, intend and want.
Sibyl doesn't seem to like you. (Less formal than Sibyl seems not to like you.)
I don't expect to see you before Monday. (More natural than I expect not to see you...)
Angela and I were at the same university, but we never happened to meet.
(Less formal than... we happened never to meet.)
I don't want to fail this exam. (NOT I want not to fail...)
I never want to see you again. (More natural than I want never to see you again.)
220 multiple negatives: I couldn’t see nobody.

1 English and other languages

In some languages, a negative idea is expressed both by the verb and by accompanying pronouns or adverbs. In standard English, one negative word is normally enough.

*I opened the door, but I couldn’t see anybody / I could see nobody.*

(*NOT... but I couldn’t see nobody.*)

Tell them nothing. (*NOT Don’t tell them nothing.*)

Your suggestion will help neither of us. (*NOT... won’t help neither...*)

Nothing matters now – everything’s finished. (*NOT Nothing doesn’t matter...*)

I’ve never understood what she wants. (*NOT I haven’t never understood...*)

2 nobody and not anybody, etc

Nobody, nothing, never, etc are rather emphatic. We often prefer to use *not anybody, not anything, not ever, etc.* Note that *anybody, anything, ever, etc* are not themselves negative words (► 222) – they have to be used with *not* to give a negative meaning.

*I opened the door, but I couldn’t see anybody.* (*NOT... but I could see anybody.*)

Don’t tell them anything. Your suggestion won’t help either of us.

At the beginning of a clause, only nobody, nothing, etc are used.

Nothing matters. (*NOT Not anything matters.*) Nowhere is safe.

3 double and multiple negatives and their meaning

Two or more negative words can be used in one clause, but then both words normally have their full meaning. Compare:

Say nothing. (= Be silent.)

Don’t just say nothing. Tell us what the problem is. (= Don’t be silent...)

Multiple negatives are sometimes used instead of simple positive structures for special stylistic effects. This is rather literary; in spoken English it can seem unnatural or old-fashioned.

Not a day passes when I don’t regret not having studied music in my youth.

(*More natural: Every day I regret not having studied music when I was younger, or I wish I had studied music when I was younger.*)
4 dialects

In many British, American and other dialects, two or more negatives can be used with a single negative meaning.

*I ain’t seen nobody.* (Standard English: *I haven’t seen anybody.*)

*I ain’t never done nothing to nobody, and I ain’t never got nothing from nobody no time.* (American song by Bert Williams)

For more information about *ain’t*, ➤ 337.4.

5 ... *I don’t think*, etc

In informal speech, expressions like *I don’t think* or *I don’t suppose* are often added after negative statements. In this case, the extra negative makes no difference to the meaning of the statement.

*She hasn’t got much chance of passing the exam, I don’t think.*

*We won’t be back before midnight, I don’t suppose.*

6 extra negative in expressions of doubt

In informal speech, a negative verb (without a negative meaning) is sometimes used after expressions of doubt or uncertainty.

*I shouldn’t be surprised if they didn’t get married soon.* (= . . . if they got married soon.)

*I wonder whether I oughtn’t to go and see a doctor — I’m feeling a bit funny.*

(= . . . whether I ought to . . .)

221 ambiguous negatives

In a negative structure, *not* can refer to different parts of a sentence. Compare:

*Adam didn’t write to Emma yesterday — he phoned her.*

*Adam didn’t write to Emma yesterday — he wrote to Anna.*

*Adam didn’t write to Emma yesterday — he wrote this morning.*

The exact meaning is shown in speech by stress and intonation, and even in writing it is usually clear from the context and situation. However, confusions sometimes arise. They can usually be avoided by reorganising the sentence. Compare:

*The car crash didn’t kill him.* (Did he live, or did something else kill him?)

*It wasn’t the car crash that killed him.* (Only one possible meaning.)

Negative sentences with *because*-clauses are often ambiguous.

*I didn’t sing because Amy was there.*

This sentence could mean ‘My reason for not singing was that Amy was there’ or ‘My reason for singing was not that Amy was there’. The first meaning could be shown clearly by putting the *because*-clause at the beginning.

*Because Amy was there, I didn’t sing.*
There are some words that are not often used in affirmative sentences – for example any, anybody, ever, yet. When we affirm or assert (that is, when we say that something is true) we normally use other words – for example some, somebody, once, sometimes, already. Compare:

- Somebody telephoned.
  Did anybody telephone?
- I’ve bought you something.
  I haven’t bought you anything.
- She’s already here.
  Is she here yet?
- I sometimes go to the theatre.
  Do you ever go to the theatre?
- I met the Prime Minister once.
  Have you ever met the Prime Minister?

Non-affirmative words are common not only in questions and negative sentences, but in other cases where we are not making affirmative statements – for example in if-clauses, after comparisons, and together with adverbs, verbs, prepositions, adjectives and determiners that have a negative kind of meaning:

Let me know if you have any trouble.
I wonder if she found anything.
She writes better than anybody I know.
He seldom says anything.
I’ve hardly been anywhere since Christmas.
He denied that he had ever seen her.
Please forget that I ever told you anything about it.
I’d rather do it without anybody’s help.
It’s difficult to understand anything he says.
Few people have ever seen her laugh.

For information about particular non-affirmative words, check in the index to find the entries for the words in question.
Exclamations are often constructed with *how* and *what* or with *so* and *such*; negative question forms are also common.

1 **exclamations with how**
These are often felt to be a little formal or old-fashioned.

- **how + adjective**
  
  Strawberries! How nice!

- **how + adjective/adverb + subject + verb**
  
  How cold it is! (not How it is cold!)
  How beautifully you sing! (not How you sing beautifully!)

- **how + subject + verb**
  
  How you've grown!

For the structure of expressions like How strange a remark, ► 187.

2 **exclamations with what**

- **what a/an (+ adjective) + singular countable noun**
  
  What a rude man! (not What rude-man!)
  What a nice dress! (not What nice dress!)
  What a surprise!

- **what (+ adjective) + uncountable/plural noun**
  
  What beautiful weather! (not What-a beautiful-weather!)
  What lovely flowers! What fools!

- **what + object + subject + verb (note word order)**
  
  What a beautiful smile your sister has! (not . . . has your sister!)

3 **exclamations with so and such**

- **so + adjective**
  
  You're so kind!

- **such a/an (+ adjective) + singular countable noun**
  
  He's such a nice boy! (not . . . a such nice boy!)
**Basic Clause Types**

Section 19

> *such* (+ adjective) + uncountable/plural noun

*They talk such rubbish!* (not...such a rubbish!)
*They’re such kind people!* (not...so kind people!)

For more information about *such* and *so*, ► 597.

4 **negative question forms**

*Isn’t the weather nice!*   *Hasn’t she grown!*

Americans and some British speakers may use ordinary (non-negative) question forms in exclamations.

*Boy, am I hungry!*   *Wow, did she make a mistake!*   *Was I furious!*

For more information about negative questions, ► 218.

---

**224 imperatives**

1 **forms and use**

In sentences like *Come here, Be quiet, Have a drink* or *Don’t worry about it*, the verb forms *come, be, have* and *don’t worry* are called ‘imperatives’. Affirmative imperatives have the same form as the infinitive without *to*; negative imperatives are constructed with *do not* (*don’t*).

Imperatives are used, for example, to tell or ask people to do things, to make suggestions, to give advice or instructions, to encourage and offer, and to express wishes for people’s welfare.

*Look in the mirror before you drive off.*
*Please do not lean out of the window.*
*Tell him you’re not free this evening.*

*Try again — you nearly did it.*   *Have some more tea.*   *Enjoy your break.*

An imperative followed by *and* or *or* can mean the same as an *if*-clause.

*Walk down our street any day and you’ll see kids playing.* (= If you walk . . .)
*Shut up or I’ll lose my temper.* (= If you don’t shut up . . .)
*Don’t do that again or you’ll be in trouble.*

2 **emphatic imperative**: *Do sit down.*

We can make an emphatic imperative with *do* (mainly BrE).

*Do sit down.*   *Do be more careful.*   *Do forgive me.*

3 **passive imperative**: *Get vaccinated.*

To tell people to arrange for things to be done to them, we often use *get* + *past participle*.

*Get vaccinated* as soon as you can.

For more about *get* as passive auxiliary, ► 60.

4 **do(n’t) be**

Although *do* is not normally used as an auxiliary with *be* (► 19), this happens in negative imperatives.

*Don’t be silly!*

*Do be* can begin emphatic imperatives.

*Do be quiet!*
subject with imperative: Somebody answer the phone.

The imperative does not usually have a subject, but we can use a noun or pronoun to make it clear who we are speaking to.

Emily come here – everybody else stay where you are.

Somebody answer the phone. Relax, everybody.

You before an imperative can suggest emphatic persuasion or anger.

You just sit down and relax for a bit.

You take your hands off me!

Note the word order in negative imperatives with pronoun subjects.

Don’t you believe it. (not You don’t believe it.)

Don’t anybody say a word. (not Anybody don’t say . . .)

6 question tags

After imperatives, common question tags (► 305–306) are will you?, would you?, can you? and could you?

Give me a hand, will you? Wait here for a minute, would you?

Get me something to drink, can you?

Can’t you and won’t you are more emphatic.

Be quiet, can’t you? Sit down, won’t you?

After negative imperatives, will you? is used.

Don’t tell anybody, will you?

word order with always and never

Always and never come before imperatives.

Always remember what I told you. (not Remember always . . .)

Never speak to me like that again.

225 let introducing imperatives

English verbs do not have a first-person imperative (used to suggest that I or we should do something), or a third-person imperative (for other people besides the hearer). However, let can be used to construct a type of imperative.

1 first person plural imperative: let’s . . .

We can use let us (formal) or let’s (informal) to make suggestions or to give orders to a group that includes the speaker.

Let us pray. Let’s have a drink. OK, let’s all get moving.

Shall we? is used as a question tag (► 305–306) in British English for Let’s; let’s can be used as a short answer.

‘Let’s go for a walk, shall we?’ ‘Yes, let’s.’

Negatives are let us not / do not let us (formal); let’s not / don’t let’s (informal).

Let us not despair. (formal)

Do not let us forget those who came before us. (formal)

Let’s not get angry. (informal)

Don’t let’s stay up too late tonight. (informal)
Basic Clause Types

2 **first person singular imperative:** *let me . . .*

Let me is used to 'give instructions to oneself'; the expressions *Let me see* and *Let me think* are very common.

'What time shall we leave?' *Let me think.* Yes, eight o’clock will be OK.

What’s the best way to Manchester? *Let me see* – suppose I take the M6.

*Let me just get my coat and I’ll be with you.*

In a very informal style, *let’s* is often used to mean *let me* (also ► 174.6).

*Let’s see.* Suppose I take the M6 . . .

3 **third-person imperative:** *let him . . .*

*Let* can also introduce a suggestion or order for someone or something else, not the speaker or hearer. This is common in formal and ceremonial language, but informal uses are also possible.

*Let the prayers begin.*

*Let our enemies understand that we will not hesitate to defend our territory.*

'Your boyfriend’s going out with another girl.' *Let him.* I don’t care.'

Note the structure with *let* + the infinitive of *there is*.

*Let there be no doubt in your minds about our intentions.*
Section 20 Conjunctions, Sentences and Clauses

INTRODUCTION

A sentence can have more than one clause, usually joined by a conjunction which shows the relationship between them.

We brought the food **and** they supplied the drink. (addition)
She was poor **but** she was happy. (contrast)
We can go swimming, **or** we could stay here. (alternative)
People disliked her **because** she was so rude. (cause)
I’ll phone you **when** I arrive. (time)

**subordinate clauses**

One clause can be **subordinate** to another. A subordinate clause with its conjunction is a part of the other (main) clause – for example an object or an adverbial. For practical purposes, subordinate clauses can be divided into three main groups: noun clauses, adverbial clauses and adjective (relative) clauses. Noun clauses function rather like noun phrases:

*I told them** a lie.**
*that I knew nothing about it.*

Adverbial clauses function rather like adverbials:

*We drove home** at high speed.*
*as fast as we could.*

Relative clauses function rather like adjectives in noun phrases:

*She told me** a funny story.**
*a story that made me laugh out loud.*

Examples of subordinating conjunctions: **when**, **after**, **how**, **that**.
Some conjunctions are made up of two or more words, for example **as soon as**, in case.

**co-ordinate clauses**

Co-ordinate clauses have equal weight: neither is subordinate to the other.

*Dan cooked supper and Joe washed the dishes.*
*The forecast was impressive but the results were disappointing.*

Examples of co-ordinating conjunctions: **and**, **but**, **either . . . or**.
no conjunction
Participles and infinitives can begin clauses (► Section 10). These are normally connected to other clauses with no conjunction.

I rushed out of the house, slamming the door behind me.
He went up to his room, to find a dog asleep on his bed.

This Section covers co-ordination (of phrases as well as clauses), and some general points to do with subordination. Particular types of subordinate clause are dealt with in Sections 22–25.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

X Could I have some butter and bread? ► 226.2
X He doesn’t smoke and drink. ► 226.4
X He doesn’t smoke nor drink. ► 227.1
X The project was not successful in political terms and in economic terms. ► 227.1
X Jack isn’t here neither. ► 227.2
X Both he can borrow the flat and he can use the car. ► 228.1
X Neither he smiled nor he spoke. ► 228.3
X She was depressed because didn’t know what to do. ► 229.3
X Although she was tired but she went to work. ► 229.5
X As you know, that I work very hard. ► 229.5
X You’ll find Coca-Cola wherever you will go. ► 231.1
X If I had lots of money, I would give some to anybody who would ask for it. ► 231.6

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

226 putting things together: and, but, or
227 not . . . or; not . . . nor; and not
228 emphatic coordination: both . . . and; (n)either . . . (n)or; not only
229 subordinate clauses: some general points
230 who, which, what, etc after prepositions
231 tense simplification in subordinate clauses
232 subjunctive: that she go, that they be, if I were, etc
226 putting things together: and, but, or

1 and

And can join two or more grammatically similar expressions, from single words up to complete clauses.

- bread and cheese
- the Prime Minister and his cabinet
- You need to go home and have a good rest.
- Her English is good and her Japanese is not bad.

With more than two expressions, we generally only put and before the last.

- We drank, talked and danced.
- He started as a cleaner, he worked his way up, and now he runs the company.

And is sometimes left out in a very literary or poetic style, but this is unusual.

- My dreams are full of darkness, despair, death.

In expressions joined by and, repeated words are often left out.

- We need a saw, (a) hammer and (a) screwdriver.
- She’s worked in China, (in) Thailand and (in) Brazil.

For details, ► 276.

For and with adjectives, ► 185. For rules about the use of commas, ► 296.
For singular and plural verbs after subjects with and, ► 129.5.
For and after try, wait, go, come, etc, ► 99.

2 fixed expressions: bread and butter, hands and knees

Some common expressions with and have a fixed order which cannot be changed. The shortest expression often comes first.

- bread and butter (not butter and bread)
- hands and knees (not knees and hands)
- young and pretty
- thunder and lightning
- knife and fork
- black and white
- cup and saucer

3 but

But can also join grammatically similar expressions.

- They were poor but happy.
- There were some chairs but no tables.

Most often, but joins clauses.

- We wanted to stay but we simply didn’t have time.
- The film started well, but then it went downhill.

For but meaning 'except', ► 413.

4 or

Or also joins grammatically similar expressions.

- Would you like tea or coffee? We can meet today or wait until Thursday.

After a negative verb, we use or, not and.

- He doesn’t smoke or drink. (not He doesn’t smoke and drink.)

But or does not join negative adjectives or adverbs. Compare:

- We were not comfortable or happy.
- We were uncomfortable and unhappy. (not . . . uncomfortable or unhappy.)
Conjunctions, Sentences and Clauses

227 not . . . or; not . . . nor; and not

1 not used once for two negative ideas
When not (used once) refers to two or more verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc, we usually join them with or.

*He doesn’t smoke or drink.* (not *He doesn’t smoke nor drink.*)

*She wasn’t angry or upset.*  *It’s not on the table or in the cupboard.*

However, we can use nor after a pause, to separate and emphasise a second verb, adjective, etc.

*Our main need is not food, nor money. It is education.*

*She didn’t phone that day, nor the next day.*

Note that neither cannot be used in this way.

*And cannot normally be used in this kind of structure.*

*The project was not successful in economic terms or in political terms.* (not *The project was not successful in political terms and in economical terms.*)

This also happens after negative nouns or adjectives.

*The country suffered from a lack of employment legislation or of an independent labour union.* (More normal than a lack of . . . and . . .)

For the use of neither . . . nor to join two negative ideas (e.g. *He neither smokes nor drinks*), ➔ 228.3.

2 two separate negative clauses: not either
After using a negative verb in one clause, we can mention a second negative idea or fact in another clause with not . . . either.

*D Daniel isn’t here today. Jack isn’t here either.* (not *Jack isn’t here neither.*)

Another way of expressing this is with neither/nor + be/auxiliary + subject.

*D Daniel isn’t here today. Neither is Jack.*

*I can’t sing, and nor can any of my family.*

For details of this and similar structures, ➔ 309.2.

*Also, as well and too are not normally used with not in this way.*

*You can’t have an apple, and you can’t have an orange either.* (not . . . and you can’t have an orange also / as well / too.)

3 positive + negative: also / as well / too
After mentioning a positive (non-negative) fact or idea, we can add a negative point by using not . . . also, not . . . as well or not . . . too.

*You can’t have an apple, but you can’t have an orange too.*

*He drinks too much, but at least he doesn’t smoke as well.*

228 emphatic coordination: both . . . and; (n)either . . . (n)or; not only

We may want to emphasise that both (or all) parts of a coordination have equal weight. There are several common ways of doing this.

1 both . . . and
We often balance this structure, so that the same kind of words or expressions follow both and and.

grammar • 228 emphatic coordination: both . . . and; (n)either . . . (n)or; not only
She's both pretty and clever. (adjectives)
I spoke to both the Director and her secretary. (nouns)
She both dances and sings. (verbs)

However, unbalanced sentences with both . . . and are common. Some people prefer to avoid them.

She both dances and she sings. (both + verb; and + clause)
I both play the piano and the violin.

Both cannot begin a complete clause in this structure.
He can both borrow the house and (he can) use the car. (but not Both he can borrow the house and he can use the car.)

2 either . . . or

We use either . . . or to talk about a choice between two or more possibilities.
I don't speak either Russian or Polish.
You can either come with me now or walk home.
If you want ice cream there's either raspberry, lemon or vanilla.

We often balance this structure, so that the same kind of words or expressions follow either and or.
You can have either tea or coffee. (nouns)
He's either in London or in New York. (prepositional phrases)
Either you'll leave this house or I'll call the police. (clauses)

However, unbalanced sentences with either . . . or are common.
You can either have tea or coffee. He's either in London or New York.
You'll either leave this house or I'll call the police.

There is a prescriptive 'rule', found in some books, which says that either should not introduce more than two alternatives (as in either raspberry, lemon or vanilla). This rule is mistaken: it does not correspond to normal usage.

For either as a determiner, ► 156. For pronunciation, ► 156.6.

3 neither . . . nor

This structure is the opposite of both . . . and. It is usually rather formal.
I neither smoke nor drink. (less formal: I don't smoke or drink.)
The film was neither well made nor well acted.

Sometimes more than two ideas are connected by neither . . . nor.
He neither smiled, spoke, nor looked at me.
Neither cannot begin a complete clause in this structure.

He neither smiled . . . nor . . . (but not Neither he smiled . . .)

When singular subjects are connected by neither . . . nor, the verb is normally singular, but it can be plural in a less formal style.
Neither James nor Virginia was at home. (normal)
Neither James nor Virginia were at home. (less formal)

As with either . . . or, there is a prescriptive 'rule', found in some books, which says that neither should not introduce more than two alternatives (as in He neither smiled, spoke nor looked at me). This rule is mistaken.

4 not only . . . but also

In the rather formal structure not only . . . but also, the expressions not only and but also can go immediately before the words or expressions that they modify.

We go there not only in winter, but also in summer.
Conjunctions, Sentences and Clauses

Not only the bathroom was flooded, but also the rest of the house. The place was not only cold, but also damp.

Mid-position with the verb (► 200) is also possible.

She not only sings like an angel, but also dances divinely.

She not only plays the piano, but also the violin.

Not only can be moved to the beginning of a clause for emphasis. It is then followed by auxiliary verb + subject; do is used if there is no other auxiliary (for more about this word order, ► 270). But can be left out in this case.

Not only has she been late three times; she has also done no work.

Not only do they need clothing, but they are also short of water.

In informal English not only . . . but also is not very common; other structures are generally preferred.

We don’t only go there in winter. We go in summer too.

229 subordinate clauses: some general points

In most languages of European origin, clauses are joined together by conjunctions in similar ways. However, students who speak other languages may have some problems in using English conjunctions correctly.

1 position of subordinate clauses

Adverbial clauses can usually go either first or last in a sentence, depending on the focus. Putting a clause at the end can give it more importance.

- While I was taking a shower, I slipped. (emphasises what happened)
  I slipped while I was taking a shower. (emphasises when it happened)
- If you need help, just let me know.
  Just let me know if you need help.
- Although the bicycle was expensive, she decided to buy it.
  She decided to buy the bicycle although it was expensive.
- Because she was too angry to speak, Anna said nothing.
  Anna said nothing because she was too angry to speak.

For the position of other kinds of clause, ► Sections 22-25.

2 punctuation

Commas are often used to separate longer or more complicated clauses. Shorter pairs of clauses are often connected without commas. Compare:

They changed all their policies after they had won the election.
They made a large number of disturbing changes in their policies, after they had won the election and settled in with a comfortable majority.

When a subordinate clause begins a sentence, it is more often separated by a comma unless the sentence is very short.

When we opened the door, we saw water running down the stairs.
When we opened the door(,) we got a shock.

For punctuation in relative clauses, ► 234.
3 leaving words out

Words for repeated ideas can often be left out in the second of two co-ordinate clauses (► 276 for details), but not normally in a subordinate clause. Compare:

She was depressed and didn’t know what to do. (= and she didn’t know what to do.)

She was depressed, because she didn’t know what to do. (NOT She was depressed, because didn’t know . . .)

However, after if, when, while, until, once, unless and (al)though, a pronoun subject and the verb be can often be dropped, especially in common fixed expressions like if necessary.

I’ll pay for you if necessary. (= . . . if it is necessary.)
If in doubt, wait and see. (= If you are in doubt . . .)
When in Rome, do as the Romans do. Cook slowly until ready.

Once in bed, I read for twenty minutes and then turned out the light.

Many conjunctions that express time relations (after, before, since, when, while, whenever, once and until) can often be followed by -ing forms or past participles instead of subjects and full verbs (► 115.6).

I always feel better after talking to you.

Some things are never forgotten, once learnt.

4 conjunctions in separate sentences

Normally a conjunction connects two clauses into one sentence. However, sometimes a conjunction and its clause can stand alone. This happens, for example, in answers.

‘When are you going to get up?’ ‘When I’m ready.’

‘Why did you do that?’ ‘Because I felt like it.’

Writers and speakers can also separate clauses for emphasis.

This government has got to go. Before it does any more damage.

Schoolchildren are sometimes told that it is wrong to write a one-clause sentence beginning with a conjunction in this way. In fact, the structure is perfectly correct when used appropriately.

Afterthoughts may also begin with conjunctions.

OK, I did it. – But I didn’t mean to.

5 one conjunction for two clauses

One conjunction is enough to join two clauses – we do not normally use two.

– Although she was tired, she went to work.

She was tired but she went to work.

(NOT Although she was tired but she went to work.)

– Because I liked him, I tried to help him.

I liked him, so I tried to help him.

(NOT Because I liked him, so I tried to help him.)

– As you know, I work very hard.

You know that I work very hard.

(NOT As you know, that I work very hard.)

However, we can use and or or together with a repeated conjunction.

We came back because we ran out of money, and because Anna got ill.

She didn’t write when I was ill, or when I got married.
Conjunctions, Sentences and Clauses

6 relative pronouns

Relative pronouns (who, which and that) also join clauses.

There's the girl who works with my sister.

A relative pronoun is the subject or object of the verb that comes after it. So we do not need another subject or object.

I've got a friend who works in a pub. (not . . . who he works in a pub.)

The man (that) she married was an old friend of mine. (not . . . The man that she married him . . .)

She always thanks me for the money that I give her. (not . . . the money that I give her it.)

230 who, which, what, etc after prepositions

Interrogative conjunctions like who, which, what, where, whether can follow prepositions.

We discussed the question of who to appoint as manager.

I may be able to come: it depends on which day you are holding the meeting.

They were not at all interested in what I thought.

After common words like tell, ask, idea, prepositions are often dropped before these conjunctions.

Tell me about your trip. BUT Tell me where you went.

Do you have any idea of the cost? BUT Do you have any idea what it costs?

Prepositions are not normally used before other conjunctions such as that.

Either they are dropped:

I knew about his problems. BUT I knew that he had problems. (not I knew about that he had problems.)

or the expression the fact is put between the preposition and that.

I was not responsible for the fact that the documents were stolen. (not I was not responsible for that the documents were stolen.)

For more details, ► 210.

231 tense simplification in subordinate clauses

1 reasons for tense simplification

If the main verb of a sentence makes it clear what kind of time the speaker is talking about, it is not always necessary for the same time to be indicated again in subordinate clauses. Compare:

This discovery means that we will spend less on food.
This discovery will mean that we spend less on food.

It is unlikely that he will win.
I will pray that he wins.

Verbs in subordinate clauses are often simpler in form than verbs in main clauses – for example present instead of future, simple past instead of would + infinitive, simple past instead of past perfect.

You'll find Coca-Cola wherever you go. (not . . . wherever you will go.)
He would never do anything that went against his conscience. (More natural than . . . that would go against his conscience.)
I hadn't understood what she said. (More natural than . . . what she had said.)

grammar • 231 tense simplification in subordinate clauses
2 present instead of future: I'll write when I have time.

Present tenses are often used instead of will + infinitive to refer to the future in subordinate clauses. This happens not only after conjunctions of time like when, until, after, before, as soon as, but in most other subordinate clauses – for instance after if, whether and on condition that, after question words and relative pronouns, and in indirect speech.

I'll write to her when I have time. (not . . . when I will have time.)
I'll think of you when I'm lying on the beach. (not . . . when I will be lying . . .)
Will you stay here until the plane takes off?
It will be interesting to see whether he recognises you.
I'll have a good time whether I win or lose. I'll go where you go.
I'll lend it to you on condition that you bring it back tomorrow.
He says he'll give five pounds to anybody who finds his pen.
If she asks what I'm doing in her house, I'll say I'm checking the gas.

This can happen when the main verb is not future in form, but refers to the future.

Phone me when you arrive. Make sure you come back soon.
You can tell who you like next week, but not until then.

In comparisons with as and than, present and future verbs are both possible.

She'll be on the same train as we are/will tomorrow.
We'll get there sooner than you do/will.

3 present perfect: . . . when I've finished

The present perfect is used instead of the future perfect, to express the idea of completion.

I'll phone you when I've finished. (not . . . when I will have finished.)
At the end of the year there will be an exam on everything you've studied.
(not . . . everything you will have studied.)

4 future in subordinate clauses: . . . where she will be

A future verb is necessary for future reference in a subordinate clause if the main verb does not refer to the future (or to the same time in the future).

I don't know where she will be tomorrow.
I'm sure I won't understand a word of the lecture.
I'll hide it somewhere where he'll never find it. (two different future times)
If she rings, I'll tell her that I'll ring back later. (two different future times)

For future verbs in if-clauses (e.g. I'll give you £100 if it will help you to get home). 243.

5 in case, I hope, I bet, it doesn't matter, etc

A present tense is normally used with a future meaning after in case even if the main verb is present or past. For details, 248.

I've got my tennis things in case we have time for a game tomorrow.
In an informal style, present verbs are often used with future meanings after I hope (490) and I bet (401).

I hope you sleep well. I bet he gets married before the end of the year.

Present tenses are also used with future reference after it doesn't matter, I don't care, I don't mind, it's not important and similar expressions.

It doesn't matter where we go this summer.
I don't care what we have for dinner if I don't have to cook it.
6 past instead of would . . .

*Would*, like *will*, is avoided in subordinate clauses; instead, we generally use past verbs. This happens in *if*-clauses (► 239), and also after most other conjunctions.

If I *had* lots of money, I *would* give some to anybody who *asked* for it.  

(not If I would have . . . who would ask for it.)

Would you follow me wherever I *went*? (not . . . wherever I *would* go?)

In a perfect world, you *would* be able to say exactly what you *thought*.

(not . . . what you *would* think.)

I *would* always try to help anybody who *was* in trouble, whether I *knew* them or not.

For past tenses after *It’s time*, ► 502; after *I’d rather*, ► 566; after *I wish*, ► 632.

7 simplification of perfect and progressive verbs

Simple past verb forms are used quite often in subordinate clauses instead of present perfect and past perfect tenses, if the meaning is clear.

*It’s been a good time while it’s lasted.*

*I’ve usually liked the people I’ve worked with.*

For thirty years, he *had* done no more than he *(had)* needed to.

*He probably crashed because he had gone to sleep while he was driving.*

(More natural than . . . while he *had* been driving.)

Progressives are often replaced by simple forms in subordinate clauses.

*He’s working. But at the same time as he works, he’s exercising.*

(or . . . at the same time as he’s working . . .)

8 exceptions

These rules do not usually apply to clauses beginning *because, although, since* or *as* (meaning ‘because’), or to non-identifying relative clauses (► 234).

*I won’t see you next week because I’ll be in Canada.*

*I’ll come to the opera with you, although I probably won’t enjoy it.*

*You’ll work with Mr Harris, who will explain everything to you.*

For tenses in indirect speech, ► 259.

232 subjunctive: *that she go, that they be, if I were, etc*

1 What is the subjunctive?

Some languages have special verb forms called ‘subjunctive’, which are used especially in subordinate clauses to talk about ‘unreal’ situations: things which are possible, desirable or imaginary. Older English had subjunctives, but in modern English they have mostly been replaced by uses of *should, would* and other modal verbs, by special uses of past tenses (► 46), and by ordinary verb forms. English only has a few subjunctive forms left: third person singular present verbs without -(e)s, (e.g. *she see, he have*) and special forms of *be* (e.g. *I be, he were*). Except for *I/he/she/it were* after *if*, they are not very common.
2 *that she see*

Ordinary verbs only have one subjunctive form: a third person singular present with no -es (e.g. *she see*). It is sometimes used in *that*-clauses in a formal style, especially in American English, after words which express the idea that something is important or desirable (e.g. *suggest, recommend, ask, insist, vital, essential, important, advice*). The same forms are used in both present and past sentences.

*It is essential that every child have the same educational opportunities. It was important that James contact Adam as soon as possible. Our advice is that the company invest in new equipment. The judge recommended that Simmons remain in prison for life.*

*Do* is not used in negative subjunctives. Note the word order.

*We felt it desirable that he not leave school before eighteen.*

With verbs that are not third person singular, the forms are the same as ordinary present-tense verbs (but they may refer to the past).

*I recommended that you move to another office.*

3 *be*

*Be* has special subjunctive forms: *I be, you be, etc.*

*It is important that Ella be present when we sign the papers. The Director asked that he be allowed to advertise for more staff.*

*I were and he/she/it were,* used for example after *if* (► 239.4) and *wish* (► 632) in a formal style, are also subjunctives.

*If I were you I should stop smoking. I wish it were Saturday.*

4 *fixed phrases: as it were; so be it*

Subjunctives are also used in certain fixed phrases. Examples:

*God save the Queen! Long live the King! God bless you. Heaven forbid.*

*He’s a sort of adopted uncle, as it were.* (= ... in a way.)

*Be that as it may . . . (= Whether that is true or not . . .)*

*If we have to pay £2,000, then so be it.* (= We can’t do anything to change it.)

5 *other structures*

Most subjunctive structures are formal and unusual in British English.

In *that*-clauses, British people usually prefer *should* + *infinitive* (► 264.7), or ordinary present and past tenses.

*It is essential that every child should have the same educational opportunities. (or . . . that every child has . . .)*

*It was important that James should contact Adam as soon as possible. (or . . . that James contacted . . .)*
Section 21  Relative Clauses

INTRODUCTION

What are relative clauses?

Clauses beginning with question words (e.g. who, which, where) are often used to modify nouns and some pronouns - to identify people and things, or to give more information about them. These are called 'relative clauses'.

Do you know the people who live next door?
There's a programme tonight which you might like.
He lives in a village where there are no shops.

Leslie, who works with me, often babysits for us.

When who, which, where, etc are used in this way, they are called 'relative pronouns'. That can also be used as a relative pronoun.

There are two kinds of relative clause (► 234): those that typically say who or what we are talking about ('identifying clauses'), and those that typically just give extra information ('non-identifying clauses').

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

X What's the name of the tall man which just came in? ► 233.1
X Is that all which is left? ► 233.4
X All what you say is true. ► 233.4
X I've found the keys that you were looking for them. ► 233.6
X He got married again, what surprised everybody. ► 233.8, 236.2
X I lent him 'The Old Man and the Sea', that is easy to read. ► 234.3
X This is Naomi, that sells the tickets. ► 234.3
X I poured him a glass of wine, he drank at once. ► 234.4
X We met a man of whom I've forgotten the name. ► 235.2
X He's married to a singer whose you may have heard. ► 235.3
X We need a house we can stay for a few days. ► 237.7
X The idea was interesting which she put forward. ► 237.12
X You're the one that know where to go. ► 237.13
X I can't think of anybody whom to invite. ► 237.14
X This is a letter from my father, whom we hope will be fully recovered soon. ► 237.17

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

233 relatives: basic information
234 identifying and non-identifying clauses: the tall man who . . .;
   Mr Rogers, who . . .
   grammar • Section 21 Relative Clauses
235 whose
236 what
237 relatives: advanced points
233 relatives: basic information

1 **who, whom and which**

The relative pronouns *who* and *whom* refer to people; *which* refers to things.

*What's the name of the tall man who just came in?* (Not ... the tall man which...)

*It's a book which will interest children of all ages.* (Not ... a book who...)

2 **subject and object**

*Who* and *which* can be the subjects of verbs in relative clauses.

*I like people who smile a lot.*

*This is the back door key, which also opens the garage.*

*Who(m)* and *which* can also be the objects of verbs in relative clauses. *Whom* is unusual in an informal style (► 626).

*Do you remember the people who we met in Italy?* (Who is the object of met.)

*I forget most of the films which I see.* (Which is the object of see.)

3 **that = who/which**

We often use *that* instead of *who* or *which*, especially in an informal style.

*I like people that smile a lot.*

*This is the key that opens the garage.*

*Do you remember the people that we met in Italy?*

*I forget most of the films that I see.*

4 **all that, only . . . that, etc**

*That* is especially common after quantifiers like *all, every(thing), some(thing), any(thing), no(thing), none, little, few, much, only,* and after superlatives.

*Is this all that's left?* (More natural than . . . all which is left?)

*Have you got anything that belongs to me?* (More natural than ... anything which . . .)

*The only thing that matters is to find our way home.*

*I hope the little that I've done has been useful.*

*It's the best film that's ever been made about madness.*

Note that *what* (► 236) cannot be used in these cases.

*All that you say is certainly true.* (Not All what you say . . .)

5 **leaving out object pronouns: the people we met**

Object pronouns can often be left out.

*Do you remember the people we met in Italy?*

*I forget most of the films I see.* All I want is your happiness.

This is not possible in all relative clauses: ► 234.

6 **one subject or object is enough**

As subjects or objects, *who(m), which* and *that* replace words like *she, him* or *it:* one subject or object in a relative clause is enough. Compare:

- He's got a new girlfriend. *She works in a garage.*

  *He's got a new girlfriend who works in a garage.* (Not . . . who she works in a garage.)
Relative Clauses

Section 21

This is Mr Rogers. You met him last year.
This is Mr Rogers, whom you met last year. (Not . . . whom you met him-
last-year.)

Here's an article. It might interest you.
Here's an article which might interest you. (Not . . . which it might-
interest-you.)

Prepositional verbs, like others, only have one object.
Are there any papers that I can look at? (Not . . . that I can look at them?)
I've found the keys that you were asking about. (Not . . . that you were asking
about them.)

7 whose: a girl whose hair . . .
Whose is a possessive relative pronoun, used as a determiner before nouns.
It replaces his/her/its. For more details, ▶ 235.
I saw a girl whose hair came down to her waist. (Not . . . whose her hair
came down . . .)

8 which referring to a whole clause
Which can refer not only to a noun, but also to the whole of a previous clause.
Note that what cannot be used in this way.
He got married again a year later, which surprised everybody.
(Not . . ., what surprised everybody.)
She cycled from London to Glasgow, which is pretty good for a woman of 75.
(Not She cycled . . ., what is pretty good . . .)

9 relative when, where and why
When and where can introduce relative clauses after nouns referring to time and
place. They are used in the same way as preposition + which.
I'll never forget the day when I first met you. (= . . . the day on which . . .)
Do you know a shop where I can find sandals? (= . . . a shop at which . . .)
Why is used in a similar way after reason.
Do you know the reason why she doesn’t like me?
(= . . . the reason for which . . .)

234 identifying and non-identifying clauses:
the tall man who . . .; Mr Rogers, who . . .

1 two kinds of relative clause
Some relative clauses identify or classify nouns: they tell us which person or
thing, or which kind of person or thing, is meant. (In grammars, these are called
‘identifying’, ‘defining’ or ‘restrictive’ relative clauses.)
What's the name of the tall man who just came in?
People who take physical exercise live longer.
Who owns the car which is parked outside?
Have you got something that will get paint out of a carpet?
Other relative clauses do not identify or classify; they simply tell us more about
a person or thing that is already identified. (In grammars, these are called
‘non-identifying’, ‘non-defining’ or ‘non-restrictive’ relative clauses.)
This is Ms Rogers, who’s joining the company next week.

In 1908 Ford developed his Model T car, which sold for $500.

There are several grammatical differences between the two kinds of relative clause. There are also stylistic differences: non-identifying clauses are generally more formal, and are less frequent in informal speech.

2 pronunciation and punctuation

Identifying relative clauses usually follow immediately after the nouns that they modify, without a break. They are not separated by pauses or intonation movements in speech, or by commas in writing. (This is because the noun would be incomplete without the relative clause, and the sentence would make no sense or have a different meaning.) Non-identifying clauses are normally separated by pauses and/or intonation breaks and commas. Compare:

- The woman who does my hair is from Poland.
- Dorota, who does my hair, is from Poland.
- She married someone that she met on a bus.
- She married a very nice young architect from Belfast, whom she met on a bus.

If an identifying clause is left out, the sentence may not give enough information to make sense.

The woman is from Poland. (Which woman?)
She married someone. (!)

When a non-identifying clause does not come at the end of a sentence, two commas are necessary.

Dorota, who does my hair, is from . . . (not Dorota, who does my hair is from . . .)

3 use of that

That is common as a relative pronoun in identifying clauses. In non-identifying clauses, that is unusual. Compare:

- Have you got a book which/that is really easy to read?
  (not . . . ‘The Old Man and the Sea’, that is really easy to read.)
- Where’s the girl who/that sells the tickets?
  This is Naomi, who sells the tickets. (not This is Naomi, that sells the tickets.)

4 leaving out object pronouns

In identifying relative clauses, we often leave out pronouns if they are objects, especially in an informal style. In non-identifying clauses this is not possible.

Compare:

- I feel sorry for the man she married.
  She met my brother, whom she later married. (not She met my brother, she later married.)
- Did you like the wine we drank last night?
  I poured him a glass of wine, which he drank at once. (not I poured him a glass of wine, he drank at once.)

For sentences like It was Jack who told the police (‘cleft sentences’), ► 273.
235 whose

1 relative possessive

Whose is a relative possessive word, used as a determiner before nouns in the same way as his, her, its or their. It can refer back to people or things. In a relative clause, whose + noun can be the subject, the object of a verb or the object of a preposition.

I saw a girl whose beauty took my breath away. (subject)

It was a meeting whose purpose I did not understand. (object)

Michel Croz, with whose help Whymper climbed the Matterhorn, was one of the first professional guides. (object of preposition)

I went to see my friends the Forrests, whose children I used to look after when they were small. (object of preposition)

Whose can be used in both identifying and non-identifying clauses.

2 things: of which; that . . . of

Instead of whose, we can use of which or that . . . of (less formal) to refer to things, and these are sometimes preferred. The most common word order is noun + of which or that . . . of, but of which . . . + noun is also possible.

Compare the following four ways of expressing the same idea.

He's written a book whose name I've forgotten.

He's written a book the name of which I've forgotten.

He's written a book that I've forgotten the name of

He's written a book of which I've forgotten the name.

We do not normally use noun + of whom in a possessive sense to talk about people.

a man whose name I've forgotten (not a man of whom I've forgotten the name)

3 only used as a determiner

Relative whose is only used as a possessive determiner, before a noun. In other cases we use of which/whom or that . . . of.

He's married to a singer of whom you may have heard. or . . . that you may have heard of. (not . . . a singer whose you may have heard.)

4 formality

Sentences with whose are generally felt to be rather heavy and formal; in an informal style other structures are often preferred. With (► 633) is a common way of expressing possessive ideas, and is usually more natural than whose in descriptions.

I've got some friends with a house that looks over a river. (Less formal than . . . whose house looks over a river.)

You know that girl with a brother who drives buses? (Less formal than . . . whose brother drives buses?)

She's married to the man over there with the enormous ears. (More natural than . . . the man over there whose ears are enormous.)
After *way, in which* can be replaced by *that* or dropped in an informal style.

I didn’t like the way *(that)* she spoke to me.

Do you know a way *(that)* you can earn money without working?

The same thing happens with *why* after *reason.*

The reason *(that)* you’re so bad-tempered is that you’re hungry.

For more about *place,* ► 554. For *way,* ► 620. For *reason,* ► 567.

### 8 position of prepositions

Prepositions can come either before relative pronouns (more formal) or at the ends of relative clauses (more informal). Compare:

- *He was respected by the people with whom he worked.* (formal)
  
  *He was respected by the people *(that)* he worked with.* (informal)

- *This is the room in which I was born.* (formal)
  
  *This is the room *(that)* I was born in.* (informal)

*That* is not used after prepositions, and *who* is unusual.

. . . the people with whom he worked. *(NOT . . . with that he worked; NOT USUALLY . . . with who he worked)*

For more about prepositions at the ends of clauses, ► 209.

### 9 some of whom, none of which, etc

In non-identifying clauses, quantifying determiners (e.g. *some, any, none, all, both, several, enough, many, few*) can be used with *of whom, of which* and *of whose.* The determiner most often comes before *of which/*whom/*whose,* but can sometimes come after it in a very formal style.

- They picked up five boat-loads of refugees, *some of whom* had been at sea for several months. *(or . . . of whom some . . .)*

- We’ve tested three hundred types of boot, *none of which* is completely waterproof. *(or . . . of which none . . .)*

- They’ve got eight children, *all of whom* are studying music. *(or . . . of whom all are studying . . .)*

She had a teddy bear, *both of whose* eyes were missing.

This structure is also possible with other expressions of quantity, with superlatives, with *first, second,* etc, and with *last.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a number of whom</th>
<th>three of which</th>
<th>half of which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the majority of whom</td>
<td>the youngest of whom</td>
<td>the last of which</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 10 whatever, whoever, etc

*Whatever* can be used rather like *what,* as *noun + relative pronoun* together.

*Take whatever you want.* (= . . . anything that you want.)

Other words that can be used like this are *whoever, whichever, where, wherever, when, whenever and how.*

- This is for *whoever* wants it. (= . . . any person that wants it.)

- I often think about *where I met you.* (= . . . the place where . . . )

- We’ve bought a cottage in the country for *when we retire.* (= . . . the time when . . . )

- *Whenever you want to come is fine with me.* (= Any day that . . .)

*Look at how* he treats me. (= . . . the way in which . . .)

For details of the use of *whoever,* *whatever* and other words ending in *-ever,* ► 252.

For more about *how-*clauses, ► 492.
11 reduced relative clauses: the girl dancing
A participle is often used instead of a relative pronoun and full verb.
Who’s the girl dancing with your brother? (= . . . that is dancing with your brother?)
Anyone touching that wire will get a shock. (= . . . who touches . . .)
Half of the people invited to the party didn’t turn up.
(= . . . who were invited . . .)
I found him sitting at a table covered with papers. (= . . . which was covered with papers.)
Reduced structures are also used with the adjectives available and possible.
Please send me all the tickets available. (= . . . that are available.)
Tuesday’s the only date possible.

12 separating a noun from its relative pronoun
Relative pronouns usually follow their nouns directly.
The idea which she put forward was interesting. (not The idea was interesting which she put forward.)
I called in Mrs Spencer, who did our accounts. (not I called Mrs Spencer in, who did our accounts.)
However, a descriptive phrase can sometimes separate a noun from its relative pronoun.
I called in Mrs Spencer, the Manager’s secretary, who did our accounts.

13 agreement of person
Most relative clauses have third-person reference; I who . . ., you who . . . and we who . . . are unusual, though they sometimes occur in a very formal style.
A different kind of first- and second-person reference is common in the relative clauses of cleft sentences (► 273). However, the verb is usually third-person, especially in an informal style.
It’s me that’s responsible for the organisation. (More formal: It is I who am responsible . . .)
You’re the one that knows where to go. (not . . . the one that knows where to go.)

14 relative + infinitive: a garden in which to play
When a noun or pronoun is the object of a following infinitive, a relative pronoun is not normally used.
I can’t think of anybody to invite. (not . . . anybody whom to invite.)
However, relative pronouns are possible with preposition structures.
We moved to the country so that the children would have a garden in which to play.
He was miserable unless he had neighbours with whom to quarrel.
This structure is rather formal, and it is more common to use infinitive + preposition without a relative pronoun.
. . . so that the children would have a garden to play in.
(not . . . which to play in.)
. . . unless he had neighbours to quarrel with. (not . . . whom to quarrel with.)
15 relative clauses after indefinite noun phrases

The distinction between identifying and non-identifying clauses (► 234) is most clear when they modify definite noun phrases like the car, this house, my father, Mrs Lewis. After indefinite noun phrases like a car, some nurses or friends, the distinction is less clear, and both kinds of clause are often possible with slight differences of emphasis.

He's got a new car that goes like a bomb. (or He's got a new car, which goes like a bomb.)

We became friendly with some nurses that Jack had met in Paris.

(or We became friendly with some nurses, whom Jack had met in Paris.)

In general, identifying clauses are used when the information they give is felt to be centrally important to the overall message. When this is not so, non-identifying clauses are preferred.

16 It was Alice who . . .; What I need is . . .

Relative clauses (including what-clauses) are used to structure 'cleft sentences': ► 273–274 for details.

It was Alice who called the police. What I need is a long rest.

17 somebody I know you’ll like

It is often possible to combine relative clauses with indirect statements and similar structures, e.g. I know/said/feel/hope/wish (that) . . ., especially in an informal style. Expressions like I know, I said, etc come after the position of the relative pronoun.

We're going to meet somebody (who/that) I know (that) you'll like.

It's a house (which/that) we feel (that) we might want to buy.

That's the man (who/that) I wish (that) I'd married.

Note that the conjunction (the second that) is usually dropped in this structure; it must be dropped if the relative pronoun is a subject.

This is the woman (who/that) Anna said could show us the church.

(Note This is the woman (who/that) Anna said that could show us . . .)

In this structure, people sometimes use whom as a subject pronoun. This is not generally considered correct.

This is a letter from my father, whom we hope will be fully recovered soon.

(More correct: . . . who we hope will be . . .)

Relative clauses can also be combined with if-clauses in sentences like the following.

I am enclosing an application form, which I should be grateful if you would sign and return.

18 a car that I didn’t know how fast it could go, etc

We do not usually combine a relative clause with an indirect question structure. However, this sometimes happens in informal speech.

I've just been to see an old friend that I'm not sure when I'm going to see again.

There's a pile of paperwork that I just don't know how I'm going to do.
There is no grammatically correct way of doing this when the relative pronoun is the subject of the relative clause. However, sentences like the following (with added pronouns) are also sometimes heard in informal speech.

Some real examples:

I was driving a car that I didn’t know how fast it could go.
It’s ridiculous to sing songs that you don’t know what they mean.
There’s a control at the back that I don’t understand how it works.
There’s still one kid that I must find out whether she’s coming to the party or not.

19 omission of subject

In a very informal style, a subject relative pronoun is sometimes dropped after there is.

There’s a man at the door wants to talk to you.

20 double object

Occasionally a relative pronoun acts as the object of two verbs. This happens especially when a relative clause is followed by before . . .ing, after . . .ing or without . . .ing.

We have water that it’s best not to drink before boiling. (or . . . boiling it.)
I’m sending you a letter that I want you to destroy after reading. (or . . . after reading it.)
He was somebody that you could like without admiring. (or . . . admiring him.)

21 older English: who and that which

In older English, who could be used in a similar way to what, as noun + relative pronoun together, meaning ‘the person who’, ‘whoever’ or ‘anybody who’. In modern English, this is very unusual.

Who steals my purse steals trash. (Shakespeare, Othello) (Modern English: Whoever/Anybody who . . . )

That which used to be used in the same way as what. This, too, is very unusual in modern English.

We have that which we need. (Modern English: We have what we need.)
If

INTRODUCTION

uncertain events and situations

In clauses after if, we usually talk about uncertain events and situations: things which may or may not happen, which may or may not be true, etc.

Ask Jack if he's staying tonight. (He may or may not be staying.)

If I see Annie, I'll give her your love. (I may or may not see Annie.)

conditions

An if-clause often refers to a condition – something which must happen so that something else can happen.

If you get here before eight, we can catch the early train.

Oil floats if you pour it on water.

Clauses of this kind are often called 'conditional' clauses.

'first', 'second' and 'third' conditionals; other structures

Some students' grammars concentrate on three common sentence structures with if, which are often called the 'first', 'second' and 'third' conditionals.

'first conditional'

if + present will + infinitive

If we play tennis, I'll win.

'second conditional'

if + past would + infinitive

If we played tennis, I would win.

'third conditional'

if + past perfect would have + past participle

If we had played tennis, I would have won.

These are useful structures to practise. However, students sometimes think that these are the only possibilities, and become confused when they meet sentences like If she didn't phone this morning, then she's probably away ('What's this? A fourth conditional?'). It is important to realise that if is not only used in special structures with will and would; it can also be used, like other conjunctions, in ordinary structures with normal verb forms. (A research study carried out in the 1990s found that less than 25% of if-conditional sentences follow the traditional 'first', 'second' and 'third' patterns.)
position of if-clause

An if-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When an if-clause comes first, it is often followed by a comma.

Compare:

If you eat too much, you get fat. You get fat if you eat too much.

For other meanings of if, ► 244.10-244.13. For if and whether in indirect speech, ► 260-261.
For if not and unless, ► 247. For more information about would/should, ► 76, 80, 86.
For the difference between if and in case, ► 248. For even if, ► 452.4.

How good are the rules?

The 'rules' given in this Section are intended to be useful for learners. They describe what happens most of the time, and are generally valid for formal speech and writing. However, usage is far from fixed, and educated speakers and writers quite often mix structures. So if a sentence is crossed out in one of the following explanations (e.g. If I would know her name, I would tell you) this means that it should be avoided in contexts like formal letters or examination scripts. It may not strictly speaking be wrong.

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

X I'll give her your love if I'll see her. ► 238.2
X If you asked me, I had told you. ► 241.1
X If I would know his address I would tell you. ► 239.2
X If I knew they had a problem, I could have helped them. ► 241.2
X If I were to know his address, I would tell you. ► 244.2
X Hadn't we missed the plane, we would all have been killed in the crash. ► 244.5
X It would of been better if we had started earlier. ► 245.3
X If only I would know more people! ► 242
X I only she didn't tell the police, everything would have been all right. ► 242
X I'll be surprised unless the car breaks down soon. ► 247.2
X I've bought a chicken in case your mother will stay to lunch. ► 248.1

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

238 ordinary structures
239 special structures with past tenses and would
240 if I were you
241 unreal past situations
242 if only
243 if... will
244 other points
245 other structures found in spoken English
246 other words and expressions with similar uses
247 unless
248 in case and if
1 the same tenses as with other conjunctions

When we are not talking about ‘unreal’ situations (► 239), we use the same tenses with if as with other conjunctions. Present tenses are used to refer to the present, past tenses to the past, and so on. Compare:

- Oil floats if you pour it on water.  
  Iron goes red when it gets very hot.
- If Jack didn’t come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.  
  As Jack didn’t come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.
- If you didn’t study physics at school, you won’t understand this book.  
  Because you didn’t study physics at school, you won’t understand this book.

2 present tense with future meaning

In an if-clause, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future. This happens after most conjunctions (► 231). Compare:

- I’ll give her your love if I see her. (not . . . if I will see her.)  
  I’ll give her your love when I see her. (not . . . when I will see her.)
- If we have fine weather tomorrow, I’m going to paint the windows.  
  As soon as we have fine weather, I’m going to paint the windows.

For if + will (e.g. if it will make you feel better), ► 243.
For if + will in reported speech (e.g. I don’t know if I’ll be ready), ► 260.3.

239 special structures with past tenses and would

If I knew her name, I would tell you.
What would you do if you lost your job?

1 unreal situations

We use special structures with if when we are talking about unreal situations – things that will probably not happen, situations that are untrue or imaginary, and similar ideas. In these cases, we use past tenses and would to ‘distance’ our language from reality.

2 if + past; would + infinitive

To talk about unreal or improbable situations now or in the future, we use a past tense in the if-clause (even though the meaning is present or future), and would + infinitive (without to) in the other part of the sentence.

If I knew her name, I would tell you. (not If I know. . . or If I would know. . . or . . . I will tell you.)
She would be perfectly happy if she had a car.
What would you do if you lost your job?
This structure can make suggestions sound less definite, and so more polite.

It would be nice if you helped me a bit with the housework.
Would it be all right if I came round about seven tomorrow?

3 would, should and 'd

After I and we, should is sometimes used with the same meaning as would. This is now unusual in British English, and has almost disappeared from American English.

If I knew her name, I should tell you. (rare)

We use 'd as a contraction (§ 337).

We'd get up earlier if there was a good reason to.

For I should . . . meaning 'I advise you to . . .', § 240.2. For would in the if-clause, § 245.

For should in the if-clause, § 244.1.

4 if I were, etc

We often use were instead of was after if. This is common in both formal and informal styles. In a formal style were is more common than was, and many people consider it more correct, especially in American English.

The grammatical name for this use of were is 'subjunctive' (§ 232).

If I were rich, I would spend all my time travelling.
If my nose were a little shorter, I'd be quite pretty.

For the expression If I were you . . ., § 240.

5 Ordinary tense-use or special tense-use? If I come or if I came?

The difference between, for example, if I come and if I came is not necessarily a difference of time. They can both refer to the future; but the past tense suggests that a future situation is impossible, imaginary or less probable. Compare:

- If I become President, I'll . . . (said by a candidate in an election)
  If I became President, I'd . . . (said by a schoolboy)
- If I win this race, I'll . . . (said by the fastest runner)
  If I won this race, I'd . . . (said by the slowest runner)
- Will it be all right if I bring a friend? (direct request)
  Would it be all right if I brought a friend? (less direct, more polite)

6 could and might

We can use could to mean 'would be able to' and might to mean 'would perhaps' or 'would possibly'.

If I had another £500, I could buy a car.
If you asked me nicely, I might get you a drink.

For other cases where a past tense has a present or future meaning, § 46. For if only, § 242.

240 if I were you

1 advice

We often use the structure If I were you . . . to give advice. British English has should or would in the main clause; American English would.

I wouldn't/shouldn't worry if I were you.
238 ordinary structures

If you didn’t study physics at school, you won’t understand this book.
I’ll give her your love if I see her.

1 the same tenses as with other conjunctions

When we are not talking about ‘unreal’ situations (► 239), we use the same tenses with if as with other conjunctions. Present tenses are used to refer to the present, past tenses to the past, and so on. Compare:

- Oil floats if you pour it on water.
  Iron goes red when it gets very hot.
- If Jack didn’t come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.
  As Jack didn’t come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.
- If you didn’t study physics at school, you won’t understand this book.
  Because you didn’t study physics at school, you won’t understand this book.

2 present tense with future meaning

In an if-clause, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future. This happens after most conjunctions (► 231). Compare:

- I’ll give her your love if I see her. (not... if I will see her.)
  I’ll give her your love when I see her. (not... when I will see her.)
- If we have fine weather tomorrow, I’m going to paint the windows.
  As soon as we have fine weather, I’m going to paint the windows.

For if + will (e.g. if it will make you feel better), ► 243.
For if + will in reported speech (e.g. I don’t know if I’ll be ready), ► 260.3.

239 special structures with past tenses and would

If I knew her name, I would tell you.
What would you do if you lost your job?

1 unreal situations

We use special structures with if when we are talking about unreal situations – things that will probably not happen, situations that are untrue or imaginary, and similar ideas. In these cases, we use past tenses and would to ‘distance’ our language from reality.

2 if + past; would + infinitive

To talk about unreal or improbable situations now or in the future, we use a past tense in the if-clause (even though the meaning is present or future), and would + infinitive (without to) in the other part of the sentence.

If I knew her name, I would tell you. (NOT If I know... OR If I would know... OR... I will tell you.)
She would be perfectly happy if she had a car.
What would you do if you lost your job?
This structure can make suggestions sound less definite, and so more polite.

*It would be nice if you helped me a bit with the housework.*

*Would it be all right if I came round about seven tomorrow?*

3 **would, should and 'd**

After *I* and *we*, *should* is sometimes used with the same meaning as *would*. This is now unusual in British English, and has almost disappeared from American English.

*If I knew her name, I should tell you.* (rare)

We use 'd as a contraction (► 337).

*We'd get up earlier if there was a good reason to.*

For *I should . . .* meaning 'I advise you to . . .* ► 240.2. For *would* in the *if*-clause, ► 245. For *should* in the *if*-clause, ► 244.1.

4 **if I were, etc**

We often use *were* instead of *was* after *if*. This is common in both formal and informal styles. In a formal style *were* is more common than *was*, and many people consider it more correct, especially in American English.

The grammatical name for this use of *were* is 'subjunctive’ (► 232).

*If I were rich, I would spend all my time travelling.*

*If my nose were a little shorter, I’d be quite pretty.*

For the expression *If I were you . . .* ► 240.

5 **Ordinary tense-use or special tense-use? If I come or if I came?**

The difference between, for example, *if I come* and *if I came* is not necessarily a difference of time. They can both refer to the future; but the past tense suggests that a future situation is impossible, imaginary or less probable. Compare:

— *If I become President, I’ll . . .* (said by a candidate in an election)
  *If I became President, I’d . . .* (said by a schoolboy)
— *If I win this race, I’ll . . .* (said by the fastest runner)
  *If I won this race, I’d . . .* (said by the slowest runner)
— *Will it be all right if I bring a friend?* (direct request)
  *Would it be all right if I brought a friend?* (less direct, more polite)

6 **could and might**

We can use *could* to mean 'would be able to' and *might* to mean 'would perhaps' or 'would possibly'.

*If I had another £500, I could buy a car.*

*If you asked me nicely, I might get you a drink.*

For other cases where a past tense has a present or future meaning, ► 46. For *if only*, ► 242.

240 **if I were you**

1 **advice**

We often use the structure *If I were you . . .* to give advice. British English has *should* or *would* in the main clause; American English *would*.

*I wouldn’t/shouldn’t worry if I were you.*

grammar • 240 if I were you
If I were you, I’d get that car serviced.
If I was you is also possible. Some people consider it incorrect (► 239.4).

2 I should/would . . .
Sometimes we leave out If I were you, and just use I should . . . (British English) or I would . . . to give advice.
I shouldn’t worry. I would get that car serviced.
In this case, I should/would is similar to you should.

241 unreal past situations

If you had worked harder, you would have passed your exam.

1 if + past perfect; would have + past participle
To talk about past situations that did not happen, we use a past perfect tense in the if-clause, and would have + past participle in the other part of the sentence.
If you had asked me, I would have told you. (Not if you would have asked me . . . or if you asked me . . . or . . . I had told you.)
If you had worked harder, you would have passed your exam. I’d have been in bad trouble if Megan hadn’t helped me.

2 could have . . . and might have . . .
We can use could have + past participle to mean ‘would have been able to . . .’, and might have + past participle to mean ‘would perhaps have . . .’ or ‘would possibly have . . .’.
If he’d run a bit faster, he could have won.
If I hadn’t been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.

3 present use: situations that are no longer possible
We sometimes use structures with would have . . . to talk about present and future situations which are no longer possible because of the way things have turned out.
It would have been nice to go to Australia this winter, but there’s no way we can do it. (Or It would be nice . . .)
If my mother hadn’t met my father at a party thirty years ago, I wouldn’t have been here now. (Or . . . I wouldn’t be here now.)

242 if only

We can use If only . . .! to say that we would like things to be different. It means the same as I wish . . . (► 632), but is more emphatic. The clause with if only often stands alone, without a main clause. Tense use is as follows:

a past to talk about the present
If only I knew more people! If only I was better-looking!
We can use were instead of was (► 239.4).
If only your father were here!
If would + infinitive (without to) to talk about the future

If only it would stop raining, we could go out.
If only somebody would smile!

c past perfect to talk about the past

If only she hadn’t told the police, everything would have been all right.

### 243 if... will

I’ll give you £100 if it will help you to get home.
If Anna won’t be here, we’d better cancel the meeting.
I don’t know if I’ll be ready in time.
If you will come this way...
If you will eat so much...

We normally use a present tense with if (and most other conjunctions) to refer to the future (► 231).

I’ll phone you if I have time. (not... if I will have time.)
But in certain situations we use if... will.

1 results

We use will with if to talk about what will happen because of possible future actions – to mean ‘if this will be the later result’. Compare:

- I’ll give you £100 if I win the lottery. (Winning the lottery is a condition – it must happen first.)
- I’ll give you £100 if it’ll help you to get home. (The return home is a result – it follows the gift of money.)
- We’ll go home now if you get the car. (condition)
- We’ll go home now if it will make you feel better. (result)

2 ‘If it is true now that...’

We use will with if when we are saying ‘if it is true now that...’ or ‘if we know now that...’.

If Anna won’t be here on Thursday, we’d better cancel the meeting.
If prices will really come down in a few months, I’m not going to buy one now.

3 indirect questions: I don’t know if...

We can use will after if in indirect questions (► 260.3).

I don’t know if I’ll be ready in time. (not... if I’m ready in time.)

4 polite requests: If you will come this way...

We can use if + will in polite requests. In this case, will is not a future auxiliary; it means ‘are willing to’ (► 80.1).

If you will come this way, I’ll show you your room.
If your mother will complete this form, I’ll prepare her ticket.
Would can be used to make a request even more polite.
If you would come this way...
5 insistence: If you WILL eat so much . . .

Stressed will can be used after if to criticise people’s habits or choices.

*If you WILL eat so much, it’s not surprising you feel ill.* (= ‘If you insist on eating so much . . .’)

244 other points

1 *If . . . happen to*

We can suggest that something is unlikely, or not particularly probable, by using . . . happen to . . . after if.

*If I happen to run into Daniel, I’ll tell him to call you.*

*If you happen to pass a supermarket, perhaps you could pick up some eggs.*

*Should* can be used after if in British English with a similar meaning, but this is now unusual.

*If I should run into Daniel . . .*

2 *if . . . was/were to*

This is another way of talking about unreal or imaginary future events.

*If the boss was/were to come in now, we’d be in real trouble.*

(= If the boss came . . .)

*What would we do if I was/were to lose my job?*

It can be used to make a suggestion sound less direct, and so more polite.

*If you were to move your chair a bit, we could all sit down.*

This structure is not normally used with verbs like be or know, which refer to continuing situations.

*If I knew her name . . . (not If I were to know her name . . .)*

For the difference between was and were after if, ▶ 239.4.

3 *if it was/were not for*

This structure is used to say that one event or situation changes everything.

*If it wasn’t/weren’t for his wife’s money he’d never be a director.*

(= Without his wife’s money, . . .)

*If it wasn’t/weren’t for the children, we could go skiing next week.*

To talk about the past we use If it had not been for.

*If it hadn’t been for your help, I don’t know what I’d have done.*

*But for* can be used to mean ‘if it were not for’ or ‘if it had not been for’.

*But for your help, I don’t know what I’d have done.*

4 *leaving out if: conversational – You want to get in, you pay.*

*If* is sometimes left out at the beginning of a sentence in a conversational style, especially when the speaker is making conditions or threats.

*You want to get in, you pay like everybody else.* (= If you want . . .)

*You touch me again, I’ll kick your teeth in.*
5 leaving out if: formal inversion structures – Had I realised . . .

In formal and literary styles, if can be dropped and an auxiliary verb put before the subject. This happens mostly with were, had and should.

Were she my daughter, . . . (= If she were my daughter . . .)
Had I realised what you intended, . . . (= If I had realised . . .)
Should you change your mind, . . . (= If you should change . . .)

Negatives are not contracted.

Had we not missed the plane, we would all have been killed in the crash.
(Not Hadn’t we missed . . .)

For other uses of inverted word order,  270–271.

6 leaving out words after if

We sometimes leave out subject + be after if. Note the common fixed expressions if necessary, if any, if anything, if ever, if in doubt.

I’ll work late tonight if necessary. (= . . . if it is necessary)
There is little if any good evidence for flying saucers.
I’m not angry. If anything, I feel a little surprised.
He seldom if ever travels abroad.
If in doubt, ask for help. (= If you are in doubt . . .)
If about to go on a long journey, try to have a good night’s sleep.

For more details of ellipsis (structures with words left out), 275–280.

7 if so and if not

After if, we can use so and not instead of repeating a whole clause.

Are you free? If so, let’s go out for a meal. (= . . . If you are free . . .)
I might see you tomorrow. If not, then it’ll be Saturday. (= . . . If I don’t see you tomorrow . . .)

8 extra negative: I wonder if we shouldn’t . . .

An extra not is sometimes put into if-clauses after expressions suggesting doubt or uncertainty.

I wonder if we shouldn’t ask the doctor to look at Emily. (= I wonder if we should ask . . .)
I wouldn’t be surprised if she didn’t get married soon. (= . . . if she got married soon.)

9 if . . . then

We sometimes construct sentences with if . . . then to emphasise that one thing depends on another.

If she can’t come to us, then we’ll have to go and see her.

10 if meaning ‘even if’

We can use if to mean ‘even if’ ( 452.4).

I’ll finish this job if it takes all night.
I wouldn’t marry you if you were the last man in the world.

11 admitting facts with if

An if-clause can be used to admit a fact when giving a reason for it.

If I’m a bit sleepy, it’s because I was up all night.
12 if meaning 'I'm saying this in case'

If-clauses are quite often used to explain the purpose of a remark – to suggest 'I'm saying this in case . . .'.

- There's some steak in the fridge if you're hungry.
- If you want to go home, Anne's got your car keys.

13 if meaning 'although'

In a formal style, if can be used with a similar meaning to although. This is common in the structure if + adjective (with no verb). If is not as definite as although; it can suggest that what is being talked about is a matter of opinion, or not very important.

- His style, if simple, is pleasant to read.
- The profits, if a little lower than last year's, are still extremely healthy.

The same kind of idea can be expressed with may . . . but.

- His style may be simple, but it is pleasant to read.

245 other structures found in spoken English

1 would in both clauses

Conditional would is sometimes used in both clauses of an if-sentence. This is very informal, and quite common in speech. It is not usually written, and is incorrect in formal writing.

- It would be good if we'd get some rain.
- How would we feel if this would happen to our family?

For if . . . would in polite requests, ► 243.4.

2 'd have . . . 'd have; would have . . . would have

In informal spoken English, if-clauses referring to the past are sometimes constructed with 'd have. This, too, is very informal, but it occurs quite often in speech. It is not usually written, and is incorrect in formal writing.

- If I'd have known, I'd have told you.
- It would have been funny if she'd have recognised him.
- You wonder what the attitudes of both players would have been if Nadal would have gone on and won that second set. (from a tennis commentary)

3 had've and would've

Instead of the contracted 'd in these structures, full forms are sometimes used for emphasis or in negatives. Both had and would occur. The following are genuine examples taken from conversation.

- I didn't know. But if I had've known . . .
- We would never have met if he hadn't have crashed into my car.
- If I would've had a gun, somebody might have got hurt.
- If you wouldn't have phoned her, we'd never have found out what was happening.

Confusion about this structure sometimes leads people to write would of instead of would have (they are pronounced the same: /wʊðəv/ in normal speech).
4 mixed tenses

Sometimes a simple past tense is used with *if* where a past perfect would be normal. This is more common in American English.

*If I knew* you were coming, *I'd* have baked a cake.
*If I had* the money with me, I *would have* bought you one.
*If I didn't have* my walking boots on, I *think I would have* really hurt my foot.

### 246 other words and expressions with similar uses

Many words and expressions can be used in similar ways to *if*, and often with similar structures. Some of the commonest are *imagine (that)*, *suppose (that)*, *supposing (that)* (used to talk about what might happen), and *providing (that)*, *provided (that)*, *as/so long as*, *on condition (that)* (used to make conditions).

*Imagine* we could all fly. Wouldn't that be fun!
*Supposing* you'd missed the train. What would you have done?
You can borrow my bike *providing/provided* you bring it back.
I'll give you the day off *on condition that* you work on Saturday morning.
You're welcome to stay with us *as/so long as* you share the expenses.

For suggestions with *suppose*, *supposing* and *what if*, ➪ 599.

### 247 unless

1 meaning

*Unless* has a similar meaning to *if . . . not*, in the sense of 'except if'.

*Come tomorrow unless I phone.* (= . . . if I don't phone / except if I phone.)
*I'll take the job unless the pay is too low.* (= . . . if the pay isn't too low / except if the pay is too low.)
*I'll be back tomorrow unless there's a plane strike.*
*Let's have dinner out – unless you're too tired.*
*I'm going to dig the garden this afternoon, unless it rains.*

2 when *unless* cannot be used

*Unless* means 'except if'; it is not used with other meanings of 'if . . . not'. Compare:

- OK. So we'll meet this evening at 7.00 – *unless my train's late.* (= . . . except if my train's late.)
  
  *If my train isn't late it will be the first time this week.* (not *Unless my train's late it will be the first time this week.* The meaning is not 'except if'.)
- *I'll drive over and see you, unless the car breaks down.* (= . . . except if the car breaks down.)
  
  *I'll be surprised if the car doesn't break down soon.* (not *I'll be surprised unless the car breaks down soon.*)
3 tenses
In clauses with unless, we usually use present tenses to refer to the future (► 231).
I'll be in all day unless the office phones. (NOT . . . unless the office will phone.)

248 in case and if

1 precautions
In British English, in case is mostly used to talk about precautions – things which we do in order to be ready for possible future situations.
I always take an umbrella in case it rains. (= . . . because it might rain.)
To talk about the future, we use a present tense after in case (► 231).
I’ve bought a chicken in case your mother stays to lunch. (NOT . . . in case your mother will stay . . .)

2 in case . . . happen to
We can use the expression happen to after in case to emphasise the meaning of ‘by chance’.
I’ve bought a chicken in case your mother happens to stay to lunch.
We took our swimming things in case we happened to find a pool.
Should can be used in the same way in British English, but this is no longer very common.
. . . in case your mother should stay to lunch.

3 in case and if
In British English, in case and if are normally used in quite different ways.
‘Do A in case B happens’ means ‘Do A (first) because B might happen later’. ‘Do A if B happens’ means ‘Do A if B has already happened’. Compare:
– Let’s buy a bottle of wine in case George comes. (= Let’s buy some wine now because George might come later.)
Let’s buy a bottle of wine if George comes. (= We’ll wait and see. If George comes, then we’ll buy the wine. If he doesn’t we won’t.)
– I’m taking an umbrella in case it rains.
I’ll open the umbrella if it rains. (NOT I’ll open the umbrella in case it rains.)
– People insure their houses in case they catch fire. (NOT . . . if they catch fire.)
People telephone the fire brigade if their houses catch fire.
(NOT . . . telephone . . . in case their houses catch fire.)
In American English, in case is often used in a similar way to if.
In case you’re free this evening, give me a call. (less typical of British English)

4 in case of
The prepositional phrase in case of has a wider meaning than the conjunction in case, and can be used in similar situations to if in both American English and British English.
In case of fire, break glass. (= If there is a fire . . .)
Section 23 Other Adverbial Clauses

INTRODUCTION

This Section deals with some conjunctions and clause structures which may cause grammatical problems for learners. Less problematic conjunctions (e.g. because, although, until) are included in Section 31; see the Index for their exact place.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- I passed the exam, after it was easier to get a good job. ► 249.1
- I’ll call you after I’ll arrive. ► 249.2
- As I was a child I lived in London. ► 251.2
- His parents died while he was twelve. ► 251.2
- I’ll take whichever tent you’re not using it. ► 252
- No matter what you do is fine with me. ► 253
- As much I respect your point of view, I can’t agree. ► 255
- He worries more than it is necessary. ► 256.1
- We’ve got food for as many people as they want it. ► 256.1
- I’m sending you the bill, as it was agreed. ► 256.1

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

249 after: conjunction
250 before: conjunction
251 as, when and while:
   simultaneous events
252 whoever, whatever, etc
253 no matter who, etc
254 whether . . . or . . .
255 as and though: special
   word order
256 than- and as-clauses: leaving out
   subjects, etc
249 after: conjunction

**1 use and position**

After and its clause can come either before the main clause (often with a comma) or after. Putting it at the end can give it more importance in information structure (► 267).

*After I moved to Scotland, I changed jobs.*

*I changed jobs after I moved to Scotland.*

Note the time relations: in both cases the speaker moved to Scotland first and then changed jobs. Compare:

*I moved to Scotland after I changed jobs.* (The speaker changed jobs first.)

**2 present with future meaning**

We use *after* with a present tense to talk about the future (► 231).

*I’ll telephone you after I arrive.* (*NOT . . . after I will arrive.*)

**3 perfect tenses**

In clauses with *after*, we often use present and past perfect tenses to show that one thing is completed before another starts (► 54.1).

*I usually go straight home after I’ve finished work.*

*After Lara had finished school, she went to America.*

We use a present perfect, not a future perfect, to talk about the future with *after*.

*I’ll call you after I’ve seen Jake.* (*NOT . . . after I’ll have seen Jake.*)

**4 after . . . ing**

In a formal style, we often use the structure *after* + -ing.

*After completing this form, give it to the secretary.*

*After having + past participle* is also possible when talking about the past.

*He wrote his first book after returning / having returned from Mongolia.*

For *after* as an adverb, ► 360.

250 before: conjunction

**1 use and position**

Before and its clause can come either before the main clause (often with a comma) or after. Putting it at the end can give it more importance in information structure (► 267).

*Before I have breakfast, I go for a walk.*

*I go for a walk before I have breakfast.*
Note the time relations: in both cases the speaker goes for a walk first and then has breakfast. Compare:

\[ I \text{ have breakfast before I go for a walk.} \] (The speaker has breakfast first.)

2 present or present perfect tense with future meaning

With \textit{before}, we use a present or present perfect tense if the meaning is future (\(\text{► 231}\)).

\[ I'll \text{ telephone you before I come.} \] (\textit{not \ldots before I will come}.)
\[ \text{We can't leave before the speeches have finished.} \]

3 perfect tenses

In clauses with \textit{before}, we often use present perfect and past perfect tenses to emphasise the idea of completion.

\[ \text{You can't go home before I've signed the report.} \] (= \ldots before the moment when I have completed the report.)
\[ \text{He went out before I had finished my sentence.} \] (= \ldots before the moment when I had completed my sentence.)

(Note that in sentences like the last, a past perfect tense can refer to a time later than the action of the main verb. This is unusual.)

4 before things that don’t happen

We sometimes use \textit{before} to talk about things that don’t happen (because something stops them).

\[ \text{We'd better get out of here before your father catches us.} \]
\[ \text{She left before I could ask for her phone number.} \]

5 \textit{before .. .ing}

In a formal style, we often use the structure \textit{before} + -\textit{ing}.

\[ \text{Please turn out all the lights before leaving the office.} \]
\[ \text{Before beginning the book, she spent five years on research.} \]

For \textit{before} as an adverb and preposition, \(\text{► 396-397}\). For \textit{before} and \textit{ever}, \(\text{► 454.4}\).

251 \textit{as, when} and \textit{while}: simultaneous events

To talk about actions or situations that take place at the same time, we can use \textit{as, when} or \textit{while}. There are some differences.

1 \textit{‘backgrounds’}: \textit{as, when} or \textit{while}

We can use all three words to introduce a longer ‘background’ action or situation, which is/was going on when something else happens/happened.

\[ \text{As I was walking down the street I saw Joe driving a Porsche.} \]
\[ \text{The telephone always rings \textit{when} you are having a bath.} \]
\[ \text{While they were playing cards, somebody broke into the house.} \]

A progressive tense is usually used for the longer ‘background’ action or situation (\textit{was walking}; \textit{are having}; \textit{were playing}). But \textit{as} and \textit{while} can be used with a simple tense, especially with a ‘state’ verb like \textit{sit}, \textit{lie}, or \textit{grow}.

\[ \text{As I sat reading the paper, the door burst open.} \]
4 whenever = ‘every time that’
Whenever can suggest repetition, in the sense of ‘every time that’.
Whenever I see you I feel nervous.
I stay with Monica whenever I go to London.

5 whoever, etc . . . may
May can be used to suggest ignorance or uncertainty.
He’s written a book on the philosopher Matilda Vidmi, whoever she may be.
She’s just written to me from Llandyfrdwy, wherever that may be.

6 leaving out the verb: whatever his problems
In a clause like whatever his problems are, where whatever is the complement of
the verb be, it is possible to leave out the verb.
Whatever his problems, he has no right to behave like that.
A serious illness, whatever its nature, is almost always painful.
After however + adjective, we can leave out a pronoun + be.
A grammar rule, however true (it is), is useless unless it can be understood.

7 informal uses: short answers
In an informal style, these conjunctions are sometimes used as short answers.
‘When shall we start?’ ‘Whenever.’ (= Whenever you like.)
‘Potatoes or rice?’ ‘Whichever.’ (= I don’t mind.)
Whatever is often used to mean ‘I don’t care’ or ‘I’m not interested’. This can sound rude.
‘What would you like to do? We could go and see a film, or go swimming.’
‘Whatever.’
Or whatever can mean ‘or anything else’.
Would you like some orange juice or a beer or whatever?
If you play football or tennis or whatever, it does take up a lot of time.

8 whatever meaning ‘at all’
After any and no, whatever can be used in British English to mean ‘at all’.
Don’t you have any regrets whatever?
I can see no point whatever in buying it.
In American English, whatsoever is preferred in this sense; in British English it is a formal alternative.

For other uses of whatever and however, see a good dictionary. For whoever, what ever, etc, ► 627.
Other Adverbial Clauses

253 no matter who, etc

1 conjunction

No matter can be used with who, whose, what, which, where, when and how.
These expressions are similar to conjunctions, and introduce adverbial clauses.
The meaning is similar to ‘it is not important who/what, etc’.

I’ll love you no matter what you do.
No matter where you go, I’ll follow you.

We use a present tense with a future meaning after no matter (► 231).

No matter where you go, you’ll find people who love music.
You’ll be welcome no matter when you come.

2 no matter who, etc and whoever, etc

The expressions no matter who/what, etc are used rather like whoever,
whatever, etc (► 252). Compare:

- No matter what you say, I won’t believe you.
  Whatever you say, I won’t believe you.
- Call me when you arrive, no matter how late it is.
  Call me when you arrive, however late it is.

However, clauses with whoever/whatever/whichever can be used as subjects or
objects. Clauses with no matter who, etc cannot be used in this way.

Whatever you do is fine with me. (but not No matter what you do is fine
with me.)
You can have whichever you like. (but not You can have no matter which
you like.)

3 no matter and it doesn’t matter

Because no matter who, etc act like conjunctions, they must be used with
two clauses.

No matter when you come, you’ll be welcome. (but not No matter when
you come.)

To introduce just one clause, we can use It doesn’t matter.
It doesn’t matter when you come.

4 no matter what

No matter what can be used at the end of a clause, without a following verb.

I’ll always love you, no matter what. (= . . . no matter what happens.)

For sentences like Something’s the matter with my foot, ► 524.
254 whether ... or ...

We can use whether ... or ... as a double conjunction, with a similar meaning to It doesn't matter whether ... or ...

The ticket will cost the same, whether we buy it now or wait till later.

Present tenses are used to refer to the future.

Whether we go by bus or train, it'll take at least six hours.

Several structures are possible with whether ... or not.

Whether you like it or not, . . . Whether or not you like it, . . .

Whether you like it or whether you don't, . . .

For whether and if, ► 261.

255 as and though: special word order

adjective/adverb/noun + as + clause

As and though can be used in a special structure after an adjective or adverb.

In this case they both mean ‘although’, and suggest an emphatic contrast.

(In American English only as is normally used like this; though is unusual.)

Cold as/though it was, we went out. (= Although it was very cold, . . .)

Bravely as/though they fought, they had no chance of winning.

Much as/though I respect your point of view, I can't agree.

Strange as/though it may seem, I don't like watching cricket.

After a noun, though can be used in this way (but not as).

Scot though she was, she supported the English team.

Occasionally, the structure with as can be used to give a reason.

Tired as she was, I decided not to disturb her. (= Because she was so tired . . .)

In American English, as . . . as is common.

As cold as it was, we went out.

For the word order in structures like I did as good a job as I could, ► 187.

256 than- and as-clauses: leaving out subjects, etc

1 subjects: more than is necessary; as happened

Than and as can take the place of subjects in clauses (rather like relative pronouns).

He worries more than they came last year. (. . . more than it/what is necessary.)

There were a lot of people at the exhibition - more than came last year.

(Not . . . more than they came last year.)

The train might be late, as happened yesterday. (Not . . . as it happened yesterday.)

We've got food for as many people as want it. (Not . . . as they want it.)

Common expressions with as in place of a subject: as follows; as was expected; as was agreed; as is well known.
Other Adverbial Clauses

I have prepared a new plan, as follows. (not ... as it follows.)
They lost money, as was expected. (not ... as it was expected.)
I am sending you the bill, as was agreed. (not ... as it was agreed.)
As is well known, smoking is dangerous. (not As it is well known ...)

2 objects and complements: as I did last year

Than and as can also take the place of objects and complements.

They sent more vegetables than I had ordered. (not ... than I had ordered them.)
Don’t lose your passport, as I did last year. (not ... as I did it last year.)
She was more frightened than I was. (not ... than I was it.)
You’re as tired as I am. (not ... as I am it.)

Some English dialects use what after as and than in these cases.

They sent more paper than what I had ordered. (non-standard)
You’re as tired as what I am. (non-standard)
Section 24  Noun Clauses, Direct and Indirect Speech

INTRODUCTION

uses of noun clauses

Clauses can act as subjects, objects or complements, just like noun phrases. Clauses used like this are called 'noun clauses'. Compare:

- The departure date doesn't matter. (noun phrase subject)
- When we leave doesn't matter. (noun clause subject)
- I told them a lie. (noun phrase object)
- I told them that I knew nothing about it. (noun clause object)
- The main thing is your happiness. (noun phrase complement)
- The main thing is that you're happy. (noun clause complement)

Noun clauses begin with that and with question-words like when, where or who. They are common in indirect speech, where they can also begin with if and whether.

direct and indirect speech

When we report people's words, thoughts, beliefs, etc, we can give the exact words (more or less) that were said, or that we imagine were thought. This kind of structure is called 'direct speech' (though it is used for reporting thoughts as well as speech).

So he said, 'I want to go home,' and just walked out.
She asked, 'What do you want?'
And then I thought, 'Does he really mean it?'

We can also make somebody's words or thoughts part of our own sentence, by using conjunctions with noun clauses, and changing pronouns, tenses and other words where necessary. This kind of structure is called 'indirect speech' or 'reported speech'.

So he said that he wanted to go home, and just walked out.
She asked what I wanted.
And then I wondered whether he really meant it.

These two structures cannot normally be mixed.

She said to me, 'I've lost my keys'.
Or She said to me that she had lost her keys.
(BUT NOT She said to me that I have lost my keys.)

rules for indirect speech

In many languages, indirect speech structures follow special rules and may have special tenses or verb forms. In English, the tenses in indirect speech are mostly the same as in other structures. Compare:

He was happy and he didn't want to go home.
He said he was happy and didn't want to go home.
He stayed out because he was happy and didn't want to go home.
So there is no need for learners to memorise complicated rules for the ‘sequence of tenses’ in indirect speech, or to practise converting direct speech to indirect speech. (Native speakers don’t do this when they are reporting what people say or think.) In a few cases tense use follows special rules: ➤ 263.

This Section deals with direct speech, indirect speech and other uses of noun clauses.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

- X ‘You monster!’ screamed she. ➤ 257.2
- X James wanted to go home because he doesn’t like that party. ➤ 258.4
- X She told me that it has been a wonderful trip. ➤ 259.2
- X He wanted to know what did I need. ➤ 260.1
- X We asked where the money was? ➤ 260.2
- X I am not certain if I see her tomorrow. ➤ 260.3
- X The driver said whether I wanted the town centre. ➤ 260.4
- X There was a big argument about if we should move. ➤ 261.2
- X They can’t decide if to get married. ➤ 261.3
- X ‘Are you happy?’ ‘If I’m happy?’ ➤ 261.5
- X I suggested him to try a different approach. ➤ 262.3
- X The secretary said me not to park there. ➤ 262.3
- X The Greeks thought that the sun goes round the earth. ➤ 263.2
- X That she was foreign made it difficult for her to get a job. ➤ 264.3
- X The judge paid no attention to that she had just lost her husband. ➤ 264.3
- X Who do you think that is outside? ➤ 264.8
- X He replied he was feeling better. ➤ 265.1
- X He disagreed with Copernicus’ view the earth went round the sun. ➤ 265.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

257 direct speech: reporting verbs and word order
258 indirect speech: introduction
259 indirect speech: tenses
260 indirect speech: questions and answers
261 whether and if
262 indirect speech: infinitives
263 indirect speech: advanced points
264 that-clauses
265 leaving out that
266 interrogative (question-word) clauses
257 **direct speech**: reporting verbs and word order

1 **informal spoken reports**: *said, thought*

When we repeat people's words or thoughts, we normally use *say* or *think*. They can go before sentences or at other natural breaks (e.g. between clauses or after discourse markers).

So I *said*, 'What are you doing in our bedroom?' 'I'm sorry,' he *said*, 'I thought it was my room.' Well, I *thought*, that's funny, he's got my handbag open.

'If that's the case,' I *said*, 'what are you doing with my handbag?'

2 **literary direct speech**: *ask, exclaim, suggest* . . .

In novels, short stories, etc, a much wider variety of reporting verbs are used: for example *ask, exclaim, suggest, reply, cry, reflect, suppose, grunt, snarl, hiss, whisper*. And reporting verbs are often put before their subjects ('inversion', ► 271).

'Is this Mr Rochester's house?' *asked* Emma.

'Great Heavens!' *cried* Celia. 'Is there no end to your wickedness? I implore you – leave me alone!' 'Never,' *hissed* the Duke . . .

Inversion is not normal with pronoun subjects.

'You monster!' *she screamed*. (not . . . screamed she.)

In literary writing, reporting expressions often interrupt the normal flow of the sentences quoted.

'Your information,' I *replied*, 'is out of date.'

3 **I was like** . . .

In recent years the structure *be like*, meaning 'say', has become common in informal speech as a reporting formula, especially when describing people's attitudes.

*I was like*, 'Why don’t you come out with us?', and *she was like*, 'OK, cool, what time?'

Originally used mostly by young Americans, the structure is now common in the speech of many people of all ages in both Britain and North America.

*I didn’t want to be like*, 'Please be quiet'. (A university teacher talking about students chatting in lectures.)

258 **indirect speech**: introduction

1 **change of situation**

Words that are spoken or thought in one place by one person may be reported in another place at a different time, and perhaps by another person. Because of this, there are often grammatical differences between direct and indirect speech. Compare:

JAMES (on Saturday evening): *I don’t like this party. I want to go home now.*

JACKIE (on Saturday evening): *James says/said he doesn’t like the party, and he wants to go home.*
DANIEL (on Sunday morning): James said that he didn't like the party, and he wanted to go home.
These differences are mostly natural and logical, and it is not necessary to learn complicated rules about indirect speech in English.

2 pronouns
A change of speaker may mean a change of pronoun.
In the above example, James says I to refer to himself. Jackie and Daniel, talking about what James said, naturally use he.
James said that he didn't like . . . (not James said that I didn't like . . .)

3 ‘here and now’ words
A change of place and time may mean changing or dropping words like here, this, now, today. Daniel, reporting what James said, does not use this and now because he is no longer at the party.
James said that he didn’t like the party . . . (not James said that he didn’t like this party . . .)
. . . he wanted to go home. (not . . . to go home now.)

Some other ‘here and now’ words: next, last, yesterday, tomorrow. Compare:
DIRECT: I’ll be back next week.
INDIRECT: She said she’d be back the next week, but I never saw her again.
DIRECT: Anna got her licence last Tuesday.
INDIRECT: He said Anna had got her licence the Tuesday before.
DIRECT: I had an accident yesterday.
INDIRECT: He said he’d had an accident the day before.
DIRECT: We’ll be there tomorrow.
INDIRECT: They promised to be there the next day.

4 tenses
A change of time may mean a change of tense.
James said that he didn’t like the party . . . (not James said that he doesn’t like the party . . . – when Daniel is talking, the party is finished.)

5 dropping that
The conjunction that is often dropped, especially after common reporting verbs (e.g. say, think) in informal speech. For more details, ► 265.
She said (that) she’d had enough. I think (that) you’re probably right.

259 indirect speech: tenses

1 past reporting verbs: He said he didn’t like the party.
When we report what somebody said or thought, it is usually natural to use different tenses from the original speaker (because we are most often talking at a different time).
JAMES (on Saturday evening): I don’t like this party. I want to go home now.
(present tenses)
DANIEL (on Sunday morning): James said that he didn’t like the party, and he wanted to go home. (past tenses)
It would be strange for Daniel to say on Sunday 'James said that he doesn't like the party', just as it would be strange for Daniel to say, on Sunday, 'James doesn't like the party yesterday and goes home'. The tenses used in indirect speech are usually just the tenses that are natural for the situation. Compare:

*James didn't like the party.*  *James said he didn't like the party.*  
*James wanted to go home because he didn't like the party.*

The second sentence is an example of indirect speech, but it uses exactly the same tense as the other two: the one that is natural.

2 examples of natural tense changes after past reporting verbs

**Simple present → simple past**

**DIRECT:** I need help.

**INDIRECT:** She thought she needed help.

**Present progressive → past progressive**

**DIRECT:** My English is getting better.

**INDIRECT:** I knew my English was getting better.

**Present perfect → past perfect**

**DIRECT:** This has been a wonderful trip.

**INDIRECT:** She told me that it had been a wonderful trip.

**Past → past perfect**

**DIRECT:** Anna grew up in Kenya.

**INDIRECT:** I found out that Anna had grown up in Kenya.

**Will → would**

**DIRECT:** The exam will be difficult.

**INDIRECT:** They said that the exam would be difficult.

**Can → could**

**DIRECT:** I can fly!

**INDIRECT:** Poor chap – he thought he could fly.

**May → might**

**DIRECT:** We may come back early.

**INDIRECT:** They said they might come back early.

**Past perfect tenses do not change.**

**DIRECT:** I arrived late because I had lost the address.

**INDIRECT:** He said he had arrived late because he had lost the address.

3 **would, could, etc: no change**

Past modal verbs are usually unchanged in indirect speech.

**DIRECT:** It would be nice if we could meet.

**INDIRECT:** He said it would be nice if we could meet.

For more details, ► 263.3.
Noun Clauses, Direct and Indirect Speech

Section 24

4 I told them I was British.

After past reporting verbs, we usually change the original tenses even if the things the original speaker said are still true.

- DIRECT: I'm British.
- INDIRECT: I told the police I was British. (The speaker is still British.)
- DIRECT: You can use my car today.
- INDIRECT: Your mother said I could use her car today. Have you got the keys?
- DIRECT: How old are you?
- INDIRECT: Didn't you hear me? I asked how old you were.
- DIRECT: That is my seat.
- INDIRECT: Sorry, I didn’t realise this was your seat.

However, it is often also possible to keep the original speaker’s tenses in these cases.

Didn’t you hear me? I asked how old you are.

For details, ► 263.2.

5 No tense change after He says, I’ll tell her, etc

After present, future and present perfect reporting verbs, tenses are usually the same as in the original (because there is no important change of time).

- DIRECT: I don’t want to play any more.
- INDIRECT: He says he doesn’t want to play any more.
- DIRECT: We need some help.
- INDIRECT: I’ll tell her you need some help.
- DIRECT: Taxes will be raised.
- INDIRECT: The government has announced that taxes will be raised.

260 indirect speech: questions and answers

1 word order: I asked where Alice was.

In reported questions the subject normally comes before the verb in standard English, and auxiliary do is not used.

- DIRECT: Where’s Alice?
- INDIRECT: I asked where Alice was. (NOT usually ... where was Alice.)
- DIRECT: When are you leaving?
- INDIRECT: He wanted to know when I was leaving. (NOT usually ... when was I leaving.)
- DIRECT: What do I need?
- INDIRECT: She asked what she needed. (NOT ... what did she need.)
- DIRECT: Where are the President and his wife staying?
- INDIRECT: I asked where the President and his wife were staying. (NOT Where were staying ...)

The same structure is used for reporting the answers to questions.

I knew how they felt. (NOT ... how did they feel.)
Nobody told me why I had to sign the paper.
( NOT ... why did I have to sign . . .)
She explained what the problem was.
They haven’t told me where I’m going to work.

⇒
In very informal speech, indirect questions sometimes have the same word order as direct questions:
  
  He asked when was I leaving.
  We’re wondering will we get to Cardiff on time, will we be able to park.

2 no question marks
Question marks are not used in reported questions.
  We asked where the money was. (NOT . . . where the money was?)

3 yes/no questions: He asked if . . .
Yes/No questions are reported with if or whether (for the difference, ► 261).
  The driver asked if/whether I wanted the town centre.
  I don’t know if/whether I can help you.
In reported questions, we do not use a present tense after if to talk about the future.
  I’m not sure if I’ll see her tomorrow. (NOT . . . if I see her tomorrow.)

4 say and tell: answers, not questions
Say and tell are not used to report questions.
  NOT The driver said whether I wanted the town centre.
But say and tell can introduce the answers to questions.
  Please say whether you want the town centre.
  He never says where he’s going. I told her what time it was.

For the difference between say and tell, ► 572.

261 whether and if

1 indirect questions
Whether and if can both introduce indirect questions.
  I’m not sure whether/if I’ll have time.
  I asked whether/if she had any messages for me.
After verbs that are more common in a formal style, whether is preferred.
  We discussed whether we should close the shop. (More normal than
  We discussed if . . .)
In a formal style, whether is usually preferred in a two-part question with or.
  The Directors have not decided whether they will recommend a dividend or
  reinvest the profits.
If an indirect question is fronted (► 272), whether is used.
  Whether I’ll have time I’m not sure at the moment.

2 prepositions
After prepositions, only whether is possible.
  There was a big argument about whether we should move to a new house.
  (NOT . . . about if we should move . . .)
  I haven’t settled the question of whether I’ll go back home.

3 infinitives
Whether, but not if, is used before to-infinitives.
  They can’t decide whether to get married now or wait. (NOT They can’t decide
  if-to-get-married . . .)
4 subject, complement and adverbial clauses

When a question-word clause is a subject or complement, whether is normally preferred.

Whether we can stay with my mother is another matter. (subject)

The question is whether the man can be trusted. (complement)

The question is if . . . is also possible, but less common.

The question is if the man can be trusted.

5 not used in echo questions

If and whether are not normally used in ‘echo questions’ (► 304).

‘Are you happy?’ ‘Am I happy? No!’ (not . . . if/whether I’m happy? . . .)

262 indirect speech: infinitives

1 He promised to write.

Speech relating to actions (e.g. promises, agreements, orders, offers, requests, advice and suggestions) is often reported with infinitives.

He promised to write. She agreed to wait for me.

Anna has offered to babysit tonight.

Object + infinitive is common with ask, advise, tell and order (but not normally with offer).

I told Andrew to be careful.

The landlady has asked us to be quiet after nine o’clock.

I advise you to think again before you decide.

The policeman told me not to park there.

but not Anna has offered us to babysit tonight.

2 He asked her how to . . .

The structure question word + infinitive is common (► 111). It often corresponds to a direct question with should.

He asked her how to make a white sauce. (‘How should I make a white sauce?’)

Don’t tell me what to do. I’ve forgotten where to put the keys.

I didn’t know whether to laugh or cry.

3 suggest, say: infinitives not used

We do not use infinitive structures after suggest (► 598) or (usually) after say. However, after these and many other verbs, we can report instructions, etc with that-clauses, usually with modal verbs.

I suggested that he should try a different approach.

(NOT I suggested him to try . . .)

The secretary said that I mustn’t park there. (NOT The secretary said me not to park there.)

I told Andrew that he ought to be careful.

Subjunctives (► 232) and -ing forms are also possible after some verbs, e.g. suggest. Subjunctives are particularly common in American English.

I suggested that he try a different approach.

I suggested trying a different approach.

For the structures that are possible after particular verbs, see a good dictionary.
263 indirect speech: advanced points

1 reporting past tenses

In indirect speech, a speaker’s past tenses are often reported using past perfect tenses.

- DIRECT: I've just written to Jack.
  INDIRECT: She told me she had just written to Jack.
- DIRECT: I saw Penny at the theatre a couple of days ago.
  INDIRECT: In her email, she said she’d seen Penny at the theatre a couple of days before.

However, past perfect tenses are not always used, especially if the time relationships are clear without a change from past to past perfect.

This man on TV said that dinosaurs were around for 250 million years.

I told you Jack (had) phoned this morning, didn’t I?
We were glad to hear you (had) enjoyed your trip to Denmark.

2 reporting present and future tenses

If somebody talked about a situation that has still not changed – that is to say, if the original speaker’s present and future are still present and future – a reporter can often choose whether to keep the original speaker’s tenses or to change them, after a past reporting verb. Both structures are common.

- DIRECT: The earth goes round the sun.
  INDIRECT: He proved that the earth goes/went round the sun.
- DIRECT: How old are you?
  INDIRECT: Are you deaf? I asked how old you are/were.
- DIRECT: It will be windy tomorrow.
  INDIRECT: The forecast said it will/would be windy tomorrow.

We are more likely to change the original speaker’s tenses if we do not agree with what he/she said, if we are not certain of its truth, or if we wish to make it clear that the information comes from the original speaker, not from ourselves.

The Greeks thought that the sun went round the earth. (NOT . . . that the sun goes round the earth.)

She just said she was thirty! I don’t believe her for a moment.
He announced that profits were higher than forecast.

3 modal verbs in indirect speech

The modals would, should, could, might, ought and must are usually unchanged after past reporting verbs in indirect speech. This is also true of needn’t (► 532) and had better (► 77).

- DIRECT: It would be nice if I could see you again.
  INDIRECT: He said it would be nice if he could see me again.
- DIRECT: It might be too late.
  INDIRECT: I was afraid that it might be too late.
- DIRECT: It must be pretty late. I really must go.
  INDIRECT: She said it must be pretty late and she really must go.
- DIRECT: You needn’t pretend to be sorry.
  INDIRECT: I said he needn’t pretend . . .
First-person shall and should may be reported as would in indirect speech (because of the change of person).

DIRECT: We shall/should be delighted to come.
INDIRECT: They said they would be delighted to come.

For had to as a past of must, ► 73.5.

4 reporting ‘Shall I . . .?’
There are different ways of reporting questions beginning Shall I . . .?, depending on whether the speaker is asking for information or making an offer.

- DIRECT: Shall I be needed tomorrow? (BrE, information)
  INDIRECT: He wants to know if he will be needed tomorrow.

- DIRECT: Shall I carry your bag? (offer)
  INDIRECT: He wants to know if he should/can/could carry your bag.

5 conditionals
After past reporting verbs, sentences with if and would are usually unchanged.

DIRECT: It would be best if we started early.
INDIRECT: He said it would be best if they started early.

However, if-sentences that refer to ‘unreal’ situations can change as follows.

DIRECT: If I had any money I'd buy you a drink.
INDIRECT: She said if she had had any money, she would have bought me a drink. (or She said if she had any money, she would buy . . .)

6 negative questions
Negative questions often express emotions such as surprise or enthusiasm (► 218), and these are usually reported in special ways.

- DIRECT: Don’t the children like ice cream?
  INDIRECT: She was surprised that the children didn’t like ice cream.
  (NOT She asked if the children didn’t like ice cream.)

- DIRECT: Isn’t she lovely!
  INDIRECT: I remarked how lovely she was. (NOT I asked if she wasn’t lovely.)

7 word order with what, who and which
Questions beginning who/what/which + be can ask for a subject or a complement. Compare:

Who is the best player here? (This asks for a subject: a possible answer is Jack is the best player here.)

What is the time? (This asks for a complement: a possible answer is The time is 4.30, not 4.30 is the time.)

When we report the first kind of question (where who/what/which + be asks for a subject), two word orders are possible.

- DIRECT: Who’s the best player here?
  INDIRECT: She asked me who was the best player.
  She asked me who the best player was.

- DIRECT: What’s the matter?
  INDIRECT: I asked what was the matter.
  I asked what the matter was.
DIRECT: Which is my seat?
INDIRECT: She wondered which was her seat.
She wondered which her seat was.

This does not normally happen when who/what/which asks for a complement, except in very informal speech.

DIRECT: What's the time?
INDIRECT: She asked what the time was. (informally also She asked what was the time.)

8 She's written I don't know how many books.
Complicated structures can be produced in informal speech when reporting expressions are put into sentences with question-word clauses or relatives.

She's written I don't know how many books.
He's gone I don't know where.
This is the man who Anna said would tell us about the church.

For more about relative structures of this kind,► 237.17.
For more about embedding (clauses inside clauses) in general,► 285.5.

9 indirect speech without reporting verbs
In newspaper, radio and TV reports, reports of parliamentary debates, records of conferences, minutes of meetings, etc, the indirect speech construction is often used with very few reporting verbs. The use of tenses is enough to make it clear that a text is a report.

The Managing Director began his address to the shareholders by summarising the results for the year. Profits on the whole had been high, though one or two areas had been disappointing. It was, however, important to maintain a high level of investment, and he was sure that the shareholders would appreciate . . .

In literary narrative, similar structures are common. The reported speech may be made more vivid by using direct question structures and 'here and now' words.

At breakfast, Daniel refused to go to school. Why should he spend all his time sitting listening to idiots? What use was all that stuff anyway? If he stayed at home he could read books. He might even learn something useful. His father, as usual, was unsympathetic. Daniel had to go to school, by damn, and he had better get moving now, or there'd be trouble.

264 that-clauses

1 that as a connector
That is a conjunction with little real meaning. It simply functions as a connector – it shows that a clause forms part of a larger sentence. Compare:
I understood. He was innocent. (two separate sentences)
I understood that he was innocent. (The clause he was innocent has become the object of the verb in the larger sentence.)
2 *that*-clauses in sentences

A *that*-clause can be the subject of a sentence. (This is very formal and unusual.)

*That she should forget me so quickly was rather a shock.*

It can be a complement after *be.*

*The main thing is that you’re happy.*

Many verbs can have *that*-clauses as objects.

*We knew that the next day would be difficult.*

*I regretted that I was not going to be at the meeting.*

And many nouns and adjectives can be followed by *that*-clauses.

*I admire your belief that you are always right.*

*The Minister is anxious that nothing should get into the papers.*

3 the fact that . . .

It is unusual for *that*-clauses to stand alone as subjects. They are more often introduced by the expression the fact.

*The fact that she was foreign made it difficult for her to get a job.* (Not *That she was foreign made it difficult . . .*)

*The fact that Simon had disappeared didn’t seem to worry anybody.* (More natural than That Simon had disappeared didn’t . . .)

*The fact also introduces that-clauses after prepositions (that-clauses cannot follow prepositions directly).*

*The judge paid no attention to the fact that she had just lost her husband.* (Not . . . paid no attention to that she had just . . .)

*He held her completely responsible for the fact that she took food without paying for it.* (Not . . . responsible for that she took . . .)

*In spite of the fact that she had three small children, he sent her to prison for six months.* (Not In spite of that she had . . .)

For cases when prepositions are dropped before *that*-clauses, ► 210.

4 preparatory *it*

It is often used as a preparatory subject or object for a *that*-clause (► 268–269).

*It surprised me that he was still in bed.* (More natural than *That he was still in bed surprised me.*)

*She made it clear that she was not interested.* (Not *She made that she was not interested clear.*)

For reasons why *that*-clauses are often moved to the ends of sentences, ► 267.

5 *that*-clauses after verbs, nouns and adjectives

Some verbs, nouns or adjectives can be followed by *that*-clauses; some cannot. Compare:

- *I hope that you will have a wonderful time.*
  *I want you to have a wonderful time.* (Not *I want that you’ll have . . .*)
- *I understood his wish that we should be there.*
  *I understood the importance of our being there.* (Not . . . the importance that we should be there.)
- *It’s essential that you visit the art museum.*
  *It’s worth your visiting the art museum.* (Not *It’s worth that you visit . . .*)

Unfortunately, there is no easy way to decide which nouns, verbs or adjectives can be followed by *that*-clauses. It is best to check in a good dictionary.
6 should in that-clauses: It’s important that . . . should

In formal British English, *should* can be used in *that*-clauses after adjectives and nouns expressing the importance of an action (e.g. *important, necessary, vital, essential, eager, anxious, concerned, wish*).

*It’s important that somebody should talk to the police.*
*Is it necessary that my uncle should be informed?*
*I’m anxious that nobody should be hurt.*
*It is his wish that the money should be given to charity.*

This also happens after some verbs expressing similar ideas, especially in sentences about the past.

*He insisted that the contract should be read aloud.*
*I recommended that she should reduce her expenditure.*

In a less formal style, other structures are preferred.

*It’s important that she talks to me when she gets here.*
*Was it necessary to tell my uncle?*

In American English, this use of *should* is unusual; subjunctives may be used (► 232).

*It’s important that somebody talk to the police.*
*Was it necessary that my uncle be informed?*
*I recommend that she reduce her expenditure.*

7 should in that-clauses: It’s surprising that . . . should

*Should* is also used in subordinate clauses after words expressing personal judgements and reactions, especially to facts which are already known or have already been mentioned. (This use, too, is more common in British than American English. It is not particularly formal.)

*It’s surprising that she should say that to you.*
*I was shocked that she shouldn’t have invited Phyllis.*
*I’m sorry you should think I did it on purpose.*
*Do you think it’s normal that the child should be so tired?*

In American English, *would* is more usual in this kind of sentence.

*It was natural that they would want him to go to a good school.*
*(BrE . . . that they should . . .)*

Sentences like these can also be constructed without *should*. Subjunctives cannot be used.

*It’s surprising that she says/said that sort of thing to you.*
*(but not It’s surprising that she say . . .)*
*I was shocked that she didn’t invite Phyllis.*

For *should* in *if*-clauses, ► 244.1; after *in case*, ► 248.2; after *lest*, ► 511; after *so that* and *in order that*, ► 588.

8 Who do you wish (that) you’d married?

A *wh*-question usually refers to the main clause which starts with the question word. However, questions can also refer to subordinate *that*-clauses after verbs like *wish, think* or *say*.

*Who do you wish (that) you’d married, then?*
*How long do you think (that) we should wait?*
*What did you say (that) you wanted for Christmas?*
That is usually dropped in cases like these; it must be dropped when the question word refers to the subject of the subordinate clause.

**Who do you think is outside?** (NOT Who do you think that is outside?)

**What do you suppose will happen now?** (NOT What do you suppose that will happen now?)

### 9 compound conjunctions

Some conjunctions are made up of two or more words, including *that*. Common examples: *so that*, *in order that*, *provided that*, *providing that*, *seeing that*, *given that*, *now that*.

* I got here early *so that* we could have a few minutes alone together.
* I'll come with you *providing that* James doesn't mind.
* OK, I'll help you, *seeing that* you asked so nicely.
* Given that* I'm free on Monday, we could go to Scotland for the weekend.

For the relative pronoun *that*, [233]

### 265 leaving out that

We can often leave out the conjunction *that*, especially in an informal style.

1 **indirect speech:** *He said (that) . . .*

*That* can be left out informally after many common reporting verbs.

*James said (that) he was feeling better.*

*I thought (that) you were in Ireland.*

*The waiter suggested (that) we should go home.*

*That* cannot be dropped after certain verbs, especially verbs that are normally intransitive - e.g. *reply, email, shout*.

*James replied that he was feeling better.* (NOT James replied he was . . .)

*She shouted that she was busy.* (NOT She shouted she was busy.)

2 **after adjectives:** *I'm glad you're all right.*

We can leave out *that* in clauses after some common adjectives.

*I'm glad (that) you're all right.*

*I'm glad (that) you're all right.*

*It's funny (that) he hasn't written.*

*We were surprised (that) she came.*

3 **not dropped after nouns**

*That* is not usually dropped after nouns.

*I did not believe his claim that he was ill.* (More natural than . . . his claim he was ill.)

*He disagreed with Copernicus' view that the earth went round the sun.* (NOT . . . Copernicus' view-the earth went . . .)

4 **conjunctions**

*That* can be left out in an informal style in some common two-word conjunctions, such as *so that*, *such . . . that*, *now that*, *providing that*, *provided that*, *supposing that*, *considering that*, *assuming that*.

*Come in quietly so (that) she doesn't hear you.*

*I was having such a nice time (that) I didn't want to leave.*
The garden looks nice now (that) we’ve got some flowers out.  
You can borrow it provided (that) you bring it back tomorrow.  
Assuming (that) nobody gets lost, we’ll all meet again here at six o’clock.

5 relative structures

We can usually leave out the relative pronoun that when it is the object in a relative clause (► 234.4).

Look! There are the people (that) we met in Brighton.  
Do it the way (that) I showed you.

266 interrogative (question-word) clauses

Besides their use in indirect speech, clauses beginning with question-words (who, what, where, etc) can act as subjects, complements or adverbials.

This structure is often rather informal (especially with how-clauses, ► 492).

Who you invite is your business.  A hot bath is what I need.  
Where we stay doesn’t matter.  This is how much I’ve done.  
I’m surprised at how fast she can run.  
You can eat it how you like. (very informal)

The ‘preparatory it’ structure is often used with subject clauses (► 268).

It’s your business who you invite.  It doesn’t matter where we stay.

For who, which, etc in relative clauses (e.g. the woman who teaches me Spanish), ► 233; for relative what (e.g. What she said made me angry), ► 236.
Section 25  Information Structure

INTRODUCTION

Sentences are not usually isolated: they mostly fit into longer pieces of communication, for example written texts or spoken exchanges. So the way we choose to organise the information in a clause or sentence will partly depend on things outside the sentence: for example what has been said before, or what is already known, or what the speaker or writer wants to emphasise. This is a complicated area of grammar in all languages. This Section looks at ways in which English allows speakers and writers to arrange information in sentences effectively, both by using normal sentence structure and by varying the normal order. The structure of longer texts and exchanges is looked at in Sections 26–27.

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

- He made that he was not interested clear. ► 267.4
- It is not comfortable to sit on this chair. ► 268.7
- It was given the impression that travel expenses would be paid. ► 268.7
- I cannot bear it to see people crying. ► 269.1
- I would appreciate if you would send me a receipt. ► 269.3
- Under no circumstances we can accept late payment. ► 270.7
- Hardly I had arrived when trouble started. ► 270.7
- Here Freddy comes! ► 271.1
- Here your keys are. ► 271.1
- It were the students that were angry. ► 273.1
- It’s Greek that her husband is. ► 273.1
- She didn’t know where she was when woke up. ► 276.3
- Poor little! ► 278.1
- ‘Let’s go for a walk.’ ‘I don’t want.’ ► 280.3
- There are more flowers here than there used to. ► 280.1

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

267 information structure: normal order and variations
268 preparatory it: subject
269 preparatory it: object
270 inversion: auxiliary verb before subject
271 inversion: full verb before subject
272 fronting: This question we have already discussed.
273 cleft sentences: It was my secretary who . . .
274 cleft sentences: What I need is a rest.
275 ellipsis (leaving words out): introduction
276 ellipsis with and, but and or
277 ellipsis at the beginning of a sentence
278 ellipsis in noun phrases
279 ellipsis after auxiliary verbs
280 ellipsis: infinitives
267 information structure: normal order and variations

1 normal order: important new information last

Most often, a clause or sentence moves from ‘known’ to ‘new’: from low to high information value. So we often choose as the subject a person or thing that is already being talked about or that has already been mentioned, or something that the speaker and hearer are both familiar with, or even some new information that is not the main point of the message. The important new information generally comes at the end of a clause or sentence.

'How’s Joe these days?' 'Oh, fine. He’s just got married to a very nice girl.'
(More natural than . . . A very nice girl’s just got married to him.)

My father was bitten by a dog last week. (More natural than A dog bit my father last week.)

Our dog bit somebody this morning. (More natural than Somebody was bitten by our dog this morning.)

'I can’t find my clothes.' 'Well, your shirt’s under my coat.'
(More natural than . . . My coat’s on your shirt.)

To avoid immediately beginning a clause with a completely new element, we can often use the there is structure. For details, ► 20.

There’s a cat on the roof. (More natural than A cat’s on the roof.)

For ‘known’ and ‘new’ information with as, since and because, ► 377.

2 choosing the right verb

We can often get the most suitable subject by choosing the right verb. Compare:

- The furniture factory employs 7,000 people.
  7,000 people work for the furniture factory.
- He led the children through the silent streets.
  The children followed him through the silent streets.

3 choosing the right structure

In many situations, there is an ‘agent’ (the person or thing who does something) and a ‘patient’ (the person or thing that something is done to). If we want to make the agent the subject, we can usually do this by choosing an active verb form (► 2).

The gale blew Charlotte’s roof off.
Somebody’s dropped ketchup all over the floor.

If we want to make the patient the subject, we can usually do this by choosing a passive verb form (► 57).

Charlotte’s roof was blown off by the gale.
Ketchup has been dropped all over the floor.

If we want to make something else the subject, we can often do this by using a structure with have + object + past participle (► 109.3).

Charlotte had her roof blown off by the gale.
The floor has had ketchup dropped all over it.
Structures with *have* are often used to ‘personalise’ a situation by making a person the subject.

*I've got the house full of children.* (instead of *The house is full of children.* or *There are children all over the house.*)

4 **end-weight:** *It worried me that she hadn’t been in touch.*

Longer and heavier structures usually come last in a clause or sentence.

(These usually have the highest ‘information-value’ in any case.)

*Children are sometimes discouraged by the length of time it takes to learn a musical instrument.* (More natural than *The length of time it takes to learn a musical instrument sometimes discourages children.*)

Because of this, we often use a structure with ‘preparatory it’ in order to move a clause subject or object to the end of a sentence. For details, ► 268-269.

*It worried me that she hadn’t been in touch for so long.* (More natural than *That she hadn’t been in touch for so long worried me.*)

*It’s important to tell us everything you know.* (More natural than *To tell us everything you know is important.*)

*He made it clear that he was not in the least interested.* (Not *He made that he was not in the least interested clear.*)

Adverbials do not normally separate the verb from the object in an English clause (► 196.1). However, a very long and heavy object may come after a shorter adverbial. Compare:

*She plays the violin very well* (Not *She plays very well the violin.*)

*She plays very well almost any instrument that you can think of and several that you can’t.*

End-weight can also affect the word order of indirect questions. Compare:

*I’m not sure what the point is.*

*I’m not sure what is the point of spending hours and hours discussing this.*

5 **changing the order:** inversion and fronting

If we move to the end of a sentence something that does not normally belong there, this can draw extra attention to it. Fronting (► 272, 299.3) has this effect.

*This question we have already discussed.*

*People like that I just can’t stand.* *He’s a funny guy, old Fred.*

Inversion (putting the verb before the subject: ► 271) is not only used for forming questions. It can also help to structure the flow of information.

*Along the road came a strange procession.* (highlighting ‘a strange procession’)

6 **separating out what is important:** cleft sentences

Cleft sentences (► 273-274) separate out one part of a clause for special attention and put it at the beginning or end. The rest is moved into the background, in a relative clause.

*It was your child who broke the window.* (highlighting ‘your child’)

*What I need is a good rest.* (highlighting ‘a good rest’)

7 **dropping what is unimportant:** ellipses

If we leave out unnecessary words, this puts more emphasis on the rest, helping to show what is important. This can happen in various ways in speech and writing, ► 275–280.
268 preparatory it: subject

1 It's nice to talk to you.
When the subject of a clause is an infinitive expression, this does not normally come at the beginning. We usually prefer to start with the 'preparatory subject' it, and to put the infinitive expression later (long or complicated items are often put towards the end of a sentence, ► 267). Preparatory it is common before be + adjective/noun.

It's nice to talk to you. (More natural than To talk to you is nice.)
It was good of you to phone.
It was stupid of you to leave the door unlocked.
It's important to reserve in advance.
It's my ambition to run a three-hour marathon.
It was a pleasure to listen to her.
It upsets me to hear people arguing all the time.

It can also be a preparatory subject for for + object + infinitive (► 113).

It's nice to talk to you. It's crazy her going off like that.
It will suit me best for you to arrive at about ten o'clock.
It's essential for the papers to be ready before Thursday.

2 It's probable that we'll be late.
We also use preparatory it when the subject of a clause is itself a clause beginning with that, what, how, etc.

It's probable that we'll be a little late.
It doesn't interest me what you think.
It's surprising how many unhappy marriages there are.
It's exciting when a baby starts talking.

3 It was nice seeing you.
It can be a preparatory subject for an -ing form. This is usually informal.

It was nice seeing you. It's crazy her going off like that.
It's worth going to Wales if you have the time.
It's no use trying to explain – I'm not interested.
It surprised me you not remembering my name.

For more information about structures with worth, ► 634.
For there as a preparatory subject with any/no use, ► 20.2.

4 It takes . . . + infinitive
Note the common use of this structure to say how much time is necessary (► 602).

It took me months to get to know her.
How long does it take to get to London from here?

5 if, as if and as though
It is used to introduce some clauses with if, as if and as though.

It looks as if we're going to have trouble with Anna again.
It's not as if this was the first time she's been difficult.
It will be a pity if we have to ask her to leave.
But it looks as though we may have to.
6 It’s amazing the way they work together.
It is not normally used as a preparatory subject for noun phrases.
   The new concert hall is wonderful. (not It’s wonderful the new concert hall.)
But in an informal style, it can be a preparatory subject for noun + relative clause.
   It’s wonderful the enthusiasm that the children show.
This is very common with the way . . .
   It’s amazing the way (that) they work together.
   It’s strange the way you know what I’m thinking.
For passive structures with it as a preparatory subject, ► 63.

7 preparatory it not possible for complements
It can be used as a preparatory subject, or as a preparatory object (► 269), but not as a preparatory complement.
   This chair is comfortable to sit on. but not It is comfortable to sit on this chair.
   (to sit on is the complement of comfortable.)
   The impression was given that travel expenses would be paid. but not It was given the impression that travel expenses would be paid. (that travel expenses . . . is the complement of the impression.)

269 preparatory it: object

1 I find it difficult to talk to you.
We can sometimes use it as a 'preparatory object'. This happens when the object of a verb is an infinitive or a clause, and when this has an adjective or noun complement. For example, instead of saying 'I find to talk to you difficult', we prefer 'I find it difficult to talk to you'.

subject + verb + it + complement + infinitive/clause

We found it tiring to listen to him. My blister made it a problem to walk.
I thought it strange that she hadn’t written.
George made it clear what he wanted.
It is quite often dropped from make (it) clear that . . .
   The Prime Minister has made clear that he will not allow a free vote.
Note that this structure is not normally used when there is no adjective or noun complement after the verb.
   I cannot bear to see people crying. (not I cannot bear it to see people crying.)
   I remember that we were very happy. (not I remember it that . . .)
But note the structure I like/love/hate it when . . .
   I love it when you sing. I hate it when strangers use my first name.
Note also the idiom I take it that . . . (= I assume that . . .).
   I take it that you won’t be working tomorrow.

2 I found it strange being . . .
This structure is also possible with -ing form objects.
   I found it strange being in her house.
3 *I would appreciate it if...*

It is used as a preparatory object for an *if*-clause after *would appreciate.*

*I would appreciate it if you would keep me informed.* (not *I would appreciate if you would...*)

4 *owe and leave*

Note the structures *owe it to somebody to...* and *leave it to somebody to...*

*We owe it to society to make our country a better place.*

*I'll leave it to you to decide.*

### 270 inversion: auxiliary verb before subject

We put an auxiliary verb (and non-auxiliary *have* and *be*) directly before the subject of a clause in several different structures.

#### 1 questions

*Have your father and mother arrived?* (not *Have arrived your father and mother?)

*Where is the concert taking place?* (not *Where is taking place the concert?* or *Where the concert is taking place?*)

Spoken questions do not always have this word order (► 302).

*You're coming tomorrow?*

Indirect questions do not usually have this order (► 260).

*I wondered what time the film was starting.* (not ...what time was the film starting.)

However, in formal writing inversion is sometimes used with *be* in indirect questions after *how,* especially when the subject is long.

*I wondered how reliable was the information I had been given.*

#### 2 exclamations

Exclamations (► 223) often have the form of negative questions (► 218).

*Isn't it cold?* *Hasn't she got lovely eyes?*

In spoken American English, exclamations often have the same form as ordinary (non-negative) questions (but with different intonation).

*Have you got a surprise coming!* *Was I mad!*

In a rather old-fashioned literary style, inversion is sometimes found in exclamations after *how* and *what.*

*How beautiful are the flowers!* *What a peaceful place is Skegness!*

#### 3 with *may*

*May* can come before the subject in wishes.

*May all your wishes come true!*

#### 4 after *so, neither, nor*

In ‘short answers’ and similar structures, these words are followed by auxiliary verb + subject.

*I'm hungry.' 'So am I.' *I don't like opera.' 'Neither/Nor do I.'*

For more details of these structures, ► 309.
5 after as, than and so

Inversion sometimes happens after as, than and so in a literary style.

*She was very religious, as were most of her friends.*

*City dwellers have a higher death rate than do country people."

*So ridiculous did she look that everybody burst out laughing.*

6 conditional clauses: *Were she my daughter...*

In formal and literary conditional clauses, an auxiliary verb can be put before the subject instead of using if (► 244.5).

*Were she my daughter... (= If she were my daughter...)*

*Had I realised what you intended... (= If I had realised...)*

Negatives are not contracted in this case.

*Had we not spent all our money already, ... (NOT Hadn’t we spent...)*

7 after negative and restrictive expressions: *At no time was he...*

If a negative adverb or adverbial expression is put at the beginning of a clause for emphasis, it is usually followed by auxiliary verb + subject. These structures are mostly rather formal.

*Under no circumstances can we accept late payment.*

*At no time was the President aware of what was happening.*

*Not until much later did she learn who her real father was.*

The same structure is possible after a complete clause beginning not until...

*Not until he received her letter did he fully understand her feelings.*

Inversion is also used after restrictive words like hardly (in BrE), seldom, rarely, little and never, and after only + time expression. This is formal or literary.

*Hardly had I arrived when trouble started. (BrE)*

*Seldom have I seen such a remarkable creature.*

*Little did he realise the danger he faced.*

*Never... was so much owed by so many to so few. (Churchill)*

*Only then did I understand what she meant.*

*Only after her death was I able to appreciate her.*

*Not only did we lose our money, but we were nearly killed.*

*Not a single word did he say.*

Inversion is not used after not far... and not long...

*Not far from here you can see foxes. (NOT Not far from here can you...)*

*Not long after that she got married.*

271 inversion: full verb before subject

1 after adverbial expressions of place: *Along the road came...*

When an adverbial expression of place or direction comes at the beginning of a clause, intransitive verbs are often put before their subjects. This happens especially when a new indefinite subject is being introduced. The structure is most common in literary and descriptive writing.

*Under a tree was lying one of the biggest men I had ever seen.*

*On the grass sat an enormous frog.*

*Directly in front of them stood a great castle.*

*Along the road came a strange procession.*
This structure is often used in speech with here, there and other short adverbs and adverb particles.

- Here comes Freddy! (Not Here Freddy comes!)
- There goes your brother.
- I stopped the car, and up walked a police officer.
- The door opened and out came Angela's boyfriend.

If the subject is a pronoun, it goes before the verb.

- Here she comes. (Not Here comes she.) Off we go!

Inversion is normal in here/there is/are . . .

- Here are your keys. (Not Here your keys are.)
- Look – there’s the bus.

In informal speech, here’s and there’s often introduce plural subjects (► 130.6).

- Here’s those papers you wanted.

2 reporting: ‘What do you mean?’ asked Henry.

In story-telling, the subject often comes after reporting verbs like said, asked, suggested, etc when these follow direct speech.

- ‘What do you mean?’ asked Henry. (Or . . . Henry asked.)
- ‘I love you,’ whispered Jess.

If the subject is a pronoun, it usually comes before the verb.

- ‘What do you mean?’ he asked.

272 fronting: This question we have already discussed.

1 People like that I just can’t stand.

Affirmative sentences most often begin with the grammatical subject.

- I just can’t stand people like that.

If we begin a sentence with something else (‘fronting’), this is often to make it the topic – the thing we are talking about – even though it is not the grammatical subject. This can also move the main new information to the end – its most natural position (► 267).

- This question we have already discussed at some length.
- All the other information which you need I am sending today.

(from a business letter)

Any video in our catalogue we can supply, if available. (Notice in music shop)

Fronting is particularly common in speech.

- People like that I just can’t stand. These books I’m just going to give away.
- (A) fat lot of good that does me. (= ‘That doesn’t do me much good’, but putting strong emphasis on me.)

Question-word clauses (► 266) are often fronted.

- What I’m going to do next I just don’t know.
- How she got the gun through customs we never found out.

2 Very good lesson we had.

Fronting words in short sentences can also give them extra emphasis. This happens mostly in speech.

- Strange people they are! Very good lesson we had yesterday.
Information Structure

Section 25

Last for ever these shoes will.
In a few exclamatory expressions, a noun is fronted before that, but this is uncommon in modern English.
Fool that I was!

3 adverbs, etc: Off we go!
Many adverbs and adverbial expressions can go at the beginning of a clause (► 196–198). This often happens when we are using the adverbs to structure a piece of narrative or a description.
Once upon a time there were three little pigs. One day . . . Then . . . Soon after that . . . After dark, . . .
Inside the front door there is . . . Opposite the living room is . . . On the right you can see . . . At the top of the stairs . . .
Adverb particles are often fronted when giving instructions to small children.
Off we go! Down you come!
Inversion (► 270–271) is necessary after some emphatic fronted adverbs and adverbial expressions.
Under no circumstances can tickets be exchanged. (not Under no circumstances tickets can . . .)
Round the corner came Mrs Porter.

4 fronting with as or though
Fronted adjectives and adverbs are possible in a structure with as or though (► 255).
Young as I was, I realised what was happening.
Tired though she was, she went on working.
Fast though she drove, she could not catch them.
Much as I respect his work, I cannot agree with him.

See also entries on basic word order (► 215), normal order and variations (► 267), ‘spacing out’ information in speech (► 299.1), tags (► 299.3) and cleft sentences (► 273–274).
For the use of passive and other structures to bring objects to the front, ► 267.3, 67.1.

273 cleft sentences: It was my secretary who . . .

We can emphasise particular words and expressions by putting everything into a kind of relative clause except the words we want to emphasise; this makes them stand out. These structures are called ‘cleft sentences’ by grammarians (cleft means ‘divided’). They are useful in writing (because we cannot use intonation for emphasis in written language), but they are also common in speech.
The emphasis is often contrastive – to contradict a false belief or expectation.

1 preparatory it
In one kind of cleft sentence, we use preparatory it is/was (► 268). The words to be emphasised are usually joined to the relative clause by that.
Compare:
My secretary sent the bill to Mr Harding yesterday.
It was my secretary that sent the bill to Mr Harding yesterday.
(not somebody else)
It was the bill that my secretary sent to Mr Harding yesterday.
(not something else)
It was Mr Harding that my secretary sent the bill to yesterday.
(not to somebody else)
It was yesterday that my secretary sent the bill to Mr Harding.
(not another day)
Negative structures are also possible.
It wasn’t my husband that sent the bill . . .
Who is possible instead of that when a personal subject is emphasised.
It was my secretary who sent . . .
When a plural subject is emphasised, the following verb is plural (but it is/was remains singular).
It is the students that are angry. (not . . . that is angry.)
It was his parents who paid the fees. (not It were his parents . . .)
The verb cannot be emphasised with this structure: we cannot say It was sent that my secretary sent the bill.
Nor can a complement be emphasised: we cannot say It’s Jenny that Mr Harding’s secretary is.

2 It is I who . . .; It is me that . . .
When an emphasised subject is a pronoun, there are two possibilities. Compare:
– It is I who am responsible. (formal)
  It’s me that’s/who’s responsible. (informal)
– It is you who are in the wrong. (formal)
  It’s you that’s in the wrong. (informal)
To avoid being either too formal or too informal in this case, we could say, for example, I’m the person / the one who's responsible.

274 cleft sentences: What I need is a rest.

1 What I need is . . .
In this kind of cleft sentence, the words to be emphasised are connected to a what-clause (or similar structure) by is/was.
A rest is what I need.
A motorbike is what Emily kept in the garden shed.
The words to be emphasised are often put last: this gives them even more force.
What I need is a rest.
What Emily kept in the garden shed was a motorbike.
This structure can be used to emphasise a complement.
The secretary is what Jake is, actually. (or Actually, what Jake is is the secretary.)
To emphasise words that refer to people, we use structures like the person who.
The person who kept a motorbike in the garden shed was Emily.
Instead of what or the person, we can use less general expressions.
‘Casablanca’ is a film (that) I watch again and again.
You’re the woman (that) I always see in my dreams.
A what-clause is normally considered to be singular; if it begins a cleft sentence it is followed by is/was. But a plural verb is sometimes possible before a plural noun in an informal style.
What we want is/are some of those cakes.

For more information about what-clauses, ➤ 236.

2 the place where . . . ; the day when . . . ; the reason why . . .
We can use these expressions to emphasise a place, time or reason.
- Jake spent Tuesday IN LONDON.
   London was the place where Jake spent Tuesday.
- Jake went to London ON TUESDAY.
   Tuesday was the day when/that Jake went to London.
- Jake went to London TO SEE TOM.
   To see Tom was the reason why Jake went to London.

The place, the day or the reason can be dropped in an informal style, especially in the middle of a sentence.
Spain’s where we’re going this year.
Why I’m here is to talk about my plans. (More formal: The reason why I’m here is . . .)

3 emphasising verbs: What he did was . . .
When we want to emphasise a verb (or an expression beginning with a verb), we have to use a more complicated structure with what . . . do. Infinitives with and without to are possible.
What he did was (to) scream. What she does is (to) write science fiction.

Instead of an infinitive, we often use subject + verb in an informal style.
What she does is, she writes science fiction.
What I’ll do is, I’ll phone Jack and ask his advice.

In a very informal style, is/was may be dropped.
What I’ll do, I’ll have a word with Dan.
What they did, they took his money and then just vanished.

4 emphasising a whole sentence: What happened was that . . .
A whole sentence can be given extra emphasis by using a cleft structure with what and the verb happen. Compare:
The car broke down.
What happened was (that) the car broke down.

5 other structures
All (that), and expressions with thing, can be used in cleft sentences.
All I want is a home somewhere. All you need is love.
All (that) I did was (to) touch the window, and it broke.
The only thing I remember is a terrible pain in my head.
The first thing was to make some coffee.
My first journey abroad is something I shall never forget.
Time expressions can be emphasised with *It was not until...* and *It was only when...*

*It was not until I met you that I knew real happiness.*
*It was only when I read her email that I realised what was happening.*

At the beginning of a cleft sentence, *this* and *that* often replace emphasised *here* and *there*. Compare:
- You pay here.
  *This is where you pay.* (Or *Here is where you pay.*)
- We live there.
  *That's where we live.* (Or *There's where we live.*)

For more about question-word clauses, ► 266.
For more general information about sentence structure and the arrangement of information in sentences, ► 267.

**275 ellipsis (leaving words out): introduction**

We often leave out words to avoid repetition, or in other cases when the meaning can be understood without them. This is called ‘ellipsis’.

**1 replies**

In replies we usually avoid repeating information that has just been given.
*‘What time are you coming?’ ‘About ten.’* (More likely than ‘I’m coming about ten’.)
*‘Who said that?’ ‘Jack.’* (More likely than ‘Jack said that’.)
*‘How many chairs do you need?’ ‘Three.’* (More likely than ‘I need three chairs’.)
*‘She’s out this evening?’ ‘Yes, working.’* (More likely than ‘Yes, she’s working this evening’.)

**2 structures with and, but and or**

Repeated words are often dropped in co-ordinate structures (► 276).
*a knife and fork* (= a knife and a fork)
*She was poor but happy.* (= . . . but she was happy.)

**3 at the beginning of a sentence**

In informal speech, unstressed words are often dropped at the beginning of a sentence, if the meaning is clear. For details, ► 277.
*Seen Lucy?* (= Have you seen Lucy?)
*Doesn’t know what she’s talking about.* (= She doesn’t . . .)

**4 at the end of a noun phrase**

It is sometimes possible to drop nouns after adjectives, noun modifiers and/or determiners. For details, ► 278.
*‘Do you want large eggs?’ ‘No, I’ll have small.’* (= . . . small eggs.)
*My car isn’t working, I’ll have to use Emily’s.* (= . . . Emily’s car.)
*We’re going to hear the London Philharmonic tonight.* (= . . . the London Philharmonic Orchestra.)
*‘Which shoes are you going to wear?’ ‘These.’* (= These shoes.)
5 at the end of a verb phrase

Auxiliary verbs are often used alone instead of full verbs. For details, ► 279.

'I haven't paid.' 'I haven't either.' (= ... I haven't paid either.)

She said she'd phone, but she didn't. (= ... didn't phone.)

This type of ellipsis can include complements that follow the verb.

I was planning to go to Paris next week, but I can't. (= ... I can't go to Paris next week.)

The same structures are possible with non-auxiliary be and have.

I thought she would be angry, and she was.

He says he hasn't any friends, but I know he has.

6 infinitives

We can use to instead of repeating a whole infinitive. For details, ► 280.

'Are you and Gillian getting married?' 'We hope to.' (= We hope to get married.)

I don't dance much now, but I used to a lot.

Sometimes a whole infinitive, including to, is left out.

Come when you want. (= ... when you want to come.)

'Have a good time.' 'I'll try.' (= I'll try to have a good time.)

7 comparative structures with as and than

We can leave out words after as and than, if the meaning is clear.

The weather isn't as good as last year. (= ... as it was last year.)

I found more blackberries than you. (= ... than you found.)

For missing subject or object after as and than (e.g. as was expected), ► 256.

8 question-word clauses

Clauses can be dropped after question words.

Somebody has been stealing our flowers, but I don't know who. (= ... I don't know who has been stealing our flowers.)

Become a successful writer. This book shows you how.

9 that and relative pronouns

In an informal style, the conjunction that is often dropped (► 265); object relative pronouns can also be dropped (► 234.4).

I knew (that) she didn't want to help me.

This is the restaurant (which) I was talking about.

10 reduced relative structures: the tickets available, etc

We can sometimes leave out a relative pronoun and the verb be before participles, or adjectives such as available, possible. For details, ► 237.11.

Who's the girl dancing with your brother? (= ... who is dancing . . .)

It will not be possible to finish the job in the time available.

(= ... that is available.)

11 be after conjunctions

Subject pronouns with forms of be can be left out after certain conjunctions, especially in a formal style.

Start when ready. (= ... when you are ready.)

grammar • 275 ellipsis (leaving words out): introduction
Though intelligent, he was very poorly educated.
(= Though he was intelligent . . .)

When ordering, please send £1.50 for postage and packing.
Phone me if (it is) necessary. He had a small heart attack while asleep.
I’m enclosing the signed contract, as agreed.
Leave in oven until browned on top.

12 prepositions
In an informal style, prepositions can be dropped in a few time expressions (► 214.2–214.6).
See you (on) Monday night.
We’re staying here (for) another three months.
What time shall I come? (More natural than At what time . . .?)

For cases like We need a place to live (in), ► 554.

13 pronouns after prepositions
In British English, pronoun objects can sometimes be dropped after prepositions. This happens, for example, when have or with are used in descriptive structures.
My socks have got holes in (them).
I’d like a piece of toast with butter on (it).

14 abbreviated styles
In certain styles, many or all non-essential words can be dropped.
For details, ► 291.
Take 500g butter and place in small saucepan.
Single man looking for flat Oxford area.

DOG FINDS ROMAN TREASURE

276 ellipsis with and, but and or

1 various kinds of word left out
When expressions are joined by and, but or or, we often leave out repeated words or phrases of various kinds.
a knife and (a) fork  antique (furniture) or modern furniture
these men and (these) women  in France, (in) Germany or (in) Spain
ripe apples and (ripe) pears  She can read, but (she) can’t write.
The Minister likes golf but (the Minister) hates fishing.
We drove (across America), rode (across America), flew (across America) and
walked across America.
She was poor but (she was) happy.
The food (is ready) and the drinks are ready.
Jake (washed the dishes) and Sophie washed the dishes.

We can sometimes drop a verb that is repeated in a different form.
I have always paid my bills and I always will (pay . . .).
2 word order

Note that when two verbs, objects, etc are the same, it is not always the second that is left out. We may have to leave out the first to avoid confusion, or to produce a simpler word order and sentence structure.

*Cats (catch mice) and dogs catch mice.* (not *Cats catch mice and dogs.*)

*I can (go) and will go.*

In informal speech and writing, ellipsis does not usually interrupt the normal word order of a clause or sentence. Sentences like the following are typical of a more formal style.

*Daniel planned and Megan paid for the trip.* (Less formal: *Daniel planned the trip and Megan paid for it.*)

*Kevin likes dancing and Annie athletics.* (Less formal: *Kevin likes dancing and Annie likes athletics.*)

*The children will carry the small boxes and the adults the large ones.*

*Megan went to Greece and Alice to Rome.*

*You seem, and she certainly is, ill.*

3 other conjunctions

Ellipsis is not normally possible after other conjunctions besides *and*, *but* and *or*.

*She didn’t know where she was when she woke up.* (not . . . *when woke up.*)

However, ellipsis of subject pronouns with forms of *be* is possible in some cases (e.g. *if possible, when arriving*), ▶ 115.6, 244.6, 251.5.

4 (and) then

In an informal style, ellipsis is sometimes possible after *then*, even if *and* is dropped.

*Daniel started first, (and) then Tom (started).*

For singular or plural verbs after expressions with *and* or *or*, ▶ 130.4.

For singular and plural verbs with *neither . . . nor*, ▶ 228.

277 ellipsis at the beginning of a sentence

1 words that can be left out

In informal spoken English we often leave out unstressed words at the beginning of a sentence if the meaning is clear without them. Words that can be left out include articles (*the, a/an*), possessives (*my, your, etc*), personal pronouns (*I, you, etc*), auxiliary verbs (*am, have, etc*) and the preparatory subject *there*.

*Car’s running badly.* (= *The car’s . . .*)

*Wife’s away.* (= *My wife’s . . .*)

*Couldn’t understand a word.* (= *I couldn’t . . .*)

*Must dash.* (= *I must dash.*)

*Won’t work, you know.* (= *It won’t work . . .*)

*Seen Joe?* (= *Have you seen Joe?*

*Keeping well, I hope?* (= *You’re keeping well . . .*)

*Nobody at home.* (= *There’s nobody at home.*)

*Careful what you say.* (= *Be careful . . .*)
Catch up with you later. (= I’ll catch up . . .)
Leave at half past? (= Should we leave . . .?)
Soon as I wake up, I check my messages. (= As soon as . . .)
This structure is common in advertisements. Two real examples:
Thinking of postgraduate study? Call for a place now. (= Are you thinking . . .?)
Speak a foreign language? Speak it better. (= Do you speak . . .?)

2 unstressed forms of be, will, would, have
We do not usually drop words so as to begin sentences with unstressed forms of be, will, would or auxiliary have (though this sometimes happens in messages, diary entries and other kinds of very informal writing).

I’m coming tomorrow. or Coming tomorrow. (not Am coming tomorrow.
Am is not stressed.)
I’ll see you soon. or See you soon. (not Will see you soon. Will is not stressed.)
Haven’t seen him. (but not Have seen him. Have is not stressed.)

3 before pronouns: You ready?
Auxiliary verbs can be left out before personal pronouns except I and it.

You ready? (= Are you ready?)
She want something? (= Does she want something?)
but not I late? It raining?

4 Dutch, aren’t you?
Ellipsis is very common in sentences that have some sort of tag (► 305–306, ► 299) on the end, especially in British English.

Can’t swim, myself. Like a cigar, I do. Dutch, aren’t you?
Getting in your way, am I? Going camping, your kids?

278 ellipsis in noun phrases

1 ellipsis after adjectives: boiled, please
A repeated noun can sometimes be dropped after an adjective, if the meaning is clear, especially when one is talking about common kinds of choice.

‘What kind of potatoes would you like?’ ‘Boiled (potatoes), please.’

We haven’t got any brown sugar. Only white (sugar).
This often happens after superlatives.

I think I’ll buy the cheapest.

For other structures in which adjectives are used without nouns, ► 188.

2 ellipsis after this, numbers, possessives, etc
Nouns can also be dropped after most determiners (► Sections 12–13), if the meaning is clear.

This is Ella’s coat, and that (coat) is mine.
This also happens after numbers, nouns with possessive ’s, own and (an)other.

I’m not sure how many packets I need, but I’ll take two (packets) to start with.
Our train’s the second (train) from this platform.
You take Dan’s car, and I’ll take Susie’s (car).
‘Can I borrow your pen?’ ‘No, find your own (pen).’
‘That beer went down fast.’ ‘Have another (beer).’
3 well-known names

The last words of well-known names are often dropped.

She's playing the Beethoven with the Scottish National tomorrow night. (= ... the Beethoven violin concerto with the Scottish National Orchestra ...)
He's staying at the Hilton. (= ... the Hilton Hotel.)
We're going to see 'Hamlet' at the Mermaid. (= ... the Mermaid Theatre.)

When we talk about people's homes, and about shops and offices, possessives are often used without following nouns.

We spent the weekend at Jack and Emily's.
Could you pick up some chops from the butcher's?
I'm going to call in at the doctor's on the way home.

4 other situations

Note that nouns are not normally dropped in other situations.

Poor little boy! (not Poor little!)  
The most important thing is to keep calm. (not The most important is to ...)

279 ellipsis after auxiliary verbs

1 auxiliary instead of complete verb phrase

We can avoid repetition by using an auxiliary verb instead of a complete verb phrase, if the meaning is clear. The auxiliary verb usually has a 'strong' pronunciation (► 315), and contractions (► 337) are not normally used except in negatives.

'Get up.' 'I am /æm/.' (= I am getting up.)
He said he'd write, but he hasn't. (= ... hasn't written.)
I'll come and see you when I can. (= ... can come and see you.)
'Shall I tell him what I think? 'I wouldn't if I were you.'

Do can be used before ellipsis if there is no other auxiliary to repeat.

I may come to London. I'll phone you if I do.
He said he would arrive before seven, and he did.

Other words, as well as the rest of the verb phrase, can be left out after the auxiliary.

I can't see you today, but I can tomorrow. (= ... I can see you ...)
'I've forgotten the address.' 'I have too.'
'You're not trying very hard.' 'I am.'
'You wouldn't have won if I hadn't helped you.' 'Yes, I would (have).'

This also happens after non-auxiliary be and have.

'I'm tired.' 'I am too.' 'Who's the driver?' 'I am.'

Who has a dictionary? 'I have.'

2 short answers, etc: Yes, I have.

Ellipsis is used regularly in short answers (► 308), reply questions (► 307) and question tags (► 305–306).

'Have you finished?' 'Yes, I have.'
'I can whistle through my fingers.' 'Can you, dear?'
You don't want to buy a car, do you?
3 **so am I, etc**

Ellipsis also happens after so, neither and nor (► 309). Note the word order.

‘I’ve forgotten the address.’ ‘So have I.’

She doesn’t like olives, and neither do I.

4 **ellipsis before complete form: If you can, call me . . .**

Ellipsis normally happens when an expression is used for a second time, after the complete form has already been used once (see above examples). However, it can sometimes happen the other way round. This is common in sentences beginning with if.

If you can, call me when you arrive.
If you could, I’d like you to help me this evening.
If you prefer, we can go tomorrow instead.

5 **more than one auxiliary: I could have been.**

When there is more than one auxiliary, ellipsis usually happens after the first.

‘You wouldn’t have enjoyed the film.’ ‘Yes, I would.’ (= . . . I would have enjoyed the film.)

However, more auxiliaries can be included. The first is stressed.

‘Could you have been dreaming?’ ‘I suppose I could / COULD have / COULD have been.’

We often include a second auxiliary verb if it has not appeared before in the same form.

‘I think Emily should be told.’ ‘She has been.’ (More natural than . . . She has.)

And we normally include a second auxiliary verb after a change of modal auxiliary.

‘Emily should be told.’ ‘She must be.’ (More natural than . . . She must.)

6 **substitution with do: He might do.**

In British English, a main verb that is left out after an auxiliary can be replaced by do. For details, ► 28.

‘Do you think he’ll phone?’ ‘He might do.’ (AmE . . . He might.)

For do so, ► 29.

**280 ellipsis: infinitives**

1 **to used instead of whole infinitive: We hope to.**

We can use to instead of the whole infinitive of a repeated verb (and following words), if the meaning is clear.

‘Are you and Gillian getting married?’ ‘We hope to.’
‘Let’s go for a walk.’ ‘I don’t want to.’
I don’t dance much now, but I used to a lot.
Sorry I shouted at you. I didn’t mean to.
‘Somebody ought to clean up the bathroom.’ ‘I’ll ask Jack to.’
Be and have (used for possession) are not usually dropped.

There are more flowers than there used to be. (NOT...than there used to.)
She hasn’t been promoted yet, but she ought to be. (NOT...but she ought to.)
You’ve got more freckles than you used to have. (NOT You’ve got more freckles than you used to.)

2 ellipsis of whole infinitive: I’ll try.
In some cases the whole infinitive can be left out. This happens after nouns and adjectives.

He’ll never leave home; he hasn’t got the courage (to).
You can’t force him to leave home if he’s not ready (to).

It also happens after verbs which can stand alone without a following infinitive.

‘Can you start the car?’ ‘I’ll try (to).’

3 (would) like, want, etc
We cannot usually leave out to after would like/love/hate/prefer, want and choose.

‘Are you interested in working abroad?’ ‘I’d like to.’ (NOT...I’d like.)
My parents encouraged me to study art, but I didn’t want to.

(Not...I didn’t want.)

However, to is often dropped after want, and almost always after like, when these are used after certain conjunctions – for instance when, if, what, as.

Come when you want (to). I’ll do what I like.
Stay as long as you like.
INTRODUCTION

spoken and written language

Writers can pause, reflect, recast and revise, producing if they wish material with a high level of complexity. Speakers, composing in real time, are limited by working memory capacity in their ability to build up and keep track of elaborate structures. Equally, readers are far better able than listeners to decode complex material: one can read as slowly as one likes, backtracking as necessary, but one cannot listen at one’s own speed.

Because of this, writing tends towards ‘architectural’ structuring, with relatively dense packaging of information, while speech favours more linear, chained structures, with information-bearing elements more spaced out. The average length of an English clause in speech is seven words; in formal writing the average can be double this. Written noun phrases can become very complex, with determiners, adjectives, nouns and postmodifying structures all clustering round a head noun. Spoken noun phrases generally contain few modifiers; subjects most often consist of a single pronoun.

The gap between speech and writing has narrowed a great deal since the 19th century. In those days formal writing enjoyed very high prestige and could be extremely elaborate, while informal speech was seen as a kind of low-level badly-structured ‘poor relation’. Since that time, growing democratisation has led to increased respect for the language of ‘ordinary people’. Much modern writing is far closer to speech in its structure and vocabulary, and the growth of informal written communication through electronic media is helping to narrow the gap still further.

 Nonetheless, speech and writing are separate channels of communication and each has its own necessary grammatical characteristics. For people – both native speakers of English and language learners – who need to be able to handle formal written texts, the conventions of formal writing still have to be learnt. This is especially the case for those who plan to use English in a university setting – academic English has its own characteristics.

This Section deals with some of the more important elements of formal writing, especially those which affect text construction and comprehension. Note that some of what is said here naturally applies also to more formal types of spoken text: for example the language of spoken reports, political speeches or lectures.
Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

X Dad’s just cut Dad shaving. ► 282
X Lucy told Alice she had made a bad mistake. ► 282.2
X The wall, it needed painting. ► 282.3
X The results were disappointing for the third year running, consequently it was decided to close three of the smaller branches. ► 283.1
X He confessed to 114 murders; the police did not believe, however, his story. ► 283.3
X The banks have raised interest paid monthly rates. ► 285.1
X We planned wonderful plans. ► 287.1
X Dear Mr James Carter, . . . ► 289 Note 6
X Dear Ms Williams, How are you getting on? ► 289 Note 13
X She phoned me. As soon as she arrived. ► 293.1
X I asked her what time it was? ► 293.3
X The standard of living of the dock workers, was slowly improving. ► 296.1
X Many of them were able to begin buying, their own homes. ► 296.1
X The mainly foreign, labourers formed a large part of the work force. ► 296.4
X Many commentators declared, that the economy was in serious trouble. ► 296.6
X No one knew, how serious the situation would become. ► 296.6
X a green red and gold carpet ► 296.9
X Have you met our handsome, new, financial director? ► 296.9
X The truck weighs 3,5 tons. ► 296.11

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

281 formality
282 pronouns and other proforms
283 linking with conjunctions and adverbials
284 discourse markers in writing
285 reading complicated structures
286 paragraphs
287 repetition
288 academic writing
289 correspondence: letters
289 correspondence: emails, text messages, etc
291 abbreviated styles
292 headlines
293 punctuation: full stop, question mark and exclamation mark
294 punctuation: colon
295 punctuation: semi-colon
296 punctuation: comma
297 punctuation: dash
298 punctuation: quotation marks
formality

1 formal and informal language

Most people speak and write in different ways on different occasions. In some languages, for example, there are very complicated rules about how to speak to older or more important people. English does not have a system of this kind. However, there are some words and structures which are mostly used in formal situations, when people are careful about how they express themselves: for example in official notices, business letters or reports, meetings or conferences, or polite conversations with strangers. And some words and structures are mostly used in informal situations: for example in conversations with friends, or emails to one’s family. Writing is more often formal, and speech is more often informal, but informal writing and formal speech are used when the situation makes them preferable.

Customer toilets are at the rear of the building. (printed notice in an Oxfordshire petrol station)
The toilets are outside round the back. (handwritten notice in the same petrol station, put up perhaps because the manager felt this would be easier for some of his customers to understand)

Most words and expressions are neither formal nor informal, but neutral – English speakers do not have to know two ways of saying everything.

2 grammar

Some grammatical structures have different formal and informal versions. For example, contracted auxiliary verbs and negatives (► 337) are common in informal speech and writing. Compare:

FORMAL: It has gone. It is not possible.
INFORMAL: It’s gone. It isn’t possible.

Prepositions come at the end of certain structures in informal language (► 209). Compare:

FORMAL: In which century did he live?
INFORMAL: Which century did he live in?

Some relative structures are different (► 234). Compare:

FORMAL: The man whom she married . . .
INFORMAL: The man she married . . .

Some determiners are followed more often by singular verb forms in formal language, and by plural forms in informal language (► 156.2, 157.2). Compare:

FORMAL: Neither of us likes him.
INFORMAL: Neither of us like him.

Subject and object forms of pronouns (e.g. I and me) are used differently in formal and informal language (► 174). Compare:

- FORMAL: It was she who first saw what to do.
  INFORMAL: It was her that first saw what to do.
- FORMAL: Whom did they elect?
  INFORMAL: Who did they elect?
Ellipsis (leaving out words, ► 275–280) is more common in informal language. Compare:

- **FORMAL:** Have you seen Mr Andrews?
- **INFORMAL:** Seen Jack?
- **FORMAL:** We think that it is possible.
- **INFORMAL:** We think it's possible.

For a note on formal and informal vocabulary, ► 333
For structures used in polite requests and questions, ► 310–312.
For formal and informal ways of using people's names and titles, ► 326.
For the language used in particular social situations, ► 329.
For discriminatory and offensive language, ► 335. For slang, ► 334.
For the use of out-of-date grammar and vocabulary in ceremonies and other situations, ► 318.10.

### 282 pronouns and other proforms

#### 1 avoiding unnatural/ungrammatical repetition

When we refer again to a person or thing that has already been mentioned, we normally use a pronoun (e.g. he, she, it) instead of repeating the original noun phrase. When the reference is very close to the original mention, repetition (unless there is a special reason for it) is usually not only unnatural, but ungrammatical.

Rachel changed her job because she was unhappy with the conditions.
(More normal than . . . because Rachel was unhappy with the conditions.)
The suggestion was understandably ignored: the management disapproved of it.
(More normal than . . . the management disapproved of the suggestion.)
There were times when Cartwright hated himself.
(Not . . . Cartwright hated Cartwright.)

This kind of thing happens with other words besides nouns.

*He did not smoke, but his wife did.* (More normal than . . . but his wife smoked.)

*They were not sure whether the road was open, but they believed so.*
(More normal than . . . they believed that the road was open.)

*The Royal Hotel was highly recommended, so the party agreed to stay there.*
(More normal than . . . to stay at the Royal Hotel.)

However, repetition is necessary and normal when alternatives are discussed.

*She was offered potatoes or rice, and decided on rice.*

*The only options were to dance or to go for a walk: they went for a walk.*

For more details, ► 275–280 (ellipsis) and ► 585 (so).

#### 2 avoiding ambiguity

When pronouns such as he, she, it are used, it is important to make sure the reference is clear.

Lucy told Alice she had made a bad mistake. (Who made the mistake?)

Here is a note from the *Independent* newspaper apologising for confusing readers the day before.
Pronoun soup again on Wednesday

CHRISTINA PATTERTSON commented on a row between Iain Duncan Smith and George Osborne. “But he did, according to one source, tell the Chancellor that he was ‘not prepared to tolerate’ the ‘appalling’ way he treated his department, and that he should ‘show more respect’. His staff, he said, ‘did not deserve to be treated in such an arrogant way.’”

The words ‘he’ and ‘his’ appear seven times. The first, second, fourth, sixth and seventh times, they mean Mr Duncan Smith; the third and fifth times, they mean Mr Osborne. More than once, the reader pauses to work out who ‘he’ is.

Guy Keleny, The Independent (adapted)

For more about the use of this/that and it (referring to things that have just been mentioned), ►145.

3 avoiding duplication

In writing and more formal speech, English (unlike some languages) does not normally use a pronoun to repeat a noun phrase that comes in the same clause.

The wall needed painting. (NOT The wall, it needed painting.)

Good morning, Jack. I spoke to Professor Anson yesterday.

(More natural than . . . Professor Anson, I spoke to him yesterday.)

However, this kind of repetition is common in informal speech, when people announce a topic and then make a sentence about it (► 272).

That friend of your mother’s – she’s on the phone.

Your bicycle wheels – why don’t we put them in the garden shed?

283 linking with conjunctions and adverbials

1 the difference

Conjunctions (► Section 20) make grammatical and meaning connections: they join clauses into sentences, and show the relationship between them. Some conjunctions:

and, but, or, so, before, after, when, as soon as, because, since, although, if, that

When a conjunction comes between two clauses in writing, there is normally either no punctuation (if the clauses are short) or a comma (,) before the conjunction if they are longer.

The Minister paused briefly before he started to speak.

The results were disappointing for the third year running, so it was decided to close three of the smaller branches.

Adverbials can make meaning connections, but they do not make grammatical connections: they do not join clauses into sentences. Some adverbials:

however, then, therefore, meanwhile, consequently, in fact, also, as a result, on the other hand, indeed
When an adverbial comes between two clauses, there is normally either a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;) before it in careful writing, because the clauses are still grammatically separate.

The Minister paused briefly; then he started to speak. (OR The Minister paused briefly. Then he started to speak.)

The results were disappointing for the third year running; consequently, it was decided to close three of the smaller branches. (OR The results were disappointing for the third year running. Consequently, it was decided to close three of the smaller branches.)

2 but and however

But is a conjunction; however is an adverbial. Note the difference in punctuation before these words.

It was cold, but it was pleasant.

It was cold. However, it was pleasant. OR It was cold; however, it was pleasant.

(better than It was cold, however . . .)

Note that we also put a comma after however.

For more about but, however, although and though, ► 371.

3 position

Conjunctions always begin clauses. Adverbials can often go in different places in a clause (but not between the verb and the object). If an adverbial interrupts the normal word order of a clause, it may be separated by two commas.

He confessed to 114 murders, but the police did not believe his story.

(BUT NOT . . . the police but did not believe his story.)

He confessed to 114 murders; however, the police did not believe his story.

He confessed to 114 murders; the police, however, did not believe his story.

He confessed to 114 murders; the police did not, however, believe his story.

(BUT NOT . . . the police did not believe; however, his story.)

Adverbials expressing contrast often have commas after them.

They were becoming increasingly discouraged. However, they continued walking.

Income is satisfactory; on the other hand, expenditure has increased alarmingly.

Yet is not usually followed by a comma.

It was cold, yet it was pleasant. (NOT . . . yet, it was pleasant.)

4 one-clause sentences

Sometimes a single clause with a conjunction is written as a separate sentence. Some people feel this is incorrect, but it is normal in question-and-answer sequences, or when a writer wishes to give extra emphasis to a clause.

Why are we in financial trouble? Because the banks lent money to the wrong people.

He was charming. But he was totally without a conscience.

For however as a conjunction (e.g. However we travel, we have to go through London), ► 252.
Discourse markers are words and expressions which help to structure spoken exchanges and written text (e.g. *first of all, on the other hand, in any case, to sum up*). English has a very large number of these. Some are used in all kinds of discourse, some mostly in formal writing, and others mainly in informal speech. Those that are most common in writing are discussed here; for discourse markers in speech, ► 301. Most discourse markers are adverbs or adverbial expressions; some are conjunctions. For differences in punctuation and other points, ► 283.

Discourse markers can communicate several things:

- *'What am I talking about?'* Discourse markers can introduce or clarify a topic, and show divisions and changes of topic.
- *'What am I doing?'* They can show the type of communication that is going on.
- *attitude* They can show a writer’s attitude to what he or she is saying, or to the reader’s expectations.

1 What am I talking about?

Some discourse markers say what a writer is about to focus on, and may show a link with previous discussion. Others show subdivisions and changes of topic.

**focusing:** *with reference to; regarding; as regards; as far as . . . is/are concerned*

*With reference to* your letter of 17 March, I am pleased to inform you . . .

*Regarding* the proposal to reinvest all profits, it was felt that further discussion was needed.

*As regards* other aspects of social policy, the government of the day was under great pressure to improve health care.

*As far as* heart disease *is concerned*, saturated fats are considered to be a principal danger.

**subdividing:** *first of all; firstly, secondly, etc; in the first place; before turning to; lastly; finally*

*First of all, it is important to distinguish two main types of problem. Secondly, solutions to both need to be evaluated.*

*Before turning to the question of finance, the directors discussed minimum staffing levels.*

*Finally, it is appropriate to mention the contribution of his family to his success.*

**new subject:** *turning now to . . .*

*Turning now to* his years in America, we will trace his gradual acceptance by the scientific establishment.

**returning to previous subject:** *to return to the previous point*

*To return to the previous point, it would be a mistake to overlook the basic need for research.*
summing up: in conclusion; to sum up; briefly; in short

In conclusion / To sum up, it seems clear that none of the factors already discussed contributed to the spread of the epidemic.
Briefly, three senators have been accused of fraud, bribery and tax evasion in the past three years, but they have all been cleared of these charges by other senators.
In short, the decision to invade was a disastrous error of judgement.

2 What am I doing?

Some discourse markers make it clear what kind of communication is going on.

generalising and exceptions: on the whole; to a great extent; to some extent; in general; in all/most/many/some cases; broadly speaking; apart from; except for

On the whole / In general, people like to help others.
On the whole / In general, the higher an individual is in the social strata the less likely he or she is to be arrested, prosecuted and (if prosecuted) found guilty.
In some cases, an unhappy childhood can lead to criminal behaviour.
To some extent, people’s religious views tend to reflect those of their parents.
Broadly speaking, trees can be divided into two groups: evergreen and deciduous.
Central European languages, except for / apart from Hungarian, are related to each other.

showing a logical or causal connection: consequently; therefore; as a result; so; then

Atmospheric pressure is lower at altitude. Consequently, climbers can find it difficult to get enough oxygen.
Unfortunately, your examination marks did not reach the required standard. Therefore we are unable to offer you a place.
His first novel was a remarkable success. As a result, he was offered a contract to write a sequel.

showing similarity: similarly; in the same way; just as

Russia relies on its grain harvests to feed its population. Similarly / In the same way, India and China are dependent on rice.
Just as some children have imaginary friends, others invent complicated past events that never happened.

showing a contrast: nevertheless; nonetheless; despite this/that; yet; however; in spite of this/that

The Greeks and Romans had no symbol for zero. Nevertheless/Nonetheless, they made remarkable progress in mathematics.
Their father died when they were small. In spite of that / Despite that, they had a happy childhood.
England has occasional heavy snowfalls in January and February. However, most winters are relatively mild.

grammar • 284 discourse markers in writing
balancing contrasting points: on the one hand; whereas; while; on the other hand

On the one hand, we need to reduce costs. On the other hand, investment in research is a crucial priority.

Arranged marriages are common in many Middle Eastern countries. In the West, on the other hand, they are unusual. (NOT ... on the contrary, they are unusual.)

He liked the mountains, whereas/while his wife preferred the sea.

persuading: after all (► 361)

It is scarcely surprising that he chose a military career. After all, his father and both his grandfathers were professional soldiers.

contradicting: on the contrary; quite the opposite

The violin is not easy to play well. On the contrary, it is one of the most challenging instruments.

Do not be afraid that people will look down on you because of your regional accent. Quite the opposite, in some professions your accent may be your most interesting and valuable possession.

correction: it is true (that); certainly; granted; if; may; of course

counter-argument: nevertheless; nonetheless; however; even so; but; still; all the same

These expressions are often used in a three-stage argument structure:
1. We say something that points in a certain direction.
2. We agree (the correction) that there are facts that point in the other direction.
3. But we finish (the counter-argument) by going back to the original position.

... cannot agree with colonialism. It is true that the British may have done some good in India. Even so, colonialism is basically evil.

He was incapable of lasting relationships with women. Certainly, several women loved him, and he was married twice. All the same, the women closest to him were invariably deeply unhappy.

Very few people understood Einstein’s theory. Of course, everybody had heard of him, and a fair number of people knew the word ‘relativity’. But hardly anybody could tell you what he had actually said.

His poetry was popular, and, if difficult to understand, nonetheless had a good deal of charm.

Note the use of certainly and of course in the above examples. When they are used in this way, an experienced reader knows that they will be followed by but, all the same or a similar expression.

adding: moreover; furthermore; further; in addition; what is more; also; besides

Air travel is tiring. Moreover/Furthermore, it is generally uncomfortable and expensive.
referring to the hearer's/reader's expectations: in fact; actually

These expressions introduce information that will contradict (usually) or perhaps confirm what the hearer or reader thinks.

It is generally believed that Marquez died in the civil war. In fact / Actually, recent research shows that he survived and fled to Bolivia, where . . .

4 reporting verbs showing attitude

Some reporting verbs can show the writer's attitude to what is being reported. Suggest and imply make it clear that he/she is not reporting definite facts. Claim often throws doubt on what follows.

These findings suggest/imply that a cure for the common cold may be close. The Minister claims that the new working practices will increase efficiency by 35%.

Allege is common in reports of unproved criminal accusations.

It is alleged that, during the night of June 17th, Hawkins broke into the factory.

285 reading complicated structures

Language learners (and many native-speaker readers) can have trouble reading long and complicated sentences. Certain kinds of structure, in particular, can slow down unskilled readers, and perhaps cause them to get lost, so that they lose sight of 'where a sentence is going'. This is often the case when sentences begin with complex noun phrases.

1 complex noun phrases: premodification

Written noun phrases can be very elaborate, with various kinds of premodifier (determiners, adjectives, participles and nouns) coming before the head noun. The only efficient functioning X-Ray machine was in constant demand. Premodifiers can have their own premodifiers, which adds to the complexity. The only really efficient fully-functioning high-speed X-Ray machine was in constant demand.

But note that premodifiers cannot usually be followed by their own postmodifiers.

a broken promise
a cynically broken promise (but not a broken for political advantage promise)
interest rates
short-term interest rates (but not interest paid monthly rates)

2 complex noun phrases: postmodification

Postmodifiers (e.g. prepositional phrases or relative clauses) can make noun phrases even more complex and difficult to process efficiently.

The only really efficient fully-functioning high-speed X-Ray machine in the hospital that nurses could use was in constant demand.

The strikes on a number of airlines in recent months, which have caused serious disruption to travellers, are likely to continue if agreement is not reached.
3 nominalisation and coordination: Daniel’s failure

Writing often nominalises (expresses as nouns) elements which in speech would be expressed in other ways. This, too, makes for complex noun phrases.

Daniel’s failure to gain a degree caused his parents considerable concern.

(six-word noun phrase as subject)

The spoken equivalent might be, for example:
Daniel, you know, he didn’t get a degree, and of course, his parents, they got really worried.

(one-word noun phrase as subject)

Co-ordination can make things even more complex.

Daniel’s failure to gain a degree, and his subsequent refusal to look for work, caused his parents considerable concern.

(fourteen-word noun phrase as subject)

Possible spoken equivalent:
Daniel, you know, he didn’t get a degree, and then he wouldn’t do anything about getting a job, and of course, his parents, they got really worried.

4 clause subjects: getting up early

When the subject is a participle clause or a what-clause, this can also make the overall structure more difficult to follow.

Getting up very early in the morning typically makes people feel quite unnecessarily superior.

What Anna’s little sister wanted above everything else in the world was a horse.

5 Why do these structures make reading difficult?

breaking things up

Complex noun phrase structures can cause readers to lose sight of the basic subject-verb relationship. This is particularly the case with heavy post-modification: the head noun may be separated from its verb by other nouns and verbs, and a non-fluent reader may struggle to see which noun goes with which verb.

The strikes on a number of airlines in recent months, which have caused serious disruption to travellers, are likely to continue if agreement is not reached.

(five other nouns and another verb between the head noun and its verb)

That picture of the children standing in front of the palace talking to the Prime Minister impressed everybody.

(It was not the children, the palace or the Prime Minister that impressed everybody.)

Pasteur’s discovery that microscopic bacteria caused diseases revolutionised medicine.

(It was not the bacteria or the diseases that revolutionised medicine.)

A Liverpool man who lives alone except for his cat has just won the lottery.

(The cat has not won the lottery.)

These structures can create confusing-looking pairs of verbs.

A bus which ran downhill out of control after its brakes failed crashed into a factory wall, damaging the premises and slightly injuring several passengers.
Unlike speech (► 299.1), formal writing does not allow subjects to be repeated by pronouns.

That picture of the children standing in front of the palace talking to the Prime Minister, it impressed everybody.

6 leaving out that: people Martin knew well

When that (or another relative pronoun) is left out, this can cause further problems for readers who are not used to formal written texts, especially if their language does not work in the same way. For example, it can bring two noun phrases together in confusing ways.

Several people Martin knew well when he was at university years before had now become prominent members of the government. (= . . . people that Martin knew . . .)

The man the terrorists bought the guns from was an undercover police officer.

Extra difficulty can be caused when relative clauses end in prepositions.

The spanner the service engineer was attempting to tighten the windscreen nuts with was the wrong size.

Dropping the conjunction that can also make the structure of a sentence less clear.

The woman insisted she thought the police officer understood she was lost. (that omitted three times)

7 reduced relative clauses: the objects recovered

Reduced relative clauses (► 237.10) can make sentences particularly hard to read.

Many of the objects recovered by the police were found to have been stolen from homes in the neighbourhood. (= , . . the objects that were recovered . . .)

Two wolves seen roaming in the New Forest are believed to have escaped from a nearby private zoo. (= ' . . wolves that have been seen . . .')

Regular past participles look the same as past tenses, and this can cause confusion.

A number of the children asked for comments on the proposals to expel some immigrants told the police they disagreed. (The children didn't ask for comments: the meaning is ' . . . the children who were asked . . . told . . .').

8 embedded adverbial clauses

Sometimes an adverbial clause is put into the middle of another clause, separating the subject from its verb.

Ann, when she finally managed to go to sleep, had a series of bad dreams.

(The government), if recent reports can be trusted, has decided not to raise interest rates.

In these structures, confusingly, a noun may not be the subject of a verb that comes just after it.

Mr Andrews, when he saw the police officer, started running as fast as he could. (It was not the police officer who started running.)
The Managing Director, after he had completed his discussions with the bank manager, drew a large sum of money out of the bank and caught the next plane to Paris. (A learner might think that it was the bank manager who took the money and went to Paris.)

9 heavy indirect object
A heavy indirect object can create a large gap between the verb and its direct object, which can also make the structure difficult to follow.
She gave all the people who had helped her with her research copies of her book.

10 complicated negative structures
In both speech and writing, putting together several negative items can cause confusion.
It was not that Emily didn’t believe that Jack had not been telling the truth. (Did she think he had or not?)
There is no sound basis for denying reports that no members of the expedition failed to reach their goal. (Did they all get there?)

11 reporting expressions: the man who Anna had said would tell us
Complicated structures can be produced when reporting expressions are included in sentences.
We were unable to find the man who Anna had said would tell us about the church.
They spent none of them could remember how much money on their trip.

12 more examples
Here are some more examples of the structures discussed in this entry, most of them taken from authentic written sources. It might be interesting to consider why each one might cause difficulty to an unskilled reader.
A picture a schoolboy bought for £5 has turned out to be worth £10,000.
Money makes money, and the money money makes makes money.
(Benjamin Franklin)
Pictures of the baby the judge ordered should not be identified by reporters appeared in a Sunday newspaper.
A young civil servant arrested after shootings on Tyneside left one person dead is to be charged with murder.
Police called to a house in Hampshire after neighbours reported cries for help found 18-year-old M F stuck in a small toilet window after being locked out of his home.
Three immigrants returned to their countries by the authorities are to appeal against their deportation.
A 24-year-old labourer who was arrested in Trafalgar Square when he allegedly attempted to knife a traffic warden is said to have injured three policemen.
The rebel leader found out that in spite of the precautions of the soldiers he had bought the guns from the police had planted an informer among them.
Police hunting thieves who dumped a ten-month-old baby in an alley after finding him inside a car they stole have charged two teenage boys.
One way of deciding what to do if you have difficulty in deciding your next course of action is to toss a coin.

If predictions that the British National Party will gain at least one seat when the European Parliament election results are announced tonight are accurate, many Labour MPs will see it as a political disaster grave enough to spark a major revolt.

But what bothered him more than what the files that were in the drawer could contain was the feeling that something was certainly missing.

Taking one's break out of season when everyone else is working can save one a great deal of money.

Many of the gold and silver objects excavated from the 3000-year-old royal tombs resemble items of jewellery still made today by craftsmen trained in the traditional skills.

It is not unlikely that the ongoing investigation will show that the allegations of corruption against the President are not without foundation.

(Is the President probably corrupt?)

The report will look into claims the design of the courthouse the men escaped from was at fault.

Further details emerged shortly after the clergyman at the centre of the dispute about anti-capitalist protesters camped outside St Paul's Cathedral broke a week's silence to defend the decision to close the cathedral.

Millennium Dome chiefs have refused to discuss reports they ignored advice attendance figures at the attraction would be lower than hoped. The Sunday Times says the Millennium Commission warned Dome users the New Millennium Experience Company its own estimate was between 4.5m and 5m. NMEC repeatedly insisted there would be at least 7m visitors this year.

(from a report on the enormous loss of money by the Millennium Dome, built as a tourist attraction to celebrate the year 2000)

286 paragraphs

Written English text is usually divided into blocks called ‘paragraphs’, to make it easier to read. Paragraphs can vary in length, from several hundred words (for example in literary or academic writing), to a few sentences (for example in journalism or letters). A paragraph division is usually shown by starting the text on a new line and ‘indenting’ (leaving a space at the beginning of the line). The paragraph divisions break the material up into easily ‘digestible’ sections, providing places where the reader can pause and think for a moment if necessary. And good writers can show the structure of their texts by making paragraph divisions in suitable places, for example when they move to a new stage in a story, a new point in a discussion or a new part of a description.
Sam decided that it was too late to start slimming, and put some more sugar in his coffee. The way things were, he needed all the help he could get. Everything was going wrong at work, everything had already gone wrong at home, and the weather in Edinburgh in November was lousy. The only remaining question was: should he commit suicide now or wait until after payday and get drunk first?

Three months ago everything had seemed so perfect. His boss had told him that he had an excellent future with the firm.

There are a lot of advantages to working at home. You don’t have to travel to your job, you can choose your own working hours, you can take a day off if you want to, you don’t waste time in endless unnecessary meetings, and perhaps most important of all – you don’t have a boss constantly checking up on you.

On the other hand, it can be lonely working by yourself. Without colleagues around you . . .

Another practice, common in typed letters and documents, is to leave a blank line without indenting.

Dear Sir/Madam

Three months ago I sent you an order for a set of glasses, together with full payment. You wrote acknowledging my order, and said that the glasses would be dispatched in 15 days.

I have still not received the glasses, and repeated telephone calls to your office have had no result . . .

287 repetition

1 avoidance of repetition

In English, unnecessary repetition is generally avoided. Careful writers try not to repeat words and structures in the same clauses and sentences without a good reason. For instance, we do not normally put related nouns and verbs together.

We made wonderful plans. or We planned wonderful things.

She wrote an interesting piece. or She did an interesting piece of writing.

There are some fixed expressions which are exceptions: for example sing a song, live a good life, die a violent death.

Most of the repetitions in the following text would be avoided by a careful writer, by varying the structure and by careful use of synonyms (e.g. tried/at tempted, summarise / describe briefly, forecast/predict).
In this report, I have tried to forecast likely developments over the next three years. In the first section, I have tried to summarise the results of the last two years, and I have tried to summarise the present situation. In the second section, I have tried to forecast the likely consequences of the present situation, and the consequences of the present financial policy.

Casual repetition is more common in informal language, but even in conversation people often sound monotonous or clumsy if they do not vary their sentence structure and vocabulary (► 300). Some kinds of repetition are actually ungrammatical in both writing and speech (► 282.1).

2 deliberate repetition

Writers (and speakers) can of course repeat vocabulary and structures deliberately. This may be done for emphasis.

*That was a very, very unfortunate decision.*

*The head doctor made a point of knowing the name of every patient in the hospital: every man, every woman and every child.*

Structural repetition can show how ideas are similar or related, by using the same structure for the same kind of item.

*First of all, I wish to congratulate you all on this year’s splendid results.*

*Secondly, I wish to give you some interesting news. And finally, I wish to thank you all...*

3 literary examples

Here are two contrasting examples of repetition used deliberately for literary purposes. In the first, by John Steinbeck, structures and key vocabulary (especially nouns and verbs) are repeated and rhythmically balanced in order to create an impressive (or mock-impressive) effect – to make the story and characters sound striking and important.

*This is the story of Danny and of Danny’s friends and of Danny’s house. It is a story of how these three became one thing, so that in Tortilla Flat if you speak of Danny’s house you do not mean a structure of wood flaked with old whitewash, overgrown with an ancient untrimmed rose of Castile. No, when you speak of Danny’s house you are understood to mean a unit of which the parts are men, from which came sweetness and joy, philanthropy, and, in the end, a mystic sorrow. For Danny’s house was not unlike the Round Table, and Danny’s friends were not unlike the knights of it. And this is the story of how the group came into being, of how it flourished and grew to be an organisation beautiful and wise. This story deals with the adventuring of Danny’s friends, with the good they did, with their thoughts and their endeavors. In the end, this story tells how the talisman was lost and how the group disintegrated.*

*(John Steinbeck, *Tortilla Flat)*

In contrast, the following text, by Ernest Hemingway, uses a kind of style which ‘good’ writers would normally avoid, repeating pronouns and simple structures in an apparently monotonous way. Hemingway’s purpose is to show the simplicity of his hero, an uneducated old fisherman, by using a style that is supposed to reflect the way he thinks and speaks.
He did not remember when he had first started to talk aloud when he was by himself. He had sung when he was by himself in the old days and he had sung at night sometimes when he was alone steering on his watch in the smacks or in the turtle boats. He had probably started to talk aloud, when alone, when the boy had left. But he did not remember.

(Ernest Hemingway, The Old Man and the Sea)

288 academic writing

The writing found in academic journals and similar contexts (for example research reports, theoretical discussion and debate, historical accounts) is normally formal in tone, and follows the conventions of formal writing discussed in other parts of this Section. In particular:

1 vocabulary
Informal wording is usually avoided. Contractions are not used, and ‘general-purpose’ words like do, have and get are replaced by more specific terminology.

Further research will be carried out. (better than . . . will be done)
The team experienced a number of problems.
(better than . . . had a lot of problems)
Early investigators obtained ambiguous results.
(better than . . . got ambiguous results)

2 impersonal writing
Academic writing is most often impersonal, so for example the authors or researchers may not often appear as subjects of sentences.

This report questions the conclusions of earlier researchers.
(rather than We question . . .)
Passives are common.
All well-dated Neanderthal sites have been found to be at least 39,000 years old.
Impersonal structures with it are frequently used.
It is clear that . . . It is likely that . . . It is important to . . .
And academic writers may avoid presenting over-definite conclusions, by using verbs such as may, suggest, or adjectives such as possible, arguable.

Preliminary results suggest that . . . It is possible that . . .

3 nominalisation
Nominalisation (expressing actions by nouns, ► 285.3) can help to make writing impersonal.

The discovery of penicillin transformed the treatment of bacterial infections.
(rather than When Fleming discovered penicillin . . .)
Chemical analysis of their bones shows that their diets differed from those of modern humans.
4 pre- and post-modifiers

Complex noun phrases may be used to package information, with several pre-modifiers and/or post-modifiers (▶ 285.1–285.2).

- accelerating climate change
- a clear evolutionary pathway
- important survival information
- ongoing hydrothermal activity
- the divergence of the species from its apelike cousins
- laws of motion and gravitation that connected everything in the cosmos
- evidence for the way in which mirror cells work
- brain areas associated with reward
- chemical reactions between rock and water

5 discourse markers

Academic writers use discourse markers (▶ 284) to make the structure of their text clear, for instance by signalling points which add to or contrast with what has come before.

In addition, MRI scans consistently showed tissue abnormalities. These results, however, must be regarded as provisional pending further investigation.

Note the use of furthermore and what is more to strengthen an argument. Compare:

Participants completed tests of endurance. In addition, their lung capacity was measured. (simply adding information)

A clear relationship was found between lung capacity and endurance. Furthermore / What is more, training which increased endurance was shown to have a positive effect on lung capacity. (adding another piece of evidence for the writer’s claims)

Note also the use of on the other hand to emphasise a contrast. Compare:

Several studies have provided evidence that playing classical music to cows increases their milk yield. However, no similar studies to date have been carried out on goats. (a different point, but not an emphatic contrast)

Playing classical music to cows has been shown to increase their milk production. Rock music, on the other hand, is found to result in significantly reduced yields. (a more emphatic contrast)

6 collocations and formulaic language

Academic writing involves two kinds of formulaic language (▶ 332). One type consists of the fixed expressions that are commonly used in the particular area of study concerned, and which anyone writing academic material in that area needs to be familiar with.

- to take a blood sample (medicine)
- to draw out / trace out a floor plan (architecture)
- communicative competence (linguistics)

The other kind of fixed expressions are those that are used, in any subject of study, when discussing research, evaluating evidence, developing an argument, agreeing and disagreeing with published views, and so on. A few examples:

- to conduct / carry out research
- to compile/analyse/present data to raise an issue
- to put forward / question / take issue with / challenge / contest / dismiss: a view / an argument / a theory / a hypothesis / a claim
to make/reject a claim / an assumption
to claim that . . . to assert that . . . to suggest that . . .
to draw a conclusion to prove/disprove solid theoretical reasoning
proof/evidence for/that powerful/persuasive/compelling evidence
sound empirical evidence lack of evidence little evidence for . . .
research findings a strong implication a logical conclusion
on both theoretical and practical grounds
based on unproved hypotheses
broad agreement to take something into account

English, like any language, contains a very large number of formulaic expressions. The most important thing for students of academic writing is to note, and learn, those that are commonly used for their subject matter, but to understand that they cannot realistically expect to master all of the formulaic vocabulary of English in a limited time.

289 correspondence: letters

Traditionally-constructed letters are now much less common than other forms of correspondence such as emails. However, it is useful to know the normal conventions used in English-speaking cultures – for instance, in letters of application.

1 Put your own postal address at the top on the right or in the centre. Addresses generally follow the rule of ‘smallest first’: house number, then street, then town (and sometimes county) plus postcode. Telephone numbers and electronic addresses come last. Don’t put your name with the address.

2 In formal letters and business letters, put the name and address of the person you are writing to on the left side of the page, starting on the line after your own address.

3 Put the date on the right, on the line after the address of the person you are writing to. A common way to write the date is to put the number of the day, followed by the month and year (e.g. 17 May 2005). For other ways (and differences between British and American customs), ► 324.

4 Different styles are common in formal letters on paper which has the address ready-printed at the top of the page. For example, the date may be put on the left, and the address of the person written to may come at the end of the letter or of the first page.

5 Begin the letter (Dear X) on the left. Common ways of addressing people are:
   • by first name (informal): Dear Penny
   • by title and surname (more formal): Dear Ms Hopkins
   • especially to somebody whose name is not known: Dear Sir or Madam, Dear Sir/Madam, Dear Sir, Dear Madam, Dear Sirs (to a company)

6 Some people like to use the first name and surname (Dear Penny Hopkins) when writing to strangers or people that they do not know well. Do not use a title like Mr together with a first name (not Dear Mr James Carter OR Dear Mr James).
After Dear X, put a comma or nothing at all, not an exclamation mark (!). A colon (:) is used in American business letters. Either leave an empty line after Dear X and start again on the left, or start again on the next line, a few spaces from the left. Do the same for each new paragraph. (The first method is now the most common in Britain.)

Letters which begin with formulae like Dear Sir(s) or Dear Madam usually finish Yours faithfully in British English. Formal letters which begin with the person’s name (e.g. Dear Ms Hawkins, Dear Peter Lewis) usually finish Yours sincerely. In American English, common endings are Sincerely, Sincerely yours, Yours truly and Cordially. Other less common formulae are (With) best wishes and (With) kind regards.

Sign with your first name (informal) or your full name (formal), but without writing any title (Mr/Ms/Dr, etc). Ways of writing one’s full name: Luke Forbes, L Forbes, L J Forbes.

In a formal printed letter, add your full printed name after your handwritten signature. Friendly business letters are often signed with the first name only above the full printed name:

Yours sincerely

Luke Forbes

On the envelope, put the first name before the surname. People usually write a title (Mr, Mrs, etc) before the name. You can write the first name in full (Mrs Angela Brookes), or you can write one or more initials (Mrs A E Brookes).

British people now usually write abbreviated titles, initials, addresses, dates, and opening and closing formulae without commas or full stops.

American usage is different from British in some ways:
- Dates are written differently (month before day) ► 324.
- Americans are often addressed (and sign their names) with the first name in full, followed by the initial of a middle name (Luke J. Parker). This is less usual in Britain.

Letter to strangers often being with an explanation of the reason for writing. Dear X I am writing to ask . . .

One does not normally begin a letter to a stranger with an enquiry about health. (NOT Dear X, How are you getting on?)

For more information about names and titles, ► 326.
For more information about the use of commas and full stops, ► 293, 296.
For more information about paragraphing, ► 286.
Example of a formal letter and envelope

14 Plowden Road
Torquay
Devon
TQ6 1RS
Tel 0742 06538

The Secretary
Hall School of Design
39 Beaumont Street
London
W4 4LJ
16 June 2016

Dear Sir or Madam

I would be grateful if you would send me information about the regulations for admission to the Hall School of Design. Could you also tell me whether the School arranges accommodation for students?

Your faithfully
Keith Parker

290 correspondence: emails, text messages, etc

1 formal emails: style and layout

Formal emails are similar in style to letters on paper. The writer's postal address and phone numbers, if they are included, follow the signature.

2 personal messages

Personal messages sent by email, by (SMS) text messages and other social media (such as WhatsApp, Twitter, Tumblr, online chatrooms) are usually much more informal in style than letters on paper. Instead of Dear X, they might begin for example X, Hi, Hi X, Hello X, Good morning X, or with no salutation at all. Sentence structure may be reduced: for example Can't come because work. Afterthoughts that are added after the signature (or in following messages) are often introduced by PS (AmE P.S.), an abbreviation of Latin post scriptum (= 'written afterwards'). People who have forgotten to include an attachment often send it in a follow-up message beginning 'Oops!'.
3 addresses
email addresses are read as follows:

j.harris@funbiz.co.uk  ‘j dot harris at funbiz dot co dot u k’
emily@log-farm.com  ‘emily at log dash farm dot com’
the_rabbit@coolmail.gr  ‘the underscore rabbit at coolmail dot gr’

Note also the names of symbols in ‘urls’ (internet addresses):
/ ‘forward slash’ \\ ‘backslash’ : ‘colon’

Example of an informal email

To... phil@gcom.org.net
Cc...
Subject: new address

Hi Phil,

Good to hear from you.

How about 29 or 30 Sept?

I am working like crazy – still a lot to do around the house.
Also signed up for a creative writing course – don’t laugh!

Enjoying the village – very interesting world this, but there
are times when they talk a language I don’t understand. 😊

New address etc below.

Yours
Robin

63 Baker Lane
Carstairs
Yorkshire LS7 3PO
Tel 01466 790256

4 txt msgs (text messages)
A number of abbreviations are commonly used in text messages, especially by
younger people. A few examples:

2bsy  too busy
asap  as soon as possible
btw  by the way
fyi  for your information
gr8  great

afk  away from keyboard
atm  at the moment
cu  see you
gd  good
idm  I don’t mind
291 abbreviated styles

Some styles of writing and speech have their own special grammar rules, often because of the need to save space or time.

1 advertisements and instructions
Small ads and instructions often leave out articles, subject or object pronouns, forms of be and prepositions.

Single man looking for flat Oxford area. Phone 806127 weekends.
Job needed urgently. Will do anything legal. Call 312654.
Pour mixture into large saucepan, heat until boiling, then add three pounds sugar and leave on low heat for 45 minutes.

2 notes
Informal notes, to-do lists, diary entries, etc often follow similar rules.
Gone to hairdresser. Back 12.30. Get tickets phone Anna see Josh 11.00 meeting Emma lunch
The same style is common in postcards, emails and text messages.

Hi, Gran
Watching tennis on TV. A good book. Three meals a day. No washing-up. Clean sheets every day. Everything done for me. Yes, you've guessed – in hospital!! Only went to doctor for cold – landed up in hospital with pneumonia!!
If you have time please tell the others – would love some visits to cheer me up.
Hope to see you.
Love, Amy 14.15
Hi Joe,

Tell Dan can’t manage meeting, papers attached, will fix new date for next week.

Cheers, Ally

3 commentaries

Commentaries on fast-moving events like football matches also have their own kind of grammar. Auxiliaries and other less important verbs are often left out.

Goal kick . . . And the score still Spurs 1, Arsenal 3 . . . that’s Pearce . . . Pearce to Coates . . . good ball . . . Sawyer running wide . . . Billings takes it, through to Matthews, Matthews with a cross, oh, and Billings in beautifully, a good chance there – and it’s a goal!

4 titles, notices, etc

Titles, labels, headings, notices and slogans usually consist of short phrases, not complete sentences. Articles are often left out, especially in the names of buildings and institutions.

ROYAL HOTEL INFORMATION OFFICE MORE MONEY FOR NURSES!

5 headlines

News headlines have their own special grammar and vocabulary. For details, ► 292.

RECORD DRUGS HAUL AT AIRPORT: SIX HELD FOUR DIE IN M6 BLAZE

For other rules about leaving words out (‘ellipsis’). ► 275–280.
1 special language

Headlines are the short titles above news reports (e.g. *DOG FINDS ROMAN TREASURE*). English news headlines can be very difficult to understand. One reason for this is that headlines are often written in a special style, which is very different from ordinary English. In this style there are some special rules of grammar, and words are often used in unusual ways.

2 grammar

a Headlines are not always complete sentences. Many headlines consist of noun phrases with no verb.

- *MORE WAGE CUTS*  
- *LUXURY HOTEL DEATH*  
- *EXETER MAN’S DOUBLE MARRIAGE BID*

b Headlines often contain strings of three, four or more nouns; nouns earlier in the string modify those that follow.

- *FURNITURE FACTORY PAY CUT PROTEST*

Headlines like these can be difficult to understand. It sometimes helps to read them backwards. *FURNITURE FACTORY PAY CUT PROTEST* refers to a *PROTEST* about a *CUT* (reduction) in *PAY* at a *FACTORY* that makes *FURNITURE*.

c Headlines often leave out articles and the verb *be*.

- *SHAKESPEARE PLAY IMMORAL SAYS HEADMASTER*  
- *SCHOOLBOY WALKS IN SPACE*

d In headlines, simple tenses are often used instead of progressive or perfect forms. The simple present is used for both present and past events.

- *STUDENTS FIGHT FOR COURSE CHANGES* (= . . . are fighting . . .)  
- *BLIND GIRL CLIMBS EVEREST* (= . . . has climbed . . .)

The present progressive is used to talk about changes. *Be* is usually dropped.

- *BRITAIN GETTING WARMER, SAY SCIENTISTS*  
- *TRADE FIGURES IMPROVING*

e Many headline words are used as both nouns and verbs, and nouns are often used to modify other nouns (paragraph b above). So it is not always easy to work out the structure of a sentence. Compare:

- *US CUTS AID TO THIRD WORLD* (= The US reduces its help . . . *CUTS* is a verb, *AID* is a noun.)  
- *AID CUTS PROTEST* (= There has been a protest about the reduction in aid. *AID* and *CUTS* are both nouns.)  
- *CUTS AID REBELS* (= The reduction is helping the revolutionaries. *CUTS* is a noun, *AID* is a verb.)

f Headlines often use infinitives to refer to the future.

- *PM TO VISIT AUSTRALIA*  
- *HOSPITALS TO TAKE FEWER PATIENTS*

*For* is also used to refer to future movements or plans.

- *TROOPS FOR GLASGOW?* (= Are soldiers going to be sent to Glasgow?)
g Auxiliary verbs are usually dropped from passive structures.

*MURDER HUNT: MAN HELD* (= a man is being held by police.)
*MURDER HUNT: MAN HELD* (= Six people have been killed . . .)

Note that forms like *HELD, ATTACKED* are usually past participles with passive meanings, not past tenses (which are rare in headlines). Compare:

- *AID PROTEST: PRESIDENT ATTACKED* (= the President has been attacked.)
  *AID PROTEST: PRESIDENT ATTACKS CRITICS* (= the President has attacked her critics.)
- *BOY FOUND SAFE* (= The missing boy has been found safe; he is safe.)
  *BOY FINDS SAFE* (= A boy has found a safe.)

h *As and in* are often used instead of longer connecting expressions.

*HOSPITAL BOSS AXED AS PATIENTS DIE* (= because patients have died.)

*FOOTBALL MANAGER IN CAR CRASH*

i A colon (:) is often used to separate the subject of a headline from what is said about it.

*STRIKES: PM TO ACT*  *MOTORWAY CRASH: DEATH TOLL RISES*

Quotation marks (‘...’) are used to show that words were said by somebody else, and that the report does not necessarily claim that they are true.

*CRAsh DRIVER ‘HAD BEEN DRINKING’*

A question mark (?) is often used when something is not certain.

*CRIsIs OVER By SEPTEMBER?*

For other styles with special grammar, ► 291.

3 **vocabulary**

Short words save space, and so they are very common in headlines. Some of the short words in headlines are unusual in ordinary language (e.g. *curb*, meaning ‘restrict’ or ‘restriction’), and some are used in special senses which they do not often have in ordinary language (e.g. *bid*, meaning ‘attempt’). Other words are chosen not because they are short, but because they sound dramatic (e.g. *blaze*, which means ‘big fire’, and is used in headlines to refer to any fire). The following is a list of common headline vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>take action; do something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>FOOD CRISIS: GOVERNMENT TO ACT</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aid</td>
<td>military or financial help; to help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>MORE AID FOR POOR COUNTRIES</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>UNIONS AID HOSPITAL STRIKERS</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alert</td>
<td>alarm, warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>FLOOD ALERT ON EAST COAST</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allege</td>
<td>make an accusation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>WOMAN ALLEGES UNFAIR TREATMENT</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
<td>appear in court accused of a crime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>MP TO APPEAR ON DRUGS CHARGES</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axe</td>
<td>abolish, close down; abolition, closure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>COUNTRY BUS SERVICES AXED</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>SMALL SCHOOLS FACE AXE</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA</td>
<td>British Airways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>BA MAKES RECORD LOSS</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban</td>
<td>forbid, refuse to allow something; prohibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>refuse/refusal to allow entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bid</td>
<td>attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blast</td>
<td>explosion; criticise violently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blaze</td>
<td>fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>block</td>
<td>stop, delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>bad news; discouragement; unfortunate happening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bolster</td>
<td>give support/encouragement to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bond</td>
<td>political/business association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boom</td>
<td>big increase; prosperous period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boost</td>
<td>encourage(ment); increase (noun or verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brink</td>
<td>edge (of disaster)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brussels</td>
<td>the European Union administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call (for)</td>
<td>demand/appeal (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campaign</td>
<td>organised effort to achieve social or political result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>accusation (by police)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chop</td>
<td>abolition, closure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>London's financial institutions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
claim (make) a statement that something is true (especially when there may be disagreement); pay claim demand for higher wages
SCIENTIST CLAIMS CANCER BREAKTHROUGH
NEW POLICE RACISM CLAIM
TEACHERS’ PAY CLAIM REJECTED
clamp deal firmly with (usually something illegal)
down on POLICE TO CLAMP DOWN ON SPEEDING
clash quarrel, fight (noun or verb)
PM IN CLASH OVER ARMS SALES
STUDENTS CLASH WITH POLICE
clear find innocent
DOCTOR CLEARED OF DRUGS CHARGE
Commons the House of Commons (in Parliament)
MINISTERS IN COMMONS CLASH OVER HOUSING
con swindle
TEENAGERS CON WIDOW OUT OF LIFE SAVINGS
crackdown firm application of the law
GOVERNMENT PROMISES CRACKDOWN ON DRUGS DEALERS
crash financial failure
BANK CRASH THREATENS TO BRING DOWN GOVERNMENT
curb restrict; restriction
NEW PRICE CURBS
cut reduce; reduction
BRITAIN CUTS OVERSEAS AID
NEW HEALTH SERVICE CUTS
cutback reduction (usually financial)
TEACHERS SLAM SCHOOL CUTBACKS
dash (make) quick journey
PM IN DASH TO BLAST HOSPITAL
deadlock disagreement that cannot be solved
DEADLOCK IN PEACE TALKS
deal agreement, bargain
TEACHERS REJECT NEW PAY DEAL
demo demonstration
30 ARRESTED IN ANTI-TAX DEMO
ditch abandon
EDUCATION MINISTER DITCHES FEES CUT PLAN
dole (BrE) unemployment pay
DOLE QUEUES LENGTHEN
drama dramatic event; tense situation
PRINCE IN AIRPORT DRAMA
drive united effort
DRIVE TO SAVE WATER
drop give up, get rid of; fall (noun)
GOVERNMENT TO DROP CHILD LABOUR PLAN
BIG DROP IN INDUSTRIAL INVESTMENT
due expected to arrive
QUEEN DUE IN BERLIN TODAY
duo  two people
    DISABLED DUO ROW ACROSS ATLANTIC
EU   the European Union
    EU TRADE MINISTERS TO MEET
edge move gradually
    WORLD EDGES TOWARDS WAR
envoy ambassador
    FRENCH ENVOY DISAPPEARS
face be threatened by
    HOSPITALS FACE MORE CUTS
    STRIKERS FACE SACK
feud long-lasting quarrel or dispute
    FAMILY FEUD EXPLODES INTO VIOLENCE: SIX HELD
find (noun) something that is found
    BEACH FIND MAY BE BONES OF UNKNOWN DINOSAUR
firm determined not to change
    PM FIRM ON TAX LEVELS
flak heavy criticism
    GOVERNMENT FACES FLAK OVER VAT
flare begin violently
    RIOTS FLARE IN ULSTER
foil prevent somebody from succeeding
    TWELVE-YEAR-OLD FOILS BANK RAIDERS
fraud swindle, deceit
    JAIL FOR TICKET FRAUD MEN
freeze keep(ing) prices, etc at their present level;
    block(ing) a bank account
    MINISTER WANTS TWO-YEAR PAY FREEZE
    DRUG PROFITS FROZEN
fuel provide reason for growth (of anger, protest, etc)
    PAY FREEZE FUELS UNION ANGER
gag censor(ship), prevent(ion) from speaking
    AFRICAN PRESIDENT ACTS TO GAG PRESS
    FURY AT PRESS GAG
gems jewels
    £2M GEMS STOLEN
go resign; be lost, disappear
    PM TO GO?
    4,000 JOBS TO GO IN NORTH
go for be sold for
    PICASSO DRAWING GOES FOR £5M
go-ahead approval
    SCOTTISH ROAD PLAN GETS GO-AHEAD
grab take quickly or violently
    INVESTORS GRAB SHARES IN SCOTTISH COMPANIES
grip  tight hold; hold tightly
  REBELS TIGHTEN GRIP ON SOUTH
  COLD WAVE GRIPS COUNTRY

gun down  shoot
  TERRORISTS GUN DOWN PRIEST

hail  welcome, praise
  PM HAILS PEACE PLAN

halt  stop (noun or verb)
  CAR PLANT TO HALT PRODUCTION

haul  amount stolen in robbery, or seized by police or customs
  TRAIN ROBBERY: BIG GOLD HAUL
  RECORD DRUGS HAUL AT AIRPORT

head  lead; leader
  PM TO HEAD TRADE MISSION
  COMMONWEALTH HEADS TO MEET IN OTTAWA

head for/to  move towards
  ECONOMY HEADING FOR DISASTER, EXPERTS WARN

heed  pay attention to
  GOVERNMENT MUST HEED HOUSING CRISIS, SAYS BISHOP

hike (AmE)  rise in costs, prices, etc
  INTEREST HIKE WILL HIT BUSINESS

hit  affect badly
  SNOWSTORMS HIT TRANSPORT

hit out at  attack (with words)
  PM HITS OUT AT CRITICS

hitch  problem that causes delay
  LAST-MINUTE HITCH DELAYS SATELLITE LAUNCH

hold  arrest; keep under arrest
  MAN HELD AFTER STATION BLAST
  POLICE HOLD TERROR SUSPECT

in (the) red  in debt; making a financial loss
  BRITISH STEEL IN RED

jail  prison
  JAIL FOR PEACE MARCHERS

jobless  unemployed (people)
  THREE MILLION JOBLESS BY APRIL?

key  important, vital
  KEY WITNESS VANISHES

landslide  victory by large majority in election
  LANDSLIDE FOR NATIONALISTS

launch  send(ing) (satellite, etc) into space; begin(ning) (campaign, etc); put(ting) (new product) on market
  ENVIRONMENT MINISTER LAUNCHES CAMPAIGN
  FOR CLEANER BEACHES
  BRITISH COMPANY LAUNCHES THROW-AWAY CHAIRS
  SPACE TELESCOPE LAUNCH DELAYED
lead

clue (in police enquiry)

NEW LEAD IN NIGHTCLUB MURDER CASE

leak

unofficial publication of secret information

PM FURIOUS OVER TAX PLAN LEAKS

leap

big increase

LEAP IN IMPORTS

life

imprisonment ‘for life’

LIFE FOR AXE MURDERER

link

connection, contact

NEW TRADE LINKS WITH PERU

loom

threaten to happen

VAT ON FOOD: NEW PROTESTS LOOM

Lords

the House of Lords (in Parliament)

LORDS VOTE ON DOG REGISTRATION

lotto

the national lottery

DANCING GRANDMOTHER IN RECORD LOTTO WIN

mar

spoil

CROWD VIOLENCE MARS CUP FINAL

media

newspapers, radio and TV

GOVERNMENT TIGHTENS GRIP ON MEDIA

mercy

intended to save lives

DOCTOR IN MERCY DASH TO EVEREST

mission

delegation (official group sent to conference, etc)

SHOTS FIRED AT UN MISSION

mob

angry crowd; (AmE) organised crime / Mafia

MOBS RAMPAGE THROUGH CITY STREETS

MOB LEADERS HELD

move

step towards a particular result (often political)

MOVE TO BOOST TRADE LINKS WITH JAPAN

MEP

Member of the European Parliament

MEPS WANT MORE PAY

MP

Member of Parliament

MP DENIES DRUGS CHARGE

nail

force somebody to admit the truth

MP NAILS MINISTER ON PIT CLOSURE PLANS

net

win, capture

TWO SISTERS NET £3M IN POOLS WIN

No 10

Number 10 Downing Street (the Prime Minister’s residence)

ANOTHER PETITION HANDED IN AT NO 10

OAP (BrE)

old-age pensioner; anybody over retirement age

OAPS MARCH AGAINST WAR PLANS

odds

chances, probability

JONES RE-ELECTED AGAINST THE ODDS

on

about, on the subject of, concerning

NEW MOVE ON PENSIONS

opt for

choose

WALES OPTS FOR INDEPENDENCE
oust: drive out, replace
out to: intending to
over: about, on the subject of, because of
pact: agreement
pay: wages
PC (BrE): police constable
peak: high point
peer: lord; Member of the House of Lords
peg (BrE): hold (prices, etc) at present level
pensioner (BrE): old age pensioner; anybody over retirement age
peril: danger
pit: coal mine
plant: factory
plea: call for help
pledge: promise
PM: Prime Minister
poised to: ready to, about to
poll: public opinion survey
pools: football pools: a form of gambling in which people guess the results of football matches
premier: prime minister
press: the newspapers
press (for): urge, encourage, ask for urgently
probe: investigation; investigate
pull out  withdraw; pull-out withdrawal
  US PULLS OUT OF ARMS TALKS
  MINISTER URGES PULL-OUT FROM OLYMPICS

push for  ask for, encourage
  SCHOOLS PUSH FOR MORE CASH

quake  earthquake
  HOUSES DAMAGED IN WELSH QUAKE

quit  resign, leave
  CHURCH LEADER QUITS
  MINISTER TO QUIT GOVERNMENT

quiz  question (verb)
  POLICE QUIZ MILLIONAIRE SUPERMARKET BOSS

raid  enter and search; attack (noun and verb), rob, robbery
  POLICE RAID DUCHESS’S FLAT
  BIG GEMS RAID

rampage  riot
  FOOTBALL FANS RAMPAGE THROUGH SEASIDE TOWNS

erap  criticise
  DOCTORS RAP NEW MINISTRY PLANS

dates  (bank) interest rates
  RATES RISE EXPECTED

record  bigger than ever before
  RECORD LOSS BY INSURANCE COMPANY

riddle  mystery
  MISSING ENVOY RIDDLE: WOMAN HELD

rift  division, disagreement
  LABOUR RIFT OVER DEFENCE POLICY

rock  shock, shake
  BANK SEX SCANDAL ROCKS CITY
  IRELAND ROCKED BY QUAKE

row (BrE)  noisy disagreement, quarrel
  NEW ROW OVER PENSION CUTS

rule out  reject the possibility of
  PM RULES OUT AUTUMN ELECTION

sack (BrE)  dismiss(al) from job
  STRIKING TRAIN DRIVERS FACE SACK

saga  long-running news story
  NEW REVELATIONS IN RUNAWAY DUKE SAGA

scare  public alarm, alarming rumour
  TYPHOID SCARE IN SOUTHWEST

scoop  win (prize, etc)
  PENSIONER SCOOPS LOTTO FORTUNE

scrap  throw out (as useless)
  GOVERNMENT SCRAPS NEW ROAD PLANS

seek  look for
  POLICE SEEK WITNESS TO KILLING


seize

take (especially in police and customs searches)

POLICE SEIZE ARMS AFTER CAR CHASE

£3M DRUGS SEIZED AT AIRPORT

set to

ready to; about to

INTEREST RATES SET TO RISE

shed

get rid of

CAR MAKERS TO SHED 5,000 JOBS

slam

criticise violently

GENERAL SLAMS DEFENCE POLICY

slash

cut, reduce drastically

GOVERNMENT TO SLASH HEALTH EXPENDITURE

slate

criticise

PM SLATES BISHOP

slay (AmE)
murder

FREEWAY KILLER SLAYS SIX

slump

fall (economic)

EXPORTS SLUMP

CITY FEARS NEW SLUMP

snatch

steal, robbery

BIG WAGES SNATCH IN WEST END

TEENAGE ROBBERS SNATCH POLICE CAR

soar

rise dramatically

IMPORTS SOAR FOR THIRD MONTH

spark

cause (trouble) to start

REFEREE’S DECISION SPARKS RIOT

split

disagree(ment)

CABINET SPLIT ON PRICES POLICY

spree

wild spending expedition

BUS DRIVER SPENDS £30,000 IN THREE-DAY CREDIT CARD SPREE

stake

financial interest

JAPANESE BUY STAKE IN BRITISH AIRWAYS

storm

angry public disagreement

STORM OVER NEW STRIKE LAW

storm out of

leave angrily

TEACHERS’ LEADERS STORM OUT OF MEETING

stun

surprise, shock

JOBLESS FIGURES STUN CITY

surge

sudden increase; rise suddenly

SURGE IN JOBLESS FIGURES

swap

exchange

HEART SWAP BOY BETTER

sway

persuade

HOSPITAL PROTEST SWAYS MINISTERS

switch

change (noun or verb)

DEFENCE POLICY SWITCH

MORE HOMES SWITCH ELECTRICITY SUPPLIERS

swoop

to raid; a police raid

POLICE IN DAWN SWOOP ON DRUGS GANG
threat  danger  
THREAT OF FLU EPIDEMIC

toll  number killed  
QUAKE TOLL MAY BE 5,000

top  (adj) senior, most important  
TOP BANKER KIDNAPPED

top  (verb) exceed  
IMPORTS TOP LAST YEAR'S FIGURES

Tory  Conservative  
VICTORY FOR TORY MODERATES

trio  three people  
JAILBREAK TRIO RECAPTURED

troops  soldiers  
MORE TROOPS FOR BORDER AREA

UK  the United Kingdom (of Great Britain and Northern Ireland)  
BRUSSELS CRITICISES UK JAIL CONDITIONS

UN  the United Nations  
UN IN RED: CANNOT BALANCE BUDGET

urge  encourage  
GOVERNMENT URGED TO ACT ON POLLUTION

US  the United States of America  
US URGED TO PULL OUT OF MIDDLE EAST

VAT  value added tax  
NEXT, VAT ON BABY FOOD?

vow  promise  
EXILED PRESIDENT VOWS TO RETURN

walk out  leave in protest  
CAR WORKERS WALK OUT OVER WAGE FREEZE

wed  marry  
BISHOP TO WED ACTRESS

293 punctuation: full stop, question mark and exclamation mark

1 sentence division

Full stops (AmE periods), question marks and exclamation marks (AmE exclamation points) are used to close sentences. After one of these, a new sentence has a capital letter.

I looked out of the window. It was snowing again.

Why do we try to reach the stars? What is it all for?

We need more houses! Not one day, not next year – now!

We do not normally use full stops, question or exclamation marks to close grammatically incomplete sentences.

She phoned me as soon as she arrived. (NOT She phoned me. As soon as she arrived.)
In his job he has to deal with different kinds of people. (NOT he has
to deal with different kinds of people.)

Did you understand why I was upset? (NOT Did you understand?

Why I was upset?)

However, sometimes we can emphasise a clause or phrase by separating it with a full stop and capital letter.

People are sleeping out on the streets. In Britain. In the 21st century.

Because there are not enough houses.

2 abbreviations

Full stops can be used after many abbreviations (► 336). But they are often dropped in modern British English.

Dr. Andrew C. Burke, M.A. (OR Dr Andrew C Burke, MA)

3 indirect questions

We do not use question marks after indirect questions (► 260).

I asked her what time it was. (NOT . . .what time it was?)

294 punctuation: colon

1 explanations

A colon (:) usually introduces an explanation or further details.

We decided not to go to Mexico: we had too little money.

There was a problem with the car: it was losing oil.

2 lists

A colon can introduce a list.

The main points are as follows: (1) . . . , (2) . . . , (3) . . .

We need three kinds of support: economic, moral and political.

3 subdivisions

A colon can introduce a subdivision of a subject in a title or heading.

PUNCTUATION: COLON

4 capitals

In British English, it is unusual for a capital letter to follow a colon (except at the beginning of a quotation). However, this can happen if a colon is followed by several complete sentences.

My main objections are as follows:

First of all, no complete budget has been drawn up.

Secondly, there is no guarantee that . . .

In American English, colons are more often followed by capital letters.

5 letters

Americans usually put a colon after the opening salutation (Dear . . .) in a business letter.

Dear Mr. Callan:

I am writing to . . .

British usage prefers a comma or no punctuation mark at all in this case.
6 direct speech

Normally, direct speech is introduced by a comma in writing.

*Stewart opened his eyes and said, 'Who's your beautiful friend?'

But a long passage of direct speech may be introduced by a colon.

*Introducing his report for the year, the Chairman said: 'A number of factors have contributed to the company's very gratifying results. First of all, . . .'

And a colon is used when direct speech is introduced by a name or short phrase (as in the text of a play, or when famous sayings are quoted).

*POLONIUS: What do you read, my lord?

*HAMELET: Words, words, words.

*In the words of Murphy's Law: 'Anything that can go wrong will go wrong.'

295 punctuation: semi-colon

1 instead of full stops

Semi-colons (;) are sometimes used instead of full stops, in cases where sentences are grammatically independent but the meaning is closely connected. Semi-colons are not nearly as common as full stops or commas.

*Some people work best in the mornings; others do better in the evenings.

*It is a fine idea; let us hope that it is going to work.

Commas are not usually possible in cases like these (► 296.7).

2 in lists

Semi-colons can also be used to separate items in a list, particularly when these are grammatically complex.

*You may use the sports facilities on condition that your subscription is paid regularly; that you arrange for all necessary cleaning to be carried out; that you undertake to make good any damage; . . .

For commas in lists, ► 296.

296 punctuation: comma

1 the basic sentence

We do not use commas to separate the basic parts of a sentence (subject and verb, verb and object).

*The standard of living of the dock workers was slowly improving.

*(NOT The standard of living of the dock workers was slowly improving.)

*Many of them were able to begin buying their own homes.

*(NOT Many of them were able to begin buying their own homes.)

2 before and after the basic sentence

If we put long adverbial expressions before the basic sentence, we often use a comma. Compare:

*At that time the standard of living of the dock workers was slowly improving.

*During the late 1920s and early 1930s, the standard of living of the dock workers was slowly improving.
We do not so often put commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence.

*The standard of living of the dock workers was slowly improving during the late 1920s and early 1930s.*

3 inside the basic sentence

When adverbial expressions come between or inside parts of the basic sentence, we may put commas before and after them.

*The standard of living of the dock workers, during the late 1920s and early 1930s, was steadily improving.*

4 noun phrases

We do not usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it.

*the mainly foreign labourers (not the mainly foreign, labourers)*

*the mainly foreign labourers in the north-eastern docks (not the mainly foreign labourers, in the north-eastern docks)*

However, we do use commas to separate non-identifying expressions (► 234).

*Andreas Bergmeister, who established the dock workers' union,...*

5 sentences with conjunctions

We often put commas in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. Compare:

*The situation changed when the export markets began to contract.*

*The situation changed noticeably for the worse after 1932, when the export markets began to contract.*

We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.

*When the export markets began to contract, the situation changed.*

6 indirect speech

We do not put commas after verbs of saying, thinking, etc in indirect speech.

*Many commentators declared that the economy was in serious trouble.*

*(not Many commentators declared, that the economy...)*

*No one knew how serious the situation would become.*

*(not No one knew, how serious...)*

A useful rule: we do not put a comma before *that* (conjunction or relative pronoun).

*They did not understand that the economic conditions that had existed earlier had disappeared for good.*

7 between grammatically separate sentences

Between grammatically separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop or a semi-colon, but not a comma. Compare:

*Orders began to dry up, and most companies reduced their workforce.*

*(comma and conjunction)*

*Orders began to dry up. Most companies started to reduce their workforce.*

*or Orders began to dry up; most companies started to reduce their workforce.*

*(but not Orders began to dry up, most companies started...)*
8 conjunctions and adverbs

Note that some linking words (e.g. consequently, however, therefore) are adverbs, not conjunctions. A sentence beginning with an adverb is grammatically separate from the sentence before it; consequently, a full stop or semi-colon is necessary between the sentences (► 283).

Orders began to dry up. Consequently, most companies started to reduce their workforce. (NOT Orders began to dry up, consequently, most companies . . .)

Orders began to dry up; however, some companies tried to carry on as before. (NOT Orders began to dry up, however, some companies . . .)

9 commas between adjectives

Before a noun, we use commas mostly to separate adjectives that give the same or related kinds of information.

- a tall, impressive figure
- a long, boring speech
- an expensive, ill-planned, wasteful project

Commas are sometimes dropped between short adjectives.

- a tall(,) dark(,) handsome cowboy

Commas are not dropped when adjectives or other modifiers refer to different parts of something.

- a green, red and gold carpet (NOT a green-red and gold carpet)
- concrete, glass and plastic buildings

Before a noun, commas are not normally used when adjectives give different kinds of information.

- Have you met our handsome new financial director? (NOT . . . our handsome, new, financial director)
- surprising new developments gloomy economic forecasts

After be and other linking verbs, adjectives are punctuated like a list (see below).

- His speech was long, boring, detailed and irrelevant.
- The cowboy was tall, dark and handsome.

10 lists

We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not usually before and unless the last item is long). Compare:

- The developing crisis affected manufacturers, distributors, marketing organisations, banks and credit agencies.
- . . . marketing organisations, banks, and some of the major credit agencies.

11 numbers

Commas are used to divide large numbers into groups of three figures, by separating off the thousands and millions.

- 6,435 (NOT 6.435) 7,456,189

We do not always use commas in four-figure numbers, and they are never used in dates.

- 3,164 or 3164 the year 1946

Spaces are sometimes used instead of commas.

- There are 1000 millimetres in 1 metre.

We do not use commas in decimals (► 322.1).

- 3.5 = three point five or three and a half (NOT three comma five)
Dashes (–) are especially common in informal writing. They can be used in the same way as colons, semi-colons or brackets.

There are three things I can never remember – names, faces, and I’ve forgotten the other.

We had a great time in Greece – the kids really loved it.

My mother – who rarely gets angry – really lost her temper.

A dash can introduce an afterthought, or something unexpected and surprising.

We’ll be arriving on Monday morning – at least, I think so.

And then we met Joseph – with Lisa, believe it or not!

For the use of hyphens (as in hard-working or co-operative), ► 342.

Quotation marks can be single (‘. . .’) or double (“. . .”). They are also called ‘inverted commas’ in British English.

1 direct speech

We use quotation marks (single or double) when we quote direct speech.

For quotations inside quotations, we use double quotation marks inside single (or single inside double).

‘His last words,’ said Albert, ‘were “Close that window”.’

American usage often prefers single quotation marks inside double in these cases.

2 special use of words

We often put quotation marks (usually single) round words which are used in special ways – for example when we talk about them or when we give them special meanings.

People disagree about how to use the word ‘disinterested’.

A textbook can be a ‘wall’ between the teacher and the class.

American usage often prefers double quotation marks in these cases.
Section 27  Speech and Spoken Exchanges

INTRODUCTION

Informal spoken sentences are generally simpler than written sentences. They have fewer subordinate clauses, and mostly use a small number of common conjunctions (e.g. and, but, that, so, if, because, when). Noun phrases are usually short: a subject is often a single pronoun. More formal grammatical structures (► 281) and vocabulary (► 333) are unusual. While many spoken utterances are similar in structure to written sentences, word order is less fixed. Information may be 'spaced out' more by putting some of it before or after the main sentence (► 299). Some speech does not fit into the 'complete sentence' pattern of writing at all.

Lovely, the way she talks about her mother. That car, is it yours?
How long you been waiting here, then?
'Maybe call in on Emma on the way out?' 'Not today I can't.'
'What time?' 'Half past eight.' 'At your place?' 'No, Andy's.'

This Section cannot of course offer a complete analysis of spoken language. The following entries describe a few common features of informal speech.

Do you know what's wrong with these, and why?

X Those people that we met them in Greece, shall we call them? ► 299.2
X Where you are going? ► 302
X 'What are you doing?' 'What I'm doing? Nothing.' ► 304.3
X Are you the new secretary, aren't you? ► 305.2
X You never say what you're thinking, don't you? ► 305.4
X 'Are you ready?' 'Yes, I'm.' ► 308
X 'Louise can dance beautifully.' 'So can her sister dance.' ► 309.1
X 'I'm getting bored.' 'I also.' ► 309.1
X Joe didn't phone, and neither didn't Kate. ► 309.2
X Couldn't you babysit this evening, please? ► 310.4

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

299 spoken sentence structure
300 avoiding repetition: Wonderful, isn’t it?
301 discourse markers in speech
302 declarative questions: That’s the boss?
303 rhetorical questions: Who cares?
304 echo questions: She’s invited how many?
305 question tags: basic information
306 question tags: advanced points
307 reply questions: Was it? Did you, dear?
308 short answers: Yes, he can, etc
309 so am I, neither do they, etc
310 politeness: using questions
311 politeness: distancing verb forms
312 politeness: softening expressions
313 pronunciation: stress and rhythm
314 pronunciation: intonation
315 pronunciation: weak and strong forms
299 spoken sentence structure

1 spacing out information: a course with three levels, it's carefully put together

In writing, information is often packed tightly into complex structures (see Introduction to Section 26). In speech, information is generally separated out and given piece by piece, to make it easier to take in. One can read at one's own speed, backtracking as necessary, but one cannot listen at one's own speed.

FORMAL WRITING: a carefully constructed progressive three-level course incorporating built-in oral and written revision tests

INFORMAL SPEECH: a course with three levels, it's carefully put together, progressive, it's got revision tests, they're oral and written

2 fronting and topicalisation: Your friend Alex, now he speaks German.

Spoken sentences may be built up quite differently from written sentences, not necessarily with the order subject-verb-object. Fronting (► 272) is common in speech: objects, adverbials or other elements may be moved to the front to give them more importance.

People like that I just can't stand.
Only this morning she was saying she had a problem.
What I'm going to do next I really don't know.

Often, a word or group of words may be moved right out of the sentence structure and announced at the beginning as the topic, with a more or less complete sentence following. These topicalisation structures are common in both speech and writing in many languages; in English they are unusual in writing.

Your friend Alex, now he speaks German, maybe he can help us.
(topicalised subject)
Your mother, can I see her if she's in? (topicalised object)
The people next door, we don't need to send them a card, do we?
(topicalised indirect object)
That meeting, I thought I was going to scream. (topicalised adverbial)
What they did, they invited everybody and then forgot the date.
(topicalised verb phrase)
Lovely, the way she talks about her mother. (topicalised complement)

Topicalised subjects and objects are repeated by pronouns in these structures (Your friend Alex . . . he; Your mother . . . her). But note that English does not normally allow these 'resumptive' pronouns inside relative clauses, even in speech.

Those people that we met in Greece, let's send them a card. (BUT NOT Those people that we met in Greece, . . .)

3 tags: They work very hard, most of them.

We can space out information by putting some of it in a complete sentence and then adding more details at the end. The extra words at the end are called a 'tag' or 'tail'.
Those kids work very hard, most of them.
That's the doorbell, I think. I don't mind, to be honest.

It is possible to 'announce' the subject with a pronoun, and put the full subject in a tag. These structures are more common in British than American English.

He hasn't a chance, Fred. He likes his beer, Jack.
They're very polite, your children.

In sentences like these, we often drop the pronoun at the beginning. We can also drop unstressed forms of be. (For more detailed information about 'ellipsis' of this kind, ► 277.)

Hasn't a chance, Fred. Likes his beer, Jack. Very polite, your children.
Living in the clouds, you lot. Crazy, that driver.

The tag can repeat the verb by using an auxiliary.

(He) hasn't a chance, Fred hasn't. (He) likes his beer, Jack does.

(She) really got on my nerves, Sylvia did.

4 emphasising tags: You've gone mad, you have.

Sometimes a tag gives no new information, but simply repeats and emphasises the subject and verb.

You've gone mad, you have. I'm getting fed up, I am.
He likes his beer, he does.

Pronouns are not usually used alone in tags, except for reflexives.

(I) don't think much of the party, myself.

For more about dropping words ('ellipsis') at the beginning of a sentence, ► 277.
For other uses of tags and similar structures, ► 305–306 (question tags), ► 307 (reply questions) and ► 308 (short answers).

300 avoiding repetition: Wonderful, isn’t it?

Speech is more tolerant of repetition than formal writing (► 287), but even in spoken exchanges people often prefer to avoid repeating each other’s words without a good reason. There is a common kind of exchange where one speaker gives his/her opinion of something, and the other agrees by saying the same thing in other words which are at least as emphatic. Repetition is carefully avoided.

‘Glorious day.’ ‘Wonderful, isn’t it?’ (not usually Glorious, isn’t it?)
‘Terrible weather.’ ‘Dreadful.’

‘United didn’t play very well, then.’ ‘Absolute rubbish.’

Speakers can of course repeat vocabulary and structures deliberately. This can be done for emphasis.

I’m very very angry. You’ll eat every mouthful. Every single mouthful.

Repeating somebody else’s words can show surprise or disbelief.

‘I’m getting married.’ ‘You’re getting married? Who to?’

For more about ‘echo questions’ of this kind, ► 304.
Discourse markers are words and expressions which help to structure spoken exchanges and written text. (e.g. first of all, by the way, on the other hand, in any case, to sum up). English has a very large number of these. Some are used in all kinds of discourse, some mostly in formal writing, and others mainly in informal speech. Those that are most common in speech are discussed here; some of these (but not all) are also used in formal writing, 284. Discourse markers can communicate several things:

- **What are we talking about?** They can introduce or clarify a topic, and show divisions and changes of topic.
- **What are we doing?** They can show the type of communication that is going on.
- **attitude** They can show a speaker's attitude to what he or she is saying, or to the listener's expectations.

### 1 What are we talking about?

Some discourse markers say what a speaker is going to focus on, and may show a link with previous discussion. Others show subdivisions and changes of topic.

**focusing:** talking/speaking of/about; regarding; as regards; as far as . . . is/are concerned; as for

*I saw Max and Emma today. You know she -‘Talking of Max, you know he's leaving’*

And speaking of Australia, did you see that documentary . . .?

*Regarding that car you were thinking of selling – how much do you want for it?*

*As far as the kids are concerned, let's ask them what they think. As for that business of going to the police, I'm sorry I mentioned it. I've invited Andy and Joseph. As for Joshua, I never want to see him again.*

**subdividing:** first; firstly; first of all; in the first place; to start with; for one thing; and then

*I don't think I can help you. First(ly) / First of all / For one thing / In the first place, I haven't got the time. And then I'm going to be away all next week. To start with, let me remind you that I'm the one who's paying for all this.*

**brief change of subject:** incidentally; by the way

*I was talking to Annie yesterday. Incidentally / By the way, did you know she's got a new job? And she said that Jake told her . . .*

**returning to previous subject:** as I was saying

*... on the roof – Jeremy, put the cat down, please. As I was saying, if Jack gets up on the roof and looks at the tiles . . .*

**introducing a new subject (for example in lectures):** now; all right; right; OK

*OK. Now a word about iron oxide. There's two basic types . . . Any questions? Right, let's have a word about tomorrow's arrangements.*
And the car broke down. And Jodie got mugged. And then Sophie was ill. All in all, it wasn’t the best trip we’ve had. He gets up at midday. He won’t look for a job. He doesn’t help around the house. In a word, he’s bone idle.

2 What are we doing?
Some discourse markers make it clear what kind of communication is going on.

generalising: on the whole; to some extent; in general; in all/most/many/some cases; broadly speaking

On the whole / In general, people like to help others. ‘Do you think TV is bad for kids?’ ‘Well, in some cases, maybe.’ To some extent, it’s an interesting job. But there are some pretty dull patches. Broadly speaking, I get on pretty well with people.

exceptions: apart from; except for
I’ll eat anything, apart from / except for chillies.

making contrasting points: still; all the same; even so; mind you; on the other hand; but; yet; however; in spite of this/that
I’m glad to have a place of my own. OK, it’s a long way from the centre, and it needs redecorating. Still, it’s home. I was a bit bored and lonely, yes, but I had a reasonably pleasant time all the same. Jenkins wasn’t on top form. Even so, he got two goals. Bankers are generally nice people. Mind you, I wouldn’t want my daughter to marry one. She can be really irritating. On the other hand, she’s got a heart of gold. OK, we’ve got to cut down expenses. But we can’t get rid of the car. He’s 85. Yet he still takes care of the farm. I’ll do a lot for my family. However, there are limits. The train was two hours late. In spite of that, we got to the match on time.

contradicting: on the contrary; quite the opposite
I don’t dislike him at all. On the contrary / Quite the opposite, I’m very fond of him.

showing a logical or causal connection: so; then (► 583)
They didn’t think I had enough experience, so I didn’t get the job. ‘I don’t like this stew.’ ‘Then/So don’t eat it.’

persuading: after all (► 361); look at it this way; look; question tags (► 305); negative questions (► 218)
Why shouldn’t she buy a horse if she wants to? After all, it’s her money. Look at it this way. Suppose you were in the same position as me. How would you feel?
We can't go to the gym now. Look, they close in an hour. 
You're taking this too seriously, aren't you? 
It's a bit expensive, don't you think?

adding: also; on top of that; as well as that; another thing is; besides; I mean (► 526.4)

I don't like his attitude. Also, I don’t believe he's actually got the qualifications he says he has. 
They're cutting unemployment benefits. And on top of that, they're putting up VAT. 
The place is close to the sea. And another thing is, the people are really friendly. 
I don’t like her going out alone at night. You don't know what sort of people she's going to meet. And besides / I mean, she's far too young.

giving examples: in particular; for instance; for example

I'd like to have time to talk to some of the others. In particular, I want to find out what Joshua thinks. 
We could invite some of the neighbours, for instance / for example, Jess and Simon.

For other uses of still, ► 595. For a comparison of on the contrary and on the other hand, ► 428.1.

3 attitude

Some discourse markers express the speaker's attitude to what he/she is saying, or modify what is being said to make the communication more effective.

showing speaker's attitude: no doubt; honestly; frankly

No doubt you will be paying your rent by the end of the week, Mr Jenkins? 
(No doubt is often ironic: the speaker may not be at all sure of Mr Jenkins’ intentions.)

Honestly, I think your poetry is remarkable.

'What do you think of my hair?' 'Frankly, darling, it's a disaster.'

making things clear: that is to say; in other words; I mean; I guess

There's a problem about tomorrow. That is to say, I don't think we can come. 
I've got a funny feeling about him. In other words / I mean, I don't trust him. 
I guess, looking back on it, I was her toy boy.

softening and correcting: in my view/opinion; apparently; so to speak; that is to say; more or less; I think/suppose/reckon/guess; sort of; kind of; really; well, at least; I'm afraid (► 359.2); actually (► 358); or rather; I mean

A lot of people say he's a bad manager. In my view/opinion, he's OK. 
'I've heard there's been a fire at the office.' 'Yes, apparently so.' 
Dan's the family conscience, so to speak. He's always telling us what's right. 
Leave me out. That is to say / I mean, I'm not sure your plan will work.
'Are you still looking for work?' 'Yes. Well, sort of, more or less.'
He's not always very good at organising his life. At least, that's my impression.
'I sort of wondered if you could help me with this.' 'Sorry, I'm afraid
I'm not free.'
I can't get to the hospital to see Julie. I mean, not this week, anyway.
She lives at 19 Gordon Terrace – or rather, Gordon Close.

(Not . . . or better . . .)
My brother didn't do well at school, though actually, he did get a prize for art.

**dismissing what was said before:** in any case; anyhow; anyway; at any rate

These expressions mean 'What was said before doesn't matter – this is the real point.'

Maybe it was Daniel, or maybe it was Joe. Or Jack. Anyway, it was one of them.
I can't get to the hospital to see Julie. I mean, not this week, anyhow.
The hotel's probably OK. It's cheap, and the place seems clean. At any rate, it's better than sleeping in the car.
I'm not sure what time I'll arrive, maybe seven or eight. In any case, I'll certainly be there before 8.30.

**referring to the hearer's expectations:** in fact; actually; as a matter of fact; to tell the truth; well; actually

These expressions introduce information that will contradict (usually) or perhaps confirm what the hearer or reader thinks.

'So what do you think?' 'To tell the truth, I wasn't really listening to what everyone was saying.'

'How are your medical studies going?' 'As a matter of fact, I've decided to drop out for a year and get a job.'

'Hello, Adrian.' 'Actually, my name's Richard.'

'Was the skiing good?' 'Yes, actually, it was wonderful.'

'How did the team do?' 'Well, they lost.'

**gaining time:** let me see; let's see; let me think; well; you know; I don't know; I mean; kind of; sort of

'How much is it going to cost?' 'Let me see. There's materials. And transport. And . . .'

'When can you pay me back?' 'Well, you know, let me think, I don't know, I mean, things are kind of tight just now, . . .'

**checking common ground:** you know; (you) know what I mean?; of course (► 540); you see

A speaker says 'you know' to tell the hearer (or to pretend) that they share the same piece of information.

I was talking to Marty – you know, the guy who works with Alex – and he thinks we can . . .

We were in Haworth – you know, the village where the Brontës lived. And . . .

He never called her. Because unattractive men don't want unattractive girls;
(you) know what I mean?
Of course implies that everybody knows something (and can be used to make the hearer feel inferior for not knowing it!).

It’s a lovely piece, isn’t it? Of course, it was originally written for violin and piano, . . .

You see introduces information that the speaker thinks the hearer does not share.

It’s no good using this battery charger. You see, it’s 12 volts, and your battery is 6 volts.

I’m sorry, but you can’t come in here. You see, it’s for members only.

302 declarative questions: That’s the boss?

In spoken questions, we do not always put an auxiliary verb before the subject.

You’re working late tonight?

These ‘declarative questions’ are often used when the speaker thinks he/she knows or has understood something, but wants to make sure or express surprise. A rising intonation is common.

This is your car? (= I suppose this is your car, isn’t it?)

That’s the boss? I thought he was the cleaner.

‘We’re going to Hull for the weekend.’ ‘You’re going to Hull?’

This word order is not normally possible after a question word.

Where are you going? (Not Where you are going?)

303 rhetorical questions: Who cares?

1 questions that do not expect an answer

Questions do not always ask for information. In many languages, a question with an obvious answer can be used simply as a way of drawing attention to something. Questions of this kind are called ‘rhetorical questions’.

Do you know what time it is? (= You’re late.)

Who’s a lovely baby? (= You’re a lovely baby.)

‘I can’t find my coat.’ ‘What’s this, then?’ (= Here it is, stupid.)

Very often, a rhetorical question draws attention to a negative situation—the answer is obviously No, or there is no answer to the question.

What’s the use of asking her? (= It’s no use asking her.)

How do you expect me to find milk on a Sunday night? Where am I going to find a shop open? (= You can’t reasonably expect . . . There aren’t any shops open.)

Where’s my money? (= You haven’t paid me.)

‘I can run faster than you.’ ‘Who cares?’ (= Nobody cares.)

Are we going to let them do this to us? (= We aren’t . . .)

Have you lost your tongue? (= Why don’t you say anything?)

What do you think you’re doing? (= You can’t justify what you’re doing.)

Who do you think you are? (= You aren’t as important as your behaviour suggests.)

Why don’t you take a taxi? (= There’s no reason not to.)
2 **Why/How should . . .?**

*Why should . . .?* can be used aggressively to reject suggestions, requests and instructions.

'Anna’s very unhappy.' 'Why should I care?'

'Could your wife help us in the office tomorrow?' 'Why should she? She doesn’t work for you.'

*How should/would I know?* is an aggressive reply to a question.

'What time does the film start?' 'How should I know?'

3 **negative yes/no questions**

Negative yes/no questions (► 218) often suggest that the speaker wants the answer Yes, or some other positive response.

Haven’t I done enough for you? (= I have done enough for you.)

Didn’t I tell you it would rain? (= I told you . . .)

Don’t touch that! ‘Why shouldn’t I?’ (= I have a perfect right to.)

304 **echo questions: She’s invited how many?**

1 **You’re getting married?**

To question what has been said, a speaker may simply repeat (‘echo’) what he/she has heard. A rising intonation is common.

'I’m getting married.' ‘You’re getting married?’

2 **Take a look at what?**

To question one part of a sentence, we can repeat the rest of the sentence, and put a stressed question word in place of the part we are asking about.

'Just take a look at that.' ‘Take a look at what?’

'She’s invited thirteen people to dinner.' ‘She’s invited how many?’

'We’re going to Tierra del Fuego for a month.' ‘You’re going where?’

'I’ve broken the fettle gauge.' ‘You’ve broken the what?’

To question a verb, or the part of a sentence beginning with the verb, do what is used.

'She set fire to the garage.' ‘She did what (to the garage)?’

3 **repeating a question: Where am I going? Home.**

A speaker may question a question, by repeating it with a rising intonation. Note that we use normal question structures with inverted word order, not indirect question structures, in this case.

'Where are you going?' ‘Where am I going? Home.’

(Not . . . Where I’m going? . . . )

'What does he want?' ‘What does he want? Money, as usual.’

(Not . . . What he wants? . . . )

'Are you tired?' ‘Am I tired? Of course not.’ (Not . . . Whether I’m tired? . . . )

'Do squirrels eat insects?' ‘Do squirrels eat insects? I’m not sure.’

(Not . . . Whether squirrels eat insects? . . . )
305 question tags: basic information

1 What are question tags?
‘Question tags’ (also called ‘tag questions’) are the small questions that often come at the ends of sentences in speech, and sometimes in informal writing.

The film wasn’t very good, was it?
Negatives are usually contracted. Full forms are possible in formal speech.

That’s the doorbell, isn’t it?
You take sugar in tea, don’t you?
They promised to repay us within six months, did they not? (formal)

Question tags can be used to check whether something is true, or to ask for agreement.

2 negative after affirmative, and vice versa

Question tags are used after affirmative and negative sentences, but not after questions.

You’re the new secretary, aren’t you?
You’re not the new secretary, are you?

(BUT NOT Are you the new secretary, aren’t you?)

To check information or ask for agreement, we most often put negative tags after affirmative sentences, and non-negative tags after negative sentences.

+ — — +
It’s cold, isn’t it? It’s not warm, is it?

For ‘same-way’ tags, ► 306.7

3 auxiliaries

If the main sentence has an auxiliary verb (or non-auxiliary be), this is repeated in the question tag.

Sophia can speak French, can’t she?
The meeting’s at ten, isn’t it?
You didn’t speak to Luke, did you?
You wouldn’t like a puppy, would you?

If the main sentence has no auxiliary, the question tag has do.

You like oysters, don’t you?
Harry gave you my address, didn’t he?
4 negative words

Non-negative tags are used after sentences containing negative words like never, no, nobody, hardly, scarcely and little.

You never say what you’re thinking, do you? (not ... don’t you?)
It’s no good, is it? (not ... isn’t it?)
It’s hardly rained at all this summer, has it?
There’s little we can do about it, is there?

5 meaning and intonation

In speech, we can show the exact meaning of a question tag by the intonation.
If the tag is a real question – if we really want to know something and are not sure of the answer – we use a rising intonation: the voice goes up.

The meetings at four o’clock, isn’t it?

If the tag is not a real question – if we are sure of the answer – we use a falling intonation: the voice goes down.

It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?

In writing, the exact meaning of a question tag is normally clear from the context.

6 requests: You couldn’t . . . , could you?

We often ask for help or information by using the structure negative statement + question tag.

You couldn’t lend me a pound, could you?
You haven’t seen my watch anywhere, have you?

For details of other kinds of tags, ► 299.

306 question tags: advanced points

1 aren’t I?

The question tag for I am is aren’t I?
I’m late, aren’t I?
Am I not? is also possible in very formal contexts.

2 imperatives: Come in, won’t you?

After imperatives, won’t you? can be used to invite people politely to do things (especially in British English).

Come in, won’t you?
Will/would/can/could you? can all be used to tell or ask people to do things.

Give me a hand, will you? Open a window, would you?
Can’t you expresses impatience.

Shut up, can’t you?

After a negative imperative, we use will you?

Don’t forget, will you?
3 Let's... shall we?
After let's... (in suggestions, etc, ► 225), we use shall we?
Let's have a party, shall we?

4 There's... isn't there?
There can be used in question tags.
There's something wrong, isn't there?
There weren't any problems, were there?
When there's introduces a plural noun phrase (► 130.6), the tag is aren't there?
There's some more chairs upstairs, aren't there?

5 it and they with nothing, nobody, somebody, etc
We use it in question tags to refer to nothing and everything.
Nothing can happen, can it?
We use they (► 175) to refer to nobody, somebody and everybody
(and no one, etc).
Nobody phoned, did they?
Somebody wanted a drink, didn't they? Who was it?

6 non-auxiliary have
After non-auxiliary have (referring to states), question tags with have and do are often both possible. (Do is normal in American English.)
Your father has a bad back, hasn't/doesn't he?

For more about the use of do with have, ► 23–24.

7 'same-way' question tags: You're getting married, are you?
Non-negative question tags are quite common after affirmative sentences. These are often used as responses to something that has been said: the speaker repeats what he/she has just learnt, and uses the tag to express interest, surprise, concern or some other reaction.
So you're getting married, are you? How nice!
So she thinks she's going to become a doctor, does she? Well, well.
You think you're funny, do you?
'Same-way' tags can also be used to ask questions. In this structure, we use the main sentence to make a guess, and then ask (in the tag) if it was correct.
Your mother's at home, is she? This is the last bus, is it?
You can eat shellfish, can you?
I'll..., shall I? can be used to make offers.
I'll hold that for you, shall I?
Negative 'same-way' tags are occasionally heard; they usually sound aggressive.
I see. You don't like my cooking, don't you?

8 ellipsis: Nice day, isn't it?
In sentences with question tags, it is quite common to leave out pronoun subjects and auxiliary verbs. (This is called 'ellipsis'. For details, ► 277.)
(It's a) nice day, isn't it? (She was) talking to my husband, was she?
In very informal speech, a question tag can sometimes be used after a question with ellipsis.

*Have a good time, did you?*  
*Your mother at home, is she?*  
*Jack be here tomorrow, will he?*

9 **I (don’t) think**

Note the use of question tags in sentences beginning with *I (don’t) think* and similar expressions (► 277).

*I think he’s Norwegian, isn’t he?*  
*I don’t think it will rain, will it?*  
*I suppose you’re hungry, aren’t you?*

10 **simpler question tags**

In informal speech, simpler tags such as *No?* (after affirmatives) and *Right?* are very often used to check information or ask for agreement.

*We’re seeing her tomorrow, no?*  
*They all speak English, right?*  
*You haven’t got a ticket, right?*  
*Right* can also be used, rather aggressively, to mean ‘Is that clear to you?’

*This is your last chance, right?*  
*I’m not working extra hours, right?*

In non-standard speech, *isn’t it? / innit?* is common as a universal question tag.

*You wants them bricks today, innit?*

For details of other kinds of tags, ► 299.

307 **reply questions: Was it? Did you, dear?**

Short questions are often used in conversation to show that the listener is paying attention and interested. They are constructed with auxiliary verb + pronoun, like question tags (► 305).

*‘It was a terrible party.’ ‘Was it?’ ‘Yes . . .’*

Note that these questions do not ask for information – they simply show that the listener is reacting to what has been said. More examples:

*‘We had a lovely trip.’ ‘Did you?’ ‘Yes, we went . . .’*  
*‘I’ve got a headache.’ ‘Have you, dear? I’ll get you an aspirin.’*  
*‘Jack likes that girl next door.’ ‘Oh, does he?’*  
*‘I don’t understand.’ ‘Don’t you? I’m sorry.’*

Negative questions in reply to affirmative statements express emphatic agreement (like negative-question exclamations, ► 223.4).

*‘It was a lovely concert.’ ‘Yes, wasn’t it? I did enjoy it.’*  
*‘She’s put on a lot of weight.’ ‘Yes, hasn’t she?’*
308 short answers: Yes, he can, etc

Answers are often grammatically incomplete, because they do not need to repeat words that have just been said. A common 'short answer' pattern is subject + auxiliary verb, together with whatever other words are really necessary.

'Can he swim?' 'Yes, he can.' (More natural than Yes, he can swim.)

'Has it stopped raining?' 'No, it hasn’t.'

'Are you enjoying yourself?' 'I certainly am.'

'Don’t forget to write.' 'I won’t.'

'You didn’t phone Debbie last night.' 'No, but I did this morning.'

We use do if there is no other auxiliary.

'She likes cakes.' 'She really does.'

'That surprised you.' 'It certainly did.'

Non-auxiliary be and have can be used in short answers.

'Is she happy?' 'I think she is.'

'Have they any money?' 'Yes, they have.'

Short answers can be followed by tags (► 305–306).

'Nice day.' 'Yes, it is, isn’t it?'

Note that stressed, non-contracted affirmative forms are used in short answers.

Yes, I am. (NOT Yes, I’m.)

For similar structures, ► 307 (reply questions), ► 305–306 (question tags) and ► 279 (ellipsis).

309 so am I, neither do they, etc

1 so + auxiliary + subject

We can use so to mean ‘similarly, also’, before auxiliary verb + subject.

The structure is used to answer or add to what came before. Note the word order.

Louise can dance beautifully, and so can her sister.

'I’ve lost their address.' 'So have I.'

The same structure is possible with non-auxiliary be and have.

'I was tired, and so were the others.'

'I have a headache.' 'So have I.'

After a clause with no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did.

'He just wants the best for his country.' 'So did Hitler.'

We do not normally use a more complete verb phrase in this structure.

We can say, for example, So can her sister, but not So can her sister dance.

A more informal alternative to So am I, etc is Me too.

'I’m getting bored.' 'Me too.' (NOT I also.)

2 neither do I, I can’t either, etc

We can use neither and nor as adverbs to mean ‘also not’. Neither and nor come at the beginning of a clause, and are followed by inverted word order (► 270): auxiliary verb + subject.

'I can’t swim.' 'Neither/nor can I.' (NOT I also can’t.)

Ruth didn’t turn up, and neither/nor did Kate. (NOT . . . and Kate didn’t too.)

In American English, nor is not normally used after and.
We can also use not . . . either with the same meaning and normal word order.

'I can't swim.' 'I can't either.'
Ruth didn't turn up, and Kate didn't either.

In very informal speech, me neither (and occasionally me either, especially in American English) can be used instead of I . . . n't either.

'I can't swim.' 'Me neither.'

Only one negative word (not or neither) is necessary to give a negative meaning.

Neither did Kate or Kate didn't either.

(Not Neither didn't Kate or Kate didn't neither)

For the pronunciation of either, ► 156. For the pronunciation of neither, ► 157.
For neither . . . nor, ► 228.3. For other uses of either and neither, ► 156–157.
For not . . . or and not . . . nor, ► 227.

3 so + subject + auxiliary: So it is!

So is used in another short structure before subject + auxiliary verb (note the word order) to express surprised agreement.

'It's raining.' 'Why, so it is!'

'You've just put the teapot in the fridge.' 'So I have!'
3 shops, restaurants, etc

Requests in shops, restaurants, etc are usually more direct, and are not always expressed as questions. Typical structures:

- Can I have one of those, please?  I'd like to see the wine list, please.
- Could I have a look at the red ones?  I would prefer a small one.

Give me . . ., please and I want . . ., please are not normally considered polite. But in places where only a few kinds of thing are sold and not much needs to be said, it is enough just to say what is wanted and add please.

- 'The Times', please.
- Two cheeseburgers, please.
- Black coffee, please.
- Return to Lancaster, please.

4 negative questions

Negative questions (►218) are not used in polite requests.

Could you give me a light? (not Couldn't you give me a light? - this sounds like a complaint.)

But negative statements with question tags are common in informal requests in British English.

- You couldn't babysit this evening, could you?
- I don't suppose you could babysit this evening, could you? (very polite)

5 expressions of opinion

Expressions of opinion can also be made less direct by turning them into questions. Compare:

- It would be better to paint it green. (direct expression of opinion)
- Wouldn't it be better to paint it green? (less direct: negative question asking for agreement)
- Would it be better to paint it green? (open question – very indirect)

For other rules of ‘social language’, ►329.

311 politeness: distancing verb forms

1 past tenses: How much did you want to spend?

We can make requests (and also questions, suggestions and statements) less direct (and so more polite) by using verb forms that suggest ‘distance’ from the immediate present reality. Past tenses are often used to do this.

- How much did you want to spend, sir? (meaning ‘How much do you want to spend?’)
- How many days did you intend to stay? (meaning ‘. . . do you intend . . .’)
- I wondered if you were free this evening.

2 progressives: I’m hoping . . .

Progressive forms can be used in the same way. They sound more casual and less definite than simple forms, because they suggest something temporary and incomplete.

- I’m hoping you can lend me £10. (Less definite than I hope . . .)
- What time are you planning to arrive? (More casual-sounding than Please let us know what time you plan to arrive.)
- I’m looking forward to seeing you again. (More casual than I look forward . . .)
- I’m afraid we must be going.
Past progressives give two levels of distancing.

Good morning, I was wondering: do you need help moving that stuff?
Were you looking for anything special? (in a shop)
I was thinking – what about borrowing Jake's car?

3 future: You’ll need to . . .

Another way to distance something is to displace it into the future. Will need / have to can be used to soften instructions and orders.
I’ll have to ask you to wait a minute.
And will is sometimes used to say how much money is owed.
That will be £1.65, please.
Future progressive verbs are often used to enquire politely about people’s plans (► 41).
Will you be going away this summer?

4 modal verbs: would, could and might

The modal verbs would, could and might also make questions, requests and suggestions less direct.
I thought it would be nice to have a picnic.
Hi! I thought I'd come over and introduce myself. My name's Andy.
Could you give me a hand?
Could I ask you to translate this for me?
We could ask Daniel to help us.
I was wondering if you might be interested in a game of tennis.
'I came in and ordered some shoes from you.' 'Oh yes, sir. When would that have been, exactly?'
Would is very often used to form requests and offers with verbs like like and prefer.
What would you like to drink?
Note the common use of would before verbs of saying and thinking, to make a statement sound less definite.
I would say we’d do better to catch the earlier train.
This is what I would call annoying.
I would think we might stop for lunch soon.
I’m surprised you didn’t like the film. I would have thought it was just your kind of thing.
We would ask passengers to have their tickets ready for inspection.

5 conditional and negative expressions

Another way of distancing suggestions from reality is to make them conditional or negative.
It would be better if we turned it the other way up.
What if we stayed at home for a change? Suppose I gave Alice a call?
If you would come this way . . . I wonder if you could lend me £5?
I don’t suppose you want to buy a car, do you?
You wouldn’t like to come out with us, by any chance?
You couldn’t take the children to school, could you? (but not Couldn’t you take the children to school? This sounds like a complaint, ► 310.4.)
312 politeness: softening expressions

1 quite, maybe, I think, etc
We can express our opinions and intentions less directly (and therefore more politely) by using softening expressions like quite, rather, kind of, a bit, maybe, seem, at all (► 387).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Softening Expression</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quite</td>
<td>He's quite difficult to understand, isn't he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>I find her rather bossy, don't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind of</td>
<td>Maybe I'll go for a walk now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit</td>
<td>The food's a bit expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seem</td>
<td>They don't seem very friendly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>This music's kind of boring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at all</td>
<td>Will you be seeing Denise at all?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more examples, ► 301.3.

2 I think I'll . . .
We can say that we are thinking of doing things, instead of expressing our intentions directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I think I'll . . .</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I think I'll</td>
<td>I think I'll go to bed in a few minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm thinking of</td>
<td>I'm thinking of going to London tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'd quite like to</td>
<td>I'd quite like to start thinking about going home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 We would like to . . .
In a formal style, requests, invitations, suggestions, etc are often introduced by would like instead of being expressed directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We would like to . . .</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We would like to invite you to give a talk to our members on June 14th.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'd like to suggest that we take a vote.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I would like to congratulate you on your examination results.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

313 pronunciation: stress and rhythm

Stress and rhythm are important elements in English pronunciation. If learners pronounce all the syllables in a sentence too regularly, with the same force and at the same speed, they can be quite hard for English speakers to understand. And if learners are not sensitive to English stress and rhythm, they may not perceive unstressed syllables (especially ‘weak forms’, ► 315) at all, and this may make it difficult for them to follow natural English speech.

1 stress
**Stress** is the word for the ‘strength’ with which syllables are pronounced. In speech, some parts of English words and sentences sound louder than others. For example, the first syllable of CARpet, the second syllable of inSPEcTion or the last syllable of confUSE are usually stressed, while the other syllables in these words are not. In the sentence *Don’t look at HIM – HE didn’t do it*, the words him and he are stressed in order to emphasise them. Stressed syllables are not only louder; they may also have longer vowels, and they may be pronounced on a higher musical pitch.
2 word stress

English words with more than one syllable mostly have a fixed stress pattern. There are not many rules to show which syllable of a word will be stressed: one usually has to learn the stress pattern of a word along with its meaning, spelling and pronunciation. Examples:

Stressed on first syllable:
- After, Capital, HAPPen, Exercise, EASY

Stressed on second syllable:
- inSTEAD, pronOUNCE, aGREement, parTicularly

Stressed on third syllable:
- enterTAIN, underSTAND, concenTRAtion

The stressed syllable of a word is the one that can carry an intonation movement (► 314 below).

Many short phrases also have a fixed stress pattern.
- front DOOR (not FRONT door)   LIVING room (not living ROOM)

Related words can have different stress patterns.
- to inCREASE   an inIncrease
- PHOtograph   phoTOgrapher   photoGRAphic

A good dictionary will show how words and common phrases are stressed.

3 variable stress

Some words have variable stress. In these, the stress is at or near the end when the word is spoken alone, but it can move to an earlier position when the word is in a sentence, especially if another stressed word follows. Compare:
- afterNOON (stress at the end)
  It's time for my AFTERnoon NAP. (stress at the beginning)
- Japanese
  JAPanese COOKing
- nineTEEN
  The year NINEteen TWENty

Many short phrases – for instance, two-word verbs – have variable stress.
- Their marriage broke UP.
- Money problems BROKE up their marriage.
- Do sit DOWN.
  She SAT down and cried.
- It's dark BLUE.
  a DARK blue SUIT

4 stress and pronunciation

Unstressed syllables nearly always have one of two vowels: /u/ (in unstressed prefixes written with e, like de-, re-, pre-, ex-) or /ə/ (in other cases).

Compare the first syllables in the following pairs of words:
- PREference (/'prefrəns/)
  preFER (/'prɪfə(r)/)
- Expert (/'ekspɔːt/)
  experIENCE (/'ɪk'spɪrɪəns/)
- CONFident (/'kɔnfɪdənt/)
  confUSED (/'kɔnfjuːzd/)
- PARTICle (/'pɑːtɪkl/)
  parTicular (/'pɑːtɪkjəl/)

► 313 pronunciation: stress and rhythm
Many short words (mostly pronouns, prepositions, conjunctions and auxiliary verbs) have two quite different pronunciations: a normal ‘weak’ unstressed form, and a ‘strong’ form used when the word has special stress. (For details, ► 315.) ‘I was (/wəz/) here first.’ ‘No you weren’t.’ ‘Yes I was (/wəz/).

5 emotive and contrastive stress

We can use stress to emphasise (strengthen) a particular word or expression. There are two main reasons for this. We may wish to show that we feel strongly about what we are saying (‘emotive emphasis’).

I feel GREAT! Your hair looks SO good like that!

This is your LAST chance.

Or we may wish to show a contrast between, for example, true and false, or present and past, or a rule and an exception (‘contrastive emphasis’).

‘Why weren’t you at the meeting?’ ‘I WAS at the meeting.’

I don’t do much sport now, but I DID play football when I was younger.

I don’t see my family much, but I visit my MOTHER occasionally.

Emphasis can also show that something expected actually happened, or is the case.

I thought I’d pass the exam, and I DID pass.

We often stress auxiliary verbs to show emphasis. This can make a whole sentence sound emphatic, or it can indicate a contrast. Most auxiliary verbs change their pronunciation when they are stressed (► 315).

You HAVE grown! I AM telling the truth! You MUST believe me!

In emphatic sentences without auxiliary verbs, we add do to carry stress.

DO sit down. She DOES like you.

If he DOES decide to come, let me know, will you?

With stressed auxiliary verbs, word order can change (► 200.3). Compare:

I’m really tired. I really AM tired.

Changes in stress can affect the meaning of a sentence. Compare:

MEGAN called me yesterday. (She was the one who called.)

Megan CALLED me yesterday. (But she didn’t come and see me.)

Megan called ME yesterday. (But she didn’t call you, did she?)

Megan called me YESTERDAY. (Not today.)

6 stress in sentences; rhythm

Rhythm is the word for the way stressed and unstressed syllables make patterns in speech. In sentences, we usually give more stress to nouns, ordinary verbs, adjectives and adverbs, and less stress to pronouns, determiners, prepositions, conjunctions and auxiliary verbs.

She was SURE that the BACK of the CAR had been DAMaged.

Stressed syllables are pronounced more slowly and clearly, and (in the opinion of some linguists) follow each other at roughly regular intervals. Unstressed syllables are pronounced more quickly and less clearly, and are fitted in between the stressed syllables. Compare the following two sentences. The second does not take much longer to say than the first: although it has three more unstressed syllables, it has the same number of stressed syllables.

She KNEW the DOCTOR. She KNEW that there was a DOCTOR.
Intonation is the word for the ‘melody’ of spoken language: the way the musical pitch of the voice rises and falls. Intonation systems in languages are very complicated and difficult to analyse, and linguists do not all agree about how English intonation works.

1 intonation in conversation
One use of intonation is to show how a piece of information fits in with what comes before and after. For instance, a speaker may raise his or her voice when taking over the conversation from somebody else, or to indicate a change of subject. A rise or fall on a particular word may show that this is the ‘centre’ of the message – the place where the new information is being given; or it may signal a contrast or a special emphasis. A rising tone at the end of a sentence may suggest that there is more to be said and perhaps invite another speaker to take over.

2 attitude
Intonation (together with speed, voice quality and loudness) can also say things about the speaker’s attitude. For instance, when people are excited or angry they often raise and lower their voices more.

3 three patterns
There are three particularly common intonation patterns in English speech.

a falling intonation
A falling intonation can suggest that we are saying something definite, complete. The voice falls on the last stressed syllable of a group of words.

*I’m tired.*

*Here’s your dictionary.*

*Sophie couldn’t find him.*

A falling intonation is also common in *yes/no* questions.

*What time’s the last bus?*

*Where’s the secretary?*

b rising intonation
A rising intonation is common in *yes/no* questions. The voice rises at the end of a group of words, beginning on the last stressed syllable.
Are you tired?

Is that the secretary?

Did he sign it?

In 'alternative questions' with or, the voice rises on the first part of the question and falls on the second part.

Are you staying or going?

c fall-rise

A fall-rise intonation suggests that something is incomplete, or uncertain, or that there is more to be said.

I'm tired. (perhaps suggesting But maybe I'll go out with you anyway.)

I don't play tennis. (perhaps suggesting But I do play other games.)

She's quite a good teacher. (perhaps suggesting But I'm not completely happy with her.)

The first week was good. (perhaps suggesting But not the second.)

Is this all you've written? (perhaps suggesting I was expecting more.)

A fall-rise makes questions sound more interested or friendly. It is common in polite requests and invitations.

Where's the secretary?

Please come in.

Is this your car?

What's your name?

Some more potatoes?
4 intonation and misunderstandings

If a statement is made on a rising intonation, it may be misunderstood as a question.

‘That’s our train.’ ‘I don’t know.’ ‘Yes, it is, I’m telling you.’

If a declarative question (► 302) is made on a falling intonation, it may be misunderstood as a statement.

‘That’s our train?’ ‘Is it?’ ‘No, I’m asking you.’

A falling intonation can also turn a polite request into an order.

‘Can I have some more coffee?’ ‘At once, Your Majesty.’

A fall-rise in the wrong place can be misunderstood as suggesting more than is said.

‘I’d like to play tennis.’ ‘So, what’s the problem?’ ‘There’s no problem.’

For intonation in question tags, ► 305.

315 pronunciation: weak and strong forms

1 What are weak and strong forms?

Some English words – for example at, for, have, and, us – have two pronunciations: one is used when they are not stressed, and the other when they are. Compare:

I’m looking at /æt/ you. What are you looking at /ət/?

2 stressed or not?

Most words with two pronunciations are prepositions, pronouns, conjunctions, articles and auxiliary verbs. Such words are not usually stressed, because they are generally found together with other more important words which carry the stress. So the unstressed (‘weak’) pronunciation is the normal one. This usually has the vowel /ə/ or no vowel; a few weak forms are pronounced with /ɪ/.
However, these words can be stressed when they are emphasised, or when there is no other word to carry the stress. In these cases the ‘strong’ pronunciation is used. This has the vowel that corresponds to the spelling. Compare:

- *I must* /mʌst/ go now.
  - *I really must* /mʌst/ stop smoking. (stressed for emphasis)
- *I was* /wɔz/ late.
  - *It was* /wɔz/ raining.
  - *Yes, it was* /wɔz/ . (stressed at end of sentence: there is no other word to be stressed)
- *Where have* /hæv/ you been?
  - *You might have* /hæv/ told me.

Contractions of negatives always have a strong pronunciation.

- *can’t* /kænt/  
- *mustn’t* /mʌstn/  
- *wasn’t* /wɒznt/  

3 list of words with weak and strong forms

The most important words which have weak and strong forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weak form</th>
<th>Strong form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>/ə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>/(ə)m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>/ən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>/(ə)n(d)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>/ə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>/æz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>/ət/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>/bi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
<td>/bin/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>/bat/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>/k(ə)n/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>/kəd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>/d(a)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>/dʌz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>/fə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>/frəm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>/(h)əd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>/(h)əz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>/(h)əv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>/(h)i/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>/(h)ə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td>/(h)i:m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>/(h)i:z/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>/z, s/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>/(mə)s(t)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>/nt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>/əv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>/ə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saint</td>
<td>/s(ə)nt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>/ʃ(ə)l/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

grammar • 315 pronunciation: weak and strong forms
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weak form</th>
<th>Strong form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>/ʃi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>/ʃ(ə)d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sir</td>
<td>/sə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some (▶ 158)</td>
<td>/s(ə)m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than</td>
<td>/ð(ə)n/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that (conj.)</td>
<td>/ð(ə)t/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>/ðə, ði/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>/ð(ə)m/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there (▶ 605)</td>
<td>/ðə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>/tə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>/əs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>/w(ə)z/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>/wə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>/wə(r)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>/hu/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>/w(ə)l, l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>/wəd, (ə)d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>/ju/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>/jə(r)/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

Many people believe that there is one form of their language that is more correct than others. They may believe for instance that British English is more correct than other varieties; or that written English is more correct than spoken English; or that standard spoken forms are more correct than dialect forms. Often this belief is supported by reference to grammars, usage guides or dictionaries: if something conflicts with a rule in a grammar, or if a word isn’t in the dictionary, it ‘must be wrong’. Since the reference books are most often based on observation of the standard written language (and not by reference to a great grammar book in the sky), the argument is really circular: these books will naturally describe standard usage, because that is what they are for; but this does not mean that there is anything wrong with other kinds of usage that are less often described.

A better way of looking at things is to say that usage is ‘correct in its place’. Standard American English is correct in an American context, British English in a British context, Indian English in an Indian context, spoken grammar in casual speech, formal written grammar in formal writing, dialect forms in the appropriate dialect. The only forms that are wrong in all contexts are learners’ errors (I have forgetting the your address), obsolete forms and structures (I had rather not answer you) and slips (One of our chairs are broken). This means that there is no one answer to the question: ‘What kind of English should learners study?’ It depends on their purposes. Someone who wants to use English mostly in, for example, Australia, South Africa, India or Canada, will do well to study the standard variety of that region. For many learners, however, the best model is one or other of the two main standard varieties: British or American English. Neither of these is ‘better’ than the other, and they are both used and understood worldwide. The differences are generally unimportant: for details, ► 319.

People are also worried by language change. If younger people ‘break’ the rules that older people have learnt, or use language in new ways, older people often feel disturbed: they are concerned that younger people no longer know their grammar, and that the language is going downhill. This is a needless worry: change is natural and inevitable, it cannot be halted, and it does not generally affect a language’s efficiency as a communicative tool. A great deal of modern English grammar would have been wrong three hundred years ago, and will perhaps be wrong again three hundred years from now.
What do you think? Are these correct or not in standard British English?

The company has doubled it's profits this year. ► 317.1
I could not understanding the lecture. ► 317.1
I ain't done nothing. ► 317.2
I wants a drink. ► 317.2
Jack and me went to the cinema. ► 317.3
They’re different to us. ► 317.3
There are less people here than usual. ► 317.3
Somebody’s dropped their keys. ► 317.3
What are you waiting for? ► 317.4
You need to really concentrate. ► 317.4
I’m making a concerted effort to eat less. ► 317.5
Here’s your papers. ► 318.6
The data is unclear. ► 318.7
Who do you trust? ► 318.9
If I was younger I’d do it myself. ► 318.9
You pronounced it wrong. ► 318.9
Be not afraid. ► 318.10
I lost my coin-purse. ► 319.2
You’re tired, is it? ► 320.2
Will I call back later? ► 320.3
Can be that Ahmed calling. ► 320.3

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

316 standard English and dialects
317 correctness
318 changes in English
319 American and British English
320 other varieties of English
What is ‘standard English’?
In the 9th century, southern England was under attack from Viking invaders from Scandinavia, who had already come to dominate much of the north of Britain. In a decisive battle in 878, southern forces under King Alfred defeated a northern army and secured the independence of the south. A long-term result of this victory was that the government of Southern England came to be established in London, which later became the capital of the whole of Britain. The English spoken in London and the East Midlands was therefore gradually adopted as the official variety of English, rather than the very different varieties spoken in the West and North. This dialect (and its later developments, profoundly influenced by Norman French) thus became the ‘standard’ language – the form of English generally used for government, the law, business, education and literature. Standard British English, like all standard languages, is therefore largely the result of historical accident. If the Vikings had defeated Alfred’s army, the capital of modern Britain might well be York, and Practical English Usage would be written in (and about) a very different variety of English.

In fact, it is slightly misleading to talk as if British English had only one standard variety. While standard written English varies very little throughout the British Isles, standard speech differs somewhat, with Scotland, Northern Ireland and the Irish Republic in particular having not only their own pronunciation, but also some regional features of grammar and vocabulary.

What is a dialect?
Many people think that dialects are corrupted forms of a language, spoken by ignorant people who make mistakes because they have not learnt correct grammar. This is not at all true (for more about correctness, ► 317). A standard language is not linguistically ‘better’ than other dialects; it is simply the dialect that has been adopted for official purposes such as government and education. All English dialects have a long history, going back to the distinct forms of speech of the Germanic and Scandinavian invaders who came from various parts of northern Europe to occupy Britain during the early Middle Ages. And each of these dialects has a grammar that is as rich and systematic as standard English, even though it may be very different. Some examples of British English dialect forms:

- I bain’t ready. (= I’m not ready.)
- He don’t like it. I wants a rest.
- Where’s them papers what I give you?
- Can ye no help me? They’re not believing it.
- She’s after telling me. (= She’s told me.)
- Are youse coming or not? (= Are you – plural – coming or not?)
- I ain’t done nothing. (= I haven’t done anything.)
American English, like British English, has many dialects, some of them very
different indeed from the standard language. An extreme case is so-called ‘black
English’ or ‘AAVE’ (Afro-American vernacular English, a dialect widely used
informally by black Americans, largely in working-class urban environments).
The grammar of AAVE is different in many ways from General American.
A few examples:

- He been married. (He has been, and still is, married.)
- She done eat. (She has eaten.)
- She be talking all the time. (She talks all the time.)
- You gon be sorry. (You’ll be sorry.)
- I ain’t believe you that day, man. (I didn’t believe you . . .)

AAVE is similar in some ways to Southern US dialects. Its origins go back to
the early days of slavery, but the main influences on its development are
not well understood.

As in many countries, however, dialects are disappearing or changing under the
influence of the standard language. The language of most British speakers is far
closer to standard English than it would have been a century ago.

3 pronunciation: dialect and accent; ‘received pronunciation’

A dialect is not the same as a regional accent (though they often go together).
Many British people speak standard English, but with the typical accent of their
part of the country. Other British people, however, combine standard English
with a non-regional standard pronunciation. This (the so-called ‘received
pronunciation’ or ‘RP’) is the pronunciation that has traditionally been used by a
majority of British upper- and upper-middle-class people, though it has changed
a good deal over the years. For a long time RP was considered more ‘correct’
than other accents, and its social dominance was reinforced by education and
the media. This attitude is now changing, and there is less social prejudice in
Britain than before against regional accents. Very few people, in fact, now have
an RP accent. RP is increasingly being replaced as a standard by so-called
‘Estuary English’, an accent somewhere between RP and working-class London
speech, originating in South East England along the River Thames
and its estuary.

4 showing accent in writing: ‘e’s gone ‘ome

Writers may spell words in special ways to show a non-standard or
conversational pronunciation – for example, apostrophes may be used in place
of letters that are not pronounced. These spellings are common in cartoon
strips. Some examples (mostly British English):

- 'e’s gone ‘ome. (= He’s gone home.)
- 'elp yerself. (= Help yourself.)
- Yer gettin’ old. (= You’re getting old.)
- If I get me ‘ands on yer. . . (= If I get my hands on you . . .)
- Where d’she put ‘em? (= Where did she put them?)
- C’mon, we’re late. (= Come on . . .)
- C’n I ‘ave a glass o’ water? (= Can I have a glass of water?)
fish 'n' chips. (= fish and chips)
Come wi' me. (= Come with me.)
I dunno. (= I don’t know.)
I gotta go. (= I’ve got to go.)
It’s gonna rain. (= It’s going to rain.)
I don’t wanna play. (= I don’t want to play.)

5 the languages of Britain
Two hundred years ago six native languages besides English were spoken in Britain. Of these, four still survive. Three are Celtic languages, very different from English. Gaelic is spoken in parts of Scotland; Irish, similar to Gaelic, is spoken in parts of Ireland; Welsh is spoken in parts of Wales and is more closely related to the Breton of north-western France. Two other Celtic languages, Manx and Cornish (the original languages of the Isle of Man and Cornwall) no longer have native speakers, though enthusiasts are attempting to revive them. The other surviving British language is Scots (also called ‘Lallans’), spoken by some people in Scotland. This is a distinct language which is different from the Scottish variety of English, although closely related.

Scots wis aince the state language o Scotland an is aye a grace til oor national leitterature. It lies at the hert o Scotland’s heirskep as ane o wir three indigenous leids alang wi Gaelic an Scottish Inglis.

(from a publication of the Scots Leid Associe – the Scots Language Society)

A translation: Scots was once the state language of Scotland and is still an ornament to our national literature. It lies at the heart of Scotland’s heritage as one of our three indigenous languages along with Gaelic and Scottish English.

317 correctness

When people say that somebody’s language is ‘not correct’, they may mean several different things.

1 slips and mistakes: He works in wildlife conversation.
People sometimes make slips of the tongue when they are talking.

He works in Wildlife Conversation – I mean Conservation.

Somebody can use a word wrongly because he or she is unsure of its meaning, or confuses it with another word.

You're being very authoritative. (mistake for ‘authoritarian’)  
And many people have trouble with spelling and punctuation.

The company has doubled it’s profits this year. (should be its profits)

Foreign learners may also make mistakes with points of grammar that do not cause problems for native speakers.

I could not understanding the lecture. (instead of I could not understand . . .)
2 dialect forms: *I ain’t done nothing*.

Dialect forms are not incorrect, though some people believe they are (► 316.2); they are simply different. Teachers in British schools often tell children whose dialects have multiple negation, for example, that they are making mistakes if they say things like ‘I ain’t done nothing’, because ‘two negatives make a positive’ (so *I ain’t done nothing* is supposed to mean ‘I have done something’). This is not, of course, the case: in the child’s dialect, the sentence means ‘I haven’t done anything’ (like the equivalent in older English and many modern languages). Indeed, if ‘two negatives make a positive’, then the teacher ought to be quite happy if the child says ‘I ain’t done nothing to nobody’, since logically three negatives must make a negative!

Dialect forms are not, therefore, incorrect in themselves. They are, however, out of place in styles where only the standard language is normally used. It would be inappropriate – in fact, incorrect – to use *I wants, he don’t* or a double negative in a school essay, a job application, a newspaper article or a speech at a business conference. In fact, British dialects are rarely written (though Scotland has a tradition of dialect literature which is still very much alive).

3 divided usage: *different from*; *different to*

Speakers of a standard language often differ about small points of usage. Where two different forms are common, people who use one form may claim that theirs is the only ‘correct’ usage, and that people who use the other form are making mistakes. Some examples from modern English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>so-called ‘only correct form’</th>
<th>so-called ‘mistake’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Jack and I went to the cinema.</em></td>
<td><em>Jack and me went to the cinema.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>They’re different from us.</em></td>
<td><em>They’re different to us.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fewer people</em></td>
<td><em>less people</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Somebody’s dropped his or her keys.</em></td>
<td><em>Somebody’s dropped their keys.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In fact, all of the so-called ‘mistakes’ listed above have been normal in standard English for centuries, and are not wrong at all (though some of them are more informal than the so-called ‘only correct forms’, and would be out of place in a formal style). For details, ► 174.1 (*I and me*), ► 433 (*different*), ► 169 (*less*) and ► 175 (*their*).
4 prescriptive and descriptive rules

If people say that less people or different to is wrong, they are following a prescriptive rule. Prescriptive rules are made by people who believe that they can improve a language, or protect it against change. A lot of prescriptive rules were made by eighteenth- and nineteenth-century British grammarians, often because they thought that English grammar should imitate Latin, which was considered a superior language. A typical example is the older condemnation of 'split infinitives' like to boldly go, where an adverb is put between to and the verb (a Latin infinitive is a single word, so cannot be split). Many people still believe this, and try to avoid split infinitives, although the rule is unrealistic (► 89.7). A similar rule said that sentences should not end in prepositions (as in What are you waiting for? or I don’t like being shouted at). In fact, it is quite normal for English sentences to end in prepositions (► 209). Most prescriptive rules give misleading information, and have little effect on the development of a language.

Descriptive rules simply say what happens in one form of a language (for example standard written British English, standard spoken American English, Yorkshire English, Dublin English or Singapore English), and not what some people feel ought to happen. The rules in Practical English Usage are primarily descriptive of standard British English (spoken and written), but include notes on American–British differences where necessary.

5 When do mistakes become correct? a concerted effort

When somebody misuses a word or expression, this may influence other people to make the same mistake. Sometimes a mistake becomes so widespread that it turns into part of the language (this is one way in which languages develop), and we can no longer realistically call it a ‘mistake’. The expression oblivious of, for example, originally meant ‘forgetful of’, but came to be used to mean ‘unconscious of’. A hundred years ago this was still a mistake; now it is the normal use. The same thing is happening today with the expression a concerted effort. This literally means ‘an effort by people working together’, but its original meaning is getting lost. Since very many people now use it to mean ‘a strong effort’, this should probably no longer be considered a mistake.

318 changes in English

Languages change over time. Younger people adopt newer forms of expression, while older people often resist change; so even people who speak the same standard language do not speak it in exactly the same way. There are several reasons for change.

1 communicative need

Several centuries ago, standard English had two second-person pronouns: thou (singular) and ye (plural). Standard modern English uses you for both. But people still feel the need to distinguish singular and plural, and so expressions like you guys (used for both men and women) are beginning to function as second person plural pronouns.
2 Influence from other varieties

Modern British English is heavily influenced by American English. Some structures which were not used by British speakers half a century ago are now as common as their older British equivalents.

*I feel like I'm getting a cold.* (informal) (formal British still: *I feel as if I'm getting a cold.*)

*Do you have today's newspaper?* (older British form: *Have you (got) today's newspaper?*)

3 Languages simplify themselves.

As languages develop, complicated structures often become simpler and more regular. This may be happening with English conditional sentences – structures with *would* or *would have* in both clauses are quite common in speech.

*If you'd have asked I'd have told you.*

4 Small, less important distinctions are confused or disappear.

Some irregular verb forms like *sank/sunk, sang/sung* or *lay/laid* are quite often confused in speech. Examples from the British radio:

*He wrote eight operas, all of which sunk without trace.*

... a song she sung in yesterday's concert.

Infinitives and -*ing* forms after verbs also sometimes get mixed up. An example from a British letter:

*I now have pleasure to enclose the correct proposal form.*

(instead of . . . *pleasure in enclosing . . .*)

When confusions like these become widespread, they can lead to language change. This may well happen with the possessive 's form: more and more people are leaving out the apostrophe or putting it in the 'wrong' place, so that this spelling convention might one day lose its importance and even disappear.

5 New forms and uses spread through the language.

Progressive verb forms came into English a few hundred years ago, and gradually became used more and more widely. There are still a few verbs that are not generally used in progressive forms (► 4), but even these are losing their resistance. Some typical modern examples:

*I'm understanding Italian a lot better now.*

*How many eggs were you wanting? I'm loving it.*

6 'Underground' forms become respectable.

Some forms have always existed in the language, but have been 'driven underground' by prescriptive rules (► 317.4), so that they have been avoided by careful speakers. People are now more tolerant of such forms, so they are becoming more common. Some examples:

*Here's your papers.* (instead of *Here are . . .* ► 130.6)

*Somebody's left their umbrella behind.* (instead of . . . *his or her umbrella, ► 175)

*Alice and me went to the same primary school.* (► 174.1)

*between you and I (► 174.1)*
319 American and British English

Standard American English ('General American') and standard British English are very similar. There are a few differences in the use of structures and in spelling rules, and rather more differences of vocabulary and idiom. Modern British English is heavily influenced by American English, so some contrasts are disappearing. Pronunciation is sometimes very different, but most American and British speakers can understand each other easily.

An excellent, very detailed guide to grammatical differences, particularly differences in the grammar of individual words, is John Algeo's *British or American English?* (Cambridge University Press, 2006).

Note that the term 'American English' is used here for the standard English of the United States, but that some of the statements apply more widely to North American English in general.

1 grammar: *I've never gotten . . . / I've never got . . .*

Here are examples of the most important differences. Some other differences are dealt with in other entries. In many cases, two different forms are possible in one variety of English, while only one of the forms is possible or normal in the other variety.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He just went home.</td>
<td>He's just gone home. (► 503.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(or He's just gone home.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've never really gotten to know her.</td>
<td>I've never really got to know her. (► 472.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can see a car coming.</td>
<td>I can see a car coming. (► 84.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's important that he be told.</td>
<td>It's important that he should be told. (► 232)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Will you buy it?' 'I may.'</td>
<td>. . . I may (do). (► 28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The committee meets tomorrow.</td>
<td>The committee meet/meets tomorrow. (► 128.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(on the phone) Hello, is this Susan? He looked at me real strange. (very informal) (or He looked at me really strangely.)</td>
<td>Hello, is that Susan? (► 144.6) He looked at me really strangely. (► 194)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He probably has arrived by now. (or He has probably arrived . . .)</td>
<td>He has probably arrived by now. (► 200.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Should I call the hospital?</td>
<td>Shall/Should I call the hospital?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Besides *get*, some other verbs have different forms in British and American English. (► 1.3)

For the Southern US second person plural pronoun *you all*, ► 174.8.
There are very many differences. Sometimes the same word has different meanings (BrE *mad* = crazy; AmE *mad* = angry). And very often, different words are used for the same idea (BrE *lorry* = AmE *truck*). Here are a few examples, with very brief information about the words and their meanings. A very useful guide to vocabulary differences is *Mighty Fine Words and Smashing Expressions – Making Sense of Transatlantic English*, edited by Orin Hargraves, Oxford University Press.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>aeroplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyplace, anywhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>flat, apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attorney, lawyer</td>
<td>barrister, solicitor, lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuit</td>
<td>scone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy (<em>phone</em>)</td>
<td>engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call collect (<em>phone</em>)</td>
<td>reverse the charges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>tin, can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candy</td>
<td>sweets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check/bill (<em>in a restaurant</em>)</td>
<td>bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coin-purse</td>
<td>purse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cookie, cracker</td>
<td>biscuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>sweetcorn, maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crazy</td>
<td>mad, crazy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crib</td>
<td>cot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crosswalk</td>
<td>pedestrian/zebra crossing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuffs (<em>on trousers</em>)</td>
<td>turn-ups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diaper</td>
<td>nappy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor's office</td>
<td>doctor's surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapes</td>
<td>curtains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eraser</td>
<td>rubber, eraser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall, autumn</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faucet (<em>indoors</em>), spigot, tap (<em>outdoors</em>)</td>
<td>tap (<em>indoors and outdoors</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fired (<em>from a job</em>)</td>
<td>sacked, fired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first floor, second floor, etc</td>
<td>ground floor, first floor, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flashlight</td>
<td>torch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat (<em>tire</em>)</td>
<td>flat tyre, puncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French fries</td>
<td>chips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage, trash</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage can, trashcan</td>
<td>dustbin, rubbish bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas(oline)</td>
<td>petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gear shift (<em>on a car</em>)</td>
<td>gear lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highway, freeway</td>
<td>main road, motorway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hood (<em>on a car</em>)</td>
<td>bonnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intersection</td>
<td>crossroads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American English</td>
<td>British English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jello</td>
<td>jelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jelly</td>
<td>jam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jug</td>
<td>pitcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>math</td>
<td>maths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>nasty, mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie, film</td>
<td>film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one-way (ticket)</td>
<td>single (ticket)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pants, trousers</td>
<td>trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parking lot</td>
<td>car park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>road surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period</td>
<td>full stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharmacy</td>
<td>chemist’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitcher</td>
<td>jug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(potato) chips</td>
<td>crisps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purse, (hand)bag</td>
<td>handbag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>railroad</td>
<td>railway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise (in salary)</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest room, bathroom</td>
<td>(public) toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>résumé</td>
<td>CV (curriculum vitae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round trip</td>
<td>return (journey/ticket)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schedule, timetable</td>
<td>timetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidewalk</td>
<td>pavement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneakers (= sports shoes)</td>
<td>trainers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand in line</td>
<td>queue (up)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stingy, cheap (opposite of generous)</td>
<td>mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
<td>underground, (London) Tube, metro, subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take-out</td>
<td>takeaway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>lorry, van</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunk (of a car)</td>
<td>boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two weeks</td>
<td>fortnight, two weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>holiday(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windshield (on a car)</td>
<td>windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yard</td>
<td>garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zee (the name of the letter ‘z’)</td>
<td>zed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zipper</td>
<td>zip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Expressions with prepositions and particles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>check something (out)</td>
<td>check something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different from/than</td>
<td>different from/to (► 433)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do something over/again</td>
<td>do something again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a course</td>
<td>on a course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live on X street</td>
<td>live in X street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look around the church</td>
<td>look (a)round the church (► 376)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
American English

meet with somebody (planned)
Monday through/to Friday
on a team
on the weekend
ten after/past four (time)
ten to/of/before/till four

British English

meet (with) somebody
Monday to Friday
in a team
at the weekend
ten past four
ten to four

3 spellings: color/colour

A number of words end in -or in American English and -our in British English (e.g. color/colour). Some words end in -er in American English and -re in British English (e.g. center/centre). Many verbs which end in -ize in American English (e.g. realize) can be spelt in British English with -ise or -ize (► 343). Some of the commonest words with different forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aluminum</td>
<td>aluminium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analyze</td>
<td>analyse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalog(ue)</td>
<td>catalogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>center</td>
<td>centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>cheque (paid by a bank)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defense</td>
<td>defence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disk</td>
<td>disc, disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enroll</td>
<td>enrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulfill</td>
<td>fulfil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honor</td>
<td>honour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquire</td>
<td>enquire, inquire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jewelry</td>
<td>jewellery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor</td>
<td>labour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>license (noun)</td>
<td>licence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liter</td>
<td>litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meter (measure)</td>
<td>metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbor</td>
<td>neighbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organize</td>
<td>organise/organize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pajamas</td>
<td>pyjamas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paralyze</td>
<td>paralyse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practice (verb)</td>
<td>practise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program</td>
<td>programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>realize</td>
<td>realise/realize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skillful</td>
<td>skilful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theater/theatre</td>
<td>theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
<td>tyre (on a wheel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trave(l)ler</td>
<td>traveller (► 347.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whiskey</td>
<td>(Scotch) whisky, (Irish) whisky</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 pronunciation

There are, of course, many different regional accents in both Britain and America. The most important general differences between American and British speech are as follows:

a Certain vowels are nasal (pronounced through the nose and mouth at the same time) in some varieties of American English, but not in most British accents.

b British English has one more vowel than American English. This is the rounded short a (/o/) used in words like cot, dog, got, gone, off, stop, lost. In American English these words are pronounced either with /a:/, like the first vowel in father, or with /ɒ/, like the vowel in caught. (This vowel is also pronounced rather differently in British and American English.)

c Some words written with a + consonant (e.g. fast, after) have different pronunciations: with /a:/ in standard southern British English, and with /æ/ in American and some other varieties of English.

d The vowel in home, go, open is pronounced /əʊ/ in standard southern British English, and /oo/ in American English. The two vowels sound very different.

e In standard southern British English, r is only pronounced before a vowel sound. In most kinds of American English (and most other British varieties), r is pronounced in all positions where it is written in a word, and it changes the quality of a vowel that comes before it. So words like car, turn, offer sound very different in British and American speech.

f In many varieties of American English, t and d both have a very light voiced pronunciation (/d/) between vowels - so writer and rider, for example, can sound the same. In British English they are quite different: /'raɪtə(r)/ and /'raɪdə(r)/.

g Some words which are pronounced with /u:/ in most varieties of American English have /ju:/ in British English. These are words in which th, d, t or n (and sometimes s or l) are followed by u or ew in writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>AmE</th>
<th>BrE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enthusiastic</td>
<td>/in,ðuːzi'æstɪk/</td>
<td>/in,θjuːzi'æstɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty</td>
<td>/ˈdjuːti/</td>
<td>/'djuːti/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tune</td>
<td>/tjuːn/</td>
<td>/tjuːn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>/nu:/</td>
<td>/nju:/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

h Words ending in unstressed -ile (e.g. fertile, missile) are pronounced with /ail/ in British English; some are pronounced with /l/ in American English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>AmE</th>
<th>BrE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fertile</td>
<td>/'fɜːrtl/ (rhyming with turtle)</td>
<td>/'fɜːrtl/ (rhyming with her tile)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Varieties of English

Section 28

i Some long words ending in -ary, -ery or -ory are pronounced differently, with one more syllable in American English.

  * secretary  AmE /ˈsekrəteri/  BrE /ˈsekrətri/

j *Borough* and *thorough* are pronounced differently.

  * AmE /ˈbɔːrəʊ, ˈθɔːrəʊ/  BrE /ˈbɔːrə, ˈθɔːrə/

k Words borrowed from French are often stressed differently, especially if their pronunciation ends with a vowel sound. The final vowel is usually stressed in American English but not in British English.

  * pâté  AmE /ˈpætə/  BrE /ˈpætə/
  * ballet  AmE /ˈbælət/  BrE /ˈbælət/ 

320 other varieties of English

The British and American standards are historically the most influential varieties, but of course Britain and the US do not own the English language. In a number of countries round the world, English is either a national language or an important second language. These countries have their own varieties of English, which broadly speaking fall into two groups.

1 native-speaker varieties

In countries such as Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa, English arrived with the early British colonists, and in time became the language, or one of the languages, of the new nation. In the first three of these countries English is the mother tongue of a large part of the population. (South Africa is a different case: see below.) Over the years these varieties have developed in their own ways, as has British English, so that distinct differences have grown up between them. The differences are most noticeable in pronunciation, but each variety has a good deal of home-grown vocabulary, as well as some grammatical features of its own. Local vocabulary and grammar show up especially in informal speech; more formal speech is closer to the written standards, which themselves are strongly influenced by British and American models.

2 non-native varieties

In many countries, while English is not the mother tongue of most of the population, it serves as an important additional language. The historical or practical reasons for this vary, as does the exact role of English in these countries. In many cases, but not all, it has some official status. Some of these varieties are relatively new; others, like Indian English, have a long history. Their origins vary. Indian and Singapore-Malaysian English, for example, have developed out of British English; African lingua franca English is also British-based; the Philippines variety has its source in American English; Fijian English owes much of its character to Australian / New Zealand English.
All such varieties show the influence of other regional languages: when people habitually use two or more forms of speech, each one affects the grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation of the other(s). Common simplifications and regularisations typical of ‘learner English’ may also become fixed in one variety or another: for example countable uses of nouns which are uncountable in the source languages (furnitures), dropping of grammatical endings (three brother, she think), merging of which and who (the people which were there), reduction of tense distinctions (they arrive yesterday), omission of be (he the driver, they studying), and the use of is it? or isn’t it? as universal question tags (You’re tired, is it?).

In such multilingual situations, there are often great variations in the kind of English used, so that it is not possible to give a straightforward description of, say, Indian, Malaysian or Jamaican English. More accomplished speakers will generally adopt a variety that is relatively close to a British, American or other national standard with some local colouring, while others, like language learners the world over, may speak a far less fluent and more basic kind of English. In certain countries something like a national standard has developed, though the definition of ‘standard’ is more controversial than in the case of a native-speaker variety.

3 notes on some varieties

a Australian and New Zealand English

These varieties are similar in many ways to British English, but each naturally has a good deal of regional vocabulary. Australian English has taken many words for natural features from the Aboriginal languages of Australia: for example kangaroo, billabong (a pool or a tributary of a river), dingo (a wild dog), mulga (a tree, wilderness). Similarly, New Zealand English has incorporated words from the indigenous language Maori: for example pukeke and takahe (names of birds), mana (power, honour). Both Australian and New Zealand English have a rich store of informal and slang words and expressions, many of them shared between the two varieties – for instance bludger (a lazy person), dinkum (genuine), bonzer (excellent), my shout (my turn to buy the drinks). The few grammatical differences from British English include a preference for singular verbs with group nouns, where British English might use a plural verb (The team is confident of winning); the New Zealand use of Will I . . .? in questions like Will I call back later?, where British English has Shall I . . .?; and conversational she instead of it, as in She’ll be right (It will be OK). Informal Australian English frequently shortens nouns and adds an -ie or -o suffix: for example barbie (barbeque), mushie (mushroom), sunnies (sunglasses), brekkie (breakfast), Tassie (Tasmania), arvo (afternoon). Australian and New Zealand pronunciation have many common features, and are closer to British than to American English. Standard written English is almost identical with the British standard, regional vocabulary aside. As with other varieties, however, there is growing influence from American English.
b **Canadian English**

Canadian English is in some ways midway between the British and American varieties. The written standard is very close to that of British English, but American spellings are quite common. Informal speech has a distinctly American flavour, and pronunciation is fairly close to that of the northern United States. Canadian vocabulary naturally includes words reflecting the local environment and culture, many of them taken from the native American languages spoken in Canada: for instance *husky, moose, toboggan, anorak, kayak*. French, the mother tongue of around one third of Canadians, has also given words to Canadian English vocabulary, e.g. *cache* (a hiding place).

c **South African English**

English is the lingua franca of South Africa, but it is only one of eleven official languages. It is spoken as a mother tongue by about 10% of the population, and in this form it is the language primarily associated with education and social prestige. The written standard is similar to that of British English. Mother-tongue spoken English is heavily influenced both by Afrikaans (a descendant of the language of the early Dutch settlers) and by the African languages of the region; it also reflects the mixed social and geographical origins of the British settlers. Words derived from Afrikaans include *nogal* (what is more), *sommer* (simply, for no specific reason), *trek, padkos* (food for a journey), *dwaal* (a reverie or state of confusion), *braai* (barbecue). Examples of words taken from African languages are *indaba* (discussion, meeting, gathering), *bonsella* (bonus, free gift), *babalaas* (hung over). Some words that have died out in British English have stayed in South Africa: for example *robot* (traffic light), *geyser* (boiler). Grammatical features of informal South African English include some non-standard word order (e.g. *I'll come and see you tomorrow rather*) and the use of *hey* as a question tag (*You know his name, hey?*). Standard pronunciation, originally that of the educated English-speaker, may be changing now that political developments have brought senior black African speakers into positions of influence; at the same time, however, upwardly mobile young black speakers are tending to take the British-flavoured standard pronunciation as a target. Native speakers of English are massively outnumbered by speakers of the non-native English which is used as a lingua franca across the region. This varies greatly from one social and ethnic group to another, and is very heavily influenced in its grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation by the mother-tongues of its speakers. However, this too may be developing a standard form: there was a strong move a decade or so ago to recognize black South African English as ‘the standard’.

d **Caribbean English**

The English of Caribbean countries like Jamaica developed out of pidgin (mixed) languages that grew up during the slave trade. Speakers at one end of the social/educational spectrum are likely to use a British or American standard with a few regional characteristics. At the other extreme, Caribbean dialects (‘creoles’) are very different indeed from the standard varieties. In Jamaican Creole, for example, the equivalent of *I go* is *mi guo*, *I am going* is *mi de guo*, *I went* is *mi bin guo* and *I was going* is *mi bin de guo*.
e Indian English

English is an associate official language in India, alongside Hindi, the official language. As a lingua franca in a country with over 700 different languages, English has enormous administrative, political and cultural importance and very many speakers. Command of the language ranges from basic to native-speaker-like. Standard British English with an RP accent has traditionally enjoyed high prestige, and is fostered by private English-medium schools. However, very many varieties of English co-exist in India, with differences arising from regional, social, linguistic and other factors. Common features of pronunciation and grammar which are regarded by some educated Indians as mistakes are seen by others as characteristics of an emerging Indian standard. Grammatical differences from British and American English include tense use and the use of progressive forms: *I am here since last week; I am seeing her often; We have been there five years ago; He is doing it yesterday; She is having two children.*

Questions and negatives may be structured differently: *Who you are wishing to speak to?; You not like curry?* Article use varies: articles may be dropped, and *one* is often used rather than *a/an: We are needing one new car.* Repetition may be used for emphasis: *I am having small, small problem.* Typical question-tags are *Yes?, No? and Isn’t it?*

The vocabulary of Indian English includes many words taken from modern and classical Indian languages, some of which have made their way into general English outside India, for example *bungalow, cheetah, yoga, nirvana.* Some English words are special to Indian English, for example *headbath* (shampoo), *issueless* (having no children), *prepone* (the opposite of postpone), *teacheress.* Others are current in India although they are no longer used elsewhere, for example *needful, thrice* (three times), *miscreant* (criminal).

Indian pronunciation of English is generally syllable-timed rather than stress-timed.

f Singapore and Malaysian English

These varieties have a good deal in common, and both are strongly influenced by the regional Chinese, Malay and Indian languages. However, they developed differently after gaining independence from Britain. In a post-colonial reaction, Malaysia initially down-graded the teaching of English, and has only more recently given it renewed importance. Singapore, in contrast, chose early to make English its national language (despite having virtually no native speakers), so as to provide a lingua franca and cultural unifying force for its multilingual population. Education in Singapore is entirely English-medium, and as English comes to be more and more a natural part of Singapore life, it may well become the mother tongue of many citizens. More than a third of Singaporeans now use English at home.

In Singapore and Malaysian English, as in others world-wide, there is considerable variation arising from differences in education and social position. Some members of the urban middle class are virtually bilingual, with a native-speaker-like level of fluency and accuracy, while other English speakers have only a basic command of the language. The context of use also plays a part.
Singapore English, for instance, has a ‘high’ variety, closer to a British standard, which is used in formal situations; this contrasts with the ‘low’ informal variety called ‘Singlish’. The choice between ‘high’ and ‘low’ varieties does not necessarily depend on language proficiency – even accomplished speakers of standard Singapore English use Singlish when they feel that the situation calls for it, as Singlish functions as a marker of Singaporean identity.

Singapore/Malaysian vocabulary includes many local words and expressions, such as hand phone (mobile phone) and void deck (the ground floor of a block of flats, left vacant to be hired out for communal activities). Many words are imported from the regional languages: for example makan (food, eating), rakyat (the common people, an ordinary citizen). Typical grammatical differences from standard English, found in many speakers’ usage, include many common ‘learner-English’ features; for instance the complex English modal verb system is often reduced to two elements: can and must. Spoken discourse particles include the very common lah, which perhaps originates from Chinese and is used as a marker of informal intimacy.

We eat here yesterday. This coffee house very cheap. You got car or not? Can or not? (= Is this possible?) She call you, is it?
Can be that Ahmed calling. (= That will be Ahmed calling.)
Please lah call me soon.

Pronunciation varies considerably, depending on the speaker’s mother tongue. At the higher end of the social-educational spectrum, speech is strongly influenced by the British standard, though with a tendency to give syllables equal weight as against British stress-timed rhythm (► 313).

4 English as a lingua franca (‘ELF’)
A lingua franca is a language used for communication between speakers of different mother tongues. The name ‘lingua franca’ itself was originally applied to a mixed language used for trade in the Eastern Mediterranean from the 11th to the 19th centuries. Many other languages have served as lingua francas at different times in different parts of the world, for instance Greek, Latin, French, Spanish, Russian, Arabic, Swahili and Chinese. English is now the world’s major lingua franca, and, unlike earlier lingua francas, has no geographical boundaries.

Like other languages which are adopted for international use, lingua franca English varies very widely from one speaker to another, depending on its users’ command of the language; it also tends to be heavily influenced in its pronunciation and grammar by the speakers’ mother tongues. The variation is of course limited by the need for effective communication, so that speakers will try to accommodate their English to make it more comprehensible to those who need to understand them. And, like most second-language speakers, lingua franca users worldwide tend to make the kind of common simplifications and regularisations illustrated in 320.2 above. So, despite very large individual differences, much lingua franca English has some shared characteristics. Some of these are regional. European kinds of ELF often resemble each other (reflecting mother-tongue similarities in grammar or pronunciation) in ways that distinguish them from, say, typical East Asian, South Asian or African lingua franca types of English.
Similarities in lingua franca use, and the term ‘English as a lingua franca’ itself, can lead people to suppose that there is a distinct variety of English, ‘ELF’, that can be analysed and described in the same way as, say, Australian or Indian English. This is not, however, the case: lingua franca versions of English differ far too much to constitute a consistent variety. The term ‘English as a lingua franca’ therefore only refers to a process, the use of English for international communication, not to a non-existent form of English that has arisen for this purpose.
Section 29  Vocabulary Areas

INTRODUCTION

This Section contains information about the vocabulary associated with a number of common topics, together with notes on slang, idioms and related matters. For more about vocabulary problems, ► Sections 30–31.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

✓ There’s an Irish in the house next door. ► 321
✓ We can say ‘one half’ as ‘nought comma five’. ► 322.1
✓ I waited for him for one and a half hour. ► 322.2
✓ A third of the students is from abroad. ► 322.3
✓ King Henry Eight was born in 1491. ► 322.6
✓ I want to live for hundred years. ► 322.10
✓ I paid three thousand, a hundred pounds for the car. ► 322.10
✓ Sorry, I have no change – only a twenty-pounds note. ► 322.14
✓ ‘How old are you?’ ‘I’m thirty years.’ ► 323.1
✓ When I was at your age I was working in a coal mine. ► 323.2
✓ He could already read in the age of three. ► 323.3
✓ Wake me at five past seven o’clock. ► 325.1
✓ Good morning, Mr Jack Smith. ► 326.2 b
✓ The painter Tiziano lived in Venezia. ► 327.1, 327.3
✓ There’s a spider in the bath. She’s enormous! ► 328
✓ Congratulation on your exam results. ► 329.4
✓ Please lend me a pen. ► 329.17
✓ Thank you a lot for offering me that golden chance. But I’ve changed my thoughts. ► 332.3
✓ I am as cross as two sticks because it is raining cats and dogs again. If this goes on I think I will kick the bucket. ► 332.5

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

321 nationalities, countries and regions
322 numbers
323 talking about age
324 dates
325 telling the time
326 names and titles: Daniel; Mr Lewis
327 names: Florence, Homer, etc
328 gender (references to males and females)
329 ‘social’ language
330 meals
331 telephoning
332 idioms, collocations and formulaic expressions
333 formal and informal vocabulary
334 slang
335 discriminatory and offensive language
# 321 nationalities, countries and regions

## 1 introduction

In order to refer to a nation or region and its affairs it is usually necessary to know four words:

- the name of the country or region
  - *Denmark*  *Japan*  *France*  *Catalonia*
- the adjective
  - *Danish*  *Japanese*  *French*  *Catalan*
- the singular noun used for a person from the country
  - *a Dane*  *a Japanese*  *a Frenchman/woman*  *a Catalan*
- the plural expression the ... used for the population as a whole
  - *the Danes*  *the Japanese*  *the French*  *the Catalans*

Usually the singular noun is the same as the adjective (e.g. *Greek, Mexican*). The plural expression is usually the same as the adjective + -s (e.g. *the Greeks, the Mexicans*); words ending in -ese, and *Swiss*, remain unchanged for plural meanings (e.g. *the Japanese; the Swiss*). ► 321.2 below for more examples. However, there are a number of exceptions. Some of these are listed in 321.3. All words of this kind (including adjectives) begin with capital letters.

*American literature* (not *American literature*)

The name of a national language is often the same as the national adjective.

*Danish is difficult to pronounce.*  
*Do you speak Japanese?*

## 2 Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/region</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>America (the United States)</td>
<td>American</td>
<td>an American</td>
<td>the Americans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>Belgian</td>
<td>a Belgian</td>
<td>the Belgians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian</td>
<td>an Brazilian</td>
<td>the Brazilians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>European</td>
<td>an European</td>
<td>the Europeans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>an Italian</td>
<td>the Italians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Kenyan</td>
<td>an Kenyan</td>
<td>the Kenyans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>Moroccan</td>
<td>an Moroccan</td>
<td>the Moroccans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
<td>an Norwegian</td>
<td>the Norwegians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palestine</td>
<td>Palestinian</td>
<td>an Palestinian</td>
<td>the Palestinians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>an Russian</td>
<td>the Russians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>an Greek</td>
<td>the Greeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>Iraqi</td>
<td>an Iraqi</td>
<td>the Iraqis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Israeli</td>
<td>an Israeli</td>
<td>the Israelis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>an Thai</td>
<td>the Thais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>an Chinese</td>
<td>the Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(person)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congo</td>
<td>Congolese</td>
<td>an Congolese</td>
<td>the Congolese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(person)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>an Portuguese</td>
<td>the Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(person)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>a Swiss</td>
<td>the Swiss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 exceptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/region</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>British</td>
<td>a British person</td>
<td>the British</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(also Briton)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>an Englishman/woman</td>
<td>the English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>a Frenchman/woman</td>
<td>the French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>Irish</td>
<td>an Irishman/woman</td>
<td>the Irish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>a Spaniard</td>
<td>the Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Netherlands</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>a Dutchman/woman</td>
<td>the Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>Welsh</td>
<td>a Welshman/woman</td>
<td>the Welsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>a Dane</td>
<td>the Danes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>a Finn</td>
<td>the Finns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>a Pole</td>
<td>the Poles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>Scottish,</td>
<td>a Scot</td>
<td>the Scots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scotch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>a Swede</td>
<td>the Swedes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>a Turk</td>
<td>the Turks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

a Scottish is the usual word for the people and culture of Scotland; Scotch is used for whisky.

b The word Briton is unusual except in newspaper headlines – for example TWO BRITONS KILLED IN AIR CRASH. Brit is sometimes used informally.

c English is not the same as British, and is not used for Scottish, Welsh or Irish people (► 411).

d English (the name of the language) can be used in the plural to talk about varieties of English, for instance World Englishes.

e Although American is the normal English word for United States citizens and affairs, people from other parts of the American continent may object to this use, and some people avoid it for this reason.

f Inuit is now considered a more respectful term than Eskimo for the Arctic races of Northern Canada and elsewhere.

g Arabic is used for the language spoken in Arab countries; in other cases, the normal adjective is Arab. Arabian is used in a few fixed expressions and place names (e.g. Saudi Arabian, the Arabian Sea).

h Note the pronunciation of words like Irishman/men, Dutchman/men: the singular is the same as the plural (/'airɪʃmən, 'dʌtʃmən/).
1 fractions and decimals: two fifths; nought point four

We say simple fractions like this:

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{4} & \quad \text{a/one quarter} \\
\frac{1}{8} & \quad \text{an/one eighth} \\
\frac{3}{7} & \quad \text{three sevenths} \\
\frac{2}{5} & \quad \text{two fifths}
\end{align*}
\]

More complex fractions can be expressed by using the word over.

\[
\frac{317}{509} \quad \text{three hundred and seventeen over five hundred and nine}
\]

We write and say decimals like this:

\[
\begin{align*}
0.4 & \quad \text{nought/zero point four} \\
0.375 & \quad \text{nought/zero point three seven five} \\
4.7 & \quad \text{four point seven}
\end{align*}
\]

For the difference between \(a(n)\) and one with numbers, ► 322.10 below.

2 before nouns

With fractions below 1, we use of before nouns.

- three quarters of an hour
- seven tenths of a mile
- a third of the students

Half is not always followed by of (► 478).

- half an hour (AmE also a half hour)
- half (of) the students

Of is also possible with decimals below 1.

- nought point six of a mile
- nought point one six two five of a centimetre

However, decimals below 1 are often followed directly by plural nouns.

- nought point six miles (not nought point six mile)
- nought point one six two five centimetres

Fractions and decimals over 1 are normally followed by plural nouns.

- one and a half hours (not one and a half hour)
- three and three eighths miles
- 1.3 millimetres (not 1.3 millimetre)

Note also the structure \(a \ldots \text{ and a half}\).

- I've been waiting for an hour and a half.

3 singular or plural verbs

Singular verbs are normally used after fractions, decimals, and other expressions referring to amounts and measurements (for more details, ► 129).

- Three quarters of a ton is too much. (not Three quarters of a ton are . . . )
- 3.6 kilometres is about 2 miles.

But plural verbs are used when we are talking about numbers of people or things, even after a singular fraction.

- A third of the students are from abroad. (not A third of the students is . . . )
- Half of the glasses are broken.
After expressions like *one in three, one out of five* + plural noun, both singular and plural verbs are possible.

*One in three new cars break/breaks down in the first year.*

### 4 telephone numbers

We say each figure separately, pausing after groups of three or four (not two). 0 is often called *oh* (like the letter O).

307 4922 three oh/zero seven, four nine two two

### 5 Roman numerals

Roman numerals (*I, II, III, IV, etc*) are not common in modern English, but they are still used in a few cases — for example the names of kings and queens, page numbers in the introductions to some books, the numbers of paragraphs in some documents, the numbers of questions in some examinations, the figures on some old clock faces, and occasionally the names of centuries.

*It was built in the time of Henry V.*

*For details, see Introduction page ix.*

*Do question (vi) or question (vii), but not both.*

*a fine XVIII Century English walnut chest of drawers*

The Roman numerals normally used are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
<th>Arabic Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I i</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II ii</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III iii</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV iv</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V v</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI vi</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII vii</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII viii</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX ix</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X x</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI xi</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII xii</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII xiii</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV xiv</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV xv</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI xvi</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII xvii</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII xviii</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX xix</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX xx</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX xxx</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL xl</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L l</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV xlv</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX lx</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XC xc</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C c</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCMXCV</td>
<td>1995</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6 cardinal and ordinal numbers: books, chapters, etc; kings and queens

*After* a noun we usually use a cardinal number (*one, two, etc*) instead of an ordinal number (*first, second, etc*). This structure is common in titles. Compare:

*the fourth book* — *Book Four*  
*Mozart's thirty-ninth symphony* — *Symphony No. 39, by Mozart*  
*the third day of the course* — *Timetable for Day Three*

However, the names of kings and queens are said with ordinal numbers.

*Henry VIII: Henry the Eighth (NOT Henry-Eight)*  
*Louis XIV: Louis the Fourteenth*  
*Elizabeth II: Elizabeth the Second*

### 7 centuries

Note how the names of centuries relate to the years in them. The period from 1701–1800 is called the *18th century* (not the 17th); 1801–1900 is the *19th century*, etc.
8 floors

The ground floor of a British house is the first floor of an American house; the British first floor is the American second floor, etc.

9 and: punctuation

In British English we always put and between hundred/thousand/million and numbers below a hundred. In American English, and can be dropped.

310 three hundred and ten (AmE also three hundred ten)
5,642 five thousand, six hundred and forty-two
2,025 two thousand and twenty-five

In measurements containing two different units, and is possible before the smaller, but is usually left out.

two hours (and) ten minutes two metres (and) thirty centimetres

In writing we generally use commas (,) to divide large numbers into groups of three figures, by separating off the thousands and the millions. Full stops (.) are not used in this way.

3,127 (not 3.127) 5,466,243

We do not always use commas in four-figure numbers, and they are not used in dates.

4,126 or 4126 the year 1648

Spaces are also possible.

There are 1000 millimetres in a metre.

Note the hyphen between the tens and units in twenty-one, twenty-two, thirty-six, forty-nine, etc.

10 a and one

We can say an eighth or one eighth, a hundred or one hundred, a thousand or one thousand, a million or one million, etc. One is more formal.

I want to live for a hundred years. (not . . . for hundred years)

He was fined one thousand pounds for dangerous driving.

A can only be used at the beginning of a number. Compare:

a/one hundred
three thousand one hundred (not three thousand a hundred)

A thousand can be used alone, and before and, but not usually before a number of hundreds. Compare:

a/one thousand a/one thousand and forty-nine
one thousand, six hundred and two (More natural than a thousand, six hundred and two.)

We can use a or one with measurement words. The rules are similar.

a/one kilometre (but one kilometre, six hundred metres)

an/one hour and seventeen minutes (but one hour, seventeen minutes)

a/one pound (but one pound twenty-five)

11 numbers with determiners

Numbers can be used after determiners. Before determiners, a structure with of is necessary.

You're my one hope.

One of my friends gave me this. (not One my friend . . . )
12 **eleven hundred, etc**

In an informal style we often use *eleven hundred, twelve hundred, etc* instead of *one thousand one hundred, etc*. This is most common with round numbers between 1,100 and 1,900.

*We only got fifteen hundred pounds for the car.*

This form is used in historical dates before 2000 (► 324).

*He was born in thirteen hundred.*

*It was built in fifteen (hundred and) twenty-nine.*

13 **billion**

A *billion* is a thousand million. (But in older British usage a *billion* was a million million.)

14 **five hundred, etc without -s**

After a number, the words *dozen, hundred, thousand, million* and *billion* have no final -s, and of is not used. This also happens after *several* and *a few.*

Compare:

- *five hundred pounds*
  *hundreds of pounds*
- *several thousand times*
  *It cost thousands.*
- *a few million years*
  *millions of years*

Singular forms are used as modifiers before nouns in plural measuring expressions.

*a five-pound note (not a five-pounds note)*
*a three-mile walk*  
a four-foot deep hole
*six two-hour lessons*  
a six-foot tall man
*a three-month-old baby*

In an informal style, we often use *foot* instead of *feet* in other structures, especially when we talk about people's heights.

*My father's just over six foot two.*

For the use of *be* in measurements, ► 25.2.

For the use of possessive forms in expressions of time (e.g. *ten minutes' walk; four days' journey*), ► 124.5.

15 **British money**

There are 100 *pence* in a *pound*. Sums of money are named as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1p</td>
<td>one penny (informal one <em>p</em> (/pi:/) or a <em>penny</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5p</td>
<td>five pence (informal five <em>p</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>£3.75</td>
<td>three pounds seventy-five (pence) or (more formal) three pounds and seventy-five pence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some people now use the plural *pence* as a singular in informal speech; *pound* is sometimes used informally as a plural.

*That's two pounds and one *pence*, please.*

*It cost me eight *pound* fifty.*

Singular forms are used in expressions like *a five-pound note* (see above). However, *pence* is often used instead of *penny* (a *five-pence stamp*).
16 American money
There are 100 cents (¢) in a dollar ($). One-cent coins are called pennies; five-cent coins are nickels; ten-cent coins are dimes; a twenty-five cent coin is a quarter.

17 metric and non-metric measures
Britain uses not-metric measures (miles, yards and feet) for road distances; heights are often given in feet.

The car park's straight on, about 500 yards on the right.
We are now flying at an altitude of 28,000 feet.

Metric measures are now standard for most other purposes, but non-metric measures are also sometimes used. The US generally uses non-metric units.

It's 30 miles to the nearest hospital.
The lightest road bike ever weighs around 6 pounds.

Other English-speaking countries use the metric system. Approximate equivalents are as follows:

- 1 inch (1in) = 2.5cm
- 12 inches = 1 foot (30cm)
- 3 feet (3ft) = 1 yard (90cm)
- 5,280 feet / 1,760 yards = 1 mile (1.6km)
- 5 miles = 8km
- 1 ounce (1oz) = 28gm
- 16 ounces = 1 pound (455gm)
- 2.2 pounds (2.2lb) = 1kg
- 14 pounds (14lb) = 1 stone (6.4kg) (BrE only)
- 1 British pint = 568ml
- 1 US pint = 473ml
- 8 pints (8pt) = 1 gallon
- 1 British gallon = 4.55 litres
- 1 US gallon = 3.78 litres
- 1 acre = 4,840 square yards = 0.4 hectares
- 1 square mile = 640 acres = 259 hectares

18 area and volume
We say, for example, that a room is twelve feet by fifteen feet, or that a garden is thirty metres by forty-eight metres.

A room twelve feet by twelve feet can be called twelve feet square; the total area is 144 square feet.

A container 2 metres by 2 metres by 3 metres has a volume of 12 cubic metres.

19 a and per
When we relate two different measures, we usually use a/an; per is often used in formal writing.

It costs two pounds a week. (or . . . £2 per week.)
We're doing seventy miles an hour. (or . . . 70 miles per hour / mph.)
20 numbers not used as complements after be

Numbers are used as subjects or objects, but not usually as complements after be except in calculations, ► 322.21 below.

I've got three sisters. (NOT My sisters are three.)

There are twelve of us in my family. (More natural than We are twelve . . .)

21 spoken calculations

Common ways of saying calculations in British English are:

2 + 2 = 4  
Two and two is/are four. (informal)  
Two plus two equals/is four. (formal)

7 – 4 = 3  
Four from seven is/leaves three. (informal)  
Seven take away four is/leaves three. (informal)  
Seven minus four equals/is three. (formal)

3 x 4 = 12  
Three fours are twelve. (informal)  
Three times four is twelve. (informal)  
Three multiplied by four equals/is twelve. (formal)

9 ÷ 3 = 3  
Three(s) into nine goes three (times). (informal, especially BrE)  
Nine divided by three equals/is three. (formal)

22 example of a spoken calculation

Here, for interest, is a multiplication (146×281) together with all its steps, in the words that a British English speaker might have used as he/she was working it out on paper before the days of pocket calculators.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
146 \\
× 281 \\
\hline
29200 \\
11680 \\
\hline
146 \\
\hline
41026
\end{array}
\]

A hundred and forty-six times two hundred and eighty-one.

beginning: Put down two noughts. Two sixes are twelve; put down two and carry one; two fours are eight and one are nine; two ones are two.

next line: Put down one nought. Eight sixes are forty-eight; put down eight and carry four; eight fours are thirty-two and four is thirty-six; put down six and carry three; eight ones are eight and three is eleven.

next line: One times 146 is 146.

addition: Six and nought and nought is six; eight and four and nought is twelve; put down two and carry one; six and two are eight and one is nine and one is ten; put down nought and carry one; nine and one are ten and one is eleven; put down one and carry one; two and one are three and one are four.

total: forty-one thousand and twenty-six.

Note how is and are can often be used interchangeably.

For ways of saying and writing dates, ► 324. For ways of telling the time, ► 325.
323 talking about age

1 use of be

We most often talk about people’s ages with be + number
He is thirty. (not He has thirty.)

or be + number + years old (more formal: . . . of age).
He is thirty years old / of age. (not . . . thirty years.)

We ask How old are you?, not normally What is your age?

2 be + . . . age

Note the structure be + . . . age (without a preposition).

When I was your age I was working. (not When I was at your age . . .)

The two boys are the same age. She’s the same age as me.

3 prepositions

In other structures, at is common before age.

He could read at the age of three. (not . . . in the age . . .)

At your age I already had a job.

324 dates

1 writing

In Britain, the commonest way to write the day’s date is as follows. Note that the names of months always begin with capital letters (► 341).

30 March 2004 27 July 2003

The last two letters of the number word are sometimes added (e.g. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 6th). Some people write a comma before the year, but this is no longer very common in Britain except when the date comes inside a sentence.

30th March(,) 2004

He was born in Hawick on 14 December, 1942.

The date may be written entirely in figures.

30/3/04 30-3-04 30.3.04

In the USA it is common to write the month first and to put a comma before the year.

March 30, 2004

All-figure dates are written differently in Britain and America, since British people put the day first while Americans generally start with the month. So for example, 6.4.02 means ‘6 April 2002’ in Britain, but ‘June 4, 2002’ in the USA.

The longer names of the months are often abbreviated as follows:

Jan Feb Mar Apr Aug Sept Oct Nov Dec

The names of decades (e.g. the nineteen sixties) can be written like this: the 1960s (less commonly 1960’s).

For the position of dates in letters, ► 289. For full stops in abbreviations, ► 336.
2 Speaking

30 March 1993 = ‘March the thirtieth, nineteen ninety-three’ (AmE also ‘March thirtieth . . .’) or ‘the thirtieth of March, nineteen ninety-three’

1200 = twelve hundred
1305 = thirteen hundred and five or thirteen oh/ohfive
1498 = fourteen (hundred and) ninety-eight
1910 = nineteen (hundred and) ten
1946 = nineteen (hundred and) forty-six
2000 = two thousand
2005 = two thousand and five or twenty oh five

To announce the date, It’s is used.

It’s April (the) first.

To ask about dates, we can say for instance:

What’s the date (today)?
What date is it?
What date is the meeting? (Or When is the meeting?)

3 BC and AD

To distinguish between dates before and after the birth of Christ, we use the abbreviations BC (= Before Christ) and AD (= Anno Domini – Latin for ‘in the year of the Lord’). BC follows the date; AD can come before or after it.

Julius Caesar first came to Britain in 55 BC.
The emperor Trajan was born in AD 53 / 53 AD.

However, instead of BC and AD, many people now prefer to use BCE (‘before the Common Era’) and CE (‘Common Era’).

325 Telling the time

1 Saying what time it is

There are two common ways of saying what time it is.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>AME</th>
<th>CE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>eight (oh) five</td>
<td>eight five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.10</td>
<td>eight ten</td>
<td>eight ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.15</td>
<td>eight fifteen</td>
<td>eight fifteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.25</td>
<td>eight twenty-five</td>
<td>eight twenty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.30</td>
<td>eight thirty</td>
<td>eight thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.35</td>
<td>eight thirty-five</td>
<td>eight thirty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.45</td>
<td>eight forty-five</td>
<td>eight forty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.50</td>
<td>eight fifty</td>
<td>eight ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>nine o’clock</td>
<td>nine o’clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Americans prefer to write a colon between the hours and the minutes: 8:50.

People generally prefer to say minutes past/to for times between the five-minute divisions.

seven minutes past eight (More natural than seven past eight.)

three minutes to nine (More natural than three to nine.)

The expression o’clock is only used at the hour. Compare:

Wake me at seven (o’clock).

Wake me at ten past seven. (Not . . . ten past seven o’clock.)

Past is often dropped from half past in informal speech.

OK, see you at half two. (= . . . half past two.)
In American English after is often used instead of past (e.g. ten after six);
but Americans do not say half after. And in American English of, before and till
are possible instead of to (e.g. twenty-five of three).

2 asking what time it is

Common ways of asking about time are:

- What time is it? Have you got the time? (informal)
- What's the time? Could you tell me the time? (more formal)
- What time do you make it? (or What do you make the time? BrE, meaning
  'What time is it by your watch?')

3 the twenty-four hour clock

The twenty-four hour clock is used mainly in timetables, programmes and
official announcements. In ordinary speech, people usually use the twelve-hour
clock. Compare:

- Last check-in time is 20.15.
  I'm seeing Oliver at a quarter past eight this evening.
- The next train from Platform 5 is the 17.30 departure for Carlisle.
  'What time do you stop work?' 'Half past five.'
- The meeting will begin at fourteen hundred.
  Jack and I are meeting up at two o'clock.

If necessary, times can be distinguished by using in the morning/afternoon/
evening. In a more formal style, we can use am (= Latin ante meridiem –
'before midday') and pm (= post meridiem – 'after midday').

- 09.00 = nine o'clock in the morning (or nine am)

- 21.00 = nine o'clock in the evening (or nine pm)

326 names and titles: Daniel; Mr Lewis

Names and titles are used both when talking about people and when talking
to them. There are some differences.

1 talking about people

When we talk (or write) about people we can name them in four ways.

a first name (also Christian name; AmE also given name or forename)

We use first names mostly informally, for colleagues, relatives,
friends and children.

  Where's Daniel? He said he'd be here at three.
  How's Mia getting on at school?

b first name + surname (also last name or family name)

This is neutral – neither particularly formal nor particularly informal.

  Isn't that Daniel Connolly the actor?
  We're going to Ireland with Emily and Daniel Sinclair.
c title (Mr, Mrs, etc) + surname

This is more formal. We talk like this about people we do not know, or when we want to show respect or be polite.

*Can I speak to Mr Lewis, please?*
*We've got a new teacher called Mrs Campbell.*
*Ask Miss Andrews to come in, please.*
*There's a Ms Sanders on the phone.*

Note that it is less usual to talk about people by using Mr, Mrs, etc + first name + surname (e.g. *Mr John Parker*). Mr, Mrs, etc are not used before the first name alone (*Mr John*).

d surname only

We often use just the surname to talk about men and women in public life – politicians, sports personalities, writers and so on.

*Do you think Roberts would make a good President?*
*The 5,000 metres was won by Jones. I never liked Eliot's poetry.*
*Thatcher was the first British woman Prime Minister.*

Surnames alone are sometimes used by members of groups (especially all-male groups like soldiers or team members) when they refer to each other.

*Let's put Billows in goal and move Carter up.*

2 talking to people

When we talk (or write) to people we generally name them in one of two ways.

a first name

This is informal, used for example to colleagues, relatives, friends and children.

*Hello, Olivia. How are you?*  *Hi, Dan. Did you get my last email?*

However, it is now becoming common for first names to be used by strangers in advertising literature and similar correspondence.

*Dear Michael,*
*We can offer you 5% interest guaranteed for 3 years . . .*

b title + surname

This is more formal or respectful.

*Good morning, Miss Williamson.*

Note that we do not usually use both the first name and the surname of a person that we are talking to. It would be unusual to say *'Hello, Peter Matthews',* for example.

Members of all-male groups sometimes address each other by their surnames alone (e.g. *'Hello, Smith'*), but this is unusual in modern English.

Mr, Mrs and Ms are not generally used alone.

*Excuse me. Can you tell me the time?* (NOT *Excuse me, Mr.* or *Excuse me, Mrs.*)

Sir and madam are used in Britain mostly by people in service occupations (e.g. shop assistants).

*Can I help you, madam?*
Some schoolchildren call their teachers sir or miss. In British English, Dear Sir and Dear Madam, Dear Sir or Madam and Dear Sir/Madam are common ways of beginning letters to strangers (► 289) – note the capital letters. In other situations sir and madam are unusual in British English.

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time? (not Excuse me, sir . . .)

In American English, sir and ma’am are quite often used (especially in the South and West) when addressing people, both formally and informally.

3 notes on titles

Abbreviated titles like Mr, Mrs and Dr are generally written without full stops in British English, and more often with full stops (Mr., Mrs., Dr.) in American English (► 336).

Note the pronunciations of the titles Mr, Mrs and Ms (used before names):

Mr /'mistafr/  Mrs /'misiz/  Ms /miz/  Or /mæz/

Mr (= Mister) is not normally written in full, and the other two cannot be. Like Mr, Ms does not show whether somebody is married or not. It is often used, especially in writing, to talk about or address women when one does not know (or has no reason to say) whether they are married. Many women also choose to use Ms before their own names in preference to Mrs or Miss.

Dr (= Doctor) is used as a title for medical and other doctors. Professor does not simply mean ‘teacher’. It is a title reserved for university teachers (especially, in Britain, for more senior university teachers).

Note that we do not normally combine two titles such as Prof Dr or Mrs Dr.

For ways of addressing people in letters, ► 289. For ways of introducing people, ► 329.1.

327 names: Florence, Homer, etc

1 cities

The names of cities are often different in different languages – for example the capital of Denmark, København, is called Kopenhagen in German, Copenhague in French, and Copenhagen in Italian and English. Some examples of English names for cities:

Antwerp, Athens, Beirut, Belgrade, Bombay (now usually Mumbai), Brussels, Bucharest, Calcutta (now usually Kolkata), Cologne, Damascus, Florence, Geneva, Genoa, The Hague, Hanover, Jerusalem, Leghorn (now more usually Livorno), Lisbon, Lyons (now more usually Lyon), Marseilles (now more usually Marseille), Milan, Moscow, Munich, Naples, Oporto, Padua, Peking (now usually Beijing), Prague, Rome, St Petersburg, Seville, Thessalonica, Turin, Venice, Vienna, Warsaw

2 classical names

The same is true of many classical Greek and Roman names. Some examples: Homer, Aeschylus, Livy, Horace, Ovid, Virgil, Aesop, Aristotle, Euclid, Sophocles, Mercury, Jupiter, Helen, Troy, Odysseus

3 artists

The Italian artists Raffaello Sanzio and Tiziano are called Raphael and Titian in English.
4 countries
The names of countries, of course, also differ from one language to another
(for example Deutschland is called Germany in English; its neighbours call it, for
instance, Allemagne, Tyskland or Niemcy). English versions are not listed here,
as they are well known and can easily be found in any dictionary if needed.

328 gender (references to males and females)

English does not have many problems of grammatical gender. Usually, people
are he or she and things are it. Note the following points.

1 animals, cars, ships and countries
People sometimes call animals he or she, especially when they are thought of as
having personality, intelligence or feelings. This is common with pets and
domestic animals like cats, dogs and horses.
   Once upon a time there was a rabbit called Joe. He lived . . .
   Go and find the cat and put her out.
In these cases, who is often used instead of which.
   She had an old dog who always slept in her bed.
Some people use she for cars, motorbikes, etc; sailors often use she for boats and
ships (but most other people use it).
   ‘How’s your new car?’ ‘Terrific. She’s running beautifully.’
   The ship’s struck a rock. She’s sinking!
We can use she for countries, but it is more common in modern English.
   Norway has decided to increase its trade with Romania.(or . . . her trade . . .)

2 he or she
Traditionally, English used he/him/his when the sex of a person was not known,
or in references that could apply to either men or women, especially in
a formal style.
   If I ever find the person who did that, I’ll kill him.
   If a student is ill, he must send his medical certificate to the College office.
This usage is now widely regarded as sexist, and is generally avoided. He or she,
him or her and his or her (also he/she, him/her, his/her) are common
alternatives, especially in a formal style.
   If a student is ill, he or she must send a medical certificate . . .

3 singular they
They is often used to mean ‘he or she’, especially after indefinite words like
somebody, anybody, nobody, person. This usage is sometimes considered
‘incorrect’, but it has been common in educated speech for centuries.
For details, ► 175.
   If anybody wants my ticket, they can have it.
   ‘There’s somebody at the door.’ ‘Tell them I’m out.’
   When a person gets married, they have to start thinking about
   their responsibilities.
4 actor and actress, etc

A few jobs and positions have different words for men and women. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Man</th>
<th>Woman</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actor</td>
<td>actress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bride)groom</td>
<td>bride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duke</td>
<td>duchess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hero</td>
<td>heroine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>hostess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manager</td>
<td>manageress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Man</th>
<th>Woman</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monk</td>
<td>nun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policeman</td>
<td>policewoman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prince</td>
<td>princess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steward</td>
<td>stewardess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiter</td>
<td>waitress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widower</td>
<td>widow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A mayor can be a man or a woman; in Britain a mayoress is the wife of a male mayor.

The use of separate terms for women’s roles is often felt to be discriminatory or sexist, and some of the words listed above are going out of use. Actor, hero and manager are now commonly used for women as well as men. Police officer is replacing policeman/policewoman, and flight attendant is replacing steward/stewardess.

5 words ending in -man

Some words ending in -man do not have a common feminine equivalent (e.g. chairman, fireman, spokesman). As many people consider it inappropriate to call a woman, for example, ‘chairman’ or ‘spokesman’, these words are now often avoided in references to women or in general references to people of either sex. In many cases, -person is now used instead of -man.

Alice has just been elected chairperson (or chair) of our committee.

A spokesperson said that the Minister does not intend to resign.

In some cases, new words ending in -woman (e.g. spokeswoman) are coming into use. But it is now common practice to choose words, even for men, which are not gender-marked (e.g. supervisor instead of foreman, ambulance staff instead of ambulance men, firefighter instead of fireman).

6 man

Man and mankind have traditionally been used for the human race.

Why does man have more diseases than animals?

That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind. (Neil Armstrong, on stepping onto the moon)

This is now generally considered sexist, and preferred terms are people, humanity or the human race. Note also the common use of synthetic instead of man-made.

For more about discriminatory language, ► 335.1.

329 ‘social’ language

Every language has fixed expressions which are used on particular social occasions – for example when people meet, leave each other, go on a journey, sit down to meals and so on. Here are some of the most important English expressions of this kind.
1 introductions

Common ways of introducing strangers to each other are:

*Jack, do you know Ella? Ella, this is my friend Jack.*
*Sophie, I don’t think you’ve met Laura.*
*I don’t think you two know each other, do you?*
*Can/May I introduce Ben Willis? (more formal)*

When people are introduced, they may say *Pleased/Nice to meet you.* (formal), or *Hello/Hi* (informal). Americans often say *How are you?*

People who are introduced often shake hands.

For the use of first names, surnames and titles, ► 326.

2 greetings

When getting together with people (formal):

*(Good) morning/afternoon/evening.*

When getting together with people (informal):

*Hello. Hi.* (very informal)

When leaving people:

*Goodnight. Goodbye.*
*Bye. (informal) Bye-bye. (often used to and by children)*
*Cheers. (informal – British only) Take care. (informal)*
*See you. (informal) See you later / tomorrow / next week, etc (informal)*

*It was nice to meet / meeting you.*

Note that *Good day* is very unusual (except in Australian English in its colloquial form *G'day*), and *Goodnight* is used only when leaving people, not when getting together with them.

3 asking about health, etc

When we meet people we know, we often ask politely about their health or their general situation.

*How are you?* / *How are things? / How's things?* (informal) *How (are) you doing?*

Formal answers:

*Very well, thank you. And you?* *Fine, thank you.*

Informal answers:

*Fine/Great, thanks.* *All right.* *(It) could be worse.*
*OK.* *Not too bad.* *Mustn’t grumble.* (BrE)
*So-so.* *(I'm) good.* *Can’t complain.*

British people do not usually ask *How are you?* when they are introduced to people. And neither British nor American people begin letters to strangers by asking about health (► 289).

4 special greetings

Greetings for special occasions are:

*Happy birthday! (or Many happy returns!)*
*Happy New Year / Easter!*
*Happy/Merry Christmas!* *Happy anniversary!*
*Congratulations on your exam results / new job, etc (not Congratulations on . . .)*
5 **small talk**

British people often begin polite conversations by talking about the weather. 'Nice day, isn't it?' 'Lovely.'

6 **getting people's attention**

*Excuse me!* is commonly used to attract somebody’s attention, or to call a waiter in a restaurant. We do not normally say *Excuse me, sir/madam* (► 326.2 b).

7 **apologies**

British people say *Excuse me* before interrupting or disturbing somebody, and *Sorry* after doing so. Compare:

*Excuse me. Could I get past? Oh, sorry, did I step on your foot?*
*Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the station?*

Americans also use *Excuse me* to apologise after disturbing somebody.

*I beg your pardon* is a more formal way of saying ‘Sorry’.

*I beg your pardon. I didn’t realise this was your seat.*

8 **asking people to repeat**

If people do not hear or understand what is said, they may say *Sorry?* (BrE), *What?* (informal, not very polite), *I beg your pardon?* or *Pardon me?* (AmE).

‘Mike's on the phone.’ ‘Sorry?’ ‘I said Mike's on the phone.’

‘See you tomorrow.’ ‘What?’ ‘See you tomorrow.’

‘You’re going deaf.’ ‘I beg your pardon?’

9 **journeys, etc**

Common ways of wishing people a good journey are:

*Have a good/nice trip. Have a good journey.* (BrE)

*Safe journey home.* (BrE)

After a journey (for example when we meet people at the airport or station), we may say:

*Did you have a good journey/trip/flight?*

*How was the journey/trip/flight?*

If somebody is leaving for an evening out or some kind of pleasant event, people might say *Have a good time!* or *Enjoy yourself!* (especially in American English sometimes just *Enjoy!*). *Good luck!* is used before examinations or other difficult or dangerous events.

When people return home, their friends or family may say *Welcome back/home.*

10 **holidays**

Before somebody starts a holiday, we may say:

*Have a good/nice holiday* (AmE . . . *vacation*), or *Have a good/nice time.*

When the holiday is over, we may say:

*Did you have a good/nice holiday/vacation?*

11 **meals**

We do not have fixed expressions for the beginnings and ends of meals. It is common for guests or family members to say something complimentary about the food during the meal (for example *This is very nice*), and after (for example
That was lovely/delicious; thank you very much). Some religious people say ‘grace’ (a short prayer) before and after meals. Waiters often say Enjoy your meal or just Enjoy after serving a customer.

For the names of meals, ► 330.

12 drinking
When people begin drinking alcoholic drinks socially, they often raise their glasses and say something. Common expressions are Cheers! (BrE) and Your health! (AmE also To your health). When we drink to celebrate an occasion (such as a birthday, a wedding or a promotion), we often say Here's to . . .!

Here's to Lily! Here's to the new job! Here's to the happy couple!

13 sending good wishes
Typical expressions are Give my best wishes/regards/greetings/love to X, Remember me to X, Say hello to X for me. When the wishes are passed on, common expressions are X sends his/her best wishes/regards, etc, X says hello.

14 sympathy
Common formulae in letters of sympathy (for example on somebody's death) are I was very/terribly/extremely sorry to hear about . . . and Please accept my deepest sympathy.

15 invitations and visits
Invitations often begin:
Would you like to . . .?
Possible replies:
Thank you very/so much. That would be very nice/lovely. (formal)
Thanks, that would be great. (informal)
Sorry. I'm afraid I'm not free.
It is normal to thank people for hospitality at the moment of leaving their places.
Thank you very/so much. That was a wonderful evening.

16 offers and replies
Offers often begin Would you like . . .? or Can/May I get/offer you . . .? (more formal). Offers to do things for people can begin Would you like me to . . .?, Can/May I . . .? or Shall I . . .? (mainly BrE). Typical replies are Yes, please;
No, thank you; Thanks, I'd love some; I'd love to; That's very nice/kind of you.
Note that thank you can be used for accepting as well as refusing.

17 asking for things
We normally ask for things by using yes/no questions. (► 310).
Could you lend me a pen? (NOT Please lend me a pen.)

18 handing over things
We do not have an expression which is automatically used when we hand over things. We sometimes say Here you are, especially when we want to attract people's attention to the fact that we are passing something to them.

‘Have you got a map of London?’ ‘I think so. Yes, here you are.’ ‘Thanks.’
There you go is also possible in this situation, especially in AmE.
19 thanks

Common ways of thanking people are:

- Thank you.
- Thank you very much.
- Thanks. (informal)

Possible replies to thanks are:

- Not at all. (formal)
- You’re welcome.
- Don’t mention it.
- That’s (quite) all right.
- That’s OK. (informal)
- No problem. (informal)

Note that British people do not always reply to thanks, especially thanks for small things.

For more information about thanking and the use of please, ▶ 556.

20 sleep

When somebody goes to bed, people often say Sleep well. In the morning, we may ask Did you sleep well? or How did you sleep?

For expressions used when telephoning, ▶ 331.

330 meals

There are regional and social differences in the names for meals.

1 British usage

a midday: dinner or lunch

The midday meal is often called dinner, especially if it is the main meal of the day. People who are ‘higher’ in the social scale usually call it lunch. Lunch is also the normal term used by most people for a light midday snack or packed meal.

b afternoon: tea

(Afternoon) tea (a light meal of tea with biscuits and cakes, taken at four or five o’clock in the afternoon) is now very unusual, though it is often served in hotels.

c early evening: sometimes (high) tea or supper

Many people have a cooked meal around five or six o’clock. This is often called tea or high tea; some people call it supper.

d later evening: supper or dinner

A meal later in the evening is often called supper (and some people use the same word for a bedtime snack). Some people use dinner for the evening meal if it is the main meal of the day. A more formal evening meal with guests, or in a restaurant, is usually called dinner.

2 American usage

Americans generally use lunch for the midday meal and dinner or supper for the evening meal. Celebration meals at Christmas and Thanksgiving are called Christmas/Thanksgiving dinner, even if they are eaten at midday.
331 telephoning

1 answering a phone
People answering a private phone either say Hello or give their name. People answering a business phone most often give their name.
‘Hello.’
‘Albert Packard.’

2 asking for a person
Could I speak to Megan Horrabin? (AmE also Could I speak with . . .?)

3 saying who you are
Hello, this is Corinne. (not usually . . . I’m Corinne.)
‘Could I speak to Megan Horrabin?’ ‘Speaking.’
or ‘This is Megan Horrabin (speaking).’

4 asking who somebody is
Who is that? (AmE Who is this?) Who is that speaking?
Who am I speaking to? Who’s calling, please?

5 asking for a number
Can/Could I have extension two oh four six?
What’s the dialling code / area code for Bristol?
What’s the country code for Portugal?
How do I get an outside line?

6 if you want the other person to pay for the call
I’d like to make a reverse (or transferred) charge call to 0449 437878.
(AmE I’d like to make a collect call . . .)

7 if somebody is not there
I’m afraid she’s not in at the moment.
Can I take a message?
Can I leave a message?
Please leave your message after the tone.
I’ll ring/call again later. (AmE I’ll call . . .)
Could you ask her to ring/call me back?
Could you ask her to ring/call me at/on 637022?
Could you just tell her Jake called?

8 asking people to wait
Just a moment. May I put you on hold?
Hold on a moment, please. I’ll just put you on hold.
Hold the line, please. Hang on. (informal)
9 things a switchboard operator may say

One moment, please. (The number's) ringing for you.
(I'm) trying to connect you. (I'm) putting you through now.
I'm afraid the number/line is engaged (BrE) / busy (AmE). Will you hold?
I'm afraid there's no reply from this number / from her extension.

10 wrong number

I think you've got the wrong number.
I'm sorry. I've got the wrong number.

11 problems

Could you speak louder? It's a bad line (BrE) / bad connection.
You're breaking up. I'll call again. I was/got cut off.
I rang/called you earlier but I couldn't get through.

332 idioms, collocations and formulaic expressions

1 What are idioms? break even; a can of worms

An expression like turn up (meaning ‘arrive’), break even (meaning ‘make neither a profit nor a loss’) or a can of worms (meaning ‘a complicated problem’) can be difficult to understand, because its meaning is different from the meanings of the separate words in the expression. (If you know break and even, this does not help you at all to understand break even.) Expressions like these are called ‘idioms’. Idioms are usually special to one language and cannot be translated word for word (though related languages may share some idioms).

2 verbs with particles or prepositions: bring up; look after

Common short verbs like bring, come, do, get, give, go, have, keep, make, put, and take are very often used with prepositions or adverb particles (e.g. on, off, up, away) to make two-word verbs. These are called ‘prepositional verbs’ or ‘phrasal verbs’, and many of them are idiomatic.

Can you look after the cats while I'm away?
She just doesn't know how to bring up children.
I gave up chemistry because I didn't like it.

Many of these two-word verbs are especially common in informal speech and writing. Compare:

- What time are you planning to turn up? (informal)
  Please let us know when you plan to arrive. (more formal)
- Just keep on till you get to the crossroads. (informal)
  Continue as far as the crossroads. (formal)

For details of phrasal and prepositional verbs, ► 12–13.
3 collocations: burning desire; blazing disagreement

We can say *I fully understand*, but not *I fully like*; *I rather like*, but not *I rather understand*; *I firmly believe*, but not *I firmly think*. Somebody can be a *heavy smoker* or a *devoted friend*, but not *a devoted smoker* or *a heavy friend*.

Expressions like these are also idiomatic, in a sense. They are easy to understand, but not so easy for a learner to produce correctly. One can think of many adjectives that might be used with smoker to say that somebody smokes a lot – for example *big, strong, hard, fierce, mad, devoted*. It just happens that English speakers have chosen to use *heavy*, and one has to know this in order to express the idea naturally and correctly. These conventional combinations of words are called ‘collocations’, and all languages have large numbers of them.

Some more examples:

- *a crashing bore* (but not *a crashing nuisance*)
- *a burning desire* (but not *a blazing desire*)
- *a blazing disagreement* (but not *a burning disagreement*)
- *highly reliable* (but not *highly old*)
- *a golden opportunity* (but not *a golden chance*)
- *change one’s mind* (but not *change one’s thoughts*)
- *Thanks a lot* (but not *Thank you a lot*)

4 formulaic expressions: Sorry I kept you waiting.

The expressions that are used in typical everyday situations are often idiomatic in the same sense. With the help of a dictionary and a grammar, one could invent various possible ways of expressing a particular common idea, but generally there are only one or two ways that happen to be used by English speakers, and one has to know what they are in order to speak or write naturally. Some examples:

- *Could you check the oil?* (More natural than *Could you inspect the oil?* or *Could you see how much oil there is in the engine?*)
- *Is it a direct flight or do I have to change?* (More natural than *Does the plane go straight there or do I have to get another one?*)
- *Sorry I kept you waiting.* (More natural than *Sorry I made you wait.*)
- *Could I reserve a table for three for eight o’clock?* (More natural than *Could you keep me a table for three persons for eight o’clock?*)

Other formulaic expressions are used as parts of sentences – useful introductions, conclusions or frames for the things that people want to say.

- *Let me know when/where/what/how* . . .
- *The best thing would be to* . . . (do something) as a favour
- *The point is* . . . . . . is more trouble than it’s worth.
- *I wouldn’t be surprised if* . . . I’ll . . . on condition that you . . .

5 using idioms, collocations and fixed expressions.

Idioms, collocations and formulaic expressions are common in all kinds of English, formal and informal, spoken and written. Informal spoken language is often very idiomatic.

Students should not worry because they do not know all the expressions of this kind that are commonly used by English speakers. There are enormous numbers of them, and they can take years to learn. If students use non-idiomatic ways of express...
expressing ideas, they will normally be understood, and English speakers do not expect foreigners to speak perfect natural English. It is therefore not necessary for students to make great efforts to memorise idioms, collocations, etc: they will learn the most common ones naturally along with the rest of their English. In particular, note that books of idioms often contain expressions which are slangy, rare or out of date, and which students should avoid unless they understand exactly how and when the expressions are used. This is especially true of colourful idioms like, for example, *raining cats and dogs, as cross as two sticks* (= angry) or *kick the bucket* (= die). If students try consciously to fill their speech and writing with such expressions the effect will probably be very strange. It is, however, helpful for learners to have a good up-to-date dictionary of collocations (for example the *Oxford Collocations Dictionary for Students of English*) in order to become aware of the most common word combinations.

For more about formal and informal language, ► 281. For slang, ► 334.

### 333 formal and informal vocabulary

Some words and expressions are used mainly in formal situations; in neutral or informal situations other words or expressions are used. And some words and expressions are only used in informal situations. Some examples:

- **FORMAL:** commence
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** begin, start

- **FORMAL:** alight (from a bus or train)
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** get off

- **FORMAL:** *I beg your pardon?*
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** *Pardon? Sorry? (AmE Excuse me? Pardon me?)*

- **INFORMAL:** What?

- **FORMAL:** repair
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** mend (BrE)

- **INFORMAL:** fix

- **FORMAL:** acceptable, satisfactory
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** all right

- **INFORMAL:** OK

- **FORMAL:** *I am (very) grateful to you.*
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** Thank you.

- **INFORMAL:** Thanks.

- **FORMAL:** conceal
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** hide

- **FORMAL:** construct
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** build

- **FORMAL:** enquire
  - **NEUTRAL/INFORMAL:** ask

- **FORMAL:** purchase
  - **NEUTRAL:** buy

- **INFORMAL:** get, pick up

For more about formal and informal language, ► 281.
For formal and informal ways of using people's names and titles, ► 326.
For the language used in particular social situations, ► 329. For slang, ► 334.
What is slang?

'Slang' is a very informal kind of vocabulary, used mostly in speech by people who know each other well. Examples (mainly British English):

- Can you lend me some cash? ('money')
- My shoelace has bust. ('broken')
- He's a real prat. ('fool')
- Those boots are real cool. ('fashionable')
- Let's chill. ('relax')
- How are the kids? ('children')

Strong feelings

Many English slang expressions relate to things that people feel strongly about (e.g. sex, family and emotional relationships, drink, drugs, conflict between social groups, work, physical and mental illness, death).

- I spent the weekend at my gran's. ('grandmother's')
- I've got some sort of bug. ('illness')
- He's lost it. ('gone mad')
- Shut your trap! ('mouth')
- Let's swap addresses. ('exchange')
- Somebody's pinched/nicked my scarf. ('stolen')
- There's muck all over the carpet. ('dirt')
- I'm not going to go on reading this trash. ('rubbish')
- Where's the loo? ('toilet')

Slang can be offensive (accidentally or deliberately) if used in a context where more formal language would be normal. This is particularly the case with 'taboo' language: words for subjects that some people find shocking.

Group membership; using slang

Many slang expressions (e.g. cash, kids) are widely used. However, many other slang expressions are only used by members of particular social and professional groups, and nearly all slang is used between people who know each other well or share the same social background. So it is usually a mistake for 'outsiders' (including foreigners) to try deliberately to use slang. This can give the impression that they are claiming membership of a group that they do not belong to. There is also the danger that the slang may be out of date – some kinds of slang go out of fashion quickly, and when it gets into books it may already be dead. It is best for learners to avoid slang unless they are really sure of its use. If they start becoming accepted as part of an English-speaking community, they will learn to use the community's slang naturally and correctly along with the rest of their language.
The words and expressions described in this entry are generally offensive: their use can upset or insult people. They are included here because they are elements of English, and it is not the job of a usage guide to conceal aspects of the language. However, students should realise that if they use language of this kind, they are liable to offend and upset the people they are talking to. They are also likely to give their listeners or readers the impression that they are insensitive, prejudiced, intolerant, uneducated or worse.

1 false generics

One kind of discriminatory language involves ‘false generics’ – words that suggest that all people in a certain category, are, for example, exclusively male or female. Talking in general about ‘firemen’, for instance, implies that all firefighters are men, which is clearly not the case. Some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>false generics</th>
<th>inclusive language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambulance men</td>
<td>ambulance staff, paramedics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairman</td>
<td>chair, chairperson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaning lady</td>
<td>cleaner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireman</td>
<td>firefighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreman</td>
<td>supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mailman (AmE)</td>
<td>mail carrier (AmE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male/female (on a form)</td>
<td>male / female / prefer not to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-hours</td>
<td>staff hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-made</td>
<td>synthetic, manufactured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man, mankind</td>
<td>humanity, the human race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manning</td>
<td>staffing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manpower</td>
<td>human resources, employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policeman/men</td>
<td>police officer(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postman/men (BrE)</td>
<td>postal worker(s) (BrE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steward/stewardess</td>
<td>flight attendant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiters/waitresses</td>
<td>restaurant staff, servers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

False generics are falling out of use in English, even to speak about individuals – so an individual fireman might well be described in a news report as a ‘firefighter’.

A similar way of discriminating is to use a word or expression that is acceptable in one context, but that makes a person or an experience sound less serious or important. For example, a man’s calling women he works with ‘the girls in the office’ is different from calling female children ‘girls’. Talking about a ‘salesgirl’ instead of a shop assistant (BrE) or salesperson (AmE) is thus discriminatory in two ways at once.
2 offensive language

Other words and expressions are used to discriminate against particular groups – to present them as inferior or undesirable in one way or another. Common targets of discriminatory language are disability status, gender, sexual orientation, nationality and ethnicity. In some cases the offensive use of a term may be accidental – a speaker may not realise, for example, that disabled people prefer not to be called ‘handicapped’. (Preferred words and expressions can change over time; to find out what term a group itself prefers, check on the internet.) At the other extreme, words like dyke or nigger are clearly only normally used to be deliberately offensive. Some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>offensive term</th>
<th>preferred alternative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cripple, handicapped person</td>
<td>disabled person, person with a disability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental handicap</td>
<td>mental/learning disability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retarded, mentally handicapped</td>
<td>having learning difficulties / a mental/learning disability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbed, mad, crazy, nuts</td>
<td>having a mental illness / health problem / health condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homo, queer</td>
<td>gay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyke, lezzie, lezzo</td>
<td>lesbian, gay woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fag, faggot (AmE)</td>
<td>gay man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex change</td>
<td>gender reassignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transsexual, trannie</td>
<td>transgender person, trans person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chink</td>
<td>Chinese person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dago</td>
<td>Spanish, Italian or Portuguese person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frog</td>
<td>Frenchman/woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gyp, pikey</td>
<td>Roma, traveller (or Gypsy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jap</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kraut</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nigger</td>
<td>black person (BrE), African-American (AmE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paki</td>
<td>Pakistani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polack (AmE)</td>
<td>Pole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spic (AmE)</td>
<td>Latin-American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wog</td>
<td>Middle-Eastern person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wop</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yid (AmE), kike (AmE)</td>
<td>Jew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a neutral term is widely used to discriminate, it may come to be felt as offensive, leading to its rejection. This has happened with Negro (replaced by black or African-American), Eskimo (replaced by Inuit), handicapped (replaced by disabled) and Mongol/Mongoloid/Mongolism (replaced by (having) Down's syndrome). Some Roma people now also regard Gypsy as offensive. Note that it may sometimes be acceptable for members of a group to call one another, for example, ‘dyke’ or ‘nigger’. But of course it is not at all acceptable for people outside the group to use the word.
Section 30  Word Formation and Spelling

INTRODUCTION

abbreviations
Abbreviations – shortened forms of words and expressions – are useful time-savers. They can form an important part of the language of a professional or social group, but may be incomprehensible to outsiders. If an army officer says, for instance, ‘RV at 1800, and tell the CSM to get that sitrep to the 2IC now’, not all non-military people will understand that the officer wants people to assemble (RV = ‘rendezvous’) at 6 pm, and that the Company Sergeant-Major has to get a situation report to the Second-in-Command of the unit. Ordinary non-professional language also contains large numbers of abbreviations, some formal (like e.g., meaning ‘for example’), and some informal (like doc for ‘doctor’). It is important for language learners to be familiar with the most common of these.

prefixes and suffixes
It is also useful for learners to be aware of the most common prefixes and suffixes and their meanings, since this can help them to understand unfamiliar words. Knowing that hydro- means ‘related to water’, for instance, makes hydroelectric transparent. Many such prefixes and suffixes are derived from classical Greek or Latin, and a number of these are commonly used to form new words (e.g. technophobe, somebody who hates or fears technology, perhaps especially computers).

spelling
English spelling is difficult for three main reasons.

1  English has a large number of different sounds: speakers of standard British English distinguish around 21 different vowels and 24 different consonants in pronunciation. But the English alphabet only has 26 letters, with only six vowels, and English does not use written accents, so most spoken vowels have to be represented by combinations of written vowels such as ea, ie, ou.

2  After the Norman invasion in the 11th century, a large number of French words came into English, and these were written according to French spelling conventions rather than those that had been developed for old English. The resulting unsystematic mixture of spelling rules gradually became fixed, and has persisted into modern English.

3  English pronunciation has changed a great deal over the centuries, but spelling has not, in general, been revised accordingly. So spoken vowels are often written in ways that are now misleading (like the vowels in women), and many common words contain ghost consonants representing sounds that are no longer there (like the gh in through, right, sigh etc).

It is not only foreign learners who find English spelling difficult. Many English-speaking children have a hard time learning to read and write, and some do
not succeed. Indeed, even many highly educated adults have trouble with words like *necessary* or *accommodation*. Literacy would probably be greatly improved by a well-planned spelling reform.

However, English spelling does have some fairly regular patterns, and knowledge of these can help a good deal. The most important ones are explained in this Section.

For some notes on British-American spelling differences, ► 319.3.

---

**Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?**

- I wonder why Daniel ha’snt written to us. ► 337.1
- ‘Are you ready?’ ‘Yes, I’m.’ ► 337.3
- ‘Are you ready?’ ‘No, I amn’t.’ ► 337.4 note 2
- She travelled extensively in north africa. ► 341
- Professor Hawkins is a specialist in japanese history. ► 341
- The production was realy original. ► 345
- Their theory has been definitly disproved. ► 346
- He completely misunderstood my argument. ► 346
- The government could easily be overthrown. ► 348
- Tragically, the message never arrived. ► 339.4
- He should be made to apologise publically. ► 339.4
- The results caused no surprize. ► 343
- Too many people are out-of-work. ► 342
- I am hopping to see you soon. ► 347
- I will write again latter. ► 347
- Thank you for offerring to help. ► 347
- He did wonderful paintings of gallopping horses. ► 347
- This is the begining of the end. ► 347
- Please see illustration attatched. ► 349
- Steack has become extremly expensive. ► 349, 346
- I am looking forward to recieving your reply. ► 350
- The claim is hard to beleive. ► 350

---

**CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION**

336 abbreviations  
337 contractions: *I’ll, don’t*, etc  
338 prefixes and suffixes  
339 *-ic* and *-ical*  
340 apostrophes  
341 capital letters  
342 hyphens  
343 *-ise* and *-ize*  
344 *-able* and *-ible*  
345 *-ly*  
346 final *e*  
347 doubling final consonants  
348 *y* and *i*  
349 *ch* and *tch, k* and *ck*  
350 *ie* and *ei*  
351 spelling and pronunciation
336 abbreviations

1 punctuation
Most abbreviations are generally written without full stops in modern British English. Full stops (AmE periods) are normal in American English.

- Mr (AmE Mr.) = Mister (not usually written in full)
- kg (AmE kg.) = kilogram
- Ltd = Limited (company)

2 initial-letter abbreviations
Some abbreviations are made from the first letters of several words. This often happens with the names of organisations.

- the BBC = the British Broadcasting Corporation
- the USA

These abbreviations are most often stressed on the last letter.

- the BBC /ˈbiːsiː/ (not /ˈbiːsi/)
- the USA /ˈjuːsiː/ (not /ˈjuːsi/)

If one of these abbreviations has an article (a/an or the), the form and pronunciation of the article depend on the pronunciation of the first letter of the abbreviation. Compare:

- an EU country
  - a US diplomat /ə juː ˈdiːpləmət/ (not an US . . .)
- a BA degree
  - an MP /ən ˈempiəri/ (not a MP)
- the USA /ˈjuːsə/ (not /ˈjuːsiə/)
- the RSPCA /ˈɛr.ɪ ⋕/ (not /ˈɛrəbiə/)

3 acronyms
Some initial-letter abbreviations are pronounced like words. These are often called ‘acronyms’. Articles are usually dropped in acronyms.

- UNESCO /juːˈneskuː/ (not the UNESCO) = the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation

Note that not all initial-letter abbreviations are pronounced as words.

- the CIA /ˈsaɪə/ (not /saiə/)
- the IRA /ˈaɪreɪə/ (not /ˈaɪreə/)

4 plurals
An apostrophe (') is sometimes used before the s in the plurals of abbreviations.

MP's, CD's but more often MPs, CDs.

5 some common abbreviations
The following abbreviations are given in their common British form, without full stops. Some of them could also have full stops in British English, and most would have full stops in American English. This is a small selection of the very many abbreviations commonly used in English. For explanations of others, see a good dictionary.

- AD (AmE A.D.) after the birth of Christ (from Latin anno domini, ‘in the year of the Lord’, used before years)
- Aids or AIDS Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
- am in the morning (from Latin ante meridiem, ‘before midday’)
- asap as soon as possible
**ATM**
cash machine ('automated teller machine')

**Aug**
August

**Ave**
Avenue

**b**
born (in biographical dates)

**BA**
Bachelor of Arts

**BA**
British Airways

**BC**
before Christ (used before years)

**BCE**
before the Common Era (alternative to BC, now increasingly preferred)

**BSc (BrE)**
Bachelor of Science

**C**
Celsius, centigrade

**Capt**
Captain

**CD**
compact disc (e.g. for recorded music)

**CE**
Common Era (alternative to AD, now increasingly preferred)

**CEO**
Chief Executive Officer

**CIA**
Central Intelligence Agency (the United States external security service)

**cl**
centilitre(s)

**cm**
centimetre(s)

**c/o**
care of (in addresses, meaning 'living at X's house')

**Co**
Company

**Col**
Colonel

**Corp**
Corporation

**Cpl**
Corporal

**cu**
cubic

**CV (BrE)**
summary of career (from Latin *curriculum vitae*, equivalent of AmE résumé)

**d**
died (in biographical dates)

**Dec**
December

**dept**
department

**DIY**
do it yourself

**DNA**
deoxyribonucleic acid

**Dr**
Doctor

**DVD**
digital versatile disc, digital videodisc

**E**
east(ern)

**ed**
edited (by), editor

**e.g.**
for example (from Latin *exempli gratia*)

**ETA**
estimated time of arrival

**etc**
and so on (from Latin *et cetera*, 'and other things')

**EU**
European Union

**F**
Fahrenheit

**FAQ**
frequently asked questions

**FBI**
Federal Bureau of Investigation (the United States national police force)

**Feb**
February

**ft**
foot, feet (in measurements)

**gal**
gallon(s)

**GB**
Great Britain; gigabyte(s)

**Gen**
General
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GMT</td>
<td>Greenwich Mean Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GNP</td>
<td>gross national product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govt</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hr</td>
<td>hour(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>i.e.</em></td>
<td>in other words (from Latin <em>id est</em>, 'that is')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>inch(es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inc</td>
<td>Incorporated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRA</td>
<td>Irish Republican Army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT</td>
<td>information technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jr</td>
<td>Junior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg</td>
<td>kilogram(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>km</td>
<td>kilometre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kph</td>
<td>kilometres per hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lb</td>
<td>pound(s) in weight (from Latin <em>libra(e]</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD</td>
<td>liquid crystal display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED</td>
<td>light-emitting diode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lt</td>
<td>Lieutenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ltd</td>
<td>Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>metre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Master of Arts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD (BrE)</td>
<td>Managing Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>milligram(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI5</td>
<td>the Security Service (concerned with information from inside Britain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI6</td>
<td>the Secret Intelligence Service (concerned with information from outside Britain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>minute(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ml</td>
<td>millilitre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm</td>
<td>millimetre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Member of Parliament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mph</td>
<td>miles per hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mt</td>
<td>Mount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>north(ern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATO</td>
<td>North Atlantic Treaty Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>north-east(ern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHS</td>
<td>National Health Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>north-west(ern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oz</td>
<td>ounce(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>personal assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>personal computer; police constable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhD</td>
<td>Doctor of Philosophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>Prime Minister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pm</td>
<td>in the afternoon (from Latin <em>post meridiem</em>, 'after midday')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prof</td>
<td>Professor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word Formation and Spelling

**PS**
addition to a written message (from Latin *post scriptum*, ‘written afterwards’)

**pt**
pint

**Rd**
Road

**RIP**
Rest in Peace (from Latin *requiesca(n)t in pace*, ‘May he/she/they rest in peace.’)

**rpm**
revolutions per minute

**RSVP**
Please reply (on invitations, from French *Répondez s’il vous plaît.*)

**S**
south(ern)

**SE**
south-east(ern)

**sec**
second(s)

**Sept**
September

**Sgt**
Sergeant

**Sq**
Square (in place names)

**sq**
square (in measurements)

**St**
Street; Saint

**SW**
south-west(ern)

**UK**
United Kingdom

**UN**
United Nations

**UNESCO or Unesco**
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation

**uni**
university

**Univ**
University

**US**
United States

**USA**
United States of America

**VAT**
value added tax

**VIP**
very important person

**vol**
volume

**v; also (especially against (especially in sporting events, AmE) vs/us.**
from Latin *versus*)

**W**
west(ern)

**WHO**
World Health Organisation

**www**
world-wide web

**yd**
yard(s)

For abbreviations used in some electronic messages (e.g. *hope 2 c u* for *hope to see you*), \( \Rightarrow \) 290.

337 contractions: *I’ll, don’t, etc*

1 general rules

Contractions are forms like *I’ve, don’t*, in which an auxiliary verb is combined with another word. There are two kinds.

noun/pronoun, etc + (auxiliary) verb

*I’m tired. My father’s not very well.*

*Do you know when you’ll arrive? Where’s the station?*

*I’ve no idea. There’s a problem. She’d like to talk to you.*

*Somebody’s coming. Here’s our bus.*
(auxiliary) verb + not

They aren't ready.  I haven't seen him for ages.
You won't be late, will you?  Can't you swim?

Contractions are formed with auxiliary verbs, and also with be and sometimes have when these are not auxiliary verbs.
The short form 's (= is/has) can be written after nouns (including proper names), question words, here and now as well as pronouns and unstressed there.
The short forms 'll, 'd and 're are commonly written after pronouns and unstressed there, but in other cases we more often write the full forms (especially in British English), even if the words would be contracted in pronunciation.

'Your mother will (/ˈmʌðər/) be surprised', she said.
I wondered what had (/ˈwotəd/) happened.

Contractions are not usually written with double subjects.

Jack and I have decided to split up. (NOT Jack and I've decided . . .)

The apostrophe (') goes in the same place as the letters that we leave out: has not = hasn't (NOT ha'snt). But note that shan't (BrE = shall not) and won't (= 'will not') only have one apostrophe each.

Contractions are common and correct in informal writing: they represent the pronunciation of informal speech. They are not generally used in a formal style.

2 alternative contractions

Some negative expressions can have two possible contractions. For she had not we can say she hadn't or she'd not; for he will not we can say he won't or he'll not. The two negative forms of be (e.g. she isn't and she's not) are both common. With other verbs, forms with n't (e.g. she hadn't) are more common in most cases in standard southern British English; they are the only forms normally used in American English. (Forms with not – e.g. she'd not – tend to be more common in northern and Scottish English.)

Double contractions are not normally written: she'sn't is impossible.

3 position

Contractions in the first group (noun / pronoun / question word + auxiliary verb) do not normally come at the ends of clauses. Compare:

- I'm late.
  Yes, you are. (NOT Yes, you're.)
- I've forgotten.
  Yes, you have. (NOT Yes, you've.)

Negative contractions can come at the ends of clauses.

They really aren't.  No, I haven't.

4 list of contractions

Strong and weak forms (► 315) are given where appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm</td>
<td>/a:m/</td>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've</td>
<td>/a:v/</td>
<td>I have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll</td>
<td>/a:l/</td>
<td>I will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'd</td>
<td>/a:d/</td>
<td>I had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're</td>
<td>/juə(r); jɔː(r)/</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you've</td>
<td>/juːv; jəv/</td>
<td>you have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word Formation and Spelling

Section 30

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contraction</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you’ll</td>
<td>/ju:l; jəl/</td>
<td>you will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you’d</td>
<td>/ju:d; jəd/</td>
<td>you had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he’s</td>
<td>/hɪ:z; hɪz/</td>
<td>he is/has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he’ll</td>
<td>/hɪ:l; hɪl/</td>
<td>he will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he’d</td>
<td>/hɪd; hɪd/</td>
<td>he had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>/ʃi:z; ʃɪz/</td>
<td>she is/has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she’ll</td>
<td>/ʃi:l; ʃɪl/</td>
<td>she will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she’d</td>
<td>/ʃi:d; ʃɪd/</td>
<td>she had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>/ɪts/</td>
<td>it is/has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’d (uncommon)</td>
<td>/ɪtəd/</td>
<td>it had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’re</td>
<td>/wə(r)/</td>
<td>we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’ve</td>
<td>/wi:v; wi:v/</td>
<td>we have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’ll</td>
<td>/wi:l; wi:l/</td>
<td>we will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’d</td>
<td>/wi:d; wi:d/</td>
<td>we had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’re</td>
<td>/ðeə(r); ðe(r)/</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’ve</td>
<td>/ðeɪv; ðeɪv/</td>
<td>they have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’ll</td>
<td>/ðeɪl; ðeɪl/</td>
<td>they will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’d</td>
<td>/ðeɪd; ðeɪd/</td>
<td>they had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there’s</td>
<td>/ðeəz; ðeəz/</td>
<td>there is/has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there’ll</td>
<td>/ðeəl; ðeəl/</td>
<td>there will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there’d</td>
<td>/ðeəd; ðəd/</td>
<td>there had/would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t</td>
<td>/a:nt/</td>
<td>are not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>/kænt/</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couldn’t</td>
<td>/'kudnt/</td>
<td>could not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daren’t</td>
<td>/dænt/</td>
<td>dare not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>/'dɪdnt/</td>
<td>did not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td>/'dəznt/</td>
<td>does not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>/'dənt/</td>
<td>do not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadn’t</td>
<td>/'hædnt/</td>
<td>had not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn’t</td>
<td>/'hæznt/</td>
<td>has not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven’t</td>
<td>/'hævnt/</td>
<td>have not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn’t</td>
<td>/'ɪznt/</td>
<td>is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mightn’t</td>
<td>/'mɪtnt/</td>
<td>might not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustn’t</td>
<td>/'mʌstnt/</td>
<td>must not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needn’t</td>
<td>/'niːdnt/</td>
<td>need not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oughtn’t</td>
<td>/'ɔːnt/</td>
<td>ought not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan’t</td>
<td>/'ʃænt/</td>
<td>shall not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouldn’t</td>
<td>/'ʃʊdnt/</td>
<td>should not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usedn’t</td>
<td>/'juːsdnt/</td>
<td>used not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td>/'wʊznt/</td>
<td>was not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td>/'wɜːnt/</td>
<td>were not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>/'wʊnt/</td>
<td>will not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wouldn’t</td>
<td>/'wʊdnt/</td>
<td>would not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

1 Do not confuse it’s (= it is/has) and its (possessive).

2 Am not is only normally contracted in questions to aren’t (/ə:nt/).
   I’m late, aren’t I?
3 Note the difference in pronunciation of can’t in British English (/ˈkænt/) and American English (/ˈkɑːnt/).

4 Daren’t, mightn’t, oughtn’t, shan’t and usedn’t are rare, especially in American English; needn’t is rare in American English.

5 In non-standard English, ain’t (pronounced /eɪnt/) is used as a contraction of am not, are not, is not, have not and has not.
   I ain’t going to tell him. Don’t talk to me like that – you ain’t my boss.
   ‘It’s raining.’ ‘No it ain’t.’
   I ain’t got no more cigarettes.
   James ain’t been here for days.

6 For the contraction let’s, ➤ 225.

7 May not is not normally contracted: mayn’t is very rare.

### 338 prefixes and suffixes

The following are some of the most common and useful English prefixes and suffixes.

#### 1 prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>mainly added to</th>
<th>usual meaning</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a-</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>not, without</td>
<td>amoral, asexual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglo-</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Anglo-American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante-</td>
<td>adj., verbs, nouns</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>antenatal, antedate, anteroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>against</td>
<td>antisocial, anti-war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arch-</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>supreme, most</td>
<td>archbishop, arch-enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>self</td>
<td>automatic, autobiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>bilingual, bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bio-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>life</td>
<td>biodegradable, biochemist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cent(i)-</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>hundredth</td>
<td>centimetre, centilitre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co-</td>
<td>verbs, nouns</td>
<td>together (with)</td>
<td>co-operate, co-pilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counter-</td>
<td>adj., verbs, nouns</td>
<td>against</td>
<td>counteract, counter-revolution(ary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyber-</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>computer, internet</td>
<td>cybercrime, cyberculture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de-</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>reversing action</td>
<td>defrost, deregulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>take away</td>
<td>deforest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>mainly added to</td>
<td>usual meaning</td>
<td>examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dis-</strong></td>
<td>adj., verbs, nouns, verbs</td>
<td>not, opposite reversing action</td>
<td>disloyal, disappear, disorder disconnect, disinfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>e-</strong></td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>electronic, internet</td>
<td>email, e-commerce, e-book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eco-</strong></td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>environment</td>
<td>eco-friendly, eco-tourism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>en-</strong></td>
<td>nouns, adj.</td>
<td>put in make</td>
<td>endanger, encircle enrich, enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Euro-</strong></td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>European</td>
<td>Eurocentric, Europop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ex-</strong></td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>former</td>
<td>ex-husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>extra-</strong></td>
<td>adj. adj.</td>
<td>exceptionally outside</td>
<td>extra-special extra-terrestrial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fore-</strong></td>
<td>verbs, nouns</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>foretell, foreknowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>geo-</strong></td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>earth</td>
<td>geothermal, geophysics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hyper-</strong></td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>extreme(ly)</td>
<td>hypercritical, hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ill-</strong></td>
<td>past participles</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>ill-advised, ill-expressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in-</strong> adj. (im- before p) (il- before l) (ir- before r)</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>not, opposite</td>
<td>incomplete, insensitive impossible illegible irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inter-</strong> adj., verbs</td>
<td>between, among</td>
<td>international, intermarry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kilo-</strong></td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>kilometre, kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mal-</strong> adj., verbs, nouns</td>
<td>bad(ly)</td>
<td>maltreat, malformed, malfunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mega-</strong> nouns</td>
<td>million extremely</td>
<td>megabyte mega-rich</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>micro-</strong> adj., nouns</td>
<td>very small</td>
<td>microlight (aircraft), micrometer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mid-</strong> nouns</td>
<td>in the middle of</td>
<td>mid-December, mid-afternoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>milli-</strong> nouns</td>
<td>thousandth</td>
<td>millisecond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mini-</strong> nouns</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>minigolf, minicab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>mainly added to</td>
<td>usual meaning</td>
<td>examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mis-</td>
<td>verbs, nouns</td>
<td>wrong(ly)</td>
<td>misunderstand,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>misconduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mono-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>monogamous,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>monorail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>multilingual,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>multi-purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neo-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>new(ly)</td>
<td>neo-classical,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>neo-Nazi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-</td>
<td>nouns, adj.</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>non-smoker,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>non-returnable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omni-</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>omnipresent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>do/be more than</td>
<td>outrun, outnumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over-</td>
<td>adj., verbs</td>
<td>too much</td>
<td>over-confident,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>overeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pan-</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>right across</td>
<td>pan-American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photo-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>photoelectric,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>photosynthesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poly-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>polyglot, polygon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>post-modern,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>postwar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>premarital,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>prewar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>for, in favour of</td>
<td>pro-communist,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pro-government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pseudo-</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>pseudo-academic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psycho-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>mind, mental</td>
<td>psycho-analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-</td>
<td>verbs, nouns</td>
<td>again, back</td>
<td>rebuild,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reconstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>semi-conscious,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>semicircle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socio-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>society</td>
<td>socio-economic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>substandard,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>subconscious,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super-</td>
<td>adj. nouns</td>
<td>more than, special</td>
<td>supernatural,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tele-</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>distant</td>
<td>telescope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thermo-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td>thermo-electric,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>thermometer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Mainly Added To</th>
<th>Usual Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trans-</td>
<td>adj., verbs</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>transatlantic, transplant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tri-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>tripartite, triangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ultra-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>extreme, beyond</td>
<td>ultra-modern, ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un-</td>
<td>adj., participles</td>
<td>not, opposite</td>
<td>uncertain, unexpected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>reverse action</td>
<td>untie, undress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under-</td>
<td>verbs, participles</td>
<td>too little</td>
<td>underestimate, under-developed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uni-</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>unilateral, unicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vice-</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>deputy</td>
<td>vice-chairman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suffixes that Form Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Mainly Added To</th>
<th>Usual Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-age</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>instance of</td>
<td>breakage, shrinkage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>instance of</td>
<td>refusal, dismissal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ance, -ancy</td>
<td>adj., verbs</td>
<td>process/state of</td>
<td>reluctance, performance, expectancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>process/state of</td>
<td>exploration, starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>product of</td>
<td>organisation, foundation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ee</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>object of verb</td>
<td>payee, employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ence, -ency</td>
<td>adj., verbs</td>
<td>process/state of</td>
<td>independence, presidency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>belonging to</td>
<td>teenager, Londoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er/or</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>person/thing that does</td>
<td>writer, driver, starter, editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ess</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>female</td>
<td>lioness, waitress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ette</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>kitchenette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>amount held in</td>
<td>spoonful, cupful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hood</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>quality, group, time of</td>
<td>brotherhood, childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>quantity of material activity</td>
<td>carpeting, tubing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td>farming, surfing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffix</td>
<td>mainly added to</td>
<td>usual meaning</td>
<td>examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ism</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>belief, practice</td>
<td>communism, impressionism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>quality of</td>
<td>elasticity, falsity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>process/result of</td>
<td>government, arrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>quality of</td>
<td>meanness, happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ocracy</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>government by</td>
<td>democracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ology</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>study of</td>
<td>sociology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phile</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>lover of</td>
<td>Anglophile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phobe</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>hater, fearer of</td>
<td>Anglophobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phobia</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>irrational fear of</td>
<td>arachnophobia (fear of spiders)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ship</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>status, state, quality of</td>
<td>friendship, dictatorship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 suffixes that form nouns or adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>suffix</th>
<th>mainly added to</th>
<th>usual meaning</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>place nouns</td>
<td>inhabitant of, language of</td>
<td>Chinese, Vietnamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(i)an</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>supporter of, related to</td>
<td>Darwinian, republican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>citizen of practitioner of</td>
<td>Parisian, Moroccan pianist, racist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 suffixes that form adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>suffix</th>
<th>mainly added to</th>
<th>usual meaning</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-able/-ible (► 344)</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>can be (done)</td>
<td>washable, drinkable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>related to</td>
<td>accidental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-centric</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>centred on</td>
<td>Eurocentric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ed</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>wooded, pointed, blue-eyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>full of, providing</td>
<td>useful, helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ic(al) (► 339)</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>related to</td>
<td>artistic, typical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>rather (like) inhabitant of, language of</td>
<td>greenish, childish Scottish, Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>verbs</td>
<td>can do, does</td>
<td>attractive, selective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffix</td>
<td>mainly added to</td>
<td>usual meaning</td>
<td>examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>careless, homeless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-like</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>childlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ly</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>with the quality of</td>
<td>friendly, motherly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>virtuous, ambitious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-proof</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>protected/-ing against</td>
<td>bullet-proof, waterproof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ward</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>towards</td>
<td>backward, northward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>like, characterised by</td>
<td>creamy, wealthy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 suffixes that form adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>suffix</th>
<th>mainly added to</th>
<th>usual meaning</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ly</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>in an (adjective) way towards</td>
<td>calmly, slowly backwards, northward(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ward(s)</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>towards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 suffixes that form verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>suffix</th>
<th>mainly added to</th>
<th>usual meaning</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ate</td>
<td>nouns</td>
<td>causative</td>
<td>orchestrate, chlorinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-en</td>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>make, become</td>
<td>deafen, ripen, harden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ify</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td>causative: make various</td>
<td>simplify, electrify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ise/-ize</td>
<td>adj., nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td>modernise, symbolise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 combining forms

Some prefixes and suffixes combine mainly or often with other prefixes and suffixes. Examples are phono- ('sound'), -logy ('study of'), -scope ('instrument for seeing'), -metry ('measurement').
phonology telescope micrometry

8 negative words with no positive equivalent

Some words with negative prefixes have no positive opposite equivalent: for example, somebody can be distressed, but not tressed. Other examples: dishevelled, disappoint, discard, disclose, disconcert, disfigure, dismiss, dispose, incessant, indelible, uncanny, uncouth, ungainly, unkempt, unnerved, unspeakable, unwieldy, unwitting

vocabulary • 338 prefixes and suffixes
9 productivity
Certain prefixes and suffixes are productive: they are often used to form new words. And some can be added to almost any word of the right grammatical kind.

I'm not anti-tourists; I just don't want them in our town.
The place has got a real 1970s-like atmosphere.

But most are limited to certain words or kinds of word, and cannot be used to invent new vocabulary items.

(not uncredible, subinteresting, considerage or drinkless)

For hyphens after co-, ex-, etc, ► 342.3.d.

339 -ic and -ical

Many adjectives end in -ic or -ical. There is no general rule to tell you which form is correct in a particular case.

1 some adjectives normally ending in -ic

academic
algebraic
arithmetic
artistic
athletic
catholic
despotic

domestic
dramatic
egoistic
energetic
fantastic
geometric

strategic
linguistic
majestic
pathetic
pedagogic
pedantic

phonetic
public
semantic
strategic
syntactic
systematic
tragic

Arithmetical, geometrical and pedagogical also occur.

Some of these words ended in -ical in older English (e.g. fantastical, majestical, tragical).

New adjectives which come into the language generally end in -ic, except for those ending in -logical.

2 some adjectives ending in -ical

biological (and many other adjectives ending in -logical)

chemical

critical
cynical
fanatical
grammatical

logical
mathematical
mechanical
medical

musical
physical
radical
surgical

tactical
topical
typical
tyrannical

3 differences of meaning

Rhythmic and rhythmical both exist with no difference of meaning. In a few other cases, both forms exist but with a meaning difference. ► Section 31 for classic(al), comic(al), economic(al), electric(al), historic(al), magic(al) and politic(al).

4 adverbs

Note that whether the adjective ends in -ic or -ical, the adverb ends in -ically (pronounced /ikli/). The one common exception is publicly (not publically).
5 nouns ending in -ics
Many nouns ending in -ics are singular (e.g. physics, athletics). Some can be either singular or plural (e.g. mathematics, politics). For details, ► 117.3.

340 apostrophes

We use apostrophes (‘) for three main reasons.

1 missing letters
Apostrophes replace letters in contracted forms (► 337).

*can’t* (= cannot)       *I’d* (= I would/had)
*it’s* (= it is/has)     *who’s* (= who is/has)

2 possessives
We use apostrophes before or after possessive -s (► 123).

*the girl’s father*      *Charles’s wife*      *my parents’ house*

Possessive determiners and pronouns (e.g. *yours, its*) do not have apostrophes.

*This money is yours.* (not ... *your’s*)

*The cat had not had its food yet.* (not ... *it’s food ...*)

*Whose house did she stay in?* (not *Who’s ...*)

3 special plurals
Words which do not usually have plurals sometimes have an apostrophe when a plural form is written.

*It is a nice idea, but there are a lot of if’s.*

Apostrophes are generally used in the plurals of letters, and sometimes of numbers and abbreviations.

*He writes b’s instead of d’s.*

*It was in the early 1980’s.* (More usually: ... 1980s.)

*I know two MP’s personally.* (More usually: ... MPs.)

It is not correct to put apostrophes in normal plurals.

*JEANS — HALF PRICE* (not *JEAN’S ...*)

341 capital letters

We use capital (big) letters at the beginning of the following kinds of words:

a the names of days, months and public holidays (but not usually seasons)

*Sunday*       *March*       *Easter*

*Tuesday*       *September*    *Christmas*  

(but normally *summer, autumn*)

b the names of people, institutions and places, including stars and planets

*John*       *Mary*       *the Smiths*

*the Foreign Office*       *North Africa*    *Canada*

*the United States*       *The Ritz Hotel*   *Oxford University*

*The Super Cinema*       *the Far East*    (*Compare He teaches at a university.*)

*the Pole Star*       *Mars*  

(but normally the earth, the sun, the moon)
c Words derived from people’s names have capitals if they refer to the people.  
*Shakespearean drama* (but *to pasteurise*): this refers to a chemical process, not directly to the scientist Pasteur

d people’s titles  
Mr Smith  Professor Blake  Dr Jones  
Colonel Webb  the Managing Director  
the Prime Minister is attending the summit (Compare *How is the Swedish prime minister elected?)*

e nouns and adjectives referring to nationalities and regions, languages, ethnic groups and religions  
He’s Russian.  I speak German.  Japanese history  
Catalan cooking  She’s Jewish.  He’s a Sikh.

f the names of newspapers and magazines  
*International Herald Tribune*  *New Scientist*  
The article the in such names is usually, but not always, capitalised.  
*I read it in The/the Guardian.*

g the first word (and often other important words) in the titles of books, films and plays  
*The Spy who Loved Me*  *Gone with the Wind*  
*A Midsummer Night’s Dream*

For the use of capitals with East, North, etc, ► 442.

342 hyphens

1 What are hyphens?  
Hyphens are the short lines (-) that we put between words in expressions like *ticket-office* or *ex-husband*. They are not the same as dashes (–): ► 297.

2 Are hyphens disappearing?  
The rules about hyphens are complicated, and usage is not very clear. Perhaps because of this, people seem to be using hyphens less, especially in compound nouns. Many common short compounds are now often written ‘solid’, with no division between the words (e.g. *weekend*, *wideawake*, *takeover*); other less common or longer compounds are now more likely to be written as completely separate words (e.g. *train driver*, *living room*). The situation at present is rather confused, and it is not unusual to find the same expression spelt in three different ways (e.g. *bookshop*, *book-shop*, *book shop*). If one is not sure whether to use a hyphen between words or not, the best thing is to look in a dictionary, or to write the words separately without a hyphen.

3 When are hyphens used?  
Hyphens are still often used in the following cases:

a compound nouns  
• compound nouns where the second part ends in -*er*  
  *bottle-opener*  
• compound nouns where the first part ends in -*ing*  
  *writing-paper*  
• compound nouns made with prepositions and adverb particles  
  *sister-in-law*  *make-up*  *in-joke*
Word Formation and Spelling

b compound adjectives

red-hot  nice-looking  blue-eyed

grey-green  broken-hearted

When we use a longer phrase as an adjective before a noun, we often use hyphens. Compare:
- an out-of-work miner.
- He's out of work.
- a shoot-to-kill policy
- They were ordered to shoot to kill.

c compound verbs beginning with a noun

role-play  house-hunt

d prefixes

In British English, the prefixes anti-, co-, ex-, mid-, non-, pre-, post-, pro- and self- are often separated from what follows by hyphens. In American English these combinations are generally written as single words (e.g. antiwar).

anti-war  mid-term  pre-meeting

co-producer  non-involvement  pro-hunting

ex-husband  post-publication  self-study

In both British and American English, all prefixes may be separated by hyphens in order to avoid unusual or misleading combinations of letters.

un-American  re-examine  counter-revolution

e numbers 21–99; fractions

twenty-one  thirty-six  two-thirds

4 word division

We also use hyphens to separate the parts of long words at the end of written or printed lines. (To see where to divide words, look in a good dictionary.)

...is not completely in accordance with the controversial policy of the present government, which was...

-ise and -ize

Many English verbs and some nouns can be spelt with either -ise or -ize. In American English, -ize is preferred in these cases. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British spelling</th>
<th>American spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baptise/baptize</td>
<td>baptize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computerise/computerize</td>
<td>computerize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mechanise/mechanize</td>
<td>mechanize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>realise/realize</td>
<td>realize</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most words of two syllables, and a few longer words, have -ise in both British and American English. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British spelling</th>
<th>American spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
<td>devise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>disguise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comprise</td>
<td>enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compromise</td>
<td>exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>despise</td>
<td>franchise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

improvise  revise  supervise  surprise  teleview
Capsize has -ize in both British and American English. Note also analyse (AmE usually analyze) and paralyse (AmE paralyze). If in doubt, remember that in British English -ise is almost always acceptable. Some British usage guides claim that -ize is ‘preferable’ in British English on etymological and phonetic grounds, but this is not correct. For American English, consult an American dictionary.

344 -able and -ible

The suffix -able, as in readable, is far more common than -ible, as in audible. (Both are pronounced the same: /əbl/). Some common words spelt with -ible:

- accessible, eligible, intelligible, responsible
- audible, exhaustible, legible, sensible
- comprehensible, fallible, negligible, suggestible
- convertible, feasible, perceptible, susceptible
- credible, flexible, permisible, tangible
- defensible, forcible, possible, terrible
- digestible, gullible, plausible, visible
- divisible, horrible, responsible, visible

Negatives of these words are naturally also spelt with -ible: e.g. inaudible, irresponsible.

345 -ly

1 adverb formation

We normally change an adjective into an adverb by adding -ly.

- late → lately, hopeful → hopefully, definite → definitely
- right → rightly, real → really (NOT realy), pale → palely
- complete → completely (NOT completely)

Exceptions:
- true → truly, whole → wholly
- due → duly, full → fully

2 -y and -i-

- y usually changes to -i- (► 348).

- happy → happily, dry → drily or dryly
- easy → easily, gay → gaily

Exceptions:
- shy → shyly, sly → slyly, coy → cooly

3 adjectives ending in consonant + -le

- le changes to -ly after a consonant.

- idle → idly, noble → nobly, able → ably

4 adjectives ending in -ic

If an adjective ends in -ic, the adverb ends in -ically (pronounced /ɪkli/).

- tragic → tragically, phonetic → phonetically

Exception:
- public → publicly
346 final e

1 final -e dropped before vowels
When an ending that begins with a vowel (e.g. -ing, -able, -ous) is added to a word that ends in -e, we usually drop the -e.

- hope → hoping
- note → notable
- shade → shady

make → making
fame → famous

An exception in British English is ageing (more common than aging).
Some words that end in -e have two possible forms before -able and -age.
The form without -e is more common in most cases. Note:

- likeable (usually with e)
- mov(e)able (both forms common)
- mileage (only with e)

Final -e is not dropped from words ending in -ee, -oe or -ye.

- see → seeing
- canoe → canoeist
- agree → agreeable
dye → dyeing

2 final -e not dropped before consonants
Before endings that begin with a consonant, final -e is not normally dropped.

- excite → excitement
- complete → completeness
- definite → definitely

Exceptions: words ending in -ue

- due → duly
- true → truly
- argue → argument

In words that end with -ue or -ge, we do not drop -e before a or o.

- replace → replaceable
- courage → courageous

(But charge → charging, face → facing)

Judg(e)ment and acknowledg(e)ment can be spelt with or without the -e after g.

For words ending in -ie, ► 348.5. For adverbs ending in -ly, ► 345.

347 doubling final consonants

1 doubling before vowels
We sometimes double the final consonant of a word before adding -ed, -er, -est, -ing, -able, -y (or any other ending that begins with a vowel).

- stop → stopped
- sit → sitting
- big → bigger

2 Which consonants are doubled?
We double the following letters:

- b: rub → rubbing
- d: sad → sadder
- g: big → bigger
- l: travel → travelling
- m: slim → slimming
- n: win → winnable
- p: stop → stopped
- r: prefer → preferred
- t: sit → sitting
We double final \(-s\) in *gassing, gassed* (but not usually in other words), final \(-z\) in *quizzes, fezzes,* and final \(-f\) in *iffy* (a colloquial word for ‘questionable’, ‘uncertain’).

Final \(w\) (in words like *show, flow*) is part of a vowel sound, and is not doubled.

\[
\text{show} \rightarrow \text{showing} \quad \text{flow} \rightarrow \text{flowed} \quad \text{(not} \quad \text{showning, flowed}\text{)}
\]

3 only at the end of a word

We only double consonants that come at the end of a word. Compare:

- *hop* \(\rightarrow\) *hopping* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *hope* \(\rightarrow\) *hoping*
- *fat* \(\rightarrow\) *fatter* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *late* \(\rightarrow\) *later*
- *plan* \(\rightarrow\) *planned* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *phone* \(\rightarrow\) *phoned*

4 one consonant after one vowel letter

We only double when the word ends in one consonant after one vowel letter. Compare:

- *fat* \(\rightarrow\) *fatter* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *fast* \(\rightarrow\) *faster* \quad \text{(not} \quad \text{fasterter)}
- *bet* \(\rightarrow\) *betting* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *beat* \(\rightarrow\) *beating* \quad \text{(not} \quad \text{beatting)}

5 only stressed syllables

We only double consonants in stressed syllables. We do not double in longer words that end in unstressed syllables. Compare:

- *upset* \(\rightarrow\) *upsetting* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *visit* \(\rightarrow\) *visiting*
- *begin* \(\rightarrow\) *beginning* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *open* \(\rightarrow\) *opening*
- *refer* \(\rightarrow\) *referring* \quad \text{BUT} \quad *offer* \(\rightarrow\) *offering*

Note the spelling of these words:

- *gallop* \(\rightarrow\) *galloping* \(\rightarrow\) *galloped* \quad \text{(not} \quad \text{galloping, galloped)}
- *develop* \(\rightarrow\) *developing* \(\rightarrow\) *developed* \quad \text{(not} \quad \text{developing, developed)}

6 exception: final \(l\) in unstressed syllables

In British English, we double *-l* at the end of a word after one vowel letter in most cases, even in unstressed syllables.

- *travel* \(\rightarrow\) *travelling* \quad *equal* \(\rightarrow\) *equalled*

In American English, words like this are most often spelt with one *l*: *traveling*.

7 other exceptions

Consonants are sometimes doubled at the end of final syllables that are pronounced with full vowels (e.g. *æl*), even when these do not carry the main stress.

- *'kidnap* \(\rightarrow\) *'kidnapped* \quad *'handicap* \(\rightarrow\) *'handicapped*
- *'worship* \(\rightarrow\) *'worshippers* (AmE also *'worshipers*)
- *'combat* \(\rightarrow\) *'combating* \quad \text{or} \quad *combatting*

Final *-s* is sometimes doubled in *focus(s)ing* and *focus(s)ed*.

8 final *c*

Final *-c* changes to *ck* before *-ed, -er, -ing,* etc.

- *picnic* \(\rightarrow\) *picnickers* \quad *panic* \(\rightarrow\) *panicking* \quad *mimic* \(\rightarrow\) *mimicked*
9 Why double?

The reason for doubling is to show that a vowel is still pronounced short. This is because, in the middle of a word, a stressed vowel letter before one consonant is usually pronounced as a long vowel or as a diphthong (double vowel). Compare:

- Hoping /ˈhɑːpɪŋ/ vs. Hopping /ˈhɒpɪŋ/
- Later /ˈlɛtə(r)/ vs. Latter /ˈlætə(r)/
- Diner /ˈdaɪnə(r)/ vs. Dinner /ˈdɪnə(r)/

348 y and i

1 changing y to i

When we add an ending to a word that ends in -y, we usually change -y to -i-.
- Hurry → hurried
- Fury → furious
- Merry → merriment
- Marry → marriage
- Easy → easier
- Busy → business
- Happy → happily

Generally, nouns and verbs that end in -y have plural or third person singular forms in -ies.
- Story → stories
- Spy → spies
- Hurry → hurries

2 exceptions

Two spellings are possible for the nouns fly/flyer. A machine that dries things is a dryer.

Words formed from the adjective dry: normally drier, driest, dryly/dryly, dryness.

Words formed from the adjective sly: slyer, slyest, slyly, slyness.

3 no change before i

We do not change -y to -i- before i (for example when we add -ing, -ism, -ish).
- Try → trying
- Tory → Toryism
- Baby → babyish

4 no change after a vowel

We do not change -y to -i- after a vowel letter.
- Buy → buying
- Play → played
- Enjoy → enjoyment
- Grey → greyish

Exceptions:
- Say → said
- Pay → paid
- Lay → laid

5 changing ie to y

We change -ie to -y- before -ing.
- Die → dying
- Lie → lying

(BUT Dye → dyeing)

349 ch and tch, k and ck

After one vowel, at the end of a word, we usually write -ck and -tch for the sounds /k/ and /tʃ/.

- Back
- Neck
- Sick
- Lock
- Stuck
- Catch
- Fetch
- Stitch
- Botch
- Hutch
Exceptions:

- yak  tic  public (and many other words ending in -ic)
- rich  which  such  much  attach  detach

After a consonant or two vowels, we write -k and -ch.

- bank  work  talk  march  bench
- break  book  week  peach  coach

350  ie and ei

The sound /iː/ (as in believe) is often written ie, but not usually ei. However, we write ei after c for this sound. English-speaking children learn a rhyme: ‘i before e, except after c’.

- believe  chief  field  grief  piece  shield
- ceiling  deceive  receive  receipt

Exceptions: seize, Neil, Keith, either, neither

For other pronunciations of either and neither, ► 156–157.

351  spelling and pronunciation

In many English words, the spelling is different from the pronunciation. This is mainly because our pronunciation has changed a good deal over the last few hundred years, while our spelling system has stayed more or less the same. Here is a list of some difficult common words with their pronunciations.

1  usually two syllables, not three
The letters in brackets are usually not pronounced.

- asp(i)rin  ev(e)ry  om(e)lette
- bus(i)ness  ev(e)ning  rest(au)rant
- choc(o)late  marri(a)ge  sev(e)ral
- diff(e)rent  med(i)cine
  (AmE three syllables)

2  usually three syllables, not four
The letters in brackets are usually not pronounced.

- comp(or)table  temp(e)rature
- int(e)resting  us(ua)lly
- secret(a)ry (AmE four syllables)  veg(e)table

3  silent letters
The letters in brackets are not pronounced.

- clim(b)  com(b)  de(b)t  dou(b)t  dum(b)
- mus(c)le
- han(d)kerchief  san(d)wich  We(d)nesday
- champ(a)g(ne)  forei(g)n  si(g)n
- borou(gh)  bou(gh)t  cau(gh)t  dau(gh)ter  hei(gh)t  hi(gh)  li(gh)t
- mi(gh)t  nei(gh)bour  ni(gh)t  ou(gh)t  ri(gh)t  strai(gh)t  thou(gh)t
- thou(gh)t  ti(gh)t  wei(gh)

vocabulary • 350  ie and ei
Word Formation and Spelling

- \(w(h)at\), \(w(h)en\), \(w(h)ere\), \(w(h)ether\), \(w(h)ich\), \(w(h)ip\), \(w(h)y\)
  and similarly in other words beginning \(\text{wha}, \text{whe}\) or \(\text{whi}\). (Some speakers use an unvoiced /\(w/\) in these words.)
- \(\text{(h)onest}\), \(\text{(h)onour}\), \(\text{(h)our}\)
- \(\text{(k)nee}\), \(\text{(k)nife}\), \(\text{(k)nob}\), \(\text{(k)nock}\), \(\text{(k)now}\)
  and similarly in other words beginning \(\text{kn}\).
- \(\text{ca(l)m}\), \(\text{cou(l)d}\), \(\text{ha(l)f}\), \(\text{sa(l)mon}\), \(\text{shou(l)d}\), \(\text{ta(l)k}\), \(\text{wa(l)k}\)
  \(\text{wou(l)d}\), \(\text{autum(n)}\), \(\text{hym(n)}\)
- \(\text{(p)neumatic}\), \(\text{(p)sychiatrist}\), \(\text{(p)sychology}\), \(\text{(p)sychotherapy}\), \(\text{(p)terodactyl}\)
  and similarly in other words beginning \(\text{pn}, \text{ps}\) or \(\text{pt}\).
- \(\text{cu(p)board}\), \(\text{/k\&b\&d/}\)
- \(\text{ch}"\text{s}\), \(\text{(k)nee}\), \(\text{(k)nife}\), \(\text{(k)nob}\), \(\text{(k)nock}\), \(\text{(k)now}\)
- \(\text{(p)neumatic}\), \(\text{(p)sychiatrist}\), \(\text{(p)sychology}\), \(\text{(p)sychotherapy}\), \(\text{(p)terodactyl}\)
  and similarly in other words beginning \(\text{pn}, \text{ps}\) or \(\text{pt}\).
- \(\text{cu(p)board}\), \(\text{/k\&b\&d/}\)
- \(\text{cas(t)le}\), \(\text{Chris(t)mas}\), \(\text{fas(t)en}\), \(\text{lis(t)en}\), \(\text{of(t)en}\), \(\text{whis(t)le}\)
  (Often can also be pronounced /\(n\text{ft\&n/}\.)
- \(\text{g(u)arantee}\), \(\text{g(u)ard}\), \(\text{g(u)errilla}\), \(\text{g(u)ess}\), \(\text{g(u)est}\), \(\text{g(u)ide}\), \(\text{g(u)ilt}\)
  \(\text{g(u)itar}\), \(\text{g(u)y}\)
- \(\text{(w)rap}\), \(\text{(w)rite}\), \(\text{(w)rong}\)
- \(\text{(w)ho}\), \(\text{(w)hom}\), \(\text{(w)hore}\), \(\text{(w)hose}\), \(\text{(w)hole}\)
- \(\text{g(u)arantee}\), \(\text{g(u)ard}\), \(\text{g(u)errilla}\), \(\text{g(u)ess}\), \(\text{g(u)est}\), \(\text{g(u)ide}\), \(\text{g(u)ilt}\)
  \(\text{g(u)itar}\), \(\text{g(u)y}\)
- \(\text{(w)rap}\), \(\text{(w)rite}\), \(\text{(w)rong}\)
- \(\text{(w)ho}\), \(\text{(w)hom}\), \(\text{(w)hore}\), \(\text{(w)hose}\), \(\text{(w)hole}\)

4 \(a = /e/\)
   any   many   Thames /\text{temz/}\)

5 \(ch = /k/\)

   ache archaeology architect chaos character chemist
   Christmas mechanical Michael stomach

6 \(ea = /e/\)

   already bread breakfast dead death dreadful dreamt
   head health heavy instead lead (the metal) leant leather
   meant measure pleasant pleasure read (past) ready steady
   sweater threat tread weather

7 \(ea = /e1/\)

   break great steak

8 \(gh = /f/\)

   cough /\text{k\&f/}\)   draught /\text{dra:ft/}\)   enough /\text{\text{'n\&f/}\)
   laugh /\text{la:f/}\)
   rough /\text{\text{'r\&f/}\)   tough /\text{t\&f/}\)

9 \(o = /\&/\)

   above brother colour come comfortable company cover
   done front glove government honey London love
   lovely Monday money month mother none nothing
   one onion other oven some son stomach ton(ne)
   tongue once won wonder worry

10 \(o = /u:/\)

   lose prove to
11 ou = /ɔ/  
country  couple  cousin  double  enough  rough  tough  
trouble  young

12 u or ou = /u/  
bull  bullet  bush  butcher  could  cushion  full  pull  push  
put  should  would

13 words pronounced with /aɪ/  
biology  buy  dial  height  idea  iron  microphone  science  
society  either  (some British speakers)  neither  (some British speakers)

14 other strange spellings  
area  /'eərɪə/  
Australia  /ɒs'treliə/  
bicycle  /'baɪsɪkl/  
biscuit  /'bɪskɪt/  
blood  /blɒd/  
brooch  /brɔʊtʃ/  
business  /'bɪzɪns/  
baby  /'bɪzi/  
clothes  /kləʊdz/  
does  /dʌz/  
doesn't  /dʌz(ə)nt/  
Edinburgh  /'ɛdɪnbər/  
Europe  /'juərəp/  
foreign  /'fɔrən/  
friend  /frend/  
fruit  /fruːt/  
heard  /hɑːd/  
heart  /hɑːt/  
juice  /dʒuːs/  
Leicester  /'lɛstə/  
minute  /'mɪnət/  
moustache  /məʊstəʃ/  
mustache  /mʌstəʃ/  
(some British speakers)  
neither  (some British speakers)  

15 silent r  
In standard southern British English, r is not normally pronounced before a  
consonant or at the end of a word.  

hard  /hɑːd/  
first  /fɜːst/  
order  /ɔːdər/  
car  /kɑːr/  
four  /fɔːr/  
more  /məʊr/  

But r is pronounced at the end of a word if a vowel follows immediately.  

four islands  /ˈfoʊr ˈæɪəndz/  
more eggs  /ˈmɔːr ˈeɪɡz/  

Note the pronunciation of iron, and of words ending in -re and -ered.  

ing  /aɪn/  (AmE  /ˈaɪrn/)  
worried  /ˈwɔːrd/  

centre  /ˈsɛntə(r)/  
bothered  /ˈbɔːðəd/  

theatre  /ˈθeətə(r)/  (AmE  /ˈθiətər/)  

We often add /r/ after words ending in the sound /ə/ even when this is not  
written with r, if another vowel follows immediately.  

India and Africa  /ˈɪndər  ˈæfrikə/  

In most varieties of American English, and in many regional British accents,  
r is pronounced whenever it is written.
INTRODUCTION

This Section deals with a number of words which often cause problems to do with meaning and grammar. Some other words are more conveniently explained in the grammatical Sections: see the Index for references. Note that a general usage guide like this only has room to cover a limited selection of word problems. For a wider and more detailed treatment, a separate reference book is needed.

Do you know what’s wrong with these, and why?

X According to me, he’s an idiot. ► 356
X In 1840, the population of Ireland was higher than it is actually. ► 358
X ‘I’m tired.’ ‘I also.’ ► 369.3
X My sister looks just as me. ► 515
X The train’s late, as usually. ► 381
X We arrived to the airport in the middle of the night. ► 384.5
X When we were at first married we lived with my parents. ► 388
X My girlfriend won me at poker. ► 392
X You can’t park before the station. ► 397
X My aunt has a little house besides the river. ► 400
X Can I lend your bike? ► 408
X Thanks for taking me here. It’s lovely. ► 409
X Edinburgh is one of the most beautiful cities in England. ► 411
X Can you clean this suit until Friday? ► 613.6
X I asked the garage to control the brakes and steering. ► 429
X The Prince always looks so handsome in an evening dress. ► 437.1
X We have a spare room for eventual visitors. ► 453
X I’m afraid that colour doesn’t fit me. ► 467
X Chess is a very slow play. ► 555
X I have big respect for our MP. ► 404.3
X He was driving fast indeed when he crashed. ► 499.1
X He’s quite anti-social, but instead he’s very generous. ► 500.3
X No doubt the world is getting warmer. ► 534
X I don’t like nowadays fashion. ► 539
X There’s a supermarket right in front of my house. ► 549.1
X It’s good if a child can have an own room. ► 552.1
X From my point of view, war is always wrong. ► 557
X What’s your principle reason for wanting to work here? ► 563
X Remember me to call Andy. ► 568.1
X Supper tonight is rests from lunch. ► 569
X If you shout at her she’ll cry. She’s terribly sensible. ► 577
X I’m hot. Let’s find some shadow to sit in. ► 578
X When he laughs so, I want to scream. ► 582.2
352 about and on

Compare:
- a book for children *about* Africa and its peoples
  a textbook *on* African history
- a conversation *about* money
  a lecture *on* economics

We use *about* to talk about ordinary, more general kinds of communication. *On* suggests that a book, talk, etc is more serious, suitable for specialists.

353 about to

*About* + infinitive (with *to*) means 'going to very soon'; 'just going to'.
- Don't go out now – we're *about to* have lunch.
- I was *about to* go to bed when the telephone rang.

*Not about to* can mean 'unwilling to'.
- I'm *not about to* pay 100 dollars for that dress.

about and around ★ 376

354 above and over

1 ‘higher than’: *above* or *over*

*Above* and *over* can both mean ‘higher than’. *Above* is more common with this meaning.

- The water came up *above/over* our knees.
- Can you see the helicopter *above/over* the palace?

2 ‘not directly over’: *above*

We use *above* when one thing is not directly over another.

- We've got a little house *above* the lake. (not... *over* the lake.)

3 ‘covering’: *over*

We prefer *over* when one thing covers and/or touches another.

- There is cloud *over* the South of England.
- He put on a coat *over* his pyjamas.

We use *over* or *across* (★ 357) when one thing crosses another.

- The plane was flying *over/across* Denmark.
- Electricity cables stretch *over/across* the fields.
Word Problems from A to Z

4 measurements: above

Above is used in measurements of temperature and height, and in other cases where we think of a vertical scale.

The temperature is three degrees above zero.
The summit of Everest is about 8000 metres above sea level.
She's well above average in intelligence.

5 ages, speeds, ‘more than’: over

We usually use over, not above, to talk about ages and speeds, and to mean ‘more than’.

You have to be over 18 to see this film.
The police said she was driving at over 110mph.
There were over 100,000 people at the festival.

6 books and papers

In a book or paper, above means ‘earlier on the page’ or ‘on an earlier page’.
The above rules and regulations apply to all students.
For prices and delivery charges, see above.
Our village is just above Cardiff on the map.
See over means ‘look on the next page’.
There are cheap flights at weekends: see over.

The difference between below and under is similar. > 399
For other meanings of these words, see a good dictionary.

355 accept and agree

Before an infinitive, we usually use agree, not accept.
I agreed to meet them here. (More normal than I accepted to meet . . .)

356 according to

According to X means ‘in X's opinion’, ‘if what X says is true’.
According to Harry, it's a good film.
The train gets in at 8.27, according to the timetable.
We do not usually give our own opinions with according to. Compare:
According to Anna, her boyfriend is brilliant. (= If what Anna says is true, . . .)
In my opinion, Anna's boyfriend is an idiot. (not According to me— . . .)

357 across, over and through

1 on/to the other side of (a line): across and over

Across and over can both be used to mean ‘on or to the other side of a line, river, road, bridge, etc’.
His village is just across/over the border.
See if you can jump across/over the stream.
2 **high things:** *over* preferred

We prefer *over* to say ‘on/to the other side of something high’.

_Why are you climbing over the wall? (NOT . . . *across the wall?*)_

3 **flat areas:** *across* preferred

We usually prefer *across* to say ‘on/to the other side of a flat area or surface’.

*He walked right across the desert.*

*It took them six hours to row across the lake.*

4 **the adverb over (to)**

Note that the adverb *over* has a wider meaning than the preposition *over*.

We often use *over (to)* for short journeys.

*I’m going over to Jack’s. Shall we drive over and see your mother?*

5 **across and through**

The difference between *across* and *through* is like the difference between *on* and *in*. *Through*, unlike *across*, is used for a movement in a three-dimensional space, with things on all sides. Compare:

- *We walked across the ice.* (We were *on* the ice.)
- *I walked through the wood.* (I was *in* the wood.)
- *We drove across the desert.*
- *We drove through several towns.*

For *over* and *above*, ► 354. For *across from* (AmE), ► 549.1.

For other uses of these words, see a good dictionary.

---

**358 actual(ly)**

1 **meaning and use**

*Actual* means ‘real’; *actually* means ‘really’ or ‘in fact’.

They are used to make things clearer, more precise or more definite.

*It’s over 100 kilos. Let me look. Yes, the **actual** weight is 108 kilos.*

*I’ve got a new job. **Actually**, they’ve made me sales manager.*

*‘Did you enjoy your trip?’ ‘Very much, **actually**.’*

*Actual* and *actually* often introduce surprising or unexpected information.

*It takes me an hour to drive to work, although the **actual** distance is only 20 miles.*

*She was so angry that she **actually** tore up the letter.*

*‘How did you get on with my car?’ ‘Well, **actually**, I’m terribly sorry, I’m afraid I had a crash.’*

*He’s twelve, but he **actually** still believes in Father Christmas.*

They can be used to correct mistakes or misunderstandings.

*The book says she died aged 47, but her **actual** age was 43.*

*‘Hello, Jack. Nice to see you.’ ‘**Actually**, my name’s Andy.’*

*Actually* is more common in British than American English.
2 ‘false friends’

Actual and actually are ‘false friends’ for people who speak some languages. They do not mean the same as, for example, actuel(lement), aktuell, or attual(ment)e. We express these ideas with present, current, up to date; at this moment, now, at present.

What’s our current financial position? (NOT . . . our actual financial position?)

In 1840 the population of Ireland was higher than it is now.

(NO . . . than it is actually.)

For more about actually and similar discourse markers, ► 284.3, 301.3.

359 afraid

1 afraid and fear

In an informal style, be afraid is more common than fear.

Don’t be afraid. (NOT Don’t fear) She’s afraid that I might find out.

Are you afraid of the dark? I’m not afraid to say what I think.

2 I’m afraid = ‘I’m sorry’

I’m afraid (that) often means I’m sorry to tell you (that). It is used to introduce apologetic refusals and bad news.

I’m afraid (that) I can’t help you.

I’m afraid (that) there’s been an accident.

I’m afraid so/not are used as short answers.

‘Can you lend me a pound?’ ‘I’m afraid not.’

‘It’s going to rain.’ ‘Yes, I’m afraid so.’

3 not used before a noun

Afraid is one of the adjectives that are not usually used before a noun in ‘attributive position’ (► 183). Compare:

Jack’s afraid. Jack’s a frightened man. (NOT . . . an afraid man.)

For information about -ing forms and infinitives after afraid, ► 105.13.

360 after: adverb

1 shortly after, etc

After can be used in adverb phrases like shortly after, long after, a few days after, etc.

We had oysters for supper. Shortly after, I began to feel ill.

In more exact expressions of time, later is more common.

They started the job on the 16th and finished three weeks later.

2 after not used alone

After is not normally used alone as an adverb. Instead, we use other expressions like afterwards (AmE also afterward), then or after that.

I’m going to do my exams, and afterwards I’m going to study medicine.

( NOT . . . and after, I’m going . . . )
after all

1 two meanings
After all can mean ‘in spite of what was said before’ or ‘contrary to what was expected’. Position: usually at the end of a clause.

I’m sorry. I know I said I would help you, but I can’t after all.
I expected to fail the exam, but I passed after all.
Another meaning is ‘we mustn’t forget that . . .’, introducing an argument or reason which may have been forgotten. Position: at the beginning or end of a clause.

Of course you’re tired. After all, you were up all night.
Let’s finish the cake. Somebody’s got to eat it, after all.

2 not used for ‘finally’
After all does not mean ‘finally’, ‘at last’, ‘in the end’.

After the theatre we had supper and went to a nightclub; then we finally went home. (NOT . . . after all we went home.)

again and back → 390

ago

1 word order: six weeks ago
Ago follows an expression of time.

I met her six weeks ago. (NOT . . . ago six weeks.) a long time ago

2 tenses
An expression with ago refers to a finished time, and is normally used with a past tense, not a present perfect (► 47.4).

She phoned a few minutes ago. (NOT She has phoned . . .)
‘Where’s Mike? ’ ‘He was working outside ten minutes ago.’

3 the difference between ago and for
Ago says how long before the present something happened; for (with a past tense) says how long it lasted. Compare:

He died three years ago. (= three years before now)
( NOT He died for three years. or . . . for three years ago.)
He was ill for three years before he died. (= His illness lasted three years.)

4 ago and before with time expressions: counting back
We use ago with a past tense and a time expression to ‘count back’ from the present; to say how long before now something happened.
We can use before in the same way (with a past perfect tense) to count back from a past moment. Compare:

I met that woman in Scotland three years ago. (NOT . . . three years before/ before three years.)
When we got talking, I found out that I had been at school with her husband ten years before. (NOT . . . ten years ago.)

**ago and before**

I met her three years ago. I had been at school with her husband ten years before.

three years ago  

PAST  

ten years before  

NOW

For other uses of before, ➤ 250, 397.

**agree and accept ➤ 355**

### 363 alike

The adjective alike means 'like each other'. Compare:

*The two boys are alike in looks, but not in personality.*

*He's like his brother. (NOT He's alike his brother.)*

*Alike* is not often used before a noun (➤ 183). Compare:

*His two daughters are very much alike.*

*He's got two very similar-looking daughters. (NOT . . . alike daughters.)*

### 364 all right and alright

The standard spelling is *all right*. *Alright* is common in informal usage, but some people consider it incorrect.

### 365 allow, permit and let

#### 1 allow and permit

These words have similar meanings and uses. *Permit* is more formal. Both words can be followed by object + infinitive.

*We do not allow/permit people to smoke in the kitchen.*

When there is no personal object, an -ing form is used.

*We do not allow/permit smoking in the kitchen.*

Passive structures are common; personal subjects and gerund (-ing form) subjects are both possible.

*People are not allowed/permitted to smoke in the kitchen.*

*Smoking is not allowed/permitted in the kitchen.*
The passive structure with *it* is only possible with *permit.*

*It is not permitted to smoke in the kitchen.*

*BUT NOT* *It is not allowed to smoke.*...

*Allow*, but not *permit*, can be used with adverb particles.

*She wouldn’t allow me in. Emily isn’t allowed out at night.*

2 *let*

*Let* is the least formal of these three words, and is followed by *object + infinitive* without *to.* Compare:

*Please allow me to buy you a drink.* (polite and formal)

*Let me buy you a drink.* (friendly and informal)

*Let* is not usually used in the passive.

*I wasn’t allowed to pay for the drinks.* (not *I wasn’t let.*...)

*Let* can be used with adverb particles; passives are possible in this case.

*She wouldn’t let me in.* I’ve been *let down.*

For more about *let*, ► 225, 512.

366 *almost* and *nearly; practically*

1 *progress, measurement and counting*

*Almost* and *nearly* can both express ideas connected with progress, measurement or counting. *Nearly* is less common in American English.

*I’ve almost/nearly finished.*

*There were almost/nearly a thousand people there.*

Sometimes *almost* is a little ‘nearer’ than *nearly.* Compare:

*It’s nearly ten o’clock.* (= perhaps 9.45)

*It’s almost ten o’clock.* (= perhaps 9.57)

*Very* and *pretty* can be used with *nearly* but not *almost.*

*I’ve very/pretty nearly finished.* (not ... *very almost*...)

2 *other meanings*

We can use *almost* to mean ‘similar to, but not exactly the same’, and to make statements less definite. *Nearly* is not used like this.

*Our cat understands everything – he’s almost human.*

*(not ... he’s nearly human.)*

*My aunt’s got a strange accent. She almost sounds foreign.*

*(not ... she nearly sounds foreign.)*

*I almost wish I’d stayed at home.* (not *I nearly wish.*...)

*Jake is almost like a father to me.*

3 *never, nobody, nothing, etc*

We do not usually use *nearly* before negative pronouns or adverbs like *never,* *nobody,* *nothing.* Instead, we use *almost,* or we use *hardly* with *ever,* *anybody,* *anything,* etc.

*She’s almost never / hardly ever at home.* (not ... *nearly never*...)

*Almost nobody / hardly anybody was there.*
everybody, everything, anybody, anything, etc

We also prefer almost before everybody/-one/-thing/-where, and almost is much more common than nearly before anybody/-one/-thing/-where.

She likes almost everybody. Almost anybody can do this job.
He's been almost everywhere. He eats almost anything.

practically

Practically can be used in the same way as almost.

I've practically finished. Jake is practically like a father to me.
She's practically never at home.

alone, lonely, lonesome and lone

Alone means ‘without others around’. Lonely (and informal AmE lonesome) means ‘alone and unhappy because of it’. Compare:

I like to be alone for short periods.
But after a few days I start getting lonely/lonesome.

Alone can be emphasised by all.

After her husband died, she was all alone.

Alone is not used before a noun (► 183.3). Lone and solitary can be used instead; lone is rather literary.

The only green thing was a lone/solitary pine tree.

along

The preposition along is used before nouns like road, river, corridor, line: words that refer to things with a long thin shape.

I saw her running along the road.
His office is along the corridor.

To talk about periods or activities, we prefer through.

through the centuries (not along the centuries)
all through the journey (not all along the journey)
right through the meal

Note the special use of along as an adverb particle in expressions like Come along (= Come with me) or walking along (= walking on one’s way).

aloud and loudly ► 520

already, still and let ► 595
369 also, as well and too

1 position

Also, as well and too have similar meanings, but they do not go in the same position in clauses. Also usually goes with the verb, in mid-position (► 200); as well and too usually go at the end of a clause. As well is less common in American English.

She not only sings; she also plays the piano.
She not only sings; she plays the piano as well.
She doesn’t just sing. She plays the piano too.

As well and too do not go at the beginning of a clause. Also can go at the beginning of a clause to give more importance to a new piece of information.

It's a nice house, but it’s very small. Also, it needs a lot of repairs.

2 reference

These words can refer to different parts of a clause, depending on the meaning. Consider the sentence We work on Saturdays as well. This can mean three different things:

a (Other people work on Saturdays, and) we work on Saturdays as well.

b (We do other things on Saturdays, and) we work on Saturdays as well.

c (We work on other days, and) we work on Saturdays as well.

When we speak, we show the exact meaning by stressing the word or expression that also / as well / too refers to.

3 imperatives and short answers

As well and too are used in imperatives and short answers, but not usually also.

Give me some bread as well, please. (More natural than Also give me . . .)

‘She’s nice.’ ‘Her sister is as well.’ (More natural than Her sister is also.)

‘I’ve got a headache.’ ‘I have too.’ (More natural than I also have.)

In very informal speech, we often use Me too as a short answer.

‘I’m going home.’ ‘Me too.’

More formal equivalents are So am I (► 309) or I am too (but not I also).

4 too in a formal style

In a formal or literary style, too can be placed directly after the subject.

I, too, have experienced despair.

For also, as well, too and either in negative clauses, ► 227.
For also and even, ► 452.3.
For as well as, ► 382.

370 alternate(ly) and alternative(ly)

Alternate(ly) means ‘first one and then the other’, ‘in turns’.

We spend alternate weekends at our country cottage.
I’m alternately happy and depressed.
Alternative(ly) is similar to 'different', 'instead', 'on the other hand'.

Jessica's not free on the 27th. We'll have to find an alternative date.

You could go by air, or alternatively you could drive there.

In American English, alternate(ly) can be used with the same meaning as alternative(ly).

371 although, though, but and however: contrast

1 although and though: conjunctions

Both these words can be used as conjunctions, with the same meaning. Though is less formal than although, and is more common in speech than writing. They introduce an idea ('A') with which the main clause ('B') is in contrast. When we say '(Al)though A, B', there is something unexpected or surprising about 'B'.

(A) although (A) I don't like him, (B) I agree that he's a good manager.
(B) I'd quite like to go out, (though (A) it is a bit late.

2 but and however

We can give the same meaning by putting but or however with the contrasting, 'unexpected' clause ('B').

(A) I don't like him, but (B) I agree that he's a good manager.
(A) I don't like him. However, (B) I agree that he's a good manager.
(A) It is a bit late, but (B) I'd quite like to go out.
(A) It is a bit late, however, (B) I'd quite like to go out.

3 but and however: the difference

But is a conjunction: it joins two clauses, and comes at the beginning of the second. However is an adverb: it does not connect its sentence grammatically to the one before. This is why it comes after a full stop or a semi-colon in the above examples.

However can go in various positions. It is normally separated from its sentence by one or two commas, depending on its position.

However, the police did not believe him.
The police, however, did not believe him.
The police did not believe him, however.

4 though used as an adverb

We can use though as an adverb (often at the end of a sentence), to mean 'however'.

'Nice day.' 'Yes. Bit cold, though.'
The strongest argument, though, is economic and not political.

For as though, 378. For even though (not even although), 452.4.
For sentences like Cold though it was, I went out, 255.
For however in sentences like However much he eats, he never gets fat, 252.
altogether and all together

Altogether means ‘completely’ or ‘considering everything’.

My new house isn’t altogether finished.

Altogether, she decided, marriage was a bit of a mistake.

Altogether can also be used to give totals.

That’s £4.38 altogether.

All together usually means ‘everybody/everything together’.

Come on, everybody sing. All together now . . .

They all went to the cinema together.

among and between ► 403

another and other(s) ► 550

any and no: adverbs

1 any and no with comparatives

Any can modify comparatives. This happens mostly in questions and negative sentences, and after if (also ► 222).

Can you go any faster?

You don’t look any older than your daughter. (= You don’t look at all older . . .)

If I were any younger, I’d fall in love with you.

No can also be used in this way (but not some).

I’m afraid the weather’s no better than yesterday.

2 any/no different

We can also use any and no with different.

This school isn’t any different from the last one.

‘Is Jack any better?’ ‘No different. Still very ill.’

3 any/no good; any/no use

Note the expressions any good/use and no good/use.

Was the film any good? This watch is no use. It keeps stopping.

appear

1 linking verb: ‘seem’

Appear can be a linking verb (► 11), used to say how things look or seem. It is used in similar ways to seem (► 576 for details), but is less frequent, especially in an informal style.

With this meaning, appear is followed by adjectives, not adverbs. We can use appear or appear to be.

He appears (to be) very angry today. (NOT He appears very angrily today.)
Before nouns we generally use *appear to be*.

*It appears to be some kind of bomb.*

*The boys on the bus appeared to be students.*

Structures with preparatory *there* (► 20) or *it* (► 268) are possible.

*There appears to be a problem with the oil pressure.*

*It appears that we may be mistaken.*

2 *appear and seem: differences*

*Seem* can be used to talk both about objective facts and about subjective impressions and feelings (► 576 for examples). *Appear* is mostly used to talk about objective facts. Compare:

*The baby seems/appears (to be) hungry.*

*She doesn’t want to go on studying. It seems a pity.* (NOT *It appears a pity.*)

*Seem* is often used with *like*. This is not normal with *appear*.

*It seemed like a good idea.* (More natural than *It appeared like a good idea.*)

*Seem* can be used in a special structure with *can’t* (► 576.4). This is not possible with *appear*.

*I can’t seem to make him understand.* (BUT NOT *I can’t appear to make him understand.*)

3 ‘come into sight’

*Appear* can also mean ‘come into sight’ or ‘arrive’. In this case it can be modified by an adverbial.

*She suddenly appeared in the doorway.*

For structures with *look*, ► 518.

375 *arise and rise*

*Arise* means ‘begin’, ‘appear’, ‘occur’, ‘come to one’s notice’. It is used mostly with abstract nouns as subjects.

*A discussion arose about the best way to pay.*

*I’m afraid a difficulty has arisen.*

*Rise* usually means ‘get higher’, ‘come/go up’.

*Prices keep rising.*  What time does the sun rise?

*My hopes are rising.*

Note that we usually say that people *get up* in the morning. *Rise* is only used with this meaning in a very formal style.

*Arise* and *rise* are irregular verbs.

(a)rise – (a)rose – (a)risen

For the difference between *rise* and *raise*, ► 1.2.
376 (a)round and about

1 circular movement, etc: (a)round
   We use both round and around (AmE usually around) for movement or position in a circle or a curve.
   She walked (a)round the car and looked at the wheels.
   I’d like to travel (a)round the world.
   ‘Where do you live?’ ‘Just (a)round the corner.’

2 touring, distribution: round
   We also use round or around (AmE usually around) to talk about going to all (or most) parts of a place, or giving things to everybody in a group.
   We walked (a)round the old part of the town.
   Can I look (a)round? Could you pass the cups (a)round, please?

3 indefinite movement and position
   We use around or about (AmE usually around) to refer to movements or positions that are not very clear or definite: ‘here and there’, ‘in lots of places’, ‘in different parts of’, ‘somewhere in’ and similar ideas.
   The children were running around/about everywhere.
   Stop standing around/about and do some work.
   ‘Where’s Jack?’ ‘Somewhere around/about.’
   I like doing odd jobs around/about the house.
   We also use these words in some common expressions to talk about time-wasting or silly activity.
   Stop fooling around/about. We’re late.

4 approximately
   About and around can both mean ‘approximately’, ‘not exactly’. About is more common than around in British English.
   There were about/around fifty people there.
   ‘What time shall I come?’ ‘About/Around eight.’

For other uses of these words, see a good dictionary.

as and like ► 515

377 as, because, since and for

All four of these words can be used to refer to the reason for something. (For as, since and for referring to time, ► 251, 469, 579.) There are some differences.

1 as and since
As and since are used when the reason is already known to the listener/reader, or when it is not the most important part of the sentence. As- and since-clauses often come at the beginning of sentences.
   As it’s raining again, we’ll have to stay at home.
   Since he had not paid his bill, his electricity was cut off.
As- and since-clauses are relatively formal; in an informal style, the same ideas are often expressed with so.

It’s raining again, so we’ll have to stay at home.

2 because

Because puts more emphasis on the reason, and most often introduces new information which is not known to the listener/reader.

Because I was ill for six months, I lost my job.

When the reason is the most important part of the sentence, the because-clause usually comes at the end. It can also stand alone. Since and as cannot be used like this.

Why am I leaving? I’m leaving because I’m fed up! (not...I’m leaving as/ since I’m fed up!)

‘Why are you laughing?’ ‘Because you look so funny.’

A because-clause can be used to say how one knows something.

You didn’t tell me the truth, because I found the money in your room.

(=...I know because I found...)

For more information about because, ► 393.

3 for

For introduces new information, but suggests that the reason is given as an afterthought. A for-clause could almost be in brackets. For-clauses never come at the beginning of sentences, and cannot stand alone. For, used in this sense, is most common in a formal written style, and is becoming rare.

I decided to stop and have lunch – for I was feeling hungry.

For for + object + infinitive clause (e.g. What I want is for everyone to have lunch), ► 113.

378 as if and as though; like

1 meaning

As if and as though are both used to say what a situation seems like. They can refer to something that we think may be true.

It looks as if/though it’s going to rain.

It sounds as if/though Jack’s going to change his job.

They can also be used to talk about things which we know are not true.

I feel as if/though I’m dying.

She was acting as if/though she was in charge.

2 tenses

When we talk about things which we know are not true, we can use a past tense with a present meaning after as if/though. This emphasises the meaning of unreality. Compare:

– She looks as if she is rich. (Perhaps she is.)

– He talks as if he was rich. (But he is definitely not.)

– You look as though you know each other.

– Why is he looking at me as though he knew me? I’ve never seen him before.

In a formal style, were can be used instead of was in an ‘unreal’ comparison. This is common in American English.

He talks as if he were rich.
3 *like* meaning *‘as if/though’*

*Like* is often used in the same way as *as if/though*, especially in an informal style. This used to be typically American English, but it is now common in British English.

*It seems like it's going to rain.*

*He sat there smiling like it was his birthday.*

For the difference between *like* and *as*, ➤ 515.

### 379 *as long as*

1 **tenses**

   After *as long as*, we use a present tense to express a future idea.

   *I'll remember that day as long as I live.* (not . . . *as long as I will live.*)

   For other conjunctions which are used in this way, ➤ 231.

2 **conditions**

   *As/so long as* is often used to state conditions.

   *You can take my car as/so long as you drive carefully.* (= . . . *on condition that you drive carefully.*)

3 **emphatic use**

   Before a number, *as long as* can be used to suggest great length.

   *These meetings can last as long as four hours.*

   For a similar use of *as much/many as*, ➤ 203.6.

### 380 *as such*

*Not . . . as such* is used to say that something is not exactly what a word or expression suggests.

*'So you went on a tour to Japan?’ ‘Well, *not a tour as such* – I went on business. But I managed quite a lot of sightseeing.’*

*I'm not a teacher as such, but I've taught English to some of my friends.*

### 381 *as usual*

Note that in this expression we use the adjective *usual*, not the adverb *usually*.

*The train's late, as usual.* (not . . . *as usually.*)

*as well, also and too* ➤ 369
382 as well as

1 meaning
As well as has a similar meaning to 'not only . . . but also'.
She's got a goat, as well as five cats and three dogs.
He's clever as well as nice. (= He's not only nice, but also clever.)
She works in television as well as writing children's books.
When some information is already known to the listener/reader, we put this with as well as.
As well as birds, some mammals can fly. (NOT Birds can fly, as well as some mammals.)
They speak Italian in parts of Switzerland as well as Italy. (NOT They speak Italian in Italy as well as parts of Switzerland.)

2 verbs after as well as
When we put a verb after as well as, we most often use the -ing form.
Smoking is dangerous, as well as making you smell bad. (NOT . . . as well as it makes you smell bad.)
As well as breaking his leg, he hurt his arm. (NOT . . . as well as he broke his leg . . . )
After an infinitive in the main clause, an infinitive without to is possible.
I have to feed the animals as well as look after the children.
Note the difference between:
She sings as well as playing the piano. (= She not only plays, but also sings.)
She sings as well as she plays the piano. (= Her singing is as good as her playing.)

For as well, also and too, ▶ 369.

383 ask

1 ask and ask for
ask for: ask somebody to give something
ask without for: ask somebody to tell something

Compare:
- Don't ask me for money. (NOT Don't ask me money.)
  Don't ask me my name. (More common than Don't ask me for my name.)
- Ask for the menu.
  Ask the price.

Ask is sometimes used without for when talking about asking for sums of money, especially in connection with buying, selling and renting.
They're asking £500 a month including tax.
'How much is the car?' 'I'm asking fifteen hundred.'
Note also the expressions ask a lot of somebody, ask too much of somebody, ask a favour of somebody and ask (for) permission.
2 infinitive structures

We can use infinitive structures after ask (► 97–98).

- **ask + infinitive**
  
  *I asked to go home.* (= I asked permission to go home.)

- **ask + object + infinitive**
  
  *I asked Jack to go home.* (= I told Jack I would like him to go home.)

- **ask + for + object + infinitive**
  
  *I asked for the children to have extra milk.
  I asked for the package to be sent to my home address.*

Note the difference between these two sentences:

- **I asked Jack to go home.** (I wanted Jack to go home.)
- **I asked Jack if I could go home.** (I wanted to go home myself.)

384 at, on and in: place

1 at

At is used to talk about position at a point.

- *It's very hot at the centre of the earth.*
- *Turn right at the next corner.*

Sometimes we use *at* with a larger place, if we just think of this as a point: a stage on a journey or a meeting place, for example. Compare:

- **The plane stops for an hour at/in Frankfurt.** (a point on a journey)
  
  *She lives in Frankfurt.* (somebody’s home) *(NOT She lives at Frankfurt.)*

- **Let's meet at the club.** (a meeting point)
  
  *It was warm and comfortable in the club.* (a place to spend time)

We very often use *at* before the name of a building, when we are thinking not of the building itself but of the activity that happens there.

- *I first heard her sing at the Usher Hall in Edinburgh.*
- *Eat at the Steak House – best food in town.*
- *Sorry I didn’t phone last night – I was at the theatre.*

At is particularly common with proper names used for buildings or organisations. Compare:

- **I first met your father at/in Harrods.**
  
  *I first met your father in a shop.*

- **She works at Legal and General Insurance.**
  
  *She works in a big insurance company.*

At is used to say where people study.

- **He’s at the London School of Economics.**

We use *at* with the name of a city to talk about the city’s university. Compare:

- **He’s a student at Oxford.** *He lives in Cambridge.*

At is also used before the names of group activities.

- **at a party**
- **at a meeting**
- **at a concert**
- **at a lecture**
- **at the match**
2 on

On is used to talk about position on a line (for example a road or a river).

*His house is on the way from Aberdeen to Dundee.*

*Stratford is on the river Avon.*

But in is used for the position of things which form part of the line.

*There's a misprint in line 6 on page 22.*

*Who's the good-looking boy in the sixth row?*

On is used for position on a surface.

*Hurry up — supper's on the table!*  
*That picture would look better on the other wall.*  
*There's a big spider on the ceiling.*

On can mean 'attached to'.

*Why do you wear that ring on your first finger?*  
*There aren't many apples on the tree this year.*

On is also used for position by a lake or sea.

*Bowness is on Lake Windermere.*  
*Southend-on-Sea*

3 in

In is used for position inside large areas, and in three-dimensional space (when something is surrounded on all sides).

*I don't think he's in his office.*  
*Let's go for a walk in the woods.*  
*She grew up in Swaziland.*  
*I last saw her in Times Square.*

*He lived in the desert for three years.*

4 public transport

We use *on* (and *off*) to talk about travel using public transport (buses, trains, planes and boats), as well as (motor)cycles and horses.

*There's no room on the bus; let's get off again.*

*He's arriving on the 3.15 train.*  *(NOT . . . *in/*with* the 3.15 train.)*

*We're travelling on flight 604.*

*It took five days to cross the Atlantic on the Queen Elizabeth.*

*I'll go down to the shop on my bike.*

But we use *in* and *out* (*of*) to talk about cars and small private planes and boats.

*She came in a taxi.*

*He fell into the river when he was getting out of his canoe.*

5 arrive

We generally use *at* (not *to*) after *arrive*; *in* is used before very large places.

*He arrives at the airport at 15.30.*  *(NOT He arrives to the airport . . .)*

*What time do we arrive in New York?*

6 addresses

We generally use *at* to talk about addresses.

*Are you still at the same address?*  
*She lives at 73 Albert Street.*

We use *in* (AmE *on*) if we just give the name of the street.

*She lives in Albert Street.*

We use *on* for the number of the floor.

*She lives in a room on the third floor.*
At can be used with a possessive (especially in British English) to mean 'at somebody's house or shop'.

'Where's Megan?' 'She's at Naomi's.'

I used to get my bread at a small baker's in the next street.

7 special expressions

Note these expressions:
in/at church at home/work in/at school/college
in a picture in the sky in the rain
in a tent in a hat

The map is on page 32. (BUT I stopped reading at page 32.)
in bed / (the) hospital / prison
on a farm working on the railway

Note that at is usually pronounced /at/, not /ət/ (► 315).
For the difference between at/in and to, ► 385. For smile at, shoot at, etc, ► 385.3.

385 at/in and to

1 the difference

At and in are generally used for position (for the difference, ► 384); to is used for movement or direction. Compare:

- He works at the market.
- He gets to the market by bike.
- My father lives in Canada.
- I go to Canada to see him whenever I can.

2 expressions of purpose

If we mention the purpose of a movement before we mention the destination, we usually use at/in before the place. Compare:

- Let's go to Marcel's for coffee.
  Let's go and have coffee at Marcel's. (NOT Let's go and have coffee to Marcel's.)
- I went to Canada to see my father.
  I went to see my father in Canada. (NOT I went to see my father to Canada.)

3 targets

After some verbs, at is used with the 'target' of a perception or non-verbal communication. Common examples are look, smile, wave, frown.

Why are you looking at her like that? Because she smiled at me.

At is also used after some verbs referring to attacks or aggressive behaviour. Common examples are shoot, laugh, throw, shout and point.

It's a strange feeling to have somebody shoot at you.
If you can't laugh at yourself, who can you laugh at?
Stop throwing stones at the cat, darling.
You don't need to shout at me.
In my dream, everybody was pointing at me and laughing.

Throw to, shout to and point to are used when there is no idea of attack.

Please do not throw food to the animals.
Could you shout to Jake and tell him it's breakfast time?
The train's late again,' she said, pointing to the timetable. 
Arrive is generally followed by at or in; never by to.

We should arrive at Pat's in time for lunch. (not... arrive to Pat's...)

When did you arrive in New Zealand? (not... to New Zealand?)

For in and into, ► 496.

### 386 at, on and in: time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at + clock time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at + weekend, public holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + part of day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + longer period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on + particular day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 clock times: at

I usually get up at six o'clock. I'll meet you at 4.15.

Phone me at lunch time.

At is usually left out before what time in an informal style (► 386.7).

What time does your train leave?

2 parts of the day: in

I work best in the morning. three o'clock in the afternoon

We usually go out in the evening.

Note the difference between in the night (mostly used to mean 'during one particular night') and at night (= during any night). Compare:

I had to get up in the night. I often work at night.

In an informal style, we sometimes use plurals (days, etc) with no preposition.

Would you rather work days or nights?

We use on if we say which morning/afternoon, etc we are talking about, or if we describe the morning/afternoon, etc.

See you on Monday morning.

We met on a cold afternoon in early spring.

3 days: on

I'll ring you on Tuesday. My birthday's on March 21st.

They're having a party on Christmas Day.

In an informal style we sometimes leave out on.

I'm seeing her Sunday morning.

We use plurals (Sundays, Mondays, etc) to talk about repeated actions.

We usually go and see Granny on Sundays.

4 public holidays and weekends: at

We use at to talk about the whole of the holidays at Christmas, New Year, Easter and Thanksgiving (AmE).

We're having the roof repaired at Easter.
But we use *on* to talk about one day of the holiday.

*Come and see us on Christmas Day.*

*What are you doing on Easter Monday?*

British people say *at the weekend*; Americans use *on.*

*What did you do at the weekend?*

### 5 longer periods: *in*

*It happened in the week after Christmas.*

*I was born in March. Kent is beautiful in spring.*

*Our house was built in the 15th century. He died in 1616.*

### 6 other uses of *in*

*In* can also be used to say how soon something will happen, and to say how long something takes to happen.

*Ask me again in three or four days.*

*I can run 200 metres in about 30 seconds.*

The expression *in . . .‘s time* is used to say how soon something will happen, not how long something takes. Compare:

*I’ll see you again in a month’s time.*

*It’ll be ready in three weeks’ time.*

*He wrote the book in a month. (NOT . . . in a month’s time.)*

In American English, *in* can be used in negative sentences, like *for,* to talk about periods up to the present.

*I haven’t seen her in years.*

### 7 expressions with no preposition

*At/on/in* are not normally used in expressions of time before *next, last, this, that* (sometimes), *one, any* (in an informal style), *each, every, some, all.*

*See you next week.*  
*Come any time.*

*Are you free this morning?*  
*I didn’t feel very well that week.*

*I’m at home every evening.*  
*We met one day in late August.*

*We stayed all day.*

These prepositions are not normally used, either, before *yesterday, the day before yesterday, tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.*

*What are you doing the day after tomorrow?*

And prepositions are usually dropped in questions beginning *What/Which + expression of time,* and in answers which only contain an expression of time.

*What day is the meeting?*  
*Which week did you say you’re away?*  
*‘What time are you leaving?’ ‘Eight o’clock.’*

Note that *at* is usually pronounced /æt/, not /ət/ (► 315).  
For the difference between *in* and *during,* ► 441.

### 387 at all

#### 1 at all with a negative

We often use *at all* to emphasise a negative idea.

*I didn’t understand anything at all.* (= I didn’t understand even a little.)

*She was hardly frightened at all.*
2 questions, etc

At all can also be used in questions, and with ‘non-affirmative’ words like if, ever and any.

Do you play poker at all? (= . . . even a little?)
He’ll come before supper if he comes at all.
You can come whenever you like — any time at all.

3 Not at all.

The expression Not at all is used (especially in British English) as a rather formal answer to Thank you (► 329.19) and to Do you mind if . . .? (► 528).

388 at first and first

We use at first to talk about the beginning of a situation, to make a contrast with something different that happens/happened later. At first . . . is often followed by but.

At first they were very happy, but then things started going wrong.
The work was hard at first, but I got used to it.

In other cases, we usually prefer first.

That’s mine — I saw it first! (not . . . I saw it at first.)
We lived there when we were first married. (= . . . in the early days of our marriage.) (not . . . when we were at first married.)

First, I want to talk about the history of the problem; then I’ll outline the situation today; and then we’ll discuss possible solutions. (not At first, I want to talk . . .)

Note that at last is not the opposite of at first, ► 465.
For first(ly) as a discourse marker, ► 301.1.

at last, finally, in the end and at the end ► 465

389 (a)wake and (a)waken

1 use

Wake is the most common of these four verbs. It can mean ‘stop sleeping’ or ‘make (somebody else) stop sleeping’. It is often followed by up, especially when it means ‘stop sleeping’.

I woke up three times in the night.
Wake up! It’s time to go to work. (NOT Wake . . .)
Could you wake me (up) at half past six?

Waken is a more literary alternative to wake (up).

The princess did not waken for a hundred years.
Then the prince wakened her with a kiss.

Awake and awaken are also rather literary words. They are most often used to talk about the waking of emotions, understanding, etc.

I slowly awoke to the danger that threatened me.
At first I paid little attention, but slowly my interest awoke.
The sound of the church clock awakened a half-buried memory.

2 awake and asleep (adjectives)
In informal British English the adjectives awake and asleep are more common in predicative position (after be) than the verb forms waking and sleeping.

Is the baby awake yet?
Everyone was asleep when I got home.

390 back (adverb) and again

Back and again can be used with similar meanings, but there are some differences.

1 back with a verb
With a verb, we use back to suggest a return to an earlier situation, a movement in the opposite direction to an earlier movement, and similar ideas. Again is not normally used in this way with a verb.

Give me my watch back. (NOT Give me my watch again.)
I’m taking this meat back to the shop. (NOT I’m taking this meat to the shop again.)

2 again with a verb
With a verb, again usually suggests repetition. Compare:

- That was lovely. Can you play it again?
  When I’ve recorded your voice I’ll play it back.
- Sam was really bad-mannered. I’m never going to invite him again.
  She comes to our parties but she never invites us back.
- I don’t think he got your email. You’d better write again.
  If I write to you, will you write back?

Note the difference between sell back (to the same person) and sell again.

The bike you sold me is too small. Can I sell it back to you?
If we buy this house and then have to move somewhere else, how easy will it be to sell it again?

3 cases when back is not used
When the verb itself already expresses the idea of ‘return to an earlier situation’ or ‘movement in the opposite direction’, back is not generally used.

Stefan can never return to his country. (More natural than Stefan can never return back . . . )
Who opened the window? Could you close it, please? (NOT . . . close it back . . . )

However, again can be used to emphasise the idea of ‘return to an earlier situation’.

Stefan can never return to his country again.
Who opened the window? Could you close it again, please?

4 adverb particles, etc
With adverb particles and prepositional phrases, we can use both back and again to suggest ‘return to an earlier situation’, etc.
I stood up, and then I sat (back) down (again).
He tasted the apple and spat it (back) out (again).
Go (back) to sleep (again).
I’ll be (back) in the office (again) on Monday.

5 ring/call back
Note that ring back (British English only) and call back can be used to mean both ‘return a phone call’ and ‘repeat a phone call’.
‘She’s not here just now.’ ‘Ask her to ring/call me back.’ (= return my call)
‘I haven’t got time to talk now.’ ‘OK, I’ll ring/call back later.’ (= ring again)

6 word order
Back is an adverb particle (► 195), and can usually go between a verb and its object, unless this is a pronoun (► 12.4). Again cannot.
Take back your money – I don’t want it. (OR Take your money back . . .)
Count the money again, please. (NOT Count again the money . . .)

For other uses of back and again, see a good dictionary.

391 bath and bathe

1 bath
Pronunciation: bath /baːθ/ bathing /ˈbaːθɪŋ/ bathed /baːt/ 
This verb is not used in American English.
It can have an object.
   It’s your turn to bath the baby.
And it can be used to mean ‘bath oneself’.
   I don’t think he baths very often.
This use is rather formal; people more often say have/take a bath (and this is also common in American English).
   I’m feeling hot and sticky; I think I’ll have a bath.

2 bathe
Pronunciation: bathe /beɪθ/ bathing /ˈbeɪθɪŋ/ bathed /beɪðd/ 
Bathe is the American equivalent of the British verb bath.
   It’s your turn to bathe the baby. (AmE)
   I always bathe before I go to bed. (AmE) (OR . . . take a bath)
Bathe can also be used (in both British and American English) to talk about putting water on a part of the body that hurts (for instance sore eyes).
   Your eyes are very red – you ought to bathe them.
And bathe can be used to mean ‘swim for pleasure’ in British English.
   NO BATHING FROM THIS BEACH
This use is rather formal; people more often say have a swim, go for a swim, go swimming or just swim.
   Let’s go for a swim in the river.
b changes for the worse

Go (not usually get) is used before adjectives in some expressions that refer to changes for the worse. People go mad (BrE), crazy, deaf, blind, grey or bald; horses go lame; machines go wrong; meat, fish or vegetables go bad; milk goes sour; bread goes stale; beer, lemonade, musical instruments and car tyres go flat.

He went bald in his twenties. The car keeps going wrong.

Note that we use get, not go, with old, tired and ill.

5 come true, etc

Come is used in a few fixed expressions to talk about things finishing up all right. The most common are come right (BrE) and come true.

I'll make all your dreams come true.

Trust me – it will all come right in the end.

Come + infinitive can be used to talk about changes in mental state or attitude.

I slowly came to realise that she knew what she was doing.

You will come to regret your decision.

6 grow old, etc

Grow is used before adjectives especially to talk about slow and gradual changes. It is more formal than get or go, and a little old-fashioned or literary.

Without noticing it he grew old.

When they grew rich they began to drop their old friends.

As the weather grows colder, I think of moving to a warmer country.

Grow + infinitive can be used (like come + infinitive) to talk about changes in attitude, especially if these are gradual.

He grew to accept his stepmother, but he never grew to love her.

7 turn red, etc

Turn is used mostly for visible or striking changes of state. It is common before colour words (and is not so informal as go).

She turned bright red and ran out of the room.

He turns violent after he's had a couple of drinks.

We can use turn before numbers to talk about important changes of age.

I turned fifty last week. It's all downhill from now on.

Turn into is used before nouns.

He's a lovely man, but when he gets jealous he turns into a monster.

A girl has to kiss a lot of frogs before one of them turns into a prince.

Turn to and turn into can both be used before the names of materials.

Everything that King Midas touched turned (in)to gold.

They stood there as if they had been turned (in)to stone.

To talk about a change of occupation, religion, politics, etc, we sometimes use turn with a noun (with no preposition or article) or an adjective.

He worked in a bank for thirty years before turning painter.

Towards the end of the war he turned traitor.

At the end of her life she turned Catholic.

Turn (in)to can also be used to talk about changing one thing into another.

In the Greek legend, Circe turned men into pigs.
8 fall ill, etc

Fall is used to mean ‘become’ in fall ill, fall asleep and fall in love.

9 verbs related to adjectives: thicken, brighten, etc

A number of verbs which are related to adjectives have meanings like ‘get more . . .’ or ‘make more . . .’. Many of them end in -en. Examples:

- The fog thickened.
- They’re widening the road here.
- The weather’s beginning to brighten up.
- His eyes narrowed.
- Could you shorten the sleeves on this jacket?

10 no change: stay, keep, remain

To talk about things not changing, we can use stay, keep or remain before adjectives. Remain is more formal.

- How do you manage to stay young and fit? Keep calm.
- I hope you will always remain so charming.
- Stay and remain are also sometimes used before noun phrases.
  - Promise me you will always stay/remain my little boy.
- Keep can be used before -ing forms.
  - Keep smiling whatever happens.

For other uses of the words discussed in this section, see a good dictionary.

395 been meaning ‘come’ or ‘gone’

Been is often used as a past participle of come and go.

- Granny has been to see us twice since Christmas.
- I haven’t been to the theatre for ages.
- Have you ever been to Northern Ireland?

Note that been is only used for completed visits. Compare:

- The electrician’s already been. (He has come and gone away again.)
  - Megan’s come, so we can start work. (She has come and is still here.)
- I’ve been to London three times this week.
  - ‘Where’s Lucy?’ ‘She’s gone to London.’

For be gone, > 477.

396 before: adverb

1 ‘at any time before now/then’

We can use before to mean ‘at any time before now’. In British English, a present perfect tense is normally used.

- I think I’ve seen this film before. Have you ever been here before?

Before can also mean ‘at any time before then – before the past moment that we are talking about’. In this case a past perfect tense is used.

- She realised that she had seen him before.
2 counting back from a past time: eight years before

We also use *before* after a time expression to ‘count back’ from a past moment - to say how much earlier something else had happened. A past perfect tense is normally used.

*When I went back to the town that I had left eight years before, everything was different.* (NOT ... that I had left before eight years...)

To count back from the present, we use *ago*, not *before* (► 362).

*I left school four years ago.* (NOT ... four years before / before four years)

3 *before, before that and first*

*Before* is not generally used alone to mean ‘first’ or ‘before that happens’. Instead we use *first* or *before that*.

*I want to get married one day. But before that / first, I want to travel.* (NOT ... *But before, I want to travel.*)

For the difference between *before* and *ever*, ► 454.4. For *before* as a conjunction, ► 250.

397 *before* (preposition) and *in front of*

*before: time*

*in front of: place*

Compare:

*I must move my car before nine o’clock.*

*It’s parked in front of the station.* (NOT ... *before the station.)*

*Before* is normally used to refer to time. However, it can refer to place:

a to talk about order in queues, lists, documents, etc

*Do you mind? I was before / in front of you!*  
*Her name comes before mine in the alphabet.*  
*We use ‘a’ before a consonant and ‘an’ before a vowel.*

b to mean ‘in the presence of (somebody important)’

*I came up before the magistrates for dangerous driving last week.*

c in the expressions *right before one’s eyes, before one’s very eyes.*

For the difference between *in front of* and *facing/opposite*, ► 549. For *before* as a conjunction, ► 250. For *before* as an adverb, ► 396. For *by* meaning ‘at/on or before’, ► 414.

398 *begin* and *start*

1 meaning; formality

*Begin* and *start* can both be used with the same meaning.

*I began/started teaching when I was 24.*  
*If Hannah doesn’t come soon, let’s begin/start without her.*

We generally prefer *begin* when we are using a more formal style. Compare:

*We will begin the meeting with a message from the President.*  
*Damn! It’s starting to rain.*
2 cases where *begin* is not possible

*Start* (but not *begin*) is used to mean:

a ‘start a journey’

*I think we ought to start at six, while the roads are empty.*

b ‘start working’ (for machines)

*The car won’t start.*

c ‘make something start’

*How do you start the washing machine?*

*The President’s wife fired the gun to start the race.*

For infinitives and *-ing* forms after *begin* and *start*, ▶ 105.10.

399 *below, under, underneath and beneath*

1 ‘lower than’: *below* or *under*

The prepositions *below* and *under* can both mean ‘lower than’. *Look in the cupboard below/under the sink.*

2 not directly under: *below*

We prefer *below* when one thing is not directly under another.

*The climbers stopped 300m below the top of the mountain.*

*A moment later the sun had disappeared below the horizon.*

3 covered: *under*

We prefer *under* when something is covered or hidden by what is over it, and when things are touching.

*I think the cat’s under the bed.*

*What are you wearing under your sweater?*

*The whole village is under water.* (*not...below water.*)

4 measurements: *below*

*Below* is used in measurements of temperature and height, and in other cases where we think of a vertical scale.

*The temperature is three degrees below zero.*

*Parts of Holland are below sea level.*

*The plane came down below the clouds.*

*She’s well below average in intelligence.*

5 ‘less than’: *under*

We usually use *under*, not *below*, to mean ‘less/fewer than’ or ‘younger than’.

*There were under twenty people at the lecture.*

*You can’t see this film if you’re under 18.*

6 *underneath*

*Underneath* is sometimes used as a preposition instead of *under*, but only for physical position. Compare:

*There’s a mouse under(neath) the piano.*

*He’s still under 18.* (*not...underneath 18.*)

---

vocabulary • 399 *below, under, underneath and beneath*
7 **beneath**

*Beneath* is used mostly in a rather literary style.

*The ship sank slowly beneath the waves.*

It is common before abstract nouns in some fixed expressions.

*He acts as if I was beneath his notice.* (= not worth considering)

*Her behaviour is beneath contempt.* (= really disgraceful)

8 **adverbs**

*Below* can be used as an adverb.

*We looked over the cliff at the waves crashing on the rocks below.*

*Under* can be used as an adverb particle (► 195) with some verbs.

*A lot of businesses are going under because of the economic crisis.*

In other cases we prefer *underneath* for adverbial use.

*I can’t take my sweater off – I haven’t got anything on underneath.*

*In a book or a paper, see below means ‘look at something written later in the text’.*

The difference between *above* and *over* is similar to the difference between *below* and *under.*

► 354 for details.

---

400 **beside and besides**

*Beside* is a preposition meaning ‘at the side of’, ‘by’, ‘next to’.

*They lived in a little house beside the river.*

*Besides* can be used like *as well as* (► 382), when we add new information to what is already known.

*Besides literature, we have to study history and philosophy.*

*Who was at the party besides Jack and the Bensons?*

*Besides* can also be used informally as a discourse marker (► 301.2) meaning ‘also’, ‘as well’, ‘in any case’. It is often used in speech to add a stronger, more conclusive argument to what has gone before. In this case, *besides* usually goes at the beginning of a clause.

*I don’t like those shoes; besides, they’re too expensive.*

*It’s too late to go out now. Besides, it’s starting to rain.*

---

401 **bet**

1 **use**

*I bet (you)* can be used in an informal style to mean ‘I think it’s probable that’.

*That* is usually dropped.

*I bet (you) she’s not at home.*

*(More natural than *I bet (you) that she’s not at home.*)*

*I’ll bet . . . is also possible.*

*I’ll bet you she’s not at home.*
2 tenses

After *I bet* (you), we often use a present tense to refer to the future.

*I bet* (you) *they don't come* this evening. (or *I bet* (you) *they won't come* . . .)

*I bet* (you) *the Conservatives* (will) lose.

3 two objects

When *bet* is used to talk about real bets, it can be followed by two objects: the person with whom the bet is made, and the money or thing that is bet.

*I bet you* £5 *it doesn't rain* this week.

*My father bet my mother dinner at the Ritz* that *she would* marry *him.*

*He won, but she never bought him the dinner.*

*Bet* is irregular (*bet* - *bet* - *bet*).

402 better

1 ‘recovered’

When *better* means ‘recovered from an illness’, it can be used with *completely* or *quite* (unlike other comparative adjectives).

*Don’t start work again until you’re completely better.*

2 correcting mistakes

We do not normally use *better* to correct mistakes.

*She’s gone to Hungary – or rather, Poland.* *(not . . . or better, Poland.)*

For the structure *had better*,  77.

403 between and among

1 between two

We say that something is *between* two people, things, or groups of things.

*She was standing between Alice and Emily.*

*a long valley between high mountains*

*Between* is often used to talk about distances or intervals.

*We need two metres between the windows.*

*I’ll be at the office between nine and eleven.*

*Between* is common before *each.*

*There seems to be less and less time between each birthday.*

2 between or among more than two

We usually say that somebody or something is *between* several clearly separate people or things. We prefer *among* when somebody or something is in a group, a crowd or a mass of people or things which we do not see separately. Compare:

– *Our house is between the woods, the river and the village.*

*His house is hidden among the trees.*

– *I saw something between the wheels of the car.*

*Your passport is somewhere among all these papers.*
Among is normal before a singular (uncountable) noun.

They found an envelope full of money among all the rubbish.

3 dividing and sharing; difference

We can talk about dividing or sharing things between or among more than two people or groups.

He divided all his money between/among his children and grandchildren.
We shared the work between/among the five of us.

We normally use between after difference.
There are enormous differences between languages.
What's the difference between 'between' and 'among'?

4 'one of', etc

Among can mean 'one of', 'some of' or 'included in'.

Among the first to arrive was the ambassador.
He has a number of criminals among his friends.

404 big, large and great

1 concrete nouns: usually big or large

With concrete nouns – the names of things you can see, touch, etc – we mostly use big and large. Big is most common in an informal style.

Get your big feet off my flowers.
She is a small woman, but she has very large hands.
It was a large house, situated near the river.

2 great with concrete nouns

Great is not normally used simply to talk about physical size. In an informal style, it is often used with concrete nouns to mean 'wonderful'.

I've just got a great new bike.
And it can also be used with meanings like 'large and impressive'.

Great clouds of smoke rose above the burning cathedral.
Another meaning is 'famous' or 'important'.
Do you think Napoleon was really a great man?

3 abstract nouns: usually great

Great is common with abstract nouns – the names of things you cannot see, touch, etc.

I have great respect for her ideas. (Not big/large respect)
His behaviour caused great annoyance. (Not big/large annoyance)
You are making a great mistake.
Her work showed a great improvement last year.

Big can be used with countable abstract nouns in an informal style.

You're making a big mistake. Big bargains for weekend shoppers!

Large is used with countable abstract nouns referring to quantities, amounts and proportions.

We're thinking of giving your company a very large order.
There was a large error in the accounts.
She spent **large sums** on entertaining.

He wrote a **large part** of the book while he was in prison.

**Big** and **large** are not generally used with uncountable nouns – but note the fixed expressions **big business**, **big trouble**.

4 **large and wide**

**Large** is a ‘false friend’ for speakers of some languages. It does not mean ‘wide’.

The river is **100 metres wide**. (Not . . . **100 metres large**.)

For **wide** and **broad**, ► 412.

405 **birthday and date of birth**

Somebody’s **date of birth** is the date (day, month and year) when they were born. A **birthday** is the anniversary (day and month) of that date.

Write your name, address and **date of birth** in Section 1 of the form.

It’s my **birthday** on Tuesday. Come and help me celebrate.

406 **(a) bit**

1 use

A **bit** is often used as an adverb with the same meaning as **a little** (► 168).

She’s **a bit** old to play with dolls, isn’t she?

Can you drive **a bit** slower? **Wait a bit**.

Note that when **a bit** and **a little** are used with non-comparative adjectives, the meaning is usually negative or critical.

**a bit tired**  **a bit expensive**  **a little (too) old**

(BUT NOT **a bit kind**, **a little interesting**)

2 **a bit of a**

A **bit of a** can be used before some nouns in an informal style. The meaning is similar to **rather a** (► 565).

**He’s a bit of a fool**, if you ask me.  **I’ve got a bit of a problem**.

3 **not a bit**

The informal expression **not a bit** means ‘not at all’.

**I’m not a bit tired**.  ‘**Do you mind if I put some music on?**’  ‘**Not a bit**.’

For **a bit** with comparative adjectives and adverbs, ► 207.

407 **born and borne**

1 **be born**

To talk about coming into the world at birth, we use the passive expression **to be born**.

**Hundreds of children are born deaf every year**.
To give a place or date of birth, we use the simple past: was/were born.

I was born in 1936. (Not I am born in 1936.)

My parents were born in Scotland.

2 the verb bear

The verb bear (bore, borne) is used to talk about accepting or tolerating difficult experiences. It is most common in the expression can’t bear (= hate, can’t stand).

I can’t bear her voice.

In a very formal style, bear can be used with other meanings, including ‘give birth to’ and ‘carry’.

She bore six children in seven years. (More normal: She had six children . . .)

The king’s body was borne away to the cathedral.

408 borrow and lend

Borrowing is taking (for a time).

Can I borrow your bicycle? (Not Can I lend your bicycle?)

You borrow something from somebody.

I borrowed a pound from my brother. (Not I borrowed my brother a pound.)

Lending (AmE also loaning) is giving (for a time). You lend something to somebody, or lend somebody something.

I lent my coat to Josh, and I never saw it again.

Lend me your comb for a minute, will you? (Not Borrow me your . . .)

For lend in passive structures, ► 61.

409 bring and take

1 speaker’s/hearer’s position

We mostly use bring for movements to the place where the speaker or hearer is, and take for movements to other places. Compare:

- This is a nice restaurant. Thanks for bringing me here.
  (Not . . . thanks for taking me here.)
  Let’s have another drink, and then I’ll take you home.
  (Not . . . and then I’ll bring you home.)

- (On the phone) Can we come over on Sunday? We’ll bring a picnic.
  Let’s go and see Aunt May on Sunday. We can take a picnic.

2 speaker’s/hearer’s past or future position

We can also use bring for a movement to a place where the speaker or hearer already was or will be. Compare:

- ‘Where’s that report?’ ‘I brought it to you when you were in Mr Allen’s office.
  Don’t you remember?’
  I took the papers to Jack’s office.

- I’ll arrive at the hotel at six o’clock. Can you bring the car at six-thirty?
  Can you take the car to the garage tomorrow? I won’t have time.
  (Not Can you bring the car to the garage tomorrow? . . .)
3 joining a movement

*Bring (with)* can be used to talk about joining a movement of the speaker's/hearer's, even if *take* is used for the movement itself.

*I'm taking the kids to the circus tonight. Would you like to come with us and bring Susie?*

4 somebody else's position

Sometimes when we are talking about somebody else (not the speaker or hearer), that person can become the centre of our attention. In that case, we use *bring* for movements to the place where he/she is (or was or will be). This often happens in stories.

*He heard nothing for months. Then one day his brother brought him a letter.*

5 American English

Americans often use *bring* where British English has *take*.

*Let's go and see Aunt May on Sunday. We can bring a picnic.*

The difference between *come* and *go* is similar. ► 424
For other uses of *take*, ► 602.

410 *bring up* and *educate*

*Bring up* and the noun *upbringing* are mostly used for the moral and social training that children receive at home. *Educate* and *education* are used for the intellectual and other training that people get at school and university.

*Lucy was brought up by her aunt and educated at the local school.*

*Their kids are very badly brought up — always screaming and fighting.*

*Which is better: a good upbringing and a bad education, or the opposite?*

411 Britain, the United Kingdom, the British Isles and England

*(Great) Britain* is normally used to mean the island which includes England, Scotland and Wales; *British* is used for the people of these three countries. Great Britain and Northern Ireland together are called *the United Kingdom*; some people also use *Britain* in this wider sense.

*The British Isles* is a geographical, not a political, term. It is the name for England, Scotland, Wales, the whole of Ireland (which includes both Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland, also called 'Eire'), and the smaller islands round about.

Note that *England* is only one part of Britain. Scotland and Wales are not in England, and Scottish and Welsh people do not like to be called 'English'. An informal word for a British person is *Brit. Briton* is used mainly in news reports and newspaper headlines (e.g. *THREE BRITONS DIE IN AIR CRASH*), and to refer to the ancient inhabitants of Britain.
**412 broad and wide**

1 physical distance

To talk about the physical distance from one side of something to the other, we more often use wide.

*The old city has very wide streets.* *The car’s too wide for the garage.*

*Broad* can also be used in this physical sense, especially in more formal descriptions.

*Across the broad valley, the mountains rose blue and mysterious.*

She wore a simple green dress with a *broad* black belt.

Note also: *broad shouldres; a broad back; wide eyes; a wide mouth.*

*Wide* is used in expressions of measurement; note the word order.

*The river is about half a mile wide.* *(not . . . wide half a mile.)*

2 abstract meanings

Both words can express more abstract meanings. Common expressions:

*broad agreement* (= agreement on most important points)

*broad-minded* (= tolerant)  *broad daylight* (= full, bright daylight)

*a wide variety/range* (of opinions, etc)

For other common expressions with *broad* and *wide*, see a good dictionary.

**but, although, though and however** ▶ 371

**413 but meaning ‘except’**

1 use

We use *but* to mean ‘except’ after all, none, every, any, no (and everything, everybody, nothing, nobody, anywhere, etc).

*He eats nothing but hamburgers.* *Everybody’s here but George.*

*I’ve finished all the jobs but one.*

Note the expressions *next but one, last but two*, etc (mainly BrE).

*Jackie lives next door but one.* (= two houses from me)

*I was last but two in the race yesterday.*

*But for* expresses the idea ‘if something had not existed/happened’.

*I would have been in real trouble but for your help.*

*But for the storm, I would have been home before eight.*

Note also the structure *who/what should . . . but* (used to talk about surprising appearances, meetings, etc).

*I walked out of the station, and who should I see but old Holly?*

*I looked under the bed, and what should I find but the keys I lost last week?*

2 pronouns after *but*

After *but*, we usually use object pronouns (*me, him*, etc). Subject pronouns (*I, he*, etc) are possible in a more formal style before a verb.

*Nobody but her would do a thing like that.* *(More formal: Nobody but she . . .)*
3 verbs after but

The verb form after but usually depends on what came before. Infinitives are normally without to.

She's not interested in anything but skiing. (interested in . . . skiing)

That child does nothing but watch TV. (does . . . watch)

Can’t (help) but + infinitive without to is sometimes used with the meaning of ‘can’t help . . . ing’ (► 418). Cannot but . . . is very formal; can’t help but . . . is especially common in American English.

One cannot (help) but admire his courage. (= One has to admire . . .)

I can’t help but wonder what’s going to happen to us all.

Infinitives with to are used after no alternative/choice/option but . . .

The train was cancelled, so I had no alternative but to take a taxi.

4 but meaning ‘only’

In older English, but was used to mean ‘only’, but this is now very unusual.

She is but a child.

Note: but is usually pronounced /bat/, not /bAt/ (► 315).

For except, ► 456. For but as a conjunction and ellipsis after but, ► 276.

414 by: time

1 not later than

By can mean ‘not later than’.

I’ll be home by five o’clock. (= at or before five)

‘Can I borrow your car?’ ‘Yes, but I must have it back by tonight.’ (= tonight or before)

By can also suggest the idea of ‘progress up to a particular time’.

By the end of the meal, everybody was drunk.

Before a verb, we use by the time (that).

I’ll be in bed by the time you get home.

By the time that the guards realised what was happening, the gang were already inside the bank.

For the difference between by and until, ► 613.6.

2 other meanings

By can also be used to talk about time in the rather literary expressions by day and by night (= during the day/night).

He worked by night and slept by day.

Note also day by day, hour by hour etc.

The situation is getting more serious day by day. (= . . . each day.)

And one can pay by the hour, by the day etc.

In this job we’re paid by the hour.

You can rent a bicycle by the day or by the week.
415 *by and near*

*By* means 'just at the side of'; something that is *by* you may be closer than something that is *near* you. Compare:

*We live near the sea.* (perhaps five kilometres away)
*We live by the sea.* (We can see it.)

416 *by* (method, agent) and *with* (tools, etc)

1 the difference

*By* and *with* can both be used to say how somebody does something, but there is an important difference.

We use *by* to talk about an action — what we *do* to get a result. We use *with* to talk about a tool or other object — what we *use* to get a result. Compare:

- *I killed the spider by hitting it.* (Note the -ing form after *by.*)
  *I killed the spider with a shoe.* (not ... by a shoe.)
- 'I got where I am by hard work.'
  'No you didn't. You got there with your wife's money.'

*Without* is the opposite of both *by* and *with* in these cases. Compare:

- I got her to listen *by* shouting.
  *It's difficult to get her to listen without shouting.*
- We'll have to get it out *with* a screwdriver.
  *We can't get it out without a screwdriver.*

*By* is also used to refer to means of transport (*by bus, by train*, etc), ► 142.1.

2 passive clauses

In passive clauses, *by* introduces the agent — the person or thing that is responsible for the action (► 58).

*I was interviewed by three directors.*
*My car was damaged by a falling branch.*

We generally prefer *with* to refer to a tool or instrument used by somebody. Compare:

*He was killed by a heavy stone.* (This could mean 'A stone fell and killed him'.)
*He was killed with a heavy stone.* (This means 'Somebody used a stone to kill him'.)

417 *call*

*Call* (with no object) can mean both 'telephone' and 'visit'. This sometimes causes confusion.

'Alice *called* this morning.' 'You mean she came here or she phoned?'
418 can't help

If you say that you cannot/can’t help doing something (especially in British English), you mean that you can’t stop yourself, even if you don’t want to do it.

She’s a selfish woman, but somehow you can’t help liking her.
Excuse me – I couldn’t help overhearing what you said.
Sorry I broke the cup – I couldn’t help it.

Can’t help can be followed by but + infinitive without to (► 413.3), with the same meaning as can’t help . . .ing. This is common in American English.

I can’t help but wonder what I should do next.

419 care: take care (of), care (about) and care for

1 take care of

Take care of normally means ‘look after’ or ‘take responsibility for’.

Nurses take care of sick people.
It’s no good giving Daniel a rabbit: he’s too young to take care of it.
Ms Savage takes care of marketing, and I’m responsible for production.

Take care (without a preposition) means ‘be careful’. Some people use it as a formula when saying goodbye.

Take care when you’re crossing the road, children.
‘Bye, Ruth.’ ‘Bye, Mike. Take care.’

2 care (about)

Care (about) is used to say whether you feel something is important to you. This is very common in negative sentences. About is used before an object, but is usually left out before a conjunction.

Most people care about other people’s opinions.

I don’t care whether it rains – I’m happy.
‘I’ll never speak to you again.’ ‘I don’t care.’
‘Your mother’s upset with you.’ ‘I couldn’t care less.’ (= I don’t care at all.)

3 care for

Care for can be used to mean ‘look after’.

He spent years caring for his sick mother.

Another meaning is ‘like’ or ‘be fond of’, but this is not very common in modern English.

I don’t much care for strawberries.
city and town

Most people simply use city to talk about large and important towns – examples in the UK are Belfast, Cardiff, Edinburgh, Glasgow, Manchester, Liverpool and London.

City can be used in a more exact way to talk about a town that has been given a special status by the king or queen (in Britain) or by the state (in some other English-speaking countries).

The City is also a name for London's financial centre.

I'm not sure what his job is: something in The City.

The two words can be used more or less interchangeably in American English, with city often preferred in more prestigious contexts. Compare:

The City of Pasadena is governed by a Mayor and a City Council.

(PERSONALITY) The town of Pasadena is governed . . .

Pasadena is a small town on the outskirts of Houston.

(classic) Classic usually refers to a famous traditional style.

He's a classic 1960s hippy who has never changed.

She buys classic cars and restores them.

Classical refers to the culture of ancient Greece and Rome, or to European works of art of the so-called 'classical' period in the 16th century.

She's studying classical languages and literature at Cambridge.

Classical music is used to refer to the work of composers like Bach, Mozart or Szymanowski, in contrast to popular music or jazz.

It's hard to learn classical guitar.

close and shut

1 use

Close /kləʊz/ and shut can often be used with the same meaning.

Open your mouth and close/shut your eyes.

I can't close/shut the window. Can you help me?

The shop closes/shuts at five o'clock.

You can shut, but not close, somebody/something in or out of a place.

I shut the papers in my desk drawer and locked it. (NOT I closed the papers . . .)

She shut him out of the house.

2 past participles

The past participles closed and shut can be used as adjectives.

The office is closed/shut on Saturday afternoon.

Shut is not usually used before a noun.

a closed door (NOT a shut door) closed eyes (NOT shut-eyes)
3 cases where close is preferred

We prefer close for slow movements (like flowers closing at night), and close is more common in a formal style.

As we watched, he closed his eyes for the last time.

Compare:

*Close your mouth, please.* (dentist to patient)
*Shut your mouth!* (a rude way of saying ‘Be quiet!’)

We close roads, railways, etc (channels of communication). And we close (= end) letters, bank accounts, meetings, etc.

423 cloth and clothes

*Cloth* (pronounced /kloth/) is material made from wool, cotton, etc, used for making clothes, curtains, soft furnishings and so on. (In informal English, it is more common to say material or fabric.)

*His suits were made of the most expensive cloth.*

A cloth is a piece of material used for cleaning, covering things, etc.

*Could you pass me a cloth?* I’ve spilt some milk on the floor.

*Clothes* (pronounced /klothes/) are things you wear: skirt, trousers, etc. Clothes has no singular; instead of *a cloth*, we say *something to wear* or *an article a piece of clothing.*

*I must buy some new clothes; I haven’t got anything to wear.*

424 come and go

1 speaker’s/hearer’s position

We use *come* for movements to the place where the speaker or hearer is.

*Maria, would you come here, please?* ‘I’m coming.’ *(NOT ... I’m going.)*

When did you come to live here?
(on the phone): *Can I come and see you?*

We use *go* for movements to other places.

*I want to go and live in Greece.* Let’s go and see Daniel and Chloe.

*In 1577, he went to study in Rome.*

2 speaker’s/hearer’s past or future position

We can use *come* for a movement to a place where the speaker or hearer already was or will be at the time of the movement. Compare:

- What time did I come to see you in the office yesterday?
  *I went to Jack’s office yesterday, but he wasn’t in.*
- Will you come and visit me in hospital when I have my operation?
  He’s going into hospital next week.
- Sarah can’t come to your birthday party.
  She’s going to see her mother.
3 joining a movement

*Come (with)* can be used to talk about joining a movement of the speaker’s/hearer’s, even if *go* is used for the movement itself.

> *We’re going to a concert tonight. Would you like to come with us?*

4 somebody else’s position

Sometimes when we are talking about somebody else (not the speaker or hearer), that person can become the centre of our attention. In that case, we use *come* for movements to the place where he/she is (or was or will be). This often happens in stories.

> *He waited till four o’clock, but she didn’t come.*

5 come to; come from

*Come to* can mean *arrive at.*

> *Go straight on till you come to a crossroads.*

*Come from* is used (in the present) to say where people’s homes are or were.

> *She comes from Scotland, but her mother’s Welsh.*

*Originally I come from Hungary, but I’ve lived here for twenty years.*

(Not *Originally I came from Hungary...*)

The difference between *bring* and *take* is similar. ➤ 409 For *come/go and...*, ➤ 99.

For *come/go...ing*, ➤ 476. For *been = come/gone*, ➤ 395.

425 comic and comical

*Comic* is the normal adjective for artistic comedy.

- comic verse  comic opera  Shakespeare’s comic technique

*Comical* is a rather old-fashioned word meaning ‘funny’.

- a comical expression

426 complement and compliment (noun and verb)

A *complement* adds to the quality of something, or goes well with it.

The verb *complement* has a similar meaning.

> *Dinner at Antonio’s – the perfect complement to your evening at the opera.*

> *They have very different personalities, but they complement each other.*

A *compliment* is an expression of praise or admiration. The verb *compliment* has a similar meaning.

> *My new hairstyle is getting a lot of compliments.*

> *I must compliment you on your exam results.*

Both nouns are pronounced /ˈkɒmplɪment/. Both verbs are pronounced /ˈkɒmplɪment/.

For the grammatical meaning of *complement*, see Language Terminology.
427 continual(ly) and continuous(ly)

*Continual(ly) and continuous(ly) are both commonly used for uninterrupted actions, processes, etc.*

*There has been continual/continuous fighting on the border for the last 48 hours.*

*I've been working almost continually/continuously since yesterday evening.*

*Continual(ly) is preferred for things that happen repeatedly, often annoyingly.*

*I can't work with these continual interruptions.*

*She's continually taking days off.*

---

428 contrary

1 *on the contrary and on the other hand*

*On the contrary* is used to contradict what has been said or suggested is not true. If we want to give the other side of a question, we use *on the other hand*, not *on the contrary*. Compare:

- ‘I suppose the job was boring?’ *On the contrary, it was really exciting.*
  
  *The job was boring, but on the other hand it was well paid.*

- *He did not make things easy for his parents.* *On the contrary, he did everything he could to annoy and worry them.*

We can emphasise a contrast with *in contrast*.

*Daytime temperatures in the desert are very high.* *In contrast, the nights can be bitterly cold.*

2 *contrary and opposite*

We use *opposite* (► 548), not *contrary*, to talk about contrasting words.

*‘Short’ is the opposite of ‘tall’, and also of ‘long’.*

---

429 control

*Control* is a ‘false friend’ for people who speak some languages. It generally means manage, direct, not check or inspect. Compare:

- *The crowd was too big for the police to control.* (*= . . . to keep in order.*)

- *The police were checking everybody's papers.* (*not . . . controlling everybody's papers.*)

- *I found the car difficult to control at high speeds.*

*I took the car to the garage and asked them to have a look at the steering.*

*However, the noun control is used with the meaning of ‘inspection point’ in expressions like passport/customs control.*
430 country

1 countable use

*Country* (countable) = 'nation', 'land'.

Scotland is a cold country. Mexico is the country I know best.

How many countries are there in Europe?

2 uncountable use

*Country* (uncountable) = 'open land without many buildings'.

I like wild country best. (Not I like a wild country best.)

The expression the country (the opposite of the town) is very common.

We live in the country just outside Manchester.

Would you rather live in the town or the country?

For information about countable and uncountable nouns, ► 119–120.

date of birth and birthday ► 405

431 dare

1 uncommon

In modern English, *dare* is not a very common verb. In an informal style, people generally use other expressions.

He's not afraid to say what he thinks. (More natural than He dares to say what he thinks.)

2 negative use; daren't

*Dare* is, however, quite often used in negative sentences. It can be followed by an infinitive with or without *to*.

She doesn't dare (to) go out at night.

The old lady didn't dare (to) open the door.

A special negative form daren't (+ infinitive without *to*) exists in British English.

I daren't look.

The third person singular is also daren't, without -s.

She daren't tell him what she thinks.

3 special expressions

*Don’t you dare!* is sometimes used to discourage people from doing unwanted things.

'Mummy, can I draw a picture on the wall?' 'Don’t you dare!'

*How dare you?* is sometimes used as an indignant exclamation.

*How dare you?* Take your hands off me at once!
And *I dare say* (sometimes written *I daresay*) is a rather old-fashioned expression meaning ‘I think probably’, ‘I suppose’.

*I dare say* it’ll rain soon.   *I daresay* you’re ready for a drink.

Children use the expression *I dare you* + infinitive to challenge each other to do frightening things.

*I dare you* to run across the road with your eyes shut.

### 432 dead, died and death

**Dead** is an adjective.

*a dead man*   Mrs McGinty is dead.

That idea has been dead for years.

**Died** is the past tense and past participle of the verb *die*.

*Shakespeare died in 1616.* (NOT Shakespeare dead . . .)

*She died in a car crash.* (NOT She is dead in . . .)

So far 50 people have died in the fighting.

Note the spelling of the present participle *dying* (► 348).

**Death** is a noun meaning ‘the end of life’.

*After his death* his wife went to live in Canada.

For expressions like *the dead* (= dead people), ► 188.

### 433 different

1 **modifiers: any different, etc**

*Different* is a little like a comparative: unlike most adjectives, it can be modified by *any* and *no*, *(a) little* and *not much*.

*I hadn’t seen her for years, but she wasn’t any different.*

‘How’s the patient, doctor?’ *No different.*

*His ideas are little different from those of his friends.*

*The new school isn’t much different from the old one.*

*Quite different* means ‘completely different’ (► 564.3).

*I thought you’d be like your sister, but you’re quite different.*

Unlike comparatives, *different* can also be modified by *very*.

*She’s very different from her sister.*

2 **prepositions: different from/to**

*From* is generally used after *different*; many British people also use *to*.

In American English, *than* is common.

*American football is very different from/to soccer.* (AmE . . . different from/ than soccer.)

Before a clause, *different than* is also possible in British English.

*The job’s different than I expected.* (Or . . . different from/to what I expected.)

For the difference between *different* and *other*, ► 550.2.
disinterested

A disinterested person has no reason to support one side or another in a disagreement or competition.

The referee was not exactly disinterested: his brother-in-law was playing for one of the teams.

Disinterested is also often used to mean ‘uninterested’.

divorce ➤ 523

do: general-purpose verb; do and make

The general-purpose verb do has several uses, and can sometimes be confused with make.

Learn more about what we do and what we make at megamega.com.

(advertisement)

1 do for indefinite activities

We use do when we do not say exactly what activity we are talking about – for example with words like thing, something, nothing, anything, what.

Then he did a very strange thing. (NOT Then he made a very strange thing.)

Do something! I like doing nothing. (NOT Then he made a very strange thing.)

What shall we do?

2 do for work

We use do when we talk about work and jobs.

I'm not going to do any work today. Could you do the shopping for me?

It's time to do the accounts. I wouldn't like to do your job.

I did (= studied) French and German at school.

Has Ben done his homework?

Could you do the ironing first, and then do the windows if you've got time?

3 do . . ing

We use do in the informal structure do . . ing to talk about activities that take a certain time, or are repeated (for example jobs and hobbies). There is usually a determiner (e.g. the, my, some, much) before the -ing form.

During the summer I'm going to do some walking and a lot of reading.

I hate doing the ironing.

Note that the -ing form in this structure is noun-like, and cannot have an object. (NOT I'm going to do some watching TV.)

But do can be used with a compound noun that includes verb + object.

I want to do some bird-watching this weekend.

It's time I did some letter-writing.
4 make for constructing, creating, etc

We often use make to talk about constructing, building, creating, etc.

I've just made a cake. Let's make a plan.
My father and I once made a boat.

5 do instead of make

We sometimes use do in place of make, to sound casual about a creative activity – as if we are not claiming to produce any very special results.

'What are we going to eat?' 'Well, I could do an omelette.'

6 common fixed expressions

do good, harm, business, one's best, somebody a favour, sport, some exercise, one's hair, one's teeth, one's duty, 50mph
make a journey, an offer, arrangements, a suggestion, a decision, an attempt, an effort, an excuse, an exception, a mistake, a noise, a phone call, money, a profit, a fortune, love, peace, war, a bed, progress

Note that we say make a bed, but we often talk about doing the bed(s) as part of the housework. Compare:

He's old enough to make his own bed now.
I'll start on the vegetables as soon as I've done the beds.

We use take, not make, in take a photo, and have, not make, in have an (interesting) experience.

For information about causative structures with make, ► 107.

436 doubt

Clauses after the verb doubt can be introduced by whether, if or that.

Economists doubt whether interest rates will fall in the near future.
I doubt if she'll come this evening.
The directors doubt that new machinery is really necessary.

In an informal style, people sometimes use no conjunction.

I doubt we'll have enough money for a new car.

After negative forms of doubt, we normally use that or no conjunction.

I don't doubt (that) there will be more problems.

For no doubt meaning 'probably', ► 534.

down ► 614

437 dress

1 noun

The countable noun dress means an article of women's clothing (it goes from the shoulders to below the hips).

This is the first time I've seen you wearing a dress.
There is also an uncountable noun *dress* (not used with the article *a/an*). It means ‘clothing’, ‘clothes’. It is not very common in modern English, and is used mostly to talk about special kinds of clothing (for example *national dress, evening dress, battledress*).

*He looks good in evening dress.* (*NOT . . . in an evening dress.*)

2 verb: putting clothes on

The verb *dress* can be used to talk about putting clothes on oneself or somebody else. *Undress* is used for taking clothes off.

*It only takes me five minutes to dress in the morning.*
*Could you dress the children for me?*
*I’m going to undress in front of the fire.*

In informal English, we use *get dressed/undressed* to talk about dressing or undressing oneself.

*Get dressed and come downstairs at once!*
*Put on and take off are generally used when clothes are mentioned.*

*I put on a sweater, but it was so warm that I had to take it off again.*
*Can you take Jack’s boots off for him?*

3 verb: wearing clothes

To say what somebody is/was wearing on a particular occasion, we can use the form *be dressed in* (note the preposition).

*I didn’t recognise him because he was dressed in a dark suit.*

*(NOT . . . dressed with . . . OR . . . dressing in . . . )*
*She was dressed in orange pyjamas.*

*Be wearing and have on* (especially AmE) are also very common.

*She was wearing orange pyjamas.*
*She had on orange pajamas.* (AmE)

The active form *dress (in)* can be used to give the idea of repetition or habit.

*She always dresses in green.*
*He dresses well.*

Note also the expression *well dressed.*

438 *drown*

Both active and passive forms of *drown* are common when we talk about accidental drowning.

*He (was) drowned while trying to swim across a river.*

439 *due to and owing to*

*Due to and owing to* are similar to ‘because of’. *Due to* is more common than *owing to*.

Phrases beginning *due/owing to* are often separated from the rest of their sentence by a comma.

*Due/Owing to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.*
*We have had to postpone the meeting due/owing to the strike.*
Some people believe it is incorrect to use *due to* at the beginning of a clause in this way, but the structure is common in educated usage. *Due to* can also follow the verb *be*. *Owing to* is not usually used like this.

His success was due to his mother. (not...was owing to his mother.)

### 440 during and for

*During* is used to say *when* something happens; *for* is used to say *how long* it lasts. Compare:

- My father was in Germany during the summer.
- My father was in Germany *for* six weeks. (not...during six weeks.)
- It rained during the night for two or three hours.
- I'll come and see you for a few minutes during the afternoon.

For *for, since, in and from* → 469.

### 441 during and in

We use both *during* and *in* to say that something happens inside a particular period of time.

*We'll be away during/in August.*

*Woke up during/in the night.*

We use *during* to stress that we are talking about the whole of the period.

*The shop's closed during all of August.* (not...in all of August.)

And we use *during* when we are talking about an event, activity or experience (not simply a period of time).

*He had some strange experiences during his military service.*

*(not...in his military service.)*

*I'll try to phone you during the meeting.* (not...in the meeting.)

*I met them during my stay in China.*

### early, soon and quickly → 591

### 442 east and eastern, north and northern, etc

#### 1 adjectives: the difference

We often prefer *eastern, northern,* etc when we are talking about vague, indefinite or larger areas, and *east, north,* etc for more clearly defined places (e.g. the names of countries or states). Compare:

- the northern part of the country
  - the north side of the house
- the southern counties of Britain
  - the south coast
- southern Africa (an area)
  - South Africa (a country)
- the northern United States
  - North Carolina
However, place names do not always follow this rule. Note the following:  
Northern Ireland North/East/West Africa North/South America East/South, etc Asia but Western/Eastern, etc Europe South Australia but Western Australia; the Northern Territory the North/South Atlantic/Pacific the Northern/Southern hemisphere

2 ‘belonging to’

We use eastern, northern, etc to mean ‘belonging to’ or ‘typical of’.

a southern accent a group of northern poets

3 capital letters

Capital letters are used at the beginning of East, Eastern, North, Northern, etc when these come in official or well-established place names.

North Carolina Western Australia

And capitals are used in the West, the North, etc when these are names of well-defined regions.

Unemployment is high in the North. My sister lives in the South-west.

In other cases, adjectives, nouns and adverbs generally begin with small letters.

We spent the winter in southern California.

I live in north London. There’s a strong north wind.

The sun rises in the east. By sunrise we were driving south.

4 prepositions

Note the difference between in the east, etc of . . . and to the east, etc of . . .

I live in the east of Scotland.

Denmark is about 500km to the east of Scotland.

443 economic and economical

Economic refers to the science of economics, or to the economy of a country.

economic theory economic problems

Economical means ‘not wasting money, time or effort’.

an economical little car an economical housekeeper

‘I was not lying,’ said the Minister. ‘I was just being economical with the truth.’

educate and bring up ➤ 410

444 efficient and effective

If somebody/something is efficient, he/she/it works in a well-organised way without wasting time or energy.

He’s not very efficient: he works very slowly, and he keeps forgetting things.

Our bus service is even less efficient than our train service.

If something is effective, it has the right effect: it solves a problem or gets a result.

My headache’s much better. Those tablets really are effective.

I think a wide black belt would look very effective with that dress.
445 elder and eldest

Elder and eldest can be used instead of older and oldest to talk about the order of birth of the members of a family. They are only used attributively (before nouns). Compare:
- My elder/older brother has just got married.
  He’s three years older than me. (NOT ... elder than me.)
- His eldest/oldest daughter is a medical student.
  She’s the oldest student in her year.

Elder/elder brother/sister are used when a person has only one brother/sister who is older; eldest/oldest is used when there are more. An elder son/daughter is the older of two; an eldest son/daughter is the oldest of two or more.

446 electric and electrical

Electric is used with the names of particular machines that work by electricity.

an electric motor electric blankets

Note also: an electric shock; an electric atmosphere (full of excitement).

Electrical is used before more general words.

electrical appliances electrical equipment

electrical component electrical engineering

447 else

1 use

We use else to mean ‘other’ after:

somebody, someone, something, somewhere; anybody, everybody, nobody, etc;
question words; whatever, whenever, etc; little, much.

Would you like anything else?

I’m sorry. I mistook you for somebody else.

Where else did you go besides Madrid?

Whatever else he may be, he’s not a mathematician.

We know when Shakespeare was born and when he died, but we don’t know much else about his life.

In a formal style, else is sometimes used after all.

When all else fails, read the instructions.

2 word order

Note that else comes immediately after the word it modifies.

What else would you like? (not What would you like else?)

3 else’s

Else has a possessive else’s.

You’re wearing somebody else’s coat.
4 singular only
There is no plural structure with else.
I didn’t see any other people. (not...any else people.)

5 or else
Or else means ‘otherwise’, ‘if not’.
Let’s go, or else we’ll miss the train.
Or else is sometimes used with no continuation, as a threat.
You’d better stop hitting my little brother, or else!

6 elsewhere
This is a formal word for somewhere else.
If you are not satisfied with my hospitality, go elsewhere.

448 end and finish: verbs

1 both used
These verbs have similar meanings, and are often both possible.
What time does the concert end/finish?
Term ends/finishes on June 23.

2 completing an activity
When we talk about completing something that we are doing, we usually prefer finish.
She’s always starting something new, but she never finishes anything.
You’ll never finish that hamburger – it’s too big for you.
‘Are you still reading the paper?’ ‘No, I’ve finished.’

3 changes
End is more common when there is an important change.
I decided it was time to end our affair.
It’s time to end the uncertainty – the Prime Minister must speak out.
The Second World War ended in 1945.
We also prefer end to talk about a special way of bringing something to a close or ‘shaping’ the end of something.
How do you end a letter to somebody you don’t know?
The ceremony ended with a speech from the President.
End is often used to talk about physical shapes.
The road ended in a building site. (not The road finished...)
Nouns that end in -s have plurals in -es.

4 -ing forms
Finish, but not end, can be followed by an -ing form (► 100).
I finished teaching at 3.00. (not I ended teaching...)

England, Britain, the United Kingdom and the British Isles ► 411

vocabulary • 448 end and finish: verbs
**enjoy**

Enjoy normally has an object.

'**Did you enjoy the party?**' 'Yes, I enjoyed it very much.'

(Note: I enjoyed very much.)

To talk about having a good time, we can use enjoy myself/yourself, etc.

I really enjoyed myself when I went to Rome.

'We're going to Paris for the weekend.' 'Enjoy yourselves!'

'Enjoy!' with no object is possible in informal English. It is often used by waiters in restaurants.

*One chicken curry and one fillet of sole. Enjoy!*

*Enjoy* can be followed by -ing.

*I don't enjoy looking after small children.* (Not ... enjoy to look ...)

**enough**

1 **adjective/adverb + enough**

*Enough* usually follows adjectives and adverbs.

*Is it warm enough for you?* (Not ... enough warm ...)

*You're not driving fast enough.*

2 **enough + noun**

*Enough* can be used before a noun as a determiner (► 171).

*Have you got enough milk? There aren’t enough glasses.*

*Enough* is occasionally used after a noun, but this is rare in modern English except in a few expressions.

*If only we had time enough ... I was fool enough to believe him.*

Before another determiner (article, possessive, etc) or a pronoun, we use enough of. Compare:

*I don’t know enough Spanish to read this.* (Not ... enough of Spanish ...)

*I don’t understand enough of the words in the notice.*

3 **position with adjective + noun**

When enough modifies an adjective and noun together, it comes before the adjective. Compare:

*We haven’t got enough big nails.*

(= We need more big nails – enough modifies big nails.)

*We haven’t got big enough nails.*

(= We need bigger nails – enough modifies big.)

4 **enough + infinitive; structure with for**

We can use an infinitive structure after enough.

*She’s old enough to do what she wants.*

*I haven’t got enough money to buy a car.*

Infinitives can be introduced by *for + noun/pronoun.*

*It’s late enough for the staff to stop work.*

*There was just enough light for us to see what we were doing.*
5 It's small enough to put in your pocket, etc

The subject of the sentence can be the object of the following infinitive.  
(For more about this structure, ► 101.4.) Object pronouns are not normally used after the infinitive in this case.

The radio’s small enough to put in your pocket.

(Not . . . to put it in your pocket.)

Those tomatoes aren’t ripe enough to eat. (Not . . . to eat them.)

However, object pronouns are possible in structures with for.

The radio was small enough for me to put (it) in my pocket.

Those tomatoes aren’t ripe enough for the children to eat (them).

For other examples of for + object + infinitive, ► 113.

For similar structures with too and too much/many, ► 610–611.

6 the = enough; leaving out enough

The article the can be used to mean ‘enough’.

I hardly had the strength to take my clothes off.

I didn’t quite have the money to pay for a meal.

Time and room are often used to mean ‘enough time’ and ‘enough room’.

Do you have time to look at this draft?

There isn’t room for everybody to sit down.

451 especial(ly) and special(ly)

1 especially and specially

Especially and specially can often both be used with the same meaning.

It was not (e)specially cold.

2 especially meaning ‘above all’

Especially is often used to mean ‘above all’.

We play a lot of tennis, especially on Sundays.

The children are very noisy, especially when we have visitors.

I like all kinds of fruit, especially apples.

Especially follows a subject.

All my family like music. My father, especially, goes to as many concerts as he can. (Not . . . Especially my father goes . . .)

3 especially before prepositions and conjunctions

We prefer especially before prepositions and conjunctions.

We go skiing quite a lot, especially in February.

I drink a lot of coffee, especially when I’m working.

4 specially with past participles

Specially is used with a past participle to mean ‘for a particular purpose’.

These shoes were specially made for me.

The song was specially written for his birthday.
5 especial and special

The adjective especial is rare. We normally use special.

He took special trouble over his work.

452 even

1 meaning

Even suggests the idea of a surprising extreme: ‘more than we expect’;
not even suggests ‘less than we expect’.

She’s rude to everybody. She’s even rude to the police.

He can’t even write his own name.

2 position

Even most often goes with the verb, in mid-position (► 200).

She has broken all her toys. She has even broken her bike.

(Not Even she has broken . . .)

He speaks lots of languages. He even speaks Esperanto.

They’re open every day. They’re even open on Christmas Day.

Even goes at the beginning of a clause when it refers just to the subject;
and it can go just before other words and expressions that we want
to emphasise.

Anybody can do this. Even a child can do it.

I work every day, even on Sundays.

I haven’t seen my family for months – not even my parents.

3 even and also

Also (► 369) is not used to talk about surprising extremes.

Everybody helped with the packing – even the dog. (Not . . . also the dog.)

4 even if and even though

Even is not used alone as a conjunction, but we can use even before
if and though.

Even if I become a millionaire, I will always be a socialist.

(Not . . . Even I become . . .)

Even though I didn’t know anybody at the party, I had a nice time.

(Not Even although . . .)

I wouldn’t marry you even if you were the last man in the world.

We sometimes use if to mean even if.

I’ll do it if it kills me. (= . . . even if it kills me.)

5 even so; even now

Even so means ‘however’, ‘in spite of that’.

He seems nice. Even so, I don’t really trust him. (Not . . . Even though, I don’t really trust him.)

Even now can mean ‘in spite of everything that has happened’.

He left her ten years ago, but even now she still loves him.
eventually mean 'final(ly)', 'in the end', 'after all that'. We use
them to say that something happens after a long time or a lot of effort.

The chess game lasted for three days. Androv was the eventual winner.
The car didn't want to start, but eventually I got it going.

Eventual and eventually are 'false friends' for people who speak some languages.
They do not mean the same as, for instance, French éventuel/éventuellement,
Dutch eventueel or Polish eventualny/ewentualnie, and are not used to express
the idea of possibility. For this meaning we use possible, perhaps, if,
may, might, etc.

In our new house I'd like to have a spare bedroom for possible visitors.
I'm not sure what I'll do next year. I could look for a job here, or I might
go to America. (NOT Eventually I'll go to America . . .)

454 ever

1 ever meaning 'at any time'

Ever is a 'non-affirmative word' (► 222). It is used especially in questions
to mean 'at any time'. Compare:

Do you ever go to London by train? (= at any time)
I always go to London by train. (= every time)
I sometimes go to Birmingham by train.
I never go to Cambridge by train. (= at no time)

Ever is possible in negative clauses, but never is more usual than not ever.
I don't ever want to see you again. (or I never want . . .)
We also use ever after if, and with words that express a negative idea
(like nobody, hardly or stop).

Come and see us if you are ever in Manchester.
Nobody ever visits them. I hardly ever see my sister.
I'm going to stop her ever doing that again.

2 with comparatives, superlatives, as and only

Ever is used in affirmative clauses in comparisons and with only.
You're looking lovelier than ever.
What is the best book you've ever read?
It's the largest picture ever painted. He's as charming as ever.
She's the only woman ever to have climbed this mountain in winter.

3 ever + perfect

Ever is often used with perfect tenses (► 47, 53) to mean 'at any time
up to now/then'.

Have you ever been to Greece?
Had you ever thought of getting married before you met Georgia?
4 ever and before; ever before

Ever and before can both be used to mean ‘at any time in the past’, but there is a difference. Before (or ever before) refers to a present event, and asks whether it has happened at another time.

Have you (ever) been to Scotland before? (The hearer is probably in Scotland.)
Ever (without before) does not refer to a present event.

Have you ever been to Africa? (The hearer is not in Africa.)

5 ever meaning ‘always’

Ever is not normally used to mean ‘always’.

I shall always remember you. (not I shall ever remember you.)
But ever is sometimes used to mean ‘always’ in compound expressions with adjectives and participles.

his ever-open mouth an ever-increasing debt
evergreen trees his ever-loving wife

Ever also means ‘always’ in forever (or for ever) and ever since, and in a few other expressions like ever after and Yours ever (used at the end of letters).

I shall love you forever. I’ve admired him ever since I met him.

For who ever, what ever, etc, ► 627. For whoever, whatever, etc, ► 252.
For forever with progressive forms, ► 5.

455 ever so, ever such

These expressions are often used in informal British English to mean ‘very’.

She’s ever so nice. It’s ever such a good film.

For the difference between so and such, ► 597.

456 except and except for

1 except for before nouns

We generally use except for before noun phrases.

I’ve cleaned the house except for the bathroom.
The garden was empty except for one small bird.

2 except (for) after all, any, etc

After generalising words like all, any, every, no, everything, anybody, nowhere, nobody, whole, we often leave out for.

I’ve cleaned all the rooms except (for) the bathroom.
He ate everything on his plate except (for) the beans.
Nobody came except (for) Jack and Emily.

But this does not happen before all, any, nobody, etc.
Except for the bathroom, all the rooms are clean. (not Except the bathroom, all the rooms are clean.)
except before prepositions and conjunctions

We use except, not except for, before prepositions and conjunctions.

It's the same everywhere except in Scotland. (NOT ... except for in Scotland.)

He's good-looking except when he smiles.
This room is no use except as a storeroom.
The trip was nice except that there wasn't enough snow.

except (for) + pronoun

After except (for) we use object pronouns, not subject pronouns.

Everybody understood except (for) me. (NOT ... except for me.)
We're all ready except (for) her.

except + verb: He does nothing except eat.

A common structure is do ... except + infinitive without to.

He does nothing except eat all day.
I'll do everything for you except cook.

In other cases an -ing form is usually necessary.

She's not interested in anything except skiing.
You needn't worry about anything except having a great time.

except and without

Except (for) is only used to talk about exceptions to generalisations.

In other cases, without or but for may be better. Compare:

Nobody helped me except you.
Without / But for your help, I would have failed. (NOT Except for your help, I would have failed.)

For the use of but to mean 'except', ► 413.

expect, hope, wait and look forward

1 expect and hope: difference of meaning

Expecting is a matter of thinking rather than feeling. If I expect something to happen, I have a good reason to think it will in fact happen. Hoping is more emotional. If I hope for something to happen, I would like it to happen, but I do not know whether it will. Compare:

- I'm expecting Jack to phone at three o'clock.
- I hope he's got some good news.
- Lucy's expecting a baby. (= She's pregnant.)
- She's hoping it will be a girl.

One can expect good or bad things, but one only hopes for things that one wants.

I expect it will rain at the weekend. But I hope it won't.

2 expect and wait: difference of meaning

One waits when somebody or something is late, when one is early for something, or when one wants time to pass so that something will happen. Waiting is often physical – the word suggests, for example, standing or sitting somewhere until something happens.
Compare:

- I’m expecting a phone call from Jack at three o’clock. I hope he calls on time.
  I hate waiting for people to phone. (Not I hate expecting people to phone.)
- He expects to get a bike for his birthday. (= He thinks he’ll get one.)
  It’s hard to wait for things when you’re five years old.
- I expected her at ten, but she didn’t turn up.
  I waited for her till eleven, and then went home.
Can’t wait often expresses impatience.
I can’t wait for the weekend!
When we say that we expect a person, this usually means that he/she is coming to our home, office, etc. Compare:

Come and see me this afternoon. I’ll expect you at 4.00.
Let’s meet at the theatre. I’ll be there at 6.00. (Not I’ll expect you at 6.00.)

3 look forward: meaning

Look forward means ‘think about (something in the future) with pleasure’.
One looks forward to something that seems certain to happen, and that one is glad about.

He’s looking forward to his birthday.
‘See you on Sunday.’ ‘I look forward to it.’

4 all four expressions compared

Compare:

I expect to hear from her. (= I’m pretty sure I’ll get an email from her.)
I hope to hear from her. (= I’m not sure whether she’ll write, but I would like her to.)
I’m waiting to hear from her. (= I need her email to come; perhaps it’s late.)
I look forward to hearing from her. (= I feel pleasure at the thought that I will hear from her.)

5 prepositions

Before an object, we use expect (with no preposition), hope for, wait for, and look forward to.

We’re expecting rain soon.
We’re hoping for a lot of rain — the garden’s very dry.
We’ve been waiting for rain for weeks.
I’m looking forward to the autumn.
I expect Jack to arrive about ten o’clock. (Not I expect for him to arrive.)
I’m hoping for him to come up with some new ideas.
I’m still waiting for him to pay me back that money.

After look forward to, we use the -ing form of a verb (► 104.2).
I look forward to talking to him. (Not . . . to talk to him.)
I look forward to hearing from you. (in an email / a letter)

6 simple and progressive forms

Before an infinitive, simple and progressive forms of hope, expect and look forward to can often be used with little difference of meaning.

We hope / We’re hoping to get to Scotland next weekend.
We expect / We’re expecting to hear from Lucy today.
I look forward / I’m looking forward to the day when the children leave home.
7 that-clauses

Expect and hope can be used before a that-clause.

I expect (that) she’ll be here soon. I hope (that) I’ll recognise her.

Progressive forms of expect are not normally used before that-clauses.

I expect that we’ll have a lot to talk about. (not I’m expecting that we’ll . . .)

Hope (that) is often followed by a present tense with a future meaning (► 490).

I hope (that) she doesn’t miss the train.

8 expect: other points

Expect is often used with object + infinitive to talk about people’s duties.

We expect you to work on the first Saturday of every month.

Passive versions of the structure are also common.

Staff are expected to start work punctually at 8.30.

I expect (that) can be used to talk about the present or past, with the meaning ‘I suppose’, ‘I have good reason to think’.

I expect you’re all tired after your journey.

Sarah isn’t here. I expect she was too tired to come.

We can say that we expect something of somebody, to express our feelings about how somebody ought to behave.

My parents expected too much of me when I was at school. They were terribly upset when I failed my exams.

For hope and expect in negative clauses, ► 219. For not and so after hope and expect, ► 585.

For and after wait, ► 99. For wish, ► 632.

458 experiment and experience

An experiment is a test which somebody does to see what the result will be, to prove something, or to see how well something works. Experiment is generally used with the verb do. There is also a verb to experiment.

We did an experiment in the chemistry lesson, to see if you could get chlorine gas from salt. (not We did an experience . . .)

I’m experimenting with a new way of organising my work.

An experience is something that you live through; something that happens to you in life. Experience is generally used with the verb have. There is also a verb to experience.

I had a lot of interesting experiences during my year in Africa. (not I made a lot of interesting experiences . . .)

Have you ever experienced the feeling that you were going mad? (not Have you ever experimented the feeling . . .?)

The uncountable noun experience means ‘the knowledge that you get from doing things’.

Sales person wanted – experience unnecessary.
459 explain

After explain, we use to before an indirect object.

*Can you explain to me how to get to your house?*

(Not *Can you explain me...?*)

*I explained my problem to her.* (Not *I explained her my problem.*)

**facing, opposite and in front of**  ➤ 549

460 fairly, quite, rather and pretty: adverbs of degree

These four modifiers differ somewhat in strength, though their exact force depends on the context. This entry gives a brief explanation of their use with gradable descriptive words (➤ 189) in British English. Note also that quite and rather (in the senses discussed here) are more common in British than American English, as is fairly. For more information about quite and rather, ➤ 564-565.

1 fairly

*Fairly* generally modifies adjectives and adverbs. It does not suggest a very high degree: if you say that somebody is fairly nice or fairly clever, for example, he or she will not be very pleased.

‘How was the film?’ *Fairly* good. Not the best one I’ve seen this year.

I speak Russian fairly well – enough for everyday purposes.

2 quite

*Quite* (especially in British English) can suggest a higher degree than fairly.

‘How was the film?’ *Quite* good. You ought to go.

It’s quite a difficult book – I had trouble with it.

He’s lived in St Petersburg, so he speaks Russian quite well.

*Quite* can also modify verbs and nouns.

I quite enjoyed myself at your party. The room was quite a mess.

3 rather

*Rather* is stronger than quite. It can suggest ‘more than is usual’, ‘more than was expected’, ‘more than was wanted’, and similar ideas.

‘How was the film?’ *Rather* good – I was surprised.

Maurice speaks Russian rather well. People often think he is Russian.

I think I’ll put the heating on. It’s rather cold.

I’ve had rather a long day.

*Rather* can modify verbs (especially verbs that refer to thoughts and feelings) and nouns.

I rather think we’re going to lose. She rather likes gardening.

It was rather a disappointment.

For word order rules and other details of the use of rather, ➤ 565.
4 pretty

Pretty (informal) is like rather, but only modifies adjectives and adverbs.

‘How’s things?’ ‘Pretty good. You OK?’ You’re driving pretty fast.
Pretty well means ‘almost’.
I’ve pretty well finished.

461 far and a long way

1 far in questions and negatives

Far is most common in questions and negative clauses.

*How far did you walk?* *The youth hostel is not far from here.*

In affirmative clauses we usually prefer a long way.

*We walked a long way.* (Not *We walked far.*)

*The station is a long way from here.* (More natural than *The station is far from here.*)

2 far in affirmative clauses

However, *far* is normal in affirmative clauses with *too, enough, as* and *so.*

‘She’s gone far enough.’ ‘A bit too far.’

*It’s ready as far as I know.* ‘Any problems?’ ‘OK so far.’

3 far with comparatives, etc

*Far* is also used (in all kinds of clauses) to modify comparatives,
superlatives and *too.*

*She’s far older than her husband.* *This bike is by far the best.*

You’re far too young to get married.

4 before a noun: a far country

*Far* can be used as an adjective before a noun, meaning ‘distant’. This is rather
formal and old-fashioned.

*Long ago, in a far country, there lived a woman who had seven sons.*

*Much, many and long* (for time) are also more common in questions and negative sentences (► 165, 517).

462 farther and further

1 distance

We can use both *farther* and *further* to talk about distance. They mean the same.

*Further* is not generally used in this sense in American English, and is becoming
much less common in British English.

*Edinburgh is farther/further away than York.*

2 ‘additional’

Further (but not *farther*) can mean ‘additional’, ‘extra’, ‘more advanced’.

*For further information, see page 6.* *College of Further Education*
Feel has several different meanings. Progressive forms can be used with some meanings, but not with others. Feel can be a linking verb (► 11), followed by an adjective or noun complement. It can also be an ordinary verb, followed by a direct object.

1 linking verb: I feel fine.
Feel can be used to talk about one’s physical or mental sensations. Adjective or (in British English) noun complements are used.

I feel fine. Do you feel happy?
Andrew was beginning to feel cold.
When Louise realised what she had done, she felt a complete idiot. (BrE)
In this sense feel is not normally used with reflexive pronouns (myself, etc).

He always felt inferior when he was with her. (More natural than He always felt himself inferior . . .)

To talk about feelings that are going on at a particular moment, simple or progressive forms can be used. There is little difference of meaning.

I feel fine. / I’m feeling fine.
How do you feel? / How are you feeling?

2 linking verb: That feels nice!
Feel can also be used to say that something causes sensations. Progressive forms are not used.

That feels nice! The glass felt cold against my lips.

3 linking verb: feel like; feel as if/though
Feel can be followed by like or as if/though.

My legs feel like cotton wool.

Alice felt as if/though she was in a very nice dream. (Alice felt like she was . . . is also possible, ► 378.)

4 feel like meaning ‘want’
Feel like can also mean ‘want’, ‘would like’.

I feel like a drink. Have you got any beer?
In this sense, feel like is often followed by an -ing form.

I felt like laughing, but I didn’t dare.
Compare:

I felt like swimming. (= I wanted to swim.)
I felt like / as if I was swimming. (= It seemed as if I was swimming.)

5 reactions and opinions
Feel is often used to talk about reactions and opinions. Progressive forms are not usually used in this case.

I feel sure you’re right. (Not I’m feeling sure . . .)

He says he feels doubtful about the new plan.
That-clauses are common.

I feel (that) she’s making a mistake.
A structure with object + to be + complement is possible in a formal style, but it is not very often used.

I felt her to be unfriendly. (More normal: I felt that she was unfriendly.)

There is also a structure feel it (+ to be) + adjective/noun.

We felt it necessary to call the police.
I felt it (to be) my duty to call the police.

6 'receive physical sensations'

Feel can be used with a direct object to talk about the physical sensations that come to us through the sense of touch.

I suddenly felt an insect crawling up my leg.

Progressive forms are not used, but we often use can feel to talk about a sensation that is going on at a particular moment.

I can feel something biting me!

7 'touch'

Feel can also be used with a direct object to mean 'touch something to learn about it or experience it'. Progressive forms are possible.

Feel the photocopier. It's very hot.

'What are you doing? 'I'm feeling the shirts to see if they’re dry.'

464 female and feminine; male and masculine

Female and male refer to the sex of people, animals and plants.

A female fox is called a vixen. A male duck is called a drake.

Feminine and masculine are used for qualities and behaviour that are felt to be typical of men or women.

She has a very masculine laugh. It was a very feminine bathroom.

Feminine and masculine are used for grammatical forms in some languages.

The word for 'moon' is feminine in French and masculine in German.

465 finally, at last, in the end and at the end

1 finally

Finally can suggest that one has been waiting a long time for something. In this sense, it often goes in mid-position (with the verb, ► 200).

After trying three times, she finally managed to pass her exam.
Josh has finally found a job.

Finally can also introduce the last element in a series, like lastly (► 284.1).

We must increase productivity. We must reduce unemployment. And finally, we must compete in world markets.

2 at last

At last also suggests – very strongly – the idea of impatience or inconvenience resulting from a long wait or delay.

James has paid me that money at last.
When at last they found him he was almost dead.
At last can be used as an exclamation. (Finally cannot be used in this way.)

At last! Where have you been?

Note that lastly (introducing the last item in a series) is not the same as at last.
Firstly, we need to increase profits. Secondly, . . . Thirdly, . . . And lastly, we
need to cut down administrative expenses. (Not . . . And at last we need to
cut down. . . )

3 in the end

In the end suggests that something happens after changes or uncertainty.

We made eight different plans for the weekend, but in the end we
went to Brighton.

I left in the middle of the film. Did they get married in the end?
The tax man will get you in the end.

Another use of in the end is to mean 'after we have considered everything'.

In the end, you can't get fit without exercise.

In the end, Mother knows best.

4 at the end

At the end simply refers to the position of something. There is no sense of
waiting or delay.

A declarative sentence has a full stop at the end.

I wish I was paid at the beginning of the week and not at the end.

For eventually, 453.

finish and end  448

466 finished

Finished can be used as an adjective meaning 'ready'.

Is the report finished yet?

With personal subjects, to be finished is often used in an informal style with the
same meaning as to have finished.

How soon will you be/have finished, dear?

I went to get the car from the garage, but they weren't/hadn't finished.

first and at first  388
**467 fit and suit**

These words do not mean exactly the same.  
*Fit* refers to size and shape: if your clothes *fit* you, they are neither too big nor too small.  
*These shoes don’t fit me – have you got a larger size?*

*Suit* refers to style, colour, etc.  
*Red and black are colours that suit me very well. (not... colours that fit me very well.)*

*Do you think this style suits me?*

*Suit* can also be used to say whether arrangements are convenient.  
*Tuesday would suit me very well for a meeting.*

**468 for: purpose and cause**

1 **people’s purposes:** I went for an interview.  
*For* can be used to talk about somebody’s purpose in doing something, but only when it is followed by a noun.  
*We stopped at the pub for a drink.*

*I went to the college for an interview with Professor Taylor.*

*For* is not used before a verb in this sense. The infinitive alone is used to express a person’s purpose (► 112).  
*We stopped at the pub to have a drink.*

*(not... for having a drink or for to have a drink)*  
*I went to the college to see Professor Taylor.*

*(not... for seeing Professor Taylor.)*

2 **the purposes of things:** -ing forms and infinitives  
*For* can be used before the -ing form of a verb to express the ‘purpose’ of a thing – what it is used for – especially when the thing is the subject.  
*Is that cake for eating or just for looking at?*

*An altimeter is used for measuring height above sea level.*

When the clause has a person as subject, an infinitive is often used to express the purpose of a thing.  
*We use altimeters to measure height above sea level.*

3 **causes of reactions**  
*For* ...ing can also be used after a description of a positive or negative reaction, to explain the behaviour that caused it.  
*We are grateful to you for helping us out.*

*I’m angry with you for waking me up.*

*They punished the child for lying.*

*He was sent to prison for stealing.*

**for, as, because and since**  ► 377

**for and during**  ► 440
for, since, in and from: time

1 for
We use for for duration – to say how long something lasts.

- for + period of time

I studied the guitar for three years at school.
That house has been empty for six months.
We go away for three weeks every summer.
My boss will be in Italy for the next ten days.

To measure duration up to the present, we use a present perfect tense (► 52.1), not a present tense.

I’ve known her for a long time. (NOT I know her for a long time.)
We’ve lived here for 20 years. (NOT We live here for 20 years.)

A present tense with for refers to duration into the future. Compare:

How long are you here for? (= Until when . . .?)
How long have you been here for? (= Since when . . .?)

We can often leave out for in an informal style, especially with How long . . .?
And for is not usually used before all.

How long have you been waiting (for)?
We’ve been here (for) six weeks.
I’ve had a headache all day.

2 for and since with perfect tenses: the difference
For and since can both be used with a present perfect to talk about duration up to the present. They are not the same. Compare:

- for + period

I’ve known her for three days. (NOT . . . since three days.)
It’s been raining for weeks.

- since + starting point

I’ve known her since Tuesday.
It’s been raining since the beginning of the month.

With a past perfect, for and since refer to duration up to a particular past moment.

She’d been working there for a long time. (NOT . . . since a long time.)
She’d been working there since 1988.

3 in after negatives and superlatives
After negatives and superlatives, in can be used to talk about duration.
This is normal in American English.
I haven’t seen him for/in months.
It was the worst storm for/in ten years.
4 from and since

From and since give the starting points of actions, events or states: they say when things begin or began.

from/since + starting point

I'll be here from three o'clock onwards.
I work from nine to five.
From now on, I'm going to go running every day.
From his earliest childhood he loved music.
I've been waiting since six o'clock. I've known her since January.

We use since (with a perfect tense) especially when we measure duration from a starting point up to the present, or up to a past time that we are talking about.

I've been working since six o'clock, and I'm getting tired. (not I've been working from six o'clock...)
I had been working since six o'clock, and I was getting tired.

From is used in other cases.

The shop was open from eight in the morning, but the boss didn't arrive till ten. (not The shop was open since eight...)
I'll be at home from Tuesday morning (on). (not...since Tuesday morning.)

From is sometimes possible with a present perfect, especially in expressions that mean 'right from the start'.

She's been like that from her childhood. (or...since her childhood.)
From/Since the moment they were married, they've quarrelled.
From/Since the dawn of civilisation, people have made war.

For from...to and from...until, ► 613. For more about tenses with since, ► 579.
For since meaning 'as' or 'because', ► 377.

470 forget and leave

We can use forget to talk about accidentally leaving things behind.

Oh damn! I've forgotten my umbrella.

However, we normally use leave if we mention the place.

Oh damn! I've left my umbrella at home. (not I've forgotten my umbrella-at-home.)

from and since: time ► 469

471 fun and funny

Fun is normally an uncountable noun. It can be used after be to say that things or people are enjoyable or entertaining.

The party was fun, wasn't it? (not The party was funny.)
Anne and Sam are a lot of fun.

In informal English, fun can also be used as an adjective before a noun.

That was a really fun party.
Funny is an adjective, and is used to say that something makes you laugh.

Why are you wearing that funny hat?

Note that funny has another meaning: 'strange', 'peculiar'.

'A funny thing happened.' 'Do you mean funny ha-ha or funny peculiar?'

Further and farther  ➤ 462

Game and play  ➤ 555

472 get: basic structures and meanings

Get is one of the commonest words in English, and is used in many different ways. It is sometimes avoided in a very formal style, but it is correct and natural in most kinds of speech and writing. The meaning of get depends on what kind of word comes after it. With a direct object, the basic meaning is 'obtain', 'come to have'; with other kinds of word, the basic meaning is 'become', 'come to be'.

1 get + noun/pronoun: I got an email.

With a direct object (noun or pronoun), get usually means 'receive', 'fetch', 'obtain', 'catch' or something similar. The exact meaning depends on the object.

- I got an email from Lucy this morning.
- Can you come and get me from the station when I arrive?
- If I listen to loud music I get a headache.
- If you get a number 6 bus, it stops right outside our house.

Get can be used with two objects (➤ 8).

Let me get you a drink.

Other meanings are sometimes possible.

- I didn't get the joke. (= understand)
- I'll get you for this! (= punish, make suffer)

Get + noun is not normally used to mean 'become'. To express this meaning, we can use get to be + noun (➤ 472.5 below).

Wayne's getting to be a lovely kid. (Not Wayne's getting a lovely kid.)

2 get + adjective: getting old

Before an adjective, get usually means 'become'.

As you get old, your memory gets worse. My feet are getting cold.

With object + adjective, the meaning is 'make somebody/something become'.

It's time to get the kids ready for school. I can't get my hands warm.

We must get the house clean before your mother arrives.

For go + adjective (go green, go blind, etc), and the differences between get, go, become, turn, etc, ➤ 394.

3 get + adverb particle or preposition: get out

Before an adverb particle (like up, away, out) or a preposition, get nearly always refers to a movement of some kind. (For the difference between get and go, ➤ 473.)

- I often get up at five o'clock. I went to see him, but he told me to get out.
- Would you mind getting off my foot?

vocabulary • 472 get: basic structures and meanings
In some idioms the meaning is different – e.g. *get to a place* (= arrive at . . . ); *get over something* (= recover from); *get on with somebody* (= have a good relationship with).

With an object, the structure usually means ‘make somebody/something move’.

You can’t *get him out of bed* in the morning.
Would you *mind getting your papers off my desk*?
Have you ever tried to *get toothpaste back into the tube*?
The car’s OK – it *gets me from A to B*.

4 *get + past participle: get washed, dressed, married, etc*

*Get* can be used with a past participle. This structure often has a reflexive meaning, to talk about things that we ‘do to ourselves’. Common expressions are *get washed, get dressed, get lost, get drowned, get engaged/married/divorced.*

You’ve got five minutes to *get dressed*. She’s *getting married in June*.

5 *get . . .ing; get + infinitive*

*Get . . .ing* is sometimes used informally to mean ‘start . . .ing’, especially in the expressions *get moving, get going*.

We’d better *get moving* – it’s late.

With an infinitive, *get* can mean ‘manage’, ‘have an opportunity’ or ‘be allowed’.

*We didn’t get to see her – she was too busy.*

*When do I get to meet your new boyfriend?*

*Get + infinitive* can also suggest gradual development.

*He’s nice when you get to know him.*

*You’ll get to speak English more easily as time goes by.*

6 *got and gotten*

In British English the past participle of *get* is *got*. In American English the past participle is *gotten* (e.g. *You’ve gotten us in a lot of trouble*) except in the structure *have got* (► 24).

For *get* as a passive auxiliary (e.g. *I get paid on Fridays*), ► 60.
For causative and other uses of *get + object + verb form*, ► 108.

473 *get and go: movement*

*Go* is used to talk about a whole movement.

*Get* is used when we are thinking mainly about the end of a movement – the arrival. Compare:

– *I go to work by car and Lucy goes by train.*
  *I usually get there first.*

– *I went to a meeting in Bristol yesterday.*
  *I got to the meeting at about eight o’clock.*

We often use *get* to suggest that there is some difficulty in arriving.

*It wasn’t easy to get through the crowd.*

*I don’t know how we’re going to get over the river.*

*Can you tell me how to get to the police station?*

For *get* and *go* meaning ‘become’, ► 394.

*get, become, go, grow, etc: changes* ► 394
474 give with action nouns

1 give a cough, etc

We can replace certain verbs by a structure with *give* and a noun. This often happens in British English, for example, with verbs referring to sounds made by people (e.g. cough, cry, scream, chuckle, laugh, shout).

*He gave a cough to attract my attention.*

*Suddenly she gave a loud scream and fell to the ground.*

2 give somebody a smile, etc

The structure is also used with an indirect object (in both British English and American English) to replace transitive verbs, especially in an informal style.

Common expressions:

- *give somebody a smile, a look, a kiss, a hug, a call*
- *give something a push, a kick*  
  *give it a try, a go, a shot*
- *give it a miss* (BrE)  
  *not give it a thought*

*She gave me a strange look. I'll give you a call if I hear anything.*  
*If the car won't start, we'll give it a push.*  
*'Perhaps salt will make it taste better.' OK, let's give it a try.'*  
*'Are you coming to the film?' 'No, I'm tired. I'll give it a miss'. (BrE)*  
*He seemed to be in a bad temper, but I didn't give it a thought.*

For other structures in which nouns replace verbs, ► 132. For more about structures with *give*, ► 8.

**go and come ► 424**

**go and get: movement ► 473**

**go, become, get, grow, etc: changes ► 394**

475 go/come for a . . .

We can use the structure *go/come for a . . .* in some fixed expressions referring to actions, mostly leisure activities. Using this structure makes the action sound casual and probably rather short. (Compare *go . . .ing, ► 476.*) Common examples:

- *go/come for a walk, a run, a swim, a ride, a drive, a drink, a meal*
- *go for a bath, a shower*

*We need some fresh air. Let's go for a walk.*  
*Would you like to come for a drink this evening?*  
*I'm going for a shower. Can you answer my phone if it rings?*

This structure is only used with certain action-nouns – we would probably not say, for example, *Come for a climb with us* or *I'm going for a read.*

For other structures in which nouns are used to refer to actions, ► 132.

vocabulary • 475 go/come for a . . .
476 go/come . . .ing

1 go . . .ing

We use go with an -ing form to talk about activities in which people move about, and which do not have a fixed beginning or end. The structure is common in expressions referring to sport and leisure activities – for example go climbing, go dancing, go fishing, go hunting, go riding, go sailing, go shooting, go skiing, go swimming, go walking.

Let’s go climbing next weekend. Did you go dancing last Saturday?

Go . . .ing is also used to talk about looking for or collecting things.

I think I’ll go shopping tomorrow.

In June all the students go looking for jobs.

Anne’s going fruit-picking this weekend.

We do not use go . . .ing to talk about activities that have a more definite beginning and end (not go boxing, go watching a football match).

2 come . . .ing

Come . . .ing is also possible in certain situations (for the difference between come and go, ► 424).

Come swimming with us tomorrow.

3 prepositions

Note that prepositions of place, not direction, are used after go/come . . .ing.

I went swimming in the river. (Not I went swimming to the river.)

She went shopping at Harrods. (Not . . . to Harrods.)

477 gone with be

Gone can be used like an adjective after be, to say that somebody is away, or that something has disappeared or that there is no more.

She’s been gone for three hours – what do you think she’s doing?

You can go out shopping, but don’t be gone too long.

When I came back my car was gone. Is the butter all gone?

For been used as a past participle of go or come, ► 395.

grateful and thankful ► 604

great, big and large ► 404

grow, become, get, go, etc: changes ► 394
**half**

1 half (of)

We use half or half of mostly before a noun with a determiner (article, possessive or demonstrative). We do not normally put a or the before half in this case.

- She spends half (of) her time travelling. (NOT She spends a/the half...)
- I gave him half (of) a cheese pie to keep him quiet.

When half (of) is followed by a plural noun, the verb is plural.

- Half (of) my friends live abroad. (NOT Half of my friends lives...)

Of is not used in expressions of measurement and quantity.

- I live half a mile from here. (NOT... half of a mile...)
- I just need half a loaf of bread. (NOT... half of a loaf...)
- The train was half an hour late. (AmE also... a half hour...)

We use half of before pronouns.

- 'Did you like the books?' 'I've only read half of them.'

2 no following noun

Half can be used without a following noun, if the meaning is clear.

- I've bought some chocolate. You can have half. (NOT... the half)

3 the half

We use the before half if we are saying which half we mean. Before a noun, of is used in this case.

- Would you like the big half or the small half?
- I didn't like the second half of the film.

4 half a and a half

Half usually comes before the article a/an, but it is possible to put it after in expressions of measurement.

- Could I have half a pound of grapes? (OR... a half pound...)

5 one and a half

The expression one and a half goes with a plural noun. Compare:

- I've been waiting for one and a half hours. (NOT... one and a half hour.)
- I've been waiting for an hour and a half

For more information about numbers and counting expressions, \(\times\) 322.

For half in clock times (e.g. half past two), \(\times\) 325.

---

479 happen to...

Happen can be used with a following infinitive to suggest that something happens unexpectedly or by chance.

- If you happen to see Imogen, ask her to phone me.
- One day I happened to get talking to a woman on a train, and she turned out to be a cousin of my mother's.
In sentences with *if* or *in case*, the idea of *by chance* can be emphasised in British English by using *should* before *happen*, but this is no longer very common.

> Let me know if you *should happen* to need any help.
> I'll take my swimming things, *in case* I *should happen* to find a pool open.

**480 hardly, scarcely and no sooner**

These three expressions can be used (often with a past perfect tense, ► 53) to suggest that one thing happened very soon after another. Note the sentence structure:

> . . . hardly . . . when/before . . .
> . . . scarcely . . . when/before . . .
> . . . no sooner . . . than . . .

I had hardly/scarcely closed my eyes when the phone rang.
She was hardly/scarcely inside the house before the kids started screaming.
I had no sooner closed the door than somebody knocked.
We no sooner sat down in the train than I felt sick.

In a formal or literary style, inverted word order is possible (► 270.7).

> Hardly had I closed my eyes when I began to imagine fantastic shapes.
> No sooner had she agreed to marry him than she started to have doubts.

**481 hear and listen (to)**

1 **hear**: meaning

*Hear* is the ordinary word to say that something ‘comes to our ears’.

> Suddenly I *heard* a strange noise. *(Not *Suddenly I *listened* to a strange noise.)*
> Can you *hear* me?

2 **listen (to)**: meaning

*Listen (to)* is used to talk about paying attention to sounds that are going on, in progress. It emphasises the idea of concentrating, trying to hear as well as possible. You can hear something without wanting to, but you can only listen to something deliberately. Compare:

> I *heard* them talking upstairs, but I didn’t really *listen* to their conversation.
> ‘*Listen* carefully, please.’ ‘Could you speak louder? I can’t *hear* you very well.’
> I didn’t *hear* the phone because I was *listening* to the radio.

3 **complete experiences: hear**

*Listen (to)* is mostly used to talk about concentrating on experiences that are going on, in progress. To talk about the result of listening: experiencing or understanding the whole of a performance, speech, piece of music, broadcast or other communication, we generally use *hear*. Compare:
When she arrived, I was listening to a recording of Brendel playing Beethoven. (NOT ... I was hearing ... )

I once heard Brendel play all the Beethoven concertos. (NOT I once listened to Brendel play. . . )

I wish I had more time to listen to the radio. (NOT ... to hear the radio.)

Did you hear / listen to the news yesterday?

4 hear not used in progressive forms

Hear is not usually used in progressive forms. To say that one hears something at the moment of speaking, can hear is often used, especially in British English (►84).

I can hear somebody coming. (NOT I am hearing. . . )

5 listen and listen to

When there is no object, listen is used without to. Compare:

Listen! (NOT Listen-to!) Listen to me! (NOT Listen-me!)

There are similar differences between see, look (at) and watch. ► 575

For hear + object + infinitive/-ing, ► 110.

482 hear, see, etc with that-clause

The present-tense forms I hear (that) . . . and I see (that) . . . are often used to introduce pieces of news which one has heard or seen.

I hear (that) Alice is expecting a baby.

I see (that) the firemen are going on strike.

Some other verbs can be used like this. Common examples are understand and gather. These are often used to check information.

'I understand you're moving to a new job.' 'Yes, that's right.'

'I gather you didn't like the party.' 'What makes you say that?'

483 help

After help, we can use object + infinitive (with or without to).

Can you help me (to) find my ring? (NOT Can you help me finding my ring?)

Thank you so much for helping us (to) repair the car.

Our main task is to help the company (to) become profitable.

Help can also be followed directly by an infinitive without an object.

Would you like to help pack?

For the expression can't help . . . ing, ►418.

484 here and there

We use here for the place where the speaker/writer is, and there for other places.

(on the telephone) 'Hello, is Tom there?' 'No, I'm sorry, he's not here.' (NOT . . . he's not there.)

Don't stay there in the corner by yourself. Come over here and talk to us.
Note that here and there cannot normally be used as nouns.

This place is terrible. It is terrible here. (But not Here is terrible.)
Did you like that place? or Did you like it there? (But not Did you like there?)

There are similar differences between this and that (► 144), come and go (► 424) and bring and take (► 409).
For here’s and there’s followed by plural nouns, ► 130.6.
For inverted word order after here and there, ► 271.1. For Here you are, ► 329.18.

485 high and tall

1 What kind of things are tall?
We use tall mostly for people, trees, buildings with many floors, and a few other things which are higher than they are wide (e.g. factory chimneys or electricity pylons).

How tall are you? (Not How high are you?)
There are some beautiful tall trees at the end of our garden.
In other cases we usually prefer high.

Mount Elbrus is the highest mountain in Europe.
The garden’s got very high walls.

2 measurements
In measurements, we use tall for people, but we prefer high for things. Compare:

I’m 1m 93 tall. That tree is about 30m high.

3 distance above the ground
We use high to talk about distance above the ground. A child standing on a chair may be higher than her mother, although she is probably not taller.

That shelf is too high for me to reach. The clouds are very high today.

4 parts of the body
Parts of the body can be long, but not tall.

Alex has got beautiful long legs. (Not . . . tall legs.)

486 hire, rent and let

1 hire and rent

Hire and rent can mean ‘pay for the use of something’. In British English, rent is used for arrangements involving a long period of time (one rents a house or a flat). For shorter periods (e.g. paying for a car, a boat, evening dress) rent and hire can both be used.

How much does it cost to rent a two-room flat?
I need to hire/rent a car for the weekend.

Hire (out) and rent (out) can also mean ‘sell the use of something’.

There’s a shop in High Street that hires/rents (out) evening dress.
In American English, rent is the normal word for both longer and shorter arrangements; hire, in American English, normally means ‘employ’.
2 let

Let is used in British English, like rent (out), to talk about selling the use of rooms, houses, etc.

We let the upstairs room to a student.

487 historic and historical

Historic is used especially for historically important places, remains, customs, etc, and for moments which ‘make history’.

We spent the summer visiting historic houses and castles in France.

Our two countries are about to make a historic agreement.

Historical means ‘connected with the study of history’ or ‘really existing in history’.

historical research a historical novel historical documents

Was King Arthur a historical figure?

488 holiday and holidays

In British English, the plural holidays is often used for the ‘long holiday’ of the year. In other cases we normally use the singular holiday. Compare:

Where are you going for your summer holiday(s)?

We get five days’ Christmas holiday this year.

Next Monday is a public holiday.

The singular is used in the British expression on holiday (note the preposition).

I met Marianne on holiday in Norway. (NOT . . .on/in holidays . . .)

Americans more often use the word vacation. (In British English, vacation is mainly used for the periods when universities are not teaching.) Holiday is most often used in American English for a day of publicly observed celebration (such as Thanksgiving) when people do not have to work.

489 home

1 articles and prepositions

No article is used in the expression at home (meaning ‘in one’s own place’).

Is anybody at home? (NOT . . .at-the-home?)

At is often dropped, especially in American English.

Is anybody home?

Home (without to) can be used as an adverb referring to direction.

I think I’ll go home. (NOT . . .to home.)

There is no special preposition in English to express the idea of being at somebody’s home (like French chez, German bei, Danish/Swedish/Norwegian hos, etc). One way of saying this is to use at with a possessive.

We had a great evening at Philip’s.

Ring up and see if Jacqueline is at the Smiths’, could you?
2 *house and home*

*House* is an emotionally neutral word: it just refers to a particular type of building. *Home* is used more personally: it is the place that somebody lives in, and can express the idea of emotional attachment to a place. Compare:

> There are some horrible new *houses* in our village.
> I lived there for six years, but I never really felt it was my *home*.

490 *hope*

1 **tenses after hope**

After *I hope*, we often use a present tense with a future meaning.

> *I hope she likes* (= will like) *the flowers.*  
> *I hope the bus comes soon.*

For a similar use of present tenses after *bet*, ► 401.

2 **negative sentences**

In negative sentences, we usually put *not* with the verb that comes after *hope*.

> *I hope she doesn't wake up.* (NOT *I don't hope she wakes up.*)

For negative structures with *think, believe*, etc, ► 219.

3 **special uses of past tenses**

We can use *I was hoping* . . . to introduce a polite request.

> *I was hoping* you could lend me some money.
> *I had hoped* . . . refers to hopes for things that did not happen.

> *I had hoped* that Jennifer would study medicine, but she didn’t want to.

For more about the use of past tenses in polite requests, ► 311.  
For *I hope so/not*, ► 585.  
For the differences between *hope, expect, wait* and *look forward*, ► 457.

**hope, expect, wait and look forward** ► 457

491 *hopefully*

One meaning of *hopefully* is ‘full of hope’, ‘hoping’.

*She sat there waiting hopefully for the phone to ring.*

Another meaning is ‘it is to be hoped that’ or ‘I hope’.

*Hopefully, inflation will soon be under control.*  
*Hopefully I’m not disturbing you?*

492 *how*

1 **use and word order**

*How* is used to introduce questions or the answers to questions.

> *How did you do it?*  
> *Tell me how you did it.*  
> *I know how he did it.*
We also use *how* in exclamations (▶ 223). The word order is not the same as in questions. Compare:

- *How cold is it?*
  
  *How cold it is!*

- *How do you like my hair?*
  
  *How I love weekends! (not How do I love weekends!)*

- *How have you been?*
  
  *How you’ve grown! (not How have you grown!)*

When *how* is used in an exclamation with an adjective or adverb, this comes immediately after *how*.

- *How beautiful the trees are!* (not *How the trees are beautiful!*)
- *How well she plays!* (not *How she plays well!*)

2 *with adjectives/adverbs: how, not how much*

We use *how*, not *how much*, before adjectives and adverbs.

- *How tall are you? (not How much tall are you?)*
- *Show me how fast you can run. (not . . . how much fast . . .)*

3 *comparisons: how not used*

In comparisons we use *as* or *like* (▶ 515) or *the way* (see below), not *how*.

- *Hold it in both hands, as / like / the way Mummy does.*

4 *how, what and why*

These three question words can sometimes be confused. Note particularly the following common structures.

- *How do you know? (not Why do you know?)*
- *What do you call this? (not How do you call this?)*
- *What’s that called? (not How is that called?)*
- *What do you think? (not How do you think?)*

Both *What about . . . ?* and *How about . . . ?* are used to make suggestions, and to bring up points that have been forgotten.

- *What/How about eating out this evening?*
- *What/How about the kids? Who’s going to look after them?*

In exclamations (▶ 223), *what* is used before noun phrases; and *how* is used before adjectives (without nouns), adverbs and verb phrases.

- *What a wonderful house! How wonderful!*
- *How you’ve changed!*  

5 *how much, how many, how old, how far, etc*

Many interrogative expressions of two or more words begin with *how*.

These are used to ask for measurements, quantities, etc. Examples:

- *How much do you weigh? How many people were there?*
- *How old are your parents? How far is your house?*
- *How often do you come to New York?*
Note that English does not have a special expression to ask for ordinal numbers (first, second, etc).

'It's our wedding anniversary.' 'Congratulations. Which one?'


6 the way

The way (► 620) can often be used instead of non-interrogative how.

Look at the way those cats wash each other. or Look at how those cats . . .

The way you organise the work is for you to decide. or How you organise . . .

For how to . . ., ► 111. For how ever, ► 627. For learn how to . . ., ► 508.

For however, ► 252 (conjunction), ► 371 (adverb).

For how-clauses as objects, subjects, etc (e.g. Don't ask me how the journey was; How you divide up the money is your business), ► 266.

493 how and what . . . like?

1 changes: How's Ron?

We generally use how to ask about things that change – for example people's moods and health. We prefer what . . . like to ask about things that do not change – for example people's character and appearance. Compare:

- 'How's Ron?' 'He's very well.'
- 'What's Ron like?' 'He's quiet and a bit shy.'
- 'How does she look today?' 'Tired.'
- 'What does she look like?' 'Short and dark, pretty, cheerful-looking.'

2 reactions: How was the film?

We often use how to ask about people's reactions to their experiences. What . . . like is also possible.

- 'How was the film?' 'Very good.' (or What was the film like . . .?)
- 'How's your steak?' 'How's the new job?'

however, although, though and but ► 371

if and when ► 623

494 ill and sick

Ill and sick are both used to mean 'unwell'. (In American English ill is less usual except in a formal style.)

George didn't come in last week because he was ill/sick.

Ill is not very common before a noun.

I'm looking after my sick mother. (More normal than . . . my ill mother.)

Be sick can meant 'vomit' (= bring food up from the stomach) in British English.

I was sick three times in the night.
495 immediately, the moment, etc: conjunctions

In British English, immediately and directly can be used as conjunctions, to mean ‘as soon as’.

Tell me immediately you have any news.
I knew something was wrong immediately I arrived.
Directly I walked in the door, I smelt smoke.

The moment (that), the instant (that), the second (that) and the minute (that) can be used in the same way (in both British and American English).

Telephone me the moment (that) you get the results.
I loved you the instant (that) I saw you.

As with other time conjunctions, we use present tenses when talking about the future.

I’ll let you know the moment I have some definite information.

in, at and on: place ► 384

in, at and on: time ► 386

in and during ► 441

in and for: time ► 469

496 in and into, on and onto: prepositions

1 position and direction

We generally use in and on to talk about the positions of things – where they are; and into and onto to talk about directions and destinations – where things are going. Compare:

- A moment later the ball was in the goal.
  The ball rolled slowly into the goal. (NOT . . .-rolled slowly in the goal.)
- She was walking in the garden.
  Then she walked into the house.
- The cat’s on the roof again.
  How does it get onto the roof?

Note that into and onto are normally written as single words. On to is also possible in British English.

2 in and on for movement

After some verbs (e.g. throw, jump, push, put, fall) we can use both in and into, or on and onto, to talk about directional movement. We prefer into/onto when we think of the movement itself, and in/on when we think more of the end of the movement – the place where somebody or something will be. Compare:

- The children keep jumping into the flowerbeds.
  Go and jump in the river.
– In the experiment, we put glowing magnesium into jars of oxygen.
   Could you put the ham in the fridge?
– He was trying to throw his hat onto the roof.
   Throw another log on the fire.
We use in and on after sit down and arrive.
   (NOT He sat down into . . . OR I sat down onto . . .)
   We arrive in Athens at midday. (NOT usually We arrive into Athens . . .)

3 into for change
We normally use into after verbs suggesting change.
   When she kissed the frog, it changed into a handsome prince.
   (NOT . . . changed in a handsome prince.)
   Can you translate this into Chinese? (NOT . . . translate this in Chinese?)
Cut can be followed by into or in.
   Cut the onion in(to) small pieces.
And note the expression in half.
   I broke it in half. (NOT . . . into half.)

4 in and on as adverbs
   In and on are used as adverbs for both position and movement.
   I stayed in last night. Come in! (NOT Come into!)
   What have you got on? Put your coat on.

For the difference between in and to, ➤ 385.

in and later ➤ 506
in/at and to ➤ 385

497 indifferent

Indifferent is not the opposite of different. It is used to say that one has no interest in something that other people might be concerned about.
   He’s quite indifferent to people’s opinion of his work.
   You can’t be indifferent to climate change.
Another meaning is ‘not very good’.
   The team’s performance has been indifferent all year.

in front of and before ➤ 397
in front of and opposite ➤ 549
in order that and so that ➤ 588
498  *in spite of*

*In spite of* is used as a preposition. *In spite of + noun* means more or less the same as *although + clause.*

- *We went out in spite of the rain.* (= . . . although it was raining.)
- *We understood him in spite of his accent.* (= . . . although he had a strong accent.)

*In spite of* is the opposite of *because of.* Compare:
- *She passed her exams in spite of her terrible teacher.*
- *She passed her exams because of her wonderful teacher.*

*In spite of* can be followed by an *-ing* form.
- *In spite of having a headache I enjoyed the film.*

*In spite of* cannot be followed directly by a *that*-clause. Instead, we can use *in spite of the fact that.*
- *He is good company, in spite of the fact that he talks all the time.*

This is rather heavy: *although* means the same, and is more common.

In more formal English, *despite* can be used in the same way as *in spite of.*

499  *indeed*

1  *very . . . indeed*

*Indeed* can be used to emphasise *very* with an adjective or adverb. This is rather formal, and is unusual in American English.

- *I was very pleased indeed to hear from you.*
- *He was driving very fast indeed.*

*Indeed* is unusual in this sense without *very,* and is not normally used after extremely or quite.

- *NOT He was driving fast indeed.*
- *NOT He was driving quite/extremely fast indeed.*

2  *indeed with verb*

*Indeed* can also be used after *be* or an auxiliary verb in order to suggest confirmation or emphatic agreement. This is rather formal. It is common in short answers (► 308).

- *We are indeed interested in your offer, and would be glad to have prices.*
- *‘It’s cold.’ ‘It is indeed.’*
- *‘Henry made a fool of himself.’ ‘He did indeed.’*

500  *instead and instead of*

1  *preposition: instead of*

*Instead* is not used alone as a preposition; we use the two words *instead of.*

- *I’ll have tea instead of coffee, please.* *(NOT . . . instead coffee. . . )*
Can you work with Sophie instead of me today, please?

Instead of is not usually followed by an infinitive.

I stayed in bed all day instead of going to work. (not . . . instead of (to)-
go-to-work.)

2 instead of and without

Instead of suggests that one person, thing or action replaces another. Without suggests that one person, thing, etc is not together with another. Compare:

- Ruth was invited to the reception, but she was ill, so Lou went instead of her.
  (Lou replaced Ruth.) (not . . . Lou went without her.)

Max and Jake were invited, but Max was ill, so Jake went without him.
(Normally they would have gone together.)

- She often goes swimming instead (not She often goes swimming instead of
  school.) (not She often goes swimming without going to school.)

She often goes swimming without telling her mother. (Swimming and telling
her mother should go together.) (not She often goes swimming instead of
telling her mother.)

3 adverb: instead

Instead (without of) is an adverb. It usually begins or ends a clause.

She didn’t go to Greece after all. Instead, she went to America.

Don’t marry Jake. Marry me instead.

We do not use instead to mark a contrast, in the sense of ‘on the other hand’.

He’s a rather anti-social person. On the other hand, he’s very generous.

(not Instead, he’s very generous.)

501 its and it’s

These two words are often confused by native speakers of English as well as by foreign learners.

Its is a possessive word (like my, your).

Every country has its traditions. (not . . . it’s traditions.)

It’s is the contracted form of it is or it has.

It’s raining again. (not Its raining again.)

Have you seen my camera? It’s disappeared. (not . . . Its disappeared.)

There is a similar difference between whose and who’s, ► 629. For more about contractions, ► 337.

502 it’s time

1 followed by infinitive

It’s time (or it is time) can be followed by an infinitive.

It’s time to buy a new car.

To say who should do something, we use for + object + infinitive (► 113).

It’s time for her to go to bed.
2 followed by past tense with present or future reference

It's time can also be followed by a subject with a past tense verb.

The meaning is present.

- It's time she was in bed.
- It's time you washed those trousers.
- I'm getting tired. It's time we went home.

The expression It's high time... is often used in this structure, to say that something is urgent.

- It's high time you got a job.

For other structures in which a past tense has a present or future meaning, ► 46.

journey, travel, trip and voyage ► 612

503 just

1 meanings

Just has several meanings.

a time

- Just often emphasises the idea of 'at this moment' or 'close to the present'.
  - I'll be down in a minute – I'm just changing my shirt. (= right now)
  - Alice has just phoned. (= a short time ago)
  - Sam's still around. I saw him just last week. (= as recently as)

In expressions like just after, just before and just when, just suggests closeness to the time in question.
  - I saw him just after lunch. (= ... very soon after lunch.)

b 'only', 'scarcely'

- Just can mean 'only', 'nothing more than', 'scarcely'.
  - Complete set of garden tools for just £15.99!
  - I just want somebody to love me – that's all.
  - We just caught the train.

This meaning can be emphasised by only.
  - There was only just enough light to read by.

Can/Could I just ...? can make a request seem less demanding.
  - Could I just use your phone for a moment?

c 'exactly'

- Just often means 'exactly'.
  - 'What's the time?' 'It's just four o'clock.'
  - Thanks. That's just what I wanted.
  - She's just as bad-tempered as her father.

d emphasiser

- Just can emphasise other words and expressions, with the sense of 'simply', 'there's no other word for it'.
  - You're just beautiful. I just love your dress.
2 tenses
When just means ‘a moment ago’, past and present perfect tenses are both possible in British English. A present perfect is preferred when we are giving news. Compare:
I’ve just had a brilliant idea.
Jack(’s) just called. His wife’s had a baby. (The news is the baby, not the phone call.)
In American English a past tense is also very common.
‘Where’s Sam?’ ‘He just went out.’
Alice (has) just left. I just had a brilliant idea.

3 just now
Just now can mean either ‘at this moment’ or ‘a few moments ago’. Compare:
She’s not in just now. Can I take a message?
I saw Jake just now. He wanted to talk to you.
When just now means ‘a few moments ago’, two positions are possible:

a in end-position, usually with a past tense.
I telephoned Anna just now.

b in mid-position (► 200) with the verb, with a present perfect or past tense.
I(’ve) just now realised what I need to do.

kind of, sort of and type of ► 592

504 know

1 know how + infinitive
Know is not followed directly by infinitives. We use know how to (► 111).
I know how to make Spanish omelettes. (Not I know to make . . .)

2 object + infinitive
In a formal style, know is sometimes followed by object + infinitive.
They knew him to be a dangerous criminal.
The passive equivalent is quite common in a formal style.
He was known to be a dangerous criminal.
In a less formal style, that-clauses are more usual.
They knew that he was a dangerous criminal.
Know means ‘experience’ in the common structure I’ve never known + object + infinitive; an infinitive without to is possible in British English.
I’ve never known it (to) rain like this.

3 tenses
Know cannot usually be used in progressive forms (► 4).
I know exactly what you mean. (Not I am knowing . . .)
A present perfect tense is used to say how long one has known somebody or something. (► 52 for more details.)
We’ve known each other since 1994. (Not We know each other since 1994.)
4 \textit{know and know about/of}

\textit{Know} + object is used mainly to talk about knowledge that comes from direct personal experience. In other cases, we normally use \textit{know about/of}, have heard of or another structure. Compare:

'You don’t know my mother, do you?' ‘No, I’ve never \underline{met} her.’

We all \underline{know about} Abraham Lincoln. (\underline{NOT} We all \underline{know} Abraham Lincoln.)

5 \textit{know and find out, etc}

\textit{Know} is not normally used to talk about finding something out: to know something is \textit{to have learnt} it, not \textit{to learn} it. To talk about getting knowledge we can use for example \textit{find out}, \textit{get to know}, learn, hear, can tell.

'She’s married.' ‘Where did you \underline{find that out}?’ (\underline{NOT} . . . Where did you \underline{know that}?)

I want to travel round the world and \underline{get to know} people from different countries. (\underline{NOT} . . . \underline{and know} people . . .)

He’s from Liverpool, as you can tell from his accent. (\underline{NOT} . . . as you can \underline{know from his accent}.)

6 \textit{I know and I know it}

Note the difference between these two short answers.

\textit{I know} refers to facts – it could be completed by a that-clause.

'You’re late.' ‘\underline{I know}.’ (= I know that I’m late.)

\textit{I know it} generally refers to things – it replaces a noun.

'I went to a nice restaurant called \underline{The Elizabeth} last night.' ‘\underline{I know it}.’

(= I know the restaurant.)

For ways of using \textit{you know}, \underline{►} 301.3.

\textit{large, great and big} \underline{►} 404

505 \textit{last, the last, the latest}

1 \textit{last week, month, etc; the last week, month, etc}

\textit{Last week, month, etc} (without the) is the week, month, etc just before this one. If I am speaking in July, \underline{last month} was June; in 2016, \underline{last year} was 2015. \textit{The last week, month, etc} is the period of seven/thirty, etc days up to the moment of speaking. On July 15th 2016, \underline{the last month} is the period from June 16th to July 15th; \underline{the last year} is the 12 months starting in July 2015.
Compare:
- I was ill last week, but I'm OK this week. (not I was ill the last week . . .)
  I've had a cold for the last week. I feel terrible.
- We bought this house last year.
  We've lived here for the last year, and we're very happy with the place.

The difference between next and the next is similar. 533

2 the last three . . . etc

Note the word order in expressions with numbers.

I've been busy for the last three months. (not . . . for the three last months.)

We generally say the last few days/weeks, etc, not the last days/weeks, etc.

The last few days have been busy. (not The last days . . .)

3 the last in a series

The last can also mean 'the last in a series'.

In the last week of the trip something funny happened.
This is going to be the last Christmas I'll spend at home.

4 latest and last

We can use latest to talk about something new, and last to mean 'the one before'. Compare:
- Her latest book's being published next week. (not Her last book . . .)
  She thinks it's much better than her last one.
- He's enjoying his latest job. (not He's enjoying his last job.)
  But it doesn't pay as much as his last one.

For tenses with This is the last time . . ., etc, 56.

506 later and in

With a time expression, we generally use later to mean 'after that time', and in to mean 'after now'. Compare:

She got married on her 18th birthday; six months later she was divorced.
Penny's coming on July 1st, and Tom will arrive about a week later.
I'll see you in a few days. (not I'll see you a few days later.)

But without a time expression, later can be used to mean 'after now'.

Bye! See you later!
There are three similar verbs that can be confused: lay (regular except for spelling), lie (irregular) and lie (regular).

1 lay
Lay is a regular verb except for its spelling. Its forms are:

- infinitive: (to) lay
- past participle: laid
- -ing form: laying
- past: laid

Lay means ‘put down carefully’ or ‘put down flat’. It has an object.

*I lay the tent down on the grass and I’ll see how to put it up.*

Note the expressions *lay a table* (= put plates, knives, etc on a table) and *lay an egg* (a bird’s way of having a baby).

2 lie (irregular)
The forms of the irregular verb lie are:

- infinitive: (to) lie
- past: lay
- -ing form: lying
- past participle: lain (used mostly in a formal/literary style)

Lie (irregular) means ‘be down’, ‘be/become horizontal’. It has no object.

*Don’t lie in bed all day. Get up and do some work.*

*I lay down and closed my eyes.*

3 lie (regular)
The regular verb lie (lied) means ‘say things that are not true’.

*You lied to me when you said you loved me.*

4 dialect forms
In many British and American dialects, different forms of lay and irregular lie are used. Lay is often used in cases where standard English has lie.

*I’m going to lay down for a few minutes.*

Learn is often irregular in British English (learn/learnt) and normally regular in American English (learn/learned). For other verbs like this, ► 1.2.

For the adjective learned (/ˈlɜːnɪd/), ► 191.

2 learn (how) to . . .
To talk about consciously learning a method or technique for doing something, we can use learn to . . . or learn how to . . .

*She enjoyed learning (how) to look after young animals.*

*It’s time you learnt (how) to change the oil in the car.*
When we talk about less conscious skills and other kinds of knowledge, we generally use learn to...

Children usually learn to walk at around one year old. In the new job, I soon learnt to keep my mouth shut.

*leave and forget* ▶ 470

**509 left**

The past participle of leave – left – can be used in a special way, to mean 'remaining', 'not used', 'still there'.

What did you do with the money that was left?

After the explosion, only two people were left alive.

Left is common after there is and have got.

There's nothing left in the fridge.

I haven't got any money left: can you get the tickets?

*lend and borrow* ▶ 408

**510 lesser**

Lesser is used in a few expressions (in a rather formal style) to mean 'smaller' or 'not so much'.

the lesser of two evils a lesser-known writer

**511 lest**

Lest has a similar meaning to in case (▶ 248) or so that . . . not (▶ 588). It is rare in British English, and is found mostly in older literature and in ceremonial language. It is a little more common in formal American English.

They kept watch all night lest robbers should come.

We must take care lest evil thoughts enter our hearts.

Lest can be followed by a subjunctive verb (▶ 232).

The government must act, lest the problem of child poverty grow worse.

**512 let**

1 followed by infinitive without to

Let is followed by object + infinitive without to.

We usually let the children stay up late on Saturdays. (not . . . let the children to stay / staying . . .)

She didn't let me see what she was doing. (not . . . let me saw . . .)
Note the expressions let... know (= tell, inform) and let... have (= send, give).
I'll let you know my travel dates next week.
Could you let me have the bill for the car repair?
Let go of means 'stop holding'.
Don't let go of Mummy's hand.

2 not used in passives
This structure is unusual in passive forms; we prefer allow.
After questioning he was allowed to go home.

3 with object + preposition / adverb particle
Let can be followed by an object and a prepositional phrase or adverb particle expressing movement.
You'd better let the dog out of the car.
Let him in, could you? Those kids let my tyres down.
This structure is also common in the passive.
He was let out of prison early for good behaviour.

For let introducing first- and third-person imperatives (e.g. Let's go for a walk; Let me see; Let the prayers begin), ➤ 225. For more about infinitives without to, ➤ 91.

let, allow and permit ➤ 365
let, rent and hire ➤ 486
lie and lay ➤ 507

513 life: countable or uncountable noun
When we talk about life in general, or about a kind of life, life is normally uncountable.
Life is complicated. Anna enjoys life.
I think I would enjoy city life. (not... a city life.)
When we describe particular people's lives, life is normally countable.
My grandmother had a hard life. (not... had hard life.)
My mother's parents lived interesting lives.

For more about countable and uncountable nouns, ➤ 119.

514 like: verb
1 not used in progressive forms
Like is not usually used in progressive forms (➤ 4).
'What do you think of the soup?' 'I like it.' (not... I'm liking it.)
2 not used without an object

*Like* cannot normally be used without an object.

'How do you feel about ballet?' 'I like it.' (not ... I like.)

For exceptions, ➤ 514.7 below.

3 very much: position

We can use *very much* with *like*, but not *very* alone.

*I very much like his latest film.* (not *I very like his latest film*)

*Very much* does not come between *like* and its object ( ► 196).

*I like you and your sister very much. Or I very much like you and your sister.*

(not *I like very much you and your sister.*)

4 like . . . ing: enjoyment

To talk about enjoying activities in general, we can use *like . . . ing* (especially common in British English) or *like + infinitive*.

*I really like walking / to walk in the woods.*

Children always *like listening / to listen to stories.*

To talk about enjoying something on one occasion, we use *like . . . ing*.

*I really liked working with him on his boat last week.*

*Like + object + verb* is possible.

*I don't like people phoning / to phone me in the middle of the night.*

5 like + infinitive: choices and habits

We can use *like + infinitive* to talk about choices and habits.

*I like to do the shopping early on Saturday mornings.*

*When I'm pouring tea I like to put the milk in first.*

*Not like to* can mean 'think it better not to'.

'Why didn't you tell me before?' 'I didn't like to disturb you at home'.

*Like + object + infinitive* is possible.

*She likes the children to go to bed early during the week.*

6 would like

We use *would like* + infinitive as a polite way of saying 'want', especially in requests and offers.

*I'd like two kilos of tomatoes, please.*

'Would you like to dance?' 'Yes, OK.' (not *Would you like dancing? . . . )

*Do you like . . . ?* is not used in this way.

*NOT Do you like some more coffee?*

*Would like to* can be used instead of repeating a whole infinitive ( ➤ 280).

'How about playing tennis?' 'I'd like to.'

Polite requests often begin *If you would like . . . ;* the following clause is sometimes dropped.

*If you would like to take a seat, I'll see if Mr Smithers is free.*

*If you would like to come this way . . .

*Would* is sometimes dropped in this structure.

*If you like to come this way . . .

For *would like* with a perfect infinitive (e.g. *I would like to have seen that*), ➤ 90.
7 if you like, etc

When we offer people a choice, we often use like to mean 'want (to)' in subordinate clauses. Note that to is not used.

'Can I go now?' 'If you like.' (Not if you like to.)

Do it any way you like. Come when you like.
You can sit wherever you like.

515 like and as: similarity, function

We can use like or as to say that things are similar.
We can also use as to talk about function – the jobs that people or things do.

1 like (similarity): like me

Like can be a preposition. We use like, not as, before a noun or pronoun to talk about similarity.

like + noun/pronoun

My sister looks like me. (Not ... as me.)
He ran like the wind. (Not ... as the wind.)
Like his parents, he is a vegetarian.

We can use very, quite and other adverbs of degree before like.

He's very like his father. She looks a bit like Queen Victoria.

We can use like to give examples.

She's good at scientific subjects, like mathematics. (Not ... as mathematics.)
In mountainous countries, like Peru, ...

2 as (similarity): as I do

As is a conjunction. We use it before a clause, and before an expression beginning with a preposition.

as + clause
as + preposition phrase

Nobody knows her as I do.
We often drink tea with the meal, as they do in China.
In 1939, as in 1914, everybody seemed to want war.
On Friday, as on Tuesday, the meeting will be at 8.30.

3 like I do (informal)

In modern English, like is often used as a conjunction instead of as. This is most common in an informal style.

Nobody loves you like I do.

4 inverted word order: as did all his family

In a very formal style, as is sometimes followed by auxiliary verb + subject (note the inverted word order, ► 270).

She was a Catholic, as were most of her friends.
He believed, as did all his family, that the king was their supreme lord.
5 as you know, etc

Some expressions beginning with as are used to introduce facts which are ‘common ground’ – known to both speaker/writer and listener/reader.
Examples are as you know, as we agreed, as you suggested.
As you know, next Tuesday’s meeting has been cancelled.
I am sending you the bill for the repairs, as we agreed.
There are some passive expressions of this kind – for example as is well known; as was agreed. Note that there is no subject it after as in these expressions (► 256).
As is well known, more people get colds in wet weather. (not As it is well known. . .)
I am sending you the bill, as was agreed. (not . . . as it was agreed.)

6 comparison with as and like after negatives

After a negative clause, a comparison with as or like usually refers only to the positive part of what comes before.
I don’t smoke, like Megan. (Megan smokes.)
I am not a Conservative, like Joe. (Joe is a Conservative.)
Before a negative clause, the comparison refers to the whole clause.
Like Emily, I don’t smoke. (Emily doesn’t smoke.)
Like James, I am not a Conservative. (James is not a Conservative.)

7 function or role: He worked as a waiter.

Another use of as is to say what function or role a person or thing has – what jobs people do, what purposes things are used for, what category they belong to, etc. In this case, as is a preposition, used before a noun.
He worked as a waiter for two years. (not . . . like a waiter.)
Please don’t use that knife as a screwdriver.
A crocodile starts life as an egg.
Compare this use of as with like.
As your brother, I must warn you to be careful. (I am your brother.)
Like your brother, I must warn you to be careful. (I am not your brother, but he and I have similar attitudes.)

Note that as is often pronounced /az/ (► 315).
For comparisons with as . . . as, ► 203. For alike, ► 363. For like used instead of as if, ► 378.
For the same as, ► 571. For What . . . like?, ► 493. For such as, ► 396.6.
For like used to join two infinitive structures, ► 91.4.

like and as if ► 378

516 likely

1 meaning

Likely is an adjective with a similar meaning to probable.
I don’t think a Labour victory is likely. What’s a likely date for the election?
The opposite is unlikely.
Snow is very unlikely.
Note also the informal adverb phrases very/most likely.
I think she’ll very/most likely be late.
2 **it is (un)likely + that-clause**

We can use *it* as a preparatory subject or object for a *that*-clause (► 268–269).
- *It's likely that the meeting will go on late.*
- *I thought it unlikely that she would come back.*

3 **infinitive after be (un)likely**

Be + (un)likely is often followed by an infinitive.
- *I'm likely to be busy tomorrow.*
- *Do you think it's likely to rain?*
- *He's unlikely to agree.*

**listen (to) and hear** ► 481

**little and small** ► 580

**lonely and alone** ► 367

**(a) long way and far** ► 461

---

517 **long and (for) a long time**

1 **long** in questions and negatives

*Long* (meaning *‘(for) a long time’*) is most common in questions and negative clauses, and with restrictive words like *hardly, seldom.*

- *Have you been waiting long?*
- *It doesn't take long to get to her house. She seldom stays long.*

2 **(for) a long time** in affirmative clauses

In affirmative clauses we usually prefer *‘(for) a long time’.*

- *I waited (for) a long time, but she didn't arrive.*
- *It takes a long time to get to her house.*

3 **long** in affirmative clauses

However, *long* is used in affirmative clauses with *too, enough, as* and *so,* and in a few other common expressions.

- *The meeting went on much too long.*
- *I've been working here long enough. Time to get a new job.*
- *You can stay as long as you want.*
- *Sorry I took so long. I'll be back before long.*
- *She sits dreaming all day long.* (also *all night/week/year long*)

*Long* is also used in affirmative clauses to modify adverbs and conjunctions.
- *We used to live in Paris, but that was long before you were born.*
- *Long after the accident he used to dream that he was dying.*
- *Long ago, in a distant country, there lived a beautiful princess.* (rather formal)
4 for a long time in negative clauses

When for a long time is used in a negative clause, it sometimes has a different meaning from for long. Compare:

- She didn’t speak for long. (= She only spoke for a short time.)
  She didn’t speak for a long time. (This could mean ‘She was silent for a long time’ – the same as For a long time she didn’t speak).

- He didn’t work for long. (= He soon stopped working.)
  He didn’t work for a long time. (This could mean ‘He was unemployed for a long time’ – the same as For a long time he didn’t work).

The reason for the difference is to do with the ‘scope of negation’: in the first and third sentences, not goes with for long, but in the second and fourth for a long time is outside the influence of not (it could go at the beginning of the clause).

5 How long are you here for?

Questions like How long are you here for? refer to the future. Compare:

‘How long are you here for?’ ‘Until the end of next week.’
‘How long have you been here for?’ ‘Since last Monday.’

6 comparative

The comparative of for a long time is (for) longer.

I hope you’ll stay longer next time, (not . . . for a longer time).

For no longer, ► 535.

Much, many and far are also more common in questions and negative clauses (► 165, 461).

518 look

1 linking verb (= ‘seem’)

Look can mean ‘seem’ or ‘appear’. In this case it is a linking verb (► 11) and can be followed by adjectives or (in British English) nouns.

You look angry – what’s the matter? (not You look angrily . . .)
I looked a real fool when I fell in the river. (BrE)
The garden looks a mess. (BrE)

To talk about a temporary appearance, we can use simple or progressive forms; there is not much difference of meaning.

You look / You’re looking very unhappy. What’s the matter?
Look can be followed by like or as if (► 378). Progressive forms are not usually used in this case.

She looks like her mother.
It looks as if it’s going to rain. (not It’s-looking-as-if . . .)
She looks as if she’s dreaming.
She looks like she’s dreaming. (informal) (not She looks like dreaming.)

Look like . . . ing . . . (informal) is used with future reference in British English.

It looks like being a wet night. (= It looks as if it will be . . .)

Look + infinitive is also sometimes used in informal British English.

The team look to repeat their success. (= It looks as if they will . . .)
2 ordinary verb (= 'direct one's eyes')

When *look* means 'direct one's eyes', it is used with adverbs, not adjectives. Before an object, a preposition is necessary (usually *at*).

*The boss looked at me angrily.* (not *The boss looked at me angry*)
A preposition is not used when there is no object.

*Look! It's changing colour.* (not *Look-at!* . . .)

3 not followed by *if*

Before *if* or *whether*, we use *see* or *look* to see, not *look*.

*Could you see if Anna's in the kitchen?* (not *Could you look if Anna's*

in the kitchen?)

'What are you doing?' 'I'm looking to see whether these batteries are OK.

(not *I'm looking whether. . .*)'

4 *look after* and *look for, fetch*

These are not the same. *Look after* means 'take care of'; *look for* means 'try to find'. Compare:

*Could you look after the kids while I go shopping?*

*I spent ages looking for her before I found her.*

*Fetch*, not *look for*, is used in British English, if we know where people or things are.

*I'm going to the station at three o'clock to fetch Daniel.*

(not . . . to look for Daniel.)

For *Look!* used in persuading, ► 301.2. For the difference between *look (at)*, *watch* and *see*, ► 575.

For other uses of *look*, see a good dictionary.

**look (at), see and watch** ► 575

**look forward, hope, expect and wait** ► 457

519 *lose and loose*

*Lose* (pronounced /lu:z/) is an irregular verb (*lose - lost - lost*).

*Loose* (pronounced /lu:s/) is an adjective (the opposite of *tight*).

*I must be losing weight - my clothes all feel loose.* (not *I must be*

losing weight. . .)

520 *loudly and aloud*

*Loudly* is used (like *loud*) to talk about the strength of a noise. The opposite is *quietly*.

*They were talking so loudly I couldn't hear myself think.*

*Aloud* is often used with the words *read* and *think*, to say that words are spoken, and not just 'said' silently in the head.

*She has a very good pronunciation when she reads aloud.*

'What did you say?' 'Oh, nothing, I was just thinking aloud.'
521 magic and magical

Magic is the more common word, and is used in a number of fixed expressions.

- a magic wand (= a magician’s stick)
- the magic word
- a magic carpet

Magical is sometimes used instead of magic, especially in metaphorical senses like ‘mysterious’, ‘wonderful’ or ‘exciting’.

It was a magical experience.

522 make: prepositions

We usually say that something is made of a particular material.

Most things seem to be made of plastic these days.

All our furniture is made of wood.

When a material is changed into a completely different form to make something, we often use make from.

Paper is made from wood. (NOT Paper is made of wood.)

When we talk about the process of manufacture, we can also use out of.

He made all the window-frames out of oak: it took a long time.

To mention one of several materials (e.g. in cooking), we can use make with.

‘The soup’s good.’ ‘Yes, I make it with lots of garlic.’

For causative structures with make (e.g. He made us laugh), 107.

make and do  ➤ 435

male and masculine  ➤ 464

523 marry and divorce

1 get married/divorced

In an informal style, get married and get divorced are more common than marry and divorce when there is no object.

Lulu and Joe got married last week. (Lulu and Joe married . . .

is more formal.)

The Robinsons are getting divorced.

In a more formal style, marry and divorce are preferred.

Although she had many lovers, she never married.

After three very unhappy years they divorced.

2 no preposition before object

Before a direct object, marry and divorce are used without prepositions.

She married a builder. (NOT She married with a builder.)

Andrew’s going to divorce Carola.
3 get/be married to
We can also use get/be married to with an object.

She got married to her childhood sweetheart.
I've been married to you for 25 years and I still don’t understand you.

524 the matter (with)
We use the matter (with) after something, anything, nothing and what.
It means 'wrong (with)'.

Something's the matter with my foot. Is anything the matter?
Nothing's the matter with the car – you're just a bad driver.
What's the matter with Frank today?
There is often used as a 'preparatory subject' (► 20).
There's something the matter with the TV.
Is there anything the matter?

For no matter what, etc, ► 253.

525 maybe and perhaps
These two words mean the same. They are both common. In British English, perhaps is used more often than maybe in a formal style, and in this case it may go in mid-position (► 200).

Maybe/Perhaps it'll stop raining soon.

Julius Caesar is perhaps the greatest of Shakespeare's early plays.
Perhaps is often pronounced 'praps' by British people.

526 mean

1 questions
Note the structure of questions with mean.

Excuse me. What does 'hermetic' mean? (not What means 'hermetic'?)
Note also the preposition in What do you mean by 'hermetic'? (= In what sense are you using the word?)

2 mean and think, meaning and opinion
Mean and meaning are 'false friends' for speakers of some European languages. They are not usually used for 'think' or 'opinion'.

I think that Labour will win the next election. (not I mean that Labour will win . . .)
What's your opinion? (not What's your meaning?)

3 structures
Mean (= intend, plan) can be followed by (object) + infinitive.

Sorry – I didn’t mean to interrupt you.
Did you mean Jack to pay for everybody?
Mean (= involve, have as a result) can be followed by a noun or an -ing form.

The Fantasians have invaded Utopia. This means war!
If you decide to try the exam, it will mean studying hard.

4 I mean

I mean is used informally as a ‘discourse marker’ to introduce explanations or additional details.

He’s funny – I mean, he’s really strange.
It was a terrible evening. I mean, they all sat round and talked politics.
Would you like to come out tonight? I mean, only if you want to, of course.
When I mean introduces a comment it can be close to I think or I feel, but it is not followed by that.

A hundred pounds for a thirty-hour week. I mean, it’s not right, is it?

In informal speech, I mean often acts as a connector or ‘filler’, with little real meaning.

Let’s go and see Jake on Saturday. I mean, we could make an early start . . .
I mean is also used to introduce corrections.

She lives in Southport – I mean Southampton.

5 What do you mean . . .?

What do you mean . . .? can express anger or protest.

What do you mean, I can’t sing?
What do you mean by waking me up at this time of night?

6 no progressive form

Mean is not normally used in progressive forms when it refers to meanings.

What does that strange smile mean? (not What is that strange smile meaning?)

But perfect progressive forms can be used to refer to intentions.

I’ve been meaning to phone you for weeks.

527 means

1 singular and plural ending in -s

Both the singular and the plural of means end in -s.

In the 19th century a new means of communication was developed – the railway. (not . . . a new mean of communication . . .)

There are several means of transport on the island.

For other words with singular forms ending in -s, ► 117.3.

2 by all/any/no means

By all means is not the same as by all possible means. It is used to give permission or to encourage somebody to do something, and means ‘of course’ or ‘it is all right to . . .’ Compare:

‘Can I borrow your sweater?’ ‘By all means.’
By all means get a new coat, but don’t spend more than £150.
We must help her by all possible means. (Not We must help her by all means.)

vocabulary • 527 means
By no means (or not by any means) is not the opposite of by all means. It is similar to definitely not, or not by a long way.

'Is that all you've got to say?' 'By no means.'

Galileo was by no means the first person to use a telescope.

528 mind: do you mind, etc

1 meaning and use

Mind can mean 'dislike', 'be annoyed by', 'object to'. We use mind mostly in questions and negative clauses.

'Do you mind the smell of tobacco?' 'Not at all.'

Do you mind if we leave a bit earlier today? I don't mind if you use my car.

After mind, we can use an -ing form, or object + -ing form.

Do you mind waiting a few minutes? (not . . . to wait . . .)

I don't mind you coming in late if you don't wake me up.

2 Would you mind . . .?

We can use Would you mind . . .? to ask people to do things, or to ask for permission.

Would you mind opening the window? (= Please open . . .)

Would you mind if I opened the window?

3 Do/Would you mind my . . .ing?

In a slightly more formal style, we can use my, your, etc with an -ing form after mind (► 94.3–94.4).

Do you mind my smoking? (More informal: . . . me smoking?
(or . . . if I smoke?)

4 answers

After Would/Do you mind . . .?, we use No or Not at all (more formal) to give permission (but we often add more words to make the meaning quite clear).

'Do you mind if I look at your paper?' 'No, please do / that's OK / sure.'

5 tenses

In subordinate clauses after mind, a present tense is usually used if we want to express a future meaning (► 231).

I don't mind what the children do after they leave home.

(nor I don't mind what the children will do . . .)

529 miss

1 'fail to contact', 'be late for'

Miss often expresses the idea of failing to contact somebody/something, or being late for somebody/something.

How could he miss an easy goal like that?

The station's about five minutes' walk, straight ahead. You can't miss it.

If you don't hurry we'll miss the train. (not . . . lose the train.)

You've just missed her - she went home five minutes ago.
An -\textit{ing} form can be used after \textit{miss}.

\textit{I got in too late and missed seeing the news on TV.}

2 \textbf{‘be sorry to be without’}

We can use \textit{miss} to say that we are sorry because we are no longer with somebody, or no longer have something.

\textit{Will you miss me when I’m away?}

\textit{He’s not happy in the country – he misses city life.}

Note that \textit{regret} is not used in the same way. Compare:

\textit{I miss working with you.} (= I’m sorry I’m no longer with you.)

\textit{I regret working with you.} (= I’m sorry I was with you.)

3 \textbf{‘notice the absence of’}

Another meaning of \textit{miss} is ‘notice that somebody/something is not there’.

\textit{The child ran away in the morning, but nobody missed her for hours.}

4 \textbf{\textit{miss} not used}

\textit{Miss} is not used simply to say that somebody has not got something.

\textit{In some of the villages they haven’t got electricity.} (\textit{not} \ldots{} \textit{they miss electricity}.)

In a formal style, the verb or noun \textit{lack} can be used to express this idea.

\ldots{} \textit{they lack electricity.}

\textit{I am sorry that lack of time prevents me from giving more details.}

5 \textbf{\textit{missing}}

\textit{Missing} is often used as an adjective, meaning ‘lost’.

\textit{When did you realise that the money was missing?}

\textit{The missing children were found at their aunt’s house.}

We can use \textit{missing} after a noun. This often happens in clauses beginning with \textit{there is}.

\textit{There’s a page missing from this book.}

In an informal style, a structure with \textit{have} \ldots{} \textit{missing} is also possible.

\textit{We’ve got some plates missing – do you think Luke’s borrowed them?}

\textit{He had several teeth missing.}

\textbf{the moment: conjunction} \(\Rightarrow 495\)

\textbf{530 name}

A person’s \textit{name} is the whole expression that identifies them – for example \textit{Andy Barlow, William Shakespeare, Carol Jane Griffiths, Naseem Khan, Li Wei.}

The word \textit{name} does not mean just one or other part of this – though of course only one part may be used, depending on the situation.

‘\textit{Name, please?’ ‘Alan Bennett.’}

‘\textit{Hi. Come in. What’s your name.’ ‘Jenny.’}

\textit{My name’s Smith. I have an appointment with Mr Andrews.}
The surname, family name or last name is the part which, in many cultures, is typically passed from parents to children – for example Barlow, Shakespeare. First names, Christian names or given names (AmE) are the parts which children are given at birth – for example Jessica, George Thomas, Alice Catherine. (The expression Christian name is generally avoided in multi-cultural contexts.) Americans often use two given names, or one and an initial (e.g. Philip C. Walter, F. Scott Fitzgerald. The second of these is generally called the ‘middle name’. British people use middle names less often.

Note that the terms first name and last name can sometimes cause confusion, since in some cultures it is common to give the family name first.

For more about the use of names, 327.

531 near (to)

Near can be used as a preposition. Near to is also possible with the same meaning, but is less common.

We live near (to) the station. I put my bag down near (to) the door.

She was near (to) despair.

Near (to) can be followed by an -ing form.

I came very near (to) hitting him.

For -ing forms after to, 104.2. For the difference between nearest and next, 533.

near and by 415

nearest and next 533

nearly, almost and practically 366

532 need

1 ordinary verb: Everybody needs to rest.

Need most often has ordinary verb forms: the third person singular has -s, and questions and negatives are made with do. Need is usually followed by an infinitive with to.

Everybody needs to rest sometimes.

Do we need to reserve seats on the train?

2 modal auxiliary forms: he needn't; need I?

Need can also have the same present-tense forms as modal auxiliary verbs: the third person singular has no -s, and questions and negatives are made without do. In this case, need is normally followed by an infinitive without to.

She needn't reserve a seat – there'll be plenty of room.

These forms are used mainly in negative sentences (needn't); but they are also possible in questions, after if, and in other ‘non-affirmative’ structures (222).
You needn't fill in a form.  Need I fill in a form?
I wonder if I need fill in a form.  This is the only form you need fill in.

**BUT NOT** You need fill in a form.

These forms are more common in British English; in American English *have to* / *don't have to* are preferred.

### 3 needn't, need I?: immediate necessity

These modal forms of *need* normally refer to immediate necessity. They are often used to ask for or give permission – usually permission not to do something. They are not used to talk about habitual, general necessity.

Compare:

*It’s OK – you needn’t / don’t need to pay for that phone call.*
*You don’t need to pay for emergency calls in most countries.*

(Not *You needn’t pay... in most countries.*)

### 4 talking about the future

Present tense forms of *need* are used when making decisions about the future.

*Need I come in tomorrow?*
*Tell her she doesn’t need to work tonight.*

*Will need to...* can be used to talk about future obligation, and give advice for the future. It can make orders and instructions sound less direct.

*We’ll need to repair the roof next year.*
*You’ll need to start work soon if you want to pass your exams.*
*You’ll need to fill in this form before you see the Inspector.*

For similar uses of *have to*, ➤ 74.

### 5 need...ing: The sofa needs cleaning.

After *need* an -*ing* form can be used with the same meaning as a passive infinitive, especially in British English.

*That sofa needs cleaning again.* (= ... needs to be cleaned ...)

A structure with *object +...ing* or *past participle* is also possible in some cases.

*You need your head examining.* (BrE) (or ... examined.)

### 6 need not have...

If we say that somebody *need not have done something*, we mean that he or she did it, but that it was unnecessary – a waste of time.

*You needn’t have woken me up. I don’t have to go to work today.*
*I needn’t have cooked so much food. Nobody was hungry.*

On the other hand, if we say that somebody *did not need to do something*, we are simply saying that it was not necessary (whether or not it was done).

Compare:

*I needn’t have watered the flowers. Just after I finished it started raining.*
*It started raining, so I didn’t need to water the flowers.*

*Need never have...* is a more emphatic version of *need not have...*.

*I need never have packed all that suncream – it rained every day.*

### 7 need not and must not

*Need not* or *do not need to* is used to say that there is no obligation; *must not* is used to say that there is an obligation not to do something.
Compare:
You needn't tell Jennifer – she already knows.
You mustn't tell Charlotte – I don't want her to know.
Need not is also sometimes used to say that something is not necessarily true.
'She looks quite ill. I'm sure it's flu.' 'It needn't be – maybe she's just over-tired.'

For there is no need to ... ➔ 20.

533 next and the next; nearest

1 next week, month, etc; the next week, month, etc

Next week, month, etc (without the) is the week, month, etc just after this one. If I am speaking in July, next month is August; in 2016, next year is 2017. The next week, month, etc is the period of seven, thirty, etc days starting at the moment of speaking. On July 15th 2016, the next month is the period from July 15th to August 15th; the next year is the period from July 2016 to July 2017. Compare:

- Goodbye – see you next week. (NOT ... see you the next week.)
  I'll be busy for the next week. (= the seven days starting today)
- Next year will be difficult. (= the year starting next January)
  The next year will be difficult. (= the twelve months starting now)

The difference between last and the last is similar, ➔ 505.

2 the next three ... , etc

Note the word order in expressions with numbers.
I'll be at college for the next three years. (NOT ... the three next years.)

We generally say the next few days, not the next days.
The next few days will be wet.

3 next Sunday, etc

When next is used with the names of days or months, it is not always clear exactly what is meant.

'See you next Sunday.' 'Do you mean this coming Sunday or the one after?'
To avoid misunderstanding, one can say for example (1) on Sunday, this Sunday, the/this Sunday coming, the/this coming Sunday or (on) Sunday this week, and (2) on Sunday week, a week on Sunday or (on) Sunday next week.

vocabulary • 533 next and the next; nearest
place: next and nearest
The nearest is generally preferred for place – it means ‘most near in space’.
   Excuse me. Where’s the nearest bank? (not...the next bank.)
   If you want to find Luke, just look in the nearest pub.
The next can be used for place if we are talking about movement or direction. It means ‘after this/that one’.
   We get off at the next station. (= the station that we will come to next.)
   It’s not on this shelf; it’s on the next shelf up.
Next can also be used to talk about the nearest position in a row.
   My girlfriend lives next door. Who works in the next office?
The people at the next table were having a terrible argument.
Next to means ‘beside’.
   Come and sit next to me.

no and not ► 536

534 no doubt

No doubt expresses a personal opinion. It means ‘probably’ or ‘I suppose’; it does not mean ‘certainly’.
   No doubt it’ll rain soon.
   You’re tired, no doubt, I’ll make you a cup of tea.
To say that something is certain, we can use there is no doubt that (formal), without any doubt (formal), certainly, definitely.
   There is no doubt that the world is getting warmer. (not No doubt the world is getting warmer.)
   Cycling is certainly healthier than driving. (not No doubt cycling is healthier than driving.)
Doubtless is similar to no doubt (but more formal); undoubtedly is similar to there is no doubt that.

For structures with the verb doubt. ► 436.

535 no more, not any more, no longer, not any longer

We use no more with nouns to talk about quantity or degree – to say how much.
   There’s no more bread.
We do not use no more in standard modern English as an adverb to express the idea of actions and situations stopping. Instead, we use no longer (usually before the verb), not...any longer or not...any more.
   I no longer support the Conservative party. (not I no more support...)  
   This can’t go on any longer. I’m not helping you any more.
Anymore may be written as one word, especially in American English.
   Annie doesn’t live here anymore.
no sooner, hardly and scarcely ➤ 480

north and northern, etc ➤ 442

536 not and no

To make a word, expression or clause negative, we use not.

Not surprisingly, we missed the train. (NOT No surprisingly . . .)
The students went on strike, but not the teachers. (NOT . . . but no the teachers.)
I can see you tomorrow, but not on Thursday.
I have not received his answer.

We can use no with a noun or -ing form to mean ‘not any’, or ‘not a/an’.

No teachers went on strike. (= There weren’t any teachers on strike.)
I’ve got no Thursdays free this term. (= I haven’t got any Thursdays . . .)
I telephoned, but there was no answer. (= There wasn’t an answer.)

No smoking

Sometimes sentences constructed with verb + not and no + noun have similar meanings. The structure with no is usually more emphatic.

There wasn’t an answer. / There was no answer.

537 nought, zero, nil, etc

The figure 0 is usually called nought or zero in British English and zero in American English. When we say numbers one figure at a time, 0 is often called oh (like the letter O).

My account number is four one three oh six. or . . . four one three zero six.
In measurements of temperature, 0 is called zero in both British and American English. Zero is followed by a plural noun.

Zero degrees Celsius is thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.

Zero scores in team games are called nil (American zero or nothing). In tennis and similar games, the word love is used (originally from French l’œuf, meaning ‘the egg’ – the figure 0 is egg-shaped).

And the score at half-time is: Scotland three, England nil.

Forty-love; Andrews to serve.

538 now (that)

Now (that) can be used as a conjunction. In an informal style, that is often dropped, especially in British English (➤ 265).

Now (that) Andrew is married, he has become much more responsible.
Now the exams are over I can enjoy myself.
**539 nowadays**

`nowadays` is an adverb meaning 'these days', 'at the present time'.

- People seem to be very depressed nowadays.
- Nowadays we think nothing of space travel.

`Nowadays` cannot be used as an adjective.

- I don't like modern fashions. (*not* `I don't like the nowadays fashions`).

---

**540 of course**

We use `of course` (not) to mean 'as everybody knows' or 'as is obvious'.

- It looks as if the sun goes around the earth, but of course that's not true.
- We'll leave at eight o'clock. Granny won't be coming, of course.

`Of course` can be used as a polite reply to a request.

- 'Could you help me?' 'Of course.'

But `of course` is not always a very polite reply to a statement of fact.

- 'It's cold.' 'It certainly is.' (*not* `Of course it is.` — this would suggest that the first speaker had said something too obvious to be worth mentioning.)

For the use of `of course` to structure arguments, ► 284.2, 301.3.

---

**541 often**

`Often` is mostly used for habitual behaviour, to mean 'a lot of times on different occasions'. To say 'a lot of times on one occasion', we normally use another expression (e.g. `a lot of times, several times, keep . . .ing`). Compare:

- I often fell in love when I was younger.
- I fell several times yesterday when I was skiing, or I kept falling yesterday . . .

 (*not* `I often fell yesterday . . .`)

Note that `often` has two common pronunciations, with and without `t`: `/ˈɒfən/` and `/ˈɒftən/`.

For the position of `often` and other adverbials of indefinite frequency, ► 198.1.

**on and about** ► 352

**on, in and at: place** ► 384

**on, in and at: time** ► 386
542 once: adverb

When *once* means ‘at some time’, we use it for the past but not for the future. To refer to an indefinite future time, we can use *sometime* or *one day*. Compare:

- I met her *once* in Venezuela.
- *Once* upon a time there was a beautiful princess.
- Come up and see me *sometime*. (NOT Come up and see me *once*.)
- We must go walking *one day*. (NOT We must go walking *once*.)

When *once* has the more precise meaning of ‘one time (not twice or three times)’, it can be used to talk about any time, including the future.

I’m only going to say this *once*.

Note that *at once* means ‘immediately’.

‘*Can I have the bill?’ *At once, sir.*’

543 once: conjunction

*Once* can be used as a conjunction, meaning ‘after’, ‘as soon as’. It often suggests that something is finished or completed, and is most often used with a perfect tense.

Once you’ve passed your test I’ll let you drive my car.

Once he had found somewhere to live he started looking for work.

Once you know how to ride a bike you never forget it.

Note that we do not use *that* after *once* (NOT Once *that you’ve passed your test* . . .).

For present perfect instead of future perfect after conjunctions, ▶ 231.

544 one of...

After *one of* we normally use a plural form.

*one of our cats* (NOT *one of our cat*)

Occasionally *one of* is used with a singular noun referring to a group.

*Why don’t you ask one of the crew?*

A following verb is normally singular.

*One of our cats has disappeared.* (NOT *One of our cats have disappeared.*)

After *one of*, a noun phrase must have a determiner (e.g. *the*, *my*, *those*). *one of the/my/those horses* (BUT NOT *one of horses*)

Of cannot be dropped.

*one of my friends* (NOT *one my friend* or *one my friends*)

For sentences like *She’s one of the few women who have/has climbed Everest*, ▶ 130.1.
545 only: focusing adverbial

*Only* can be used as a focusing adverbial (► 199). It can refer to different parts of a sentence.

1 referring to the subject
*Only* normally comes before a subject that it refers to.

- *Only you* could do a thing like that.
- *Only my mother* really understands me.

2 referring to other parts of a sentence
When *only* refers to another part of a sentence, it often goes in ‘mid-position’ with the verb (► 200 for details).

- She only reads biographies.
- *I only like* swimming in the sea.
- *She was only* talking like that because she was nervous.

3 ambiguous sentences
Sometimes sentences with *only* are ambiguous (they can be understood in more than one way).

- *I only kissed your sister last night.* (The sense can be ‘only kissed’, ‘only your sister’ or ‘only last night’.)

In speech, the meaning is usually clear because the speaker stresses the part of the sentence that *only* refers to. Even in writing, the context generally stops sentences like these from being really ambiguous. However, if necessary *only* can be put directly before the object, complement or adverbial expression that it refers to. This is generally rather formal. Compare:

- *They only play poker on Saturday nights.* (could be ambiguous)
- They play *only poker on* Saturday nights.
- They play *poker only on* Saturday nights.

The meaning can also be made more precise with a relative structure.

- *Poker is the only game (that) they play on Saturday nights.*
- *Saturday nights are the only time (that) they play poker.*

4 only today, etc
*Only* with a time expression can mean ‘as recently as’ or ‘not before’.

- *I saw her only today* – she looks much better.
- *Only then* did she realise what she had agreed to.
- *My shoes will only be ready on Friday.*

For inverted word order after *only*, as in the last example but one, ► 270.7.

*Only* can also be a determiner in a noun phrase (e.g. *You are my only real friend*).

546 open

1 open and opened
We normally use *open*, not *opened*, as an adjective.

- *I can read you like an open book.* (NOT . . . an opened book.)
- Are the banks *open* this afternoon? (NOT Are the banks opened . . . ?)
Opened is used as the past tense and past participle of the verb open, to talk about the action of opening.

She opened her eyes and sat up. The safe was opened with dynamite.

2 when open is not used

Note that open is not the normal word to refer to the fastenings of clothes, or to switches or taps.

I can't untie/undo this shoelace. (Not I can't open this shoelace.)

How do you unfasten this belt?

Could you turn/switch the radio on? (Not ... open the radio?)

Who left the taps turned on? (Not Who left the taps open?)

For closed and shut, ► 422.

547 opportunity and possibility

We often say that somebody has the opportunity to do / of doing something.

I have the opportunity to go to Denmark next year. (= I can go ...)

Possibility is not often used in this structure. It is more normal to say that there is a possibility of something happening.

There's a possibility of my going to Denmark next year. (= I may go ...)

(More natural than I have the possibility to go to Denmark ...)

548 opposite (adjective): position

We put the adjective opposite before a noun when we are talking about one of a pair of things that naturally face or contrast with each other.

I think the picture would look better on the opposite wall.

She went off in the opposite direction.

I've got exactly the opposite opinion to yours.

His brother was fighting on the opposite side.

We put opposite after the noun when it means 'facing the speaker or listener' or 'facing a person or place that has already been mentioned'.

I noticed that the man opposite was staring at me.

(The man opposite was staring at me.)

The woman she was looking for was in the house directly opposite.

For opposite and contrary, ► 428.

549 opposite, facing and in front of

1 'across a road/room, etc from': opposite/facing

We do not use in front of to mean 'across a road/river/room, etc from'. This idea is usually expressed with opposite or facing (AmE also across from).

There's a garage opposite my house. (Not ... in front of my house.)

She stood at the other side of the table facing me. (Not ... in front of me.)

The man sitting across from me was smoking a pipe. (AmE)

vocabulary • 549 opposite, facing and in front of
2 in front of and opposite

Compare:

- There’s a bus stop in front of the school. (The bus stop is on the same side of the road as the school.)
- There’s a bus stop opposite the school. (The bus stop is on the other side of the road from the school.)

In front of is often the opposite of behind.

The woman in front of me at the ticket window had a complicated problem.
I always find myself behind people like that.

3 in front of and in the front of

If you are in front of a place, vehicle, etc you are outside it; if you are in the front of it you are inside. Compare:

- We stood in front of her car so that she couldn’t drive off.
- Her husband was sitting in the front of the car. He looked frightened.

For the difference between before and in front of, ► 397.

550 other(s) and another

1 other and others

When other is used with a noun it has no plural form.

- Where are the other photos? (not . . . the others photos?)

But used alone, without a noun, it can have a plural form.

- I’ve got one lot of photos. Where are the others?
- These are too small. Have you got any others?

Normally, other(s) is only used alone if it refers to a noun that has been mentioned before. An exception is the common plural use of (the) others to mean (the) other people.

- He never thinks of others. Jake’s arrived – I must tell the others.
- But not On the phone, one cannot see the other OR He never listens to another

2 not used like an adjective

Other is a determiner or pronoun; it is not used exactly like an adjective.

So it cannot normally have an adverb before it, or be used after a linking verb.

- I’d prefer a completely different colour. (not . . . a completely other colour.)
- You look different with a beard. (not You look other . . .)

For one another, ► 179.

3 ‘additional, extra’

Another (spelt as one word) can mean ‘an additional, extra’. It is used with singular countable nouns.

- Could I have another piece of bread? (not . . . an other piece of bread.)

Another can be used without a noun, or with one, if the meaning is clear from what has come before.

- Those cakes are wonderful. Could I have another (one)?
With uncountable and plural nouns, we normally use more, not other, with this meaning.

Would you like some more meat? (NOT... other meat?)
Would you like some more peas? (NOT... other peas?)

However, we can use another before a plural noun in expressions with few or a number.

I'm staying for another few weeks.
We need another three chairs.

For other cases where a(n) is followed by a plural, ► 130.7.

**4 'alternative'**

(An)other can also mean '(an) alternative', 'besides / instead of this/these'.
I think we should paint it another colour.

Have you got any other cakes, or are these the only ones?

Other people often means 'people besides oneself'.
Why don’t you think more about other people?

### out of

**1 movement**

The opposite of the preposition into is out of.
She ran out of the room.
(NOT She ran out the room, or She ran out from the room.)
I took Harry's photo out of my pocket.
Out of is also used to mean 'through', when we mention the opening through which somebody/something goes out.
I walked out of the front door without looking back.
Why did you throw the paper out of the window?

In American English, out is normally used without of in this case.
She turned and went out the back door. (AmE)

**2 position**

Out of can also be used to talk about position – the opposite of in.
I'm afraid Mr Pallery is out of the office at the moment.

For into and in, ► 496.

**over, across and through** ► 357

**over and above** ► 354

**owing to and due to** ► 439
own

1 after possessives
We only use *own* after a possessive word. It cannot directly follow an article.

*It's nice if a child can have his or her own room.* (not . . . an own room)
*Car rental is expensive. It's cheaper to take one's own car.*
(not . . . the own car)
*I'm my own boss.*

2 *a/some . . . of one's own*
This structure makes it possible to include *a/an, some* or another determiner in the phrase.

*I'd like to have a car of my own.*
*It's time you found some friends of your own.*
*He's got no ideas of his own.*

3 *own with no following noun*
We cannot use *mine, yours, etc* with *own*, but we can drop a noun after *my own, your own, etc* if the meaning is clear.

*'Would you like to use my pen?* 'No, thanks. I can only write with my own.'
(not . . . mine own:)

4 *own and -self*
The emphatic and reflexive pronouns *myself, yourself, etc* (► 178) do not have possessive forms. *My own, etc* is used instead.

*I'll do it myself, and I'll do it in my own way.* (not . . . in myself's way)
*She can wash herself and brush her own hair now.*
(not . . . brush herself's hair:)

5 *on one's own*
Note the two meanings of *on one's own.*

*My mother lives on her own.* (without company)
*Don't help him. Let him do it on his own.* (without help)

For *by oneself* used in similar ways, ► 178.7.

553 part

*A* is usually dropped before *part of* if there is no adjective.

*Part of the roof was missing.* (but *A large part of the roof was missing*)
*Part of the trouble is that I can't see very well.* (More natural than *A part of the trouble . . .*)
*Jess was in Australia part of last year.*

*perhaps and maybe* ► 525

*permit, allow and let* ► 365
554 place: a place to live, etc

In an informal style, place can often be followed directly by an infinitive or relative clause, with no preposition or relative word.

*I'm looking for a place to live.* (More formal: *... a place to live in or ... a place in which to live.*)
*There's no place to sit down.*

You remember the place we had lunch?

(= ... the place (that) we had lunch at? or the place where we had lunch?)

We do not use *a place where* before an infinitive.

*I'm looking for a place (where) I can wash my clothes. / a place to wash my clothes.* (not ... a place where to wash my clothes.)

Go places (informal) means ‘become very successful in life’.

That boy's going to go places, believe me.

For similar structures with way, time and reason, 237.7.

555 play and game

1 nouns

A *play* is a piece of dramatic literature for the theatre, radio or television.

*’Julius Caesar’ is one of Shakespeare’s early plays.*

A *game* is an activity like, for example, chess, football or bridge.

*Chess is a very slow game.* (not ... a very slow play.)

The uncountable noun *play* can be used to mean ‘playing’ in general.

*Children learn a great deal through play.*

2 verbs

People *act* in plays or films, and *play* games or musical instruments.

*My daughter is acting in her school play this year.*

*Have you ever played rugby football?*

*Play* can be used with the same meaning as *act* before the name of a character in a play or film.

*I’ll never forget seeing Olivier play Othello.*

556 please and thank you

1 requests

We use *please* to make requests more polite.

*Could I have some more rice, please?*

‘Would you like some help?’ ‘Yes, please.’

Note that *please* does not change an order into a request. Compare:

*Stand over there.* (order)

*Please stand over there.* (more polite order)

*Could you stand over there, please?* (polite request)

*Please do* is a rather formal answer to a request for permission.

*‘Do you mind if I open the window?’ ‘Please do.’*
2 when *please* is not used

We do not use *please* to ask people what they have said.

‘I’ve got a bit of a headache.’ ‘I beg your pardon?’ (not . . . *please*)

We do not use *please* when we give things to people.

‘Have you got a pen I could use?’ ‘Yes, here you are.’ (not . . . *please*)

*Please* is not used as an answer to *Thank you* (see below).

‘Thanks a lot.’ ‘That’s OK’. (not . . . *please*)

3 thank you and *thanks*

*Thanks* is more informal than *thank you*. Common expressions:

*Thank you*. (not *Thanks you*)

*Thank you very much.*

*Thanks very much.*

*Thank goodness it’s Friday*. (not *Thanks goodness* . . .)

*Indeed* (► 499) can be used to strengthen *very much*. This is rather formal.

*Thank you very much indeed*. (but not usually *Thank you indeed*)

*Thank you for* / *Thanks for* can be followed by an *-ing* form. Possessives are unnecessary and are not used.

‘*Thank you for coming.*’ ‘Not at all. *Thank you for having me.*’

Some British people say *Cheers* (informal) to mean *Thanks*.

4 accepting and refusing

We often use *Thank you* / *Thanks* like *Yes, please*, to accept offers.

‘Would you like some potatoes?’ ‘*Thank you.*’ ‘How many?’

To make it clear that one wishes to refuse something, it is normal to say

*No, thank you* / *No, thanks*.

‘Another cake?’ ‘*No, thanks*. I’ve eaten too many already.’

Yes, *thanks* is most often used to confirm that things are all right.

‘Have you got enough potatoes?’ ‘*Yes, thanks.*’

5 replies to thanks

In English, there is not an automatic answer to *Thank you*; British people, especially, do not usually answer when they are thanked for small things. If a reply is necessary, we can say *Not at all* (rather formal), *You’re welcome*, *That’s (quite) all right* or *That’s OK* (informal). Some people say *No problem* (informal).

Compare:

‘*Could you pass the salt?*’ ‘Here you are.’ ‘Thanks.’ (no answer)

‘Here’s your coat.’ ‘Thanks.’ (no answer)

‘Thanks so much for looking after the children.’ ‘That’s all right. Any time.’

(answer necessary)

For more about the language of common social situations, ► 329.

557 point of view

*Point of view* can mean the same as *opinion*.

*Thank you for giving us your point of view* / *opinion*. 
But from somebody’s point of view is not quite the same as in somebody’s view/opinion. It usually means ‘as seen from somebody’s position in life’ (for example as a student, a woman, a Greek or a Catholic), and is used to say how somebody is affected by what happens. Compare:

− In my opinion, war is always wrong. (= I think war . . .)
  (not From my point of view, war is always wrong.)
  He wrote about the war from the point of view of the ordinary soldier.
− In my view, it’s a pretty good school.
  You have to judge a school from the child’s point of view.
− In Professor Lucas’s opinion, everybody should work a 20-hour week.
  From the employers’ point of view, this would cause a lot of problems.

### 558 politic and political

**Politic** is a rather formal word for ‘wise’, ‘prudent’.

_I don’t think it would be politic to ask for a loan just now._

**Political** means ‘connected with politics’.

- **politic history**
- **a political career**

### 559 politics and policy

**Politics** (usually singular but always with -s, ► 117.3) is used to talk about government and related ideas.

_I don’t know much about politics, but I don’t think this is a democracy._

You talk beautifully – you should be in **politics**.

**Policy** is used for people’s rules of behaviour (not necessarily connected with politics).

_After the war, British foreign policy was rather confused._

(Not . . . British foreign politics . . .)

It’s not my **policy** to believe everything I hear.

It’s the company’s **policy** to employ a certain number of disabled people.

### possibility and opportunity ► 547

### practically, nearly and almost ► 366

### 560 prefer

When we say that we prefer one activity to another, two -ing forms can be used. The second can be introduced by to or rather than (more formal).

_I prefer riding to walking._ (not I prefer riding to walk.)

She prefers **making** toys for her children rather than **buying** them.

**Prefer** can also be followed by an infinitive (this is normal after would prefer). →
We can use an infinitive (without to) or an -ing form after rather than in this case.

*She prefers to make toys for her children rather than buy/buying them.*

*I would prefer to stay at home rather than drive/driving to your mother’s.*

For more about to with -ing forms, ► 104.2.

561 **presently**

When presently means ‘now, at present’, it usually comes in mid-position with the verb (► 200).

*Professor Holloway is presently working on plant diseases.*

*The Manager is presently in Canada, but he will contact you on his return.*

Another meaning of presently is ‘not now, later’, ‘in a minute’.

With this meaning, presently usually comes in end-position, or separately as a short answer.

*He’s having a rest now. He’ll be down presently.*

*‘Can I have an ice cream?’ ‘Presently, dear.’*

**pretty, fairly, quite and rather** ► 460

562 **price and prize**

The price is what you pay if you buy something. A prize is what you are given if you have done something exceptional, or if you win a competition.

*What’s the price of the green dress? (not ... the prize of the green dress?)*

*She received the Nobel prize for physics. (not ... the Nobel price ...)*

563 **principal and principle**

These two words have the same pronunciation. The adjective principal means ‘main’, ‘most important’.

*What’s your principal reason for wanting to be a doctor? (not ... your principle reason ...)*

The noun principal means ‘head of a school’ (especially, in Britain, of a school for adults).

*If you want to leave early, you’ll have to ask the Principal.*

A principle is a scientific law or a moral rule.

*Newton discovered the principle of universal gravitation. (not ... the principal of universal gravitation.)*

*She’s a girl with very strong principles.*

**quickly, soon and early** ► 591
In British English, *quite* has two common meanings. Compare:

- *It's quite good, but it could be better.* (= It's OK, not bad.)
- *It's quite impossible.* (= It's completely impossible.)

*Good* is a 'gradable' adjective: things can be more or less good. With gradable words, *quite* usually means something similar to *fairly* or *rather* (for the differences, ► 460) in affirmative clauses. *Impossible* is non-gradable: things are either impossible or not; but they cannot be more or less impossible. With non-gradable words, *quite* means 'completely'. Compare:

- *I'm quite tired, but I can walk a bit further.*
- *I'm quite exhausted* — I couldn't walk another step.
- *It's quite surprising.* (similar to *fairly surprising*)
- *It's quite amazing.* (= absolutely amazing)
- *He speaks Portuguese quite well, but he's got a strong English accent.*
- *He speaks Portuguese quite perfectly.*
- *I quite like her, but she's not one of my closest friends.*
- *Have you quite finished?* (= Have you completely finished?)

In American English *quite* with gradable adjectives more often means something like 'very', not 'fairly/rather'.

**2 word order with nouns**

*Quite* can be used with *a/an* + *noun*. It normally comes before *a/an* if there is a gradable adjective or no adjective.

- *It's quite a nice day.*
- *We watched quite an interesting film last night.*
- *She's quite a woman!* The party was *quite a success.*

With non-gradable adjectives, *quite* normally comes after *a/an* in British English.

- *It was a quite perfect day.* (AmE *It was quite a perfect day.*)

*Quite* is sometimes used before *the* to mean 'exactly', 'completely'.

- *He's going quite the wrong way.* quite the opposite

**3 comparisons**

*Quite* is not used directly before comparatives.

- *She's rather / much / a bit older than me.* (but not *She's quite older* . . .)

But we use *quite better* to mean 'completely recovered' (from an illness).

*Quite similar* means 'fairly/rather similar'; *quite different* means 'completely different'.

**4 quite a bit/few/lot, etc**

*Quite a bit* and *quite a few* (informal) mean almost the same as *quite a lot*.

- *We're having quite a bit of trouble with the kids just now.*
- *We thought nobody would be there, but actually quite a few people came.*
5 not quite
Not quite means ‘not completely’ or ‘not exactly’. It can be used before adjectives, adverbs, verbs and nouns, including nouns with the.
I’m not quite ready – won’t be a minute.
She didn’t run quite fast enough for a record.
I don’t quite agree. That’s not quite the colour I wanted.

quite, fairly, pretty and rather ➤ 460

565 rather: adverb of degree (rather good, etc)

1 meaning
Rather can be used as an adverb of degree. The meaning is similar to ‘quite’ or ‘fairly’, but more emphatic (► 460). This use of rather is less common in American English.
The film was rather good. Some people rather like being miserable.
It’s rather later than I thought. I rather think we’re going to lose.
Rather often suggests ‘more than is usual’, ‘more than was expected’, ‘more than is wanted’ and similar ideas.
‘How was the film?’ ‘Rather good – I was surprised.’
She sings rather well — people often think she’s a professional.
It’s rather warm in here. Let’s open a window.

2 word order with articles
Rather generally comes before articles, but can also come after a/an if there is an adjective.
That’s rather the impression I wanted to give. He’s rather a fool.
Megan’s had rather a good idea. (or Megan’s had a rather good idea.)

3 plural nouns
Rather is not normally used before a plural noun with no adjective.
They’re rather fools.

566 rather: preference

1 rather than
This expression is normally used in ‘parallel’ structures: for example with two adjectives, adverbs, nouns, infinitives or -ing forms.
I’d call her hair chestnut rather than brown.
I’d prefer to go in August rather than in July.
We ought to invest in machinery rather than buildings.
I prefer starting early rather than leaving things to the last minute.
When the main clause has a to-infinitive, rather than is usually followed by an infinitive without to or by an -ing form.
I decided to write rather than phone/phoning.
Rather than use/using the car, I decided to go by bike.
2 would rather

This expression means ‘would prefer to’, and is followed by the infinitive without to. We often use the contraction ‘d rather.

Would you rather stay here or go home?

‘How about a drink?’ ‘I’d rather have something to eat.’

The negative is would rather not.

I’d rather not go out tonight. (not I wouldn’t rather . . . )

Would sooner is sometimes used in the same way as would rather.

Note that would rather like (BrE) does not mean ‘would prefer’; in this expression, rather means ‘quite’, and does not suggest preference. Compare:

‘I’d rather like a cup of coffee.’ (= I’d quite like . . . ) ‘Oh, would you? I’d rather have a glass of beer.’ (= I’d prefer . . . )

3 would rather: past tense with present or future meaning

We can use would rather to say that a person would prefer somebody to do something. We use a special structure with a past tense.

would rather + subject + past tense

I’d rather you went home now.

Tomorrow’s difficult. I’d rather you came next weekend.

My wife would rather we didn’t see each other any more.

‘Shall I open a window?’ ‘I’d rather you didn’t.’

A present tense or present subjunctive is possible (e.g. I’d rather he goes / he go home now), but unusual. To talk about past actions, a past perfect tense is possible.

I’d rather you hadn’t done that.

However, this kind of idea is usually expressed with I wish (632).

I wish you hadn’t done that.

In older English, had rather was used in the same way as would rather.

This structure is still found in grammars, but it is not normally used.

For other structures where a past tense has a present or future meaning, 46.

4 or rather

People often use or rather to correct themselves.

He’s a psychologist – or rather, a psychoanalyst.

(not . . . or better, a psychoanalyst.)

5 would rather and had better

Note that would rather (= would prefer) is not the same as had better (= should, 77). Compare:

I suppose I’d better clean the windows, but I’d rather watch TV.

rather, quite, pretty and fairly 460
567 reason

The preposition for is used both before and after reason.

I need to talk to you for two reasons.

What's the real reason for your depression?

(reason of your depression)

Reason can be followed by a clause beginning why . . . or that . . . .

The reason why I came here was to be with my family.

Do you know the reason that they're closing the factory?

In an informal style, why/that is often left out.

The reason she doesn't like me is that I make her nervous.

Some people consider it incorrect to use a because-clause as a complement after reason (as in Sorry I'm late – the reason is because I overslept).

568 remind and remember

1 meaning: remind and remember

These two verbs are not the same. Reminding somebody means ‘making somebody remember’. Compare:

- Remind me to call Andy. (NOT Remember me to call . . .)
  I'm afraid I won't remember to call Andy.

- This sort of weather reminds me of my home. (NOT This sort of weather
  remembers me . . .)

  This sort of weather makes me remember my home.

But note the special use of remember in Remember me to your parents

(= 'Give my best wishes to your parents') and similar sentences.

For remember + -ing form or infinitive, ► 105.1

2 structures

After remind, we can use an infinitive structure (for actions) or a that-clause

(for facts).

Please remind me to go to the bank. (NOT Please remind me of going . . .)

I reminded him that we hadn't got any bread left.

3 remind . . . of . . .

We use remind . . . of to say that something/somebody makes us remember

the past, or things that have been forgotten.

The smell of hay always reminds me of our old house in the country.

(reminds me our old house . . .)

Remind me of your phone number.

We can also use remind . . . of to talk about similarities.

She reminds me of her mother. (= She is like her mother.)

rent, let and hire ► 486
Word Problems from A to Z

Section 31

569 (the) rest

The rest means ‘what is left’. It is singular in form, and the is always used.

We only use three rooms. The rest of the house is empty.

To talk about what is left after something has been used up, eaten, destroyed, etc, we often use other words.

There were remains of the meal all over the floor. (not There were rests . . .)
Supper tonight is leftovers from lunch. (not . . . rests . . .)

If you divide 100 by 12, the remainder is 4.

When the rest refers to a plural noun, it has a plural verb.

There are four chocolates for Penny, four for Joe and the rest are mine.

(not . . . the rest is mine.)

rise and arise ▶ 375

570 road and street

1 the difference

A street is a road with houses on either side. We use street for roads in towns or villages, but not for country roads.

Cars can park on both sides of the street here.
Our village has only got one street.

Road is used for both town and country.

Cars can park on both sides of our road.
The road out of our village goes up a steep hill.

(not The street out of our village . . .)

2 street names: stress

In street names we normally stress the word Road, but the word before Street.

Marylebone Road   Oxford Street

571 (the) same

1 the same (as)

We normally use the before same.

Give me the same again, please. (not Give me same again, please.)

In a comparison, we use the same (. . .) as.

You’ve got the same idea as me. (not . . . my same idea.)

Her hair’s the same colour as her mother’s. (not . . . the same colour like . . .)

Note the expression the very same (= exactly the same).

Our birthdays are on the very same day.

2 other structures

Before a clause, the same . . . that or the same . . . who can be used.

That’s the same man that/who asked me for money yesterday.

vocabulary • 571 (the) same
As is also possible before a clause, especially with a noun that is the object of the following verb.

He's wearing the same shirt that/as he had on yesterday.

As/who/that can be left out when they refer to the object of the following verb.

He's wearing the same shirt he had on yesterday.

Note also the expression do the same.

Why do you always try to do the same as your brother?

Joe and Kate went on a camping trip, and we’re going to do the same.

572 say and tell

1 meaning and use

Both say and tell are used with direct and indirect speech. (Say is more common than tell with direct speech.)

'Turn right,' I said. (or 'Turn right,' I told him.)

She said that it was my last chance. (or She told me that it was my last chance.)

Tell is only used to mean 'instruct' or 'inform'. So we do not use tell with greetings, exclamations or questions, for example.

He said, 'Good morning.' (but not He told them, 'Good morning.)

Emily said, 'What a nice idea.' (but not Emily told us, 'What a nice idea.)

'What's your problem?' I said. (but not What's your problem? I told her.)

2 say: objects

We say something (to somebody), not say somebody something.

He said a few words to me in Arabic. (not He said me a few words in Arabic.)

She said that she would be late. (not She said me that . . .)

And I say to all the people of this great country . . . (not And I say all the people . . .)

3 tell: objects

After tell, we usually say who is told.

She told me that she would be late. (not She told that . . .)

Tell is used without a personal object in a few expressions. Common examples: tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a story/joke.

I don't think she's telling the truth. (not . . . saying the truth.)

Note also the use of tell to mean 'distinguish', 'understand', as in tell the difference, tell the time.

He's seven years old and he still can't tell the time.

Tell is not used before objects like a word, a name, a sentence, a phrase.

Alice said a naughty word this morning. (not Alice told . . .)

We do not usually use it after tell to refer to a fact.

'What time's the meeting?' 'I'll tell you tomorrow.'

(not I'll tell you it tomorrow.)
4 infinitives
Tell can be used before object + infinitive, in the sense of ‘order’ or ‘instruct’. Say cannot be used like this.

I told the children to go away. (NOT I said the children to go away.)

5 indirect questions
Neither tell nor say can introduce indirect questions (► 260).

James asked whether I wanted to see a film. (NOT James said whether I wanted to see a film; OR James told me whether . . .)

But say and tell can introduce the answers to questions.

Has she said who’s coming? He only told one person where the money was.

For so after say and tell, ► 586.

scarcely, hardly and no sooner ► 480

573 school

In British English, school is not used for a university or similar institution (though university departments may have the word School in their name – e.g. London School of Economics). A British institution with High School in its name is likely to be a secondary school. In American English, school includes university-level institutions. Note also that in Britain, the public schools are an elite group of expensive private schools such as Eton College – very different from state schools.

574 see

1 progressive forms not used
When see means ‘perceive with one’s eyes’, progressive (‘continuous’) forms are not normally used.

Do you see the woman in blue over there? (NOT Are you seeing . . .?)

To talk about seeing something at the moment of speaking, can see is often used, especially in British English (► 84).

I can see an aeroplane. (AmE also I see an airplane.)

( NOT I am seeing an aeroplane)

But we can say that somebody is seeing things if we mean that he/she is imagining things that are not there.

‘Look! A camel!’ ‘You’re seeing things.’

When see means ‘understand’ or ‘have heard’ (► 482), progressive forms are not normally used.

‘We’ve got a problem.’ ‘I see.’

I see they’re talking about putting up taxes again.

2 changes
Progressive forms can be used for changes in people’s ability to see.

I’m seeing much better since I got those new glasses.

I’m seeing a lot of things in this book that I missed when I read it before.
3 'meet', 'arrange', etc
When see means 'meet', 'interview', 'talk to', 'go out with' or 'arrange', 'supervise', progressive forms are possible.

*I'm seeing the dentist tomorrow.*
*Are you still seeing that Henderson woman?*
*Jack's down at the docks. He's seeing that our stuff gets loaded correctly.*

4 other meanings: 'consider', etc
See can mean 'consider', 'think', 'find out', 'discuss' or 'decide'.

*'Can I use the car tonight?' 'I'll see.'*
*'What time do you want to go to the gym?' 'Let me see. How about five o'clock?'
*I'll call the restaurant and see if they've got a table free.*

A preposition is necessary before an object in these cases.

We'll see about that tomorrow. (Not We'll see that tomorrow.)
You'd better see about that with Jim. (Not You'd better see that with Jim.)

See if... can often means 'try to'.

See if you can get him to stop talking.

For see + object + infinitive /-ing form, ► 110.

see, hear, etc with that-clause ► 482

575 see, look (at) and watch

1 see

See is the ordinary verb to say that something 'comes to our eyes', whether or not we are paying attention.

Suddenly I saw something strange. (Not Suddenly I looked at something strange.)

Did you see the article about the strike in today's paper?

2 look (at)

We use look to talk about concentrating, paying attention, trying to see what is there. You can see something without wanting to, but you can only look at something deliberately. Compare:

*I looked at the photo, but I didn't see anybody I knew.*

'Do you see that man?' 'Yes.' 'Look again.' 'Oh no! It's Moriarty!'

He looked at her with his eyes full of love.

When look has an object it is followed by at. When there is no object there is no preposition. Compare:

*Look at me! (Not Look me!)*

*Look! (Not Look at!)*

Note that at is often dropped before a wh-clause.

Look (at) what you've done!
Look who's here!

Look where you're going.
3 watch

Watch is like look at, but suggests that something is happening or going to happen. We watch things that change, move or develop.

Watch that man – I want to know everything he does.
I usually watch a football match on Saturday afternoon.

4 complete experiences: see

Watch is typically used to talk about experiences that are going on, in progress. We often prefer see to talk about the whole of a performance, play, film, match, etc. Compare:

He got into a fight yesterday afternoon while he was watching a football match. (not...while he was seeing a football match.)
Have you ever seen Chaplin’s ‘The Great Dictator’? (not Have you ever watched Chaplin’s ‘The Great Dictator’?)

5 watch TV

Watch is normally used with TV; watch and see are both used to talk about TV programmes and films.

You spend too much time watching TV.
We watched/saw a great film on TV last night.

6 see if/whether

See can be followed by if/whether, in the sense of ‘find out’. Look and watch are not normally used in this way.

See if that suit still fits you. (not Look if that suit...)
I’m looking to see whether there’s any food left. (not I’m looking whether there’s...)
Phone and see whether she’s in.

For infinitives and -ing forms after these verbs, ► 110.
For other meanings of see (and progressive uses), ► 482. 4. For other meanings of look, ► 518.
For if and whether, ► 261. There are similar differences between hear and listen (to), ► 481.

576 seem

1 linking verb: used with adjectives

Seem is a linking verb (► 11); it is followed by adjectives, not adverbs.

You seem angry about something. (not You seem angrily...)

2 seem and seem to be

Seem is often followed by to be. We prefer seem to be when we are talking about objective facts – things that seem definitely to be true. Seem is used without to be when we are talking about subjective impressions. (The difference is not always clear-cut, and both are often possible.) Compare:

- The bus seems to be full.
  She seems excited.
- The doctors have done the tests, and he definitely seems to be mentally ill.
  It seems crazy, but I think I’m in love with my bank manager. (not It seems to be crazy...)}
- According to the experts, the north side of the castle seems to be about 100 years older than the rest.
  He seems older than he is. (NOT He seems to be older than he is – this would suggest that he might actually be older than he is.)
- She doesn’t seem to be ready yet.
  She seems (to be) very sleepy today.

3 with nouns
Seem to be is normal before noun phrases.
  I looked through the binoculars: it seemed to be some sort of large rat.
  (NOT . . . it seemed some sort of large rat.)
  I spoke to a man who seemed to be the boss. (NOT . . . who seemed the boss.)
However, to be can be dropped before noun phrases which express more subjective feelings, especially in British English.
  She seems (to be) a nice girl.
  The cup seemed almost doll’s size in his hands.
  It seems a pity, but I can’t see you this weekend. (NOT It seems to be a pity . . .)

4 other infinitives
Seem can be followed by the infinitives of other verbs besides be.
  Anna seems to need a lot of attention.
Perfect infinitives (► 89) are possible.
  The tax people seem to have made a mistake.
To express a negative idea, we most often use a negative form of seem; but in a more formal style not can go with the following infinitive. Compare:
  He doesn’t seem to be at home.
  He seems not to be at home. (formal)
Note the structure can’t seem to . . .
  I can’t seem to get anything right. (More formal: I seem not to be able to get anything right.)

5 seem like
We can use like, but not as, after seem.
  North Wales seems (like) a good place to go climbing. (NOT . . . seems as a . . .)

6 it seems
It can be a preparatory subject (► 268) for that- and as if-clauses after seem.
  It seems that James and Alice have had a quarrel.
  It seemed as if the night was never going to end.

7 there seems
There (► 605) can be a preparatory subject for seem to be.
  There seems to be some mistake.

For like and as, ► 515. Appear is used in similar ways (► 374).
577 sensible and sensitive

A sensible person has common sense, and does not make stupid decisions.
'I want to buy that dress.' 'Be sensible, dear. It's much too expensive.'

A sensitive person feels things easily or deeply, and may be easily hurt.
Don't shout at her – she's very sensitive. (not... very sensible.)
Have you got a sun cream for sensitive skin? (not... for sensible skin?)

Sensible is a 'false friend' – similar words in some languages mean 'sensitive'.

578 shade and shadow

Shade is protection from the sun.
'I'm hot. Let's find some shade to sit in.'
The temperature's 30 degrees in the shade.

A shadow is the 'picture' made by something that blocks out light.
In the evening your shadow is longer than you are.
There's an old story about a man without a shadow.

shut and close ▶ 422

sick and ill ▶ 494

579 since: tenses

1 main clause: I've known her since...

In sentences with since (referring to time), we normally use present perfect and past perfect tenses in the main clause.
I've known her since 2005. (not I know her since...) We haven't seen Jamie since Christmas. I was sorry when Jacky moved to America; we had been good friends since university days.

However, present and past tenses are also occasionally found, especially in sentences about changes.
You're looking much better since your operation. She doesn't come round to see us so much since her marriage. Since last Sunday I can't stop thinking about you. Things weren't going so well since Father's illness.

2 It's a long time since...

In British English, present and past tenses are common in the structure
It is/was... since...
It's a long time since the last meeting.
It was ages since that wonderful trip.
American English prefers perfect tenses in this structure.

It's been a long time since the last meeting.
It had been ages since that wonderful trip.

3 since-clause: since we were at school

Since can be used as a conjunction of time, introducing its own clause. The tense in the since-clause can be perfect or past, depending on the meaning. Compare:
- I've known her since we were at school together.
- You've drunk about ten cups of tea since you arrived.
- We visit my parents every week since we bought the car.

For more about present perfect tenses, including American usage, ► 47-52.
For past perfect tenses, ► 53-55. For the differences between since, for and from, ► 469.
For since meaning 'as' or 'because', ► 377.

since, for, in and from: time ► 469

since, as, because and for ► 377

580 small and little

Small simply refers to size. It is the opposite of big or large (► 404).
Could I have a small brandy, please?
You're too small to be a police officer.

The adjective little usually expresses some kind of emotion.
Poor little thing – come here and let me look after you.
'What's he like?' 'Oh, he's a funny little man.'
What's that nasty little boy doing in our garden?
They've bought a pretty little house in the country.

In a few fixed expressions, little is used in the same way as small or short.
little finger a little while
the little hand of a clock a little way

In British English little is unusual in 'predicative' position (after a verb), and comparative and superlative forms are not normally used.
The puppy was so small and sweet. (More natural in British English than
The puppy was so little . . .)
He's the smallest baby I've ever seen.
(More natural than . . . the littlest baby . . .)

For little used as a determiner meaning 'not much' (e.g. There's little hope), ► 168.
1 British and American forms

In British English, regular and irregular past tenses and participles are both common: *smelled* and *smelt*. American forms are usually regular.

2 linking verb

*Smell* can be used as a linking verb (► 11), followed by an adjective or noun, to say how something smells. Progressive forms are not used.

> Those roses *smell beautiful*. (not ...smell-beautifully.)
> The soup *smells funny*. What’s in it? (not ...is smelling funny ...)

Before a noun, *smell of* and *smell like* are used.

> The railway carriage *smelt of* beer and old socks.
> His aftershave *smelt like an explosion in a flower shop*.

*Smell* is sometimes used to mean ‘smell bad’.

> *That dog smells.*

3 transitive verb: ‘perceive’

*Smell* can be used with an object, to say what we perceive with our noses. Progressive forms are not used. We often use *can smell* (► 84).

> As we walked into the house, we *smelt something burning*.
> *I can smell supper.*

4 transitive verb: ‘investigate’

Another transitive use is to say that we are using our noses to find out something. Progressive forms can be used.

> ‘What are you doing?’ ‘I’m *smelling the meat to see if it’s still OK.*’

581 *smell*

582 *so*: adverb meaning ‘like this/that’

1 after *seem, appear, etc*

*So* can be used in a formal style in a few cases to mean ‘like this/that’, ‘in this/that way’. This happens, for example, after *seem, appear, remain, more and less*.

> ‘Will the business make a loss this year?’ ‘It *appears so.*’
> The weather is stormy, and will *remain so* over the weekend.
> She was always nervous, and after her accident she became *even more so.*
> *I read the front page very carefully, and the rest of the paper less so.*

2 not used in other cases

In other cases, *so* is not normally used adverbially to mean ‘like this/that’, ‘in this/that way’.

> Look – *hold it up in the air like this*. (not ...hold it up in the air *so.*)
> When he laughs *like that* I want to scream. (not *When he laughs so ...*)
> I don’t think we should do it in *that way*. (not ...do it *so.*)
> *He says he is ill and he looks it.* (not ...he looks *so.*)
583 so (conjunction) and then

So and then can both be used in replies, to mean ‘since that is so’, ‘it follows from what you have said’.

'It's more expensive to travel on Friday.' ‘Then/So I’ll leave on Thursday.’
'I’ll be needing the car.' ‘Then/So I suppose I’ll have to take a taxi.’

So (but not then) can also be used when the same speaker connects two ideas, to mean ‘it follows from what I have said’.

'It’s more expensive to travel on Friday, so I’ll leave on Thursday.'

(Not... Then I’ll leave on Thursday.)

584 so (degree adverb): so tired, so fast

1 meaning
So means ‘that much’ or ‘to that extent’. It is used when we are talking about a high degree of some quality – in situations where very is also a suitable word.

I’m sorry you’re so tired. (= I know you’re very tired, and I’m sorry.)
It was so cold that we couldn’t go out. (= It was very cold weather, and because of that we couldn’t go out.)

I wish she didn’t drive so fast.

2 so and very
Very (► 616) is used when we are giving new information. So is mainly used to refer to information which has already been given, which is already known, or which is obvious. Compare:
– You’re very late. (giving new information)
  I’m sorry I’m so late. (referring to information which is already known)
– It was very warm in Scotland. (giving new information)
  I didn’t think it would be so warm. (referring to information which is already known)

3 emphatic use
In an informal style, so can also be used like very to give new information, when the speaker wishes to emphasise what is said. This structure is rather like an exclamation (► 223).

He’s so bad-tempered! (= How bad-tempered he is!) You’re so right!

4 so... that
We use so, not very, before that-clauses.

It was so cold that we stopped playing. (Not It was very cold that we stopped playing.)

He spoke so fast that nobody could understand. (Not He spoke very fast that...)

5 before adjectives and adverbs
We can use so before an adjective alone (without a noun) or an adverb.

The milk was so good that we couldn’t stop drinking it.
Why are you driving so fast?
So is not used with adjective + noun.

I didn't expect such terrible weather. (NOT ... so terrible weather.)

I enjoyed my stay in your country, which is so beautiful. (NOT I enjoyed my stay in your so beautiful country.)

For such, ► 597.

6 so much, etc

We can use so much and so many (► 587), so few and so little with or without nouns.

I've bought so many new books; I don't know when I'll read them.
There were so few interesting people there that we decided to go home.
I've read so much and learnt so little.

7 so and so much

We use so, not so much, before adjectives without nouns (► 584.5 above).

Compare:
- She had so much heavy luggage that she couldn't carry it.
  Her luggage was so heavy that she couldn't carry it. (NOT Her luggage was so much heavy . . . )
- I've never seen so much beautiful jewellery.
  The jewellery is so beautiful! (NOT . . . so much beautiful!)

But we use so much, not so, before comparatives.

I'm glad you're feeling so much better. (NOT . . . so better.)

8 so . . . as to . . .

There is a structure with so followed by adjective + as to + infinitive.
This is formal and not very common.

Would you be so kind as to tell me the time? (= . . . kind enough to . . . )
(Would you be so kind and . . . OR Would you be so kind to . . . )

9 so . . . a . . .

There is another rather formal structure with so + adjective + a/an + noun (► 187).

I had never before met so gentle a person. (= . . . such a gentle person.)

585 so and not with hope, believe, etc

1 instead of that-clauses

We often use so after believe, hope, expect, imagine, suppose, guess, reckon, think, be afraid, instead of repeating words in a that-clause.

'Is Alex here?' 'I think so. (NOT . . . I think that Alex is here.)'
'Do you think we'll be in time?' 'I hope so. (NOT I hope.)'
'Did you lose?' 'I'm afraid so.'

We do not use so before a that-clause.

I hope that we'll have good weather. (NOT I hope so, that we'll have good weather.)
Note the special use of *I thought so* to mean 'my suspicions were correct'.

*Empty your pockets. Ah, I thought so! You've been stealing chocolate again.*

*So* is not used after *know* (► 504).

'You're late.' 'I know.' or *I know that.* (NOT *I know so.*)

### 2 negative structures

We can make these expressions negative in two ways.

- **affirmative verb + not**
  
  'Did you win?' 'I'm afraid not.'
  'We won't be in time for the train.' 'No, I suppose not.'

- **negative verb + so**
  
  'You won't be here tomorrow?' 'I don't suppose so.'
  'Will it rain?' 'I don't expect so.'

*Hope* and *be afraid* are always used in the first structure.

*I hope not.* (NOT *I don't hope so.*)

*Think* is more common in the second structure.

*I don't think so.* (More common than *I think not.*)

### 3 so at the beginning of a clause

We can use *so* at the beginning of a clause with *say, hear, understand, tell, believe* and a number of other verbs. This structure is used to say how the speaker learnt something.

*It's going to be a cold winter, or so the newspaper says.*

'Emily's getting married.' 'Yes, so I heard.'

'The Professor's ill.' 'So I understand.'

---

### 586 so with *say* and *tell*

#### 1 instead of *that*-clauses

*So* can be used after *say* and *tell* instead of repeating information in a *that*-clause.

*She's going to be the next president. Everybody says so.* (= . . . Everybody says that she's going to be the next president.)

'You've got to clean the car.' 'Who says so?'

*Taxes are going up. Joseph told me so.*

Note that *so* is used in this way mostly when we are talking about the authority for statements, about reasons why we should believe them. When we simply want to identify the speaker, we prefer *that*. Compare:

'Megan's crazy.' 'Who says so?' 'Dr Bannister.'

'Megan's crazy.' 'Who said that?' 'I did.'

#### 2 I told you so.

*I told you so* usually means 'I warned you, but you wouldn't listen to me'.

'Mummy, I've broken my train.' 'I told you so. You shouldn't have tried to ride on it.'
3 other verbs

So cannot be used after all verbs of saying. We cannot say, for example, *She promised me so.*

**so and such**  ➤ 597

### 587 so much and so many

1 the difference

The difference between *so much* and *so many* is the same as between *much* and *many* (➤ 165). *So much* is used with singular (uncountable) nouns; *so many* is used with plurals.

- *I had never seen so much food in my life.*
- *She had so many children that she didn’t know what to do.*

(NOT *... so much children...*)

We use *so*, not *so much*, to modify adjectives and adverbs (➤ 584.5).

- *You’re so beautiful.* (NOT *You’re so much beautiful.*)

But *so much* is used before comparatives (➤ 207).

- *She’s so much more beautiful now.*

2 so much/many without a noun

We can drop a noun after *so much/many*, if the meaning is clear.

- *I can’t eat all that meat — there’s so much!*
- *I was expecting a few phone calls, but not so many.*

3 so much as an adverb

*So much* can be used as an adverb.

- *I wish you didn’t smoke so much.*

4 special structures with so much

We can use *not so much... as* or *not so much... but* to make corrections and clarifications.

- *It wasn’t so much his appearance I liked as his personality.*
- *It’s not so much that I don’t want to go, but I just haven’t got time.*

In negative and *if*-clauses, *so much as* can be used to mean ‘even’.

- *He didn’t so much as say thank you, after all we’d done for him.*
- *If he so much as looks at another woman, I’ll kill him.*

### 588 so that and in order that

1 purpose

These structures are used to talk about purpose. *So that* is more common than *in order that*, especially in an informal style. They are often followed by auxiliary verbs such as *can* or *will*; *may* is more formal.

- *She’s staying here for six months so that she can perfect her English.*
I’m putting it in the oven now so that it’ll be ready by seven o’clock.

We send monthly reports in order that they may have full information.

In an informal style, that can be dropped after so (► 265).

I’ve come early so I can talk to you.

2 present tenses for future

Present tenses are sometimes used for the future.

I’ll send the contract express so that she gets / she’ll get it before Tuesday.

I’m going to make an early start so that I don’t/won’t get stuck in the traffic.

We must write to him, in order that he does/will not feel that we are hiding things.

3 past structures

In sentences about the past, would, could or should are generally used with verbs after so that / in order that. Might is possible in a very formal style.

Emily talked to the shy girl so that she wouldn’t feel left out.

I took my golf clubs so that I could play on Sunday.

They met on a Saturday in order that everybody should be free to attend.

He built a chain of castles so that he might control the whole country.

For the infinitive structures in order to and so as to, ► 112.2. For so . . . that expressing result, ► 584.4.

For lest meaning ‘so that . . . not’, ► 511.

589 so-and-so; so-so

1 so-and-so

This informal expression is used when one cannot remember a name.

What’s happened to old so-and-so? (= . . . what’s his name?)

It can also replace a swear word or an insult.

She’s an old so-and-so.

2 so-so

This informal expression means ‘neither good nor bad.’

‘How are you feeling?’ ‘So-so.’ (not . . . So-and-so.)

‘Was the concert any good?’ ‘So-so.’

590 some time, sometime and sometimes

Some time (with two stresses: /ˌsam ˈtaɪm/) means ‘quite a long time’.

I’m afraid it’ll take some time to repair your car.

She’s lived in Italy for some time, so she speaks Italian quite well.

Sometime (/ˈsʌmtaɪm/) refers to an indefinite time, usually in the future.

It can also be written as two words: some time.

Let’s have dinner together sometime next week.

When will I get married – this year, next year, sometime, never?
Sometimes (ˈsʌmtaɪmz/) is an adverb of frequency (► 198.1). It means ‘on some occasions’, ‘more than once’ (past, present or future).

I sometimes went skiing when I lived in Germany. Sometimes, in the long winter evenings, I just sit and think about life.

For sometimes and once, ► 542

591 soon, early and quickly

1 soon

Soon means ‘a short time after now’ or ‘a short time after then’.

Get well soon. (not Get well early.)
The work was hard at the beginning, but she soon got used to it.
‘I’ll pay you soon.’ ‘The sooner the better.’

For no sooner . . . than, ► 480.

2 early

The adverb early means ‘near the beginning of the time-period that we are thinking about’. It does not usually mean ‘a short time after now/then’.

Early that week, Luke was called to the police station.
We usually take a long break early in the year. (not . . . soon in the year.)
I usually get up early and go to bed early. (not I usually get up soon . . .)

 Sometimes early means ‘before the expected time’.
The plane arrived twenty minutes early.

Early can also be used as an adjective.
I caught an early train. You’re very early.
It’s the earliest known example of a cave painting.

In a formal style, the adjective early can sometimes have the same kind of meaning as soon.
I should be grateful for an early reply.
Best wishes for an early recovery.

A watch or clock is fast or slow, not early or late.
My watch is five minutes fast.

3 quickly

Quickly refers to the speed with which something is done. Compare:

- Let’s get her to the doctor quickly. (It’s urgent – we need to move fast.)
  I ought to see the doctor soon. (not an emergency)
- He did the repair quickly but not very well.
  I hope you can do the repair soon – I need the car.

592 sort of, kind of and type of

1 articles

The article a/an is usually dropped after sort of, kind of and type of, but structures with articles are possible in an informal style.

That’s a funny sort of (a) car. What sort of (a) bird is that?
2 singular and plural; these sort of, etc
      When we are talking about one sort of thing, we can use sort of, kind of or
type of followed by a singular noun.
      *This sort of car is enormously expensive to run.*
      I'm interested in any new *type of development* in computer science.
Singular sort of, kind of and type of can also be followed by plural nouns,
especially in an informal style.
      I'm interested in any new *kind of developments* . . .
Plural demonstratives (these and those) can also be used.
      *These sort of cars are enormously expensive to run.*
      Do you smoke *those kind of cigarettes*?
This structure (these sort of, etc) is often felt to be incorrect, and is usually
avoided in a formal style. This can be done by using a singular noun (see
above), by using plural sorts/kinds/types, or by using the structure . . . of this/
that sort/kind/type.
      *This sort of car is* . . .    *These kinds of car(s) are* . . .
      *Cars of that type are* . . .

3 softeners
      In an informal style, sort of and kind of can be used before almost any word or
expression, or at the end of a sentence, to show that we are not speaking very
exactly, or to make what we say less definite.
      *We sort of thought you might forget.*
      *Sometimes I sort of wonder whether I shouldn't sort of get a job.*
      *I've had sort of an idea about what we could do.*
      *She's kind of strange. I've changed my mind, kind of.*

593 sound

      *Sound* is a linking verb (► 11). It is followed by adjectives, not adverbs.
      *You sound unhappy.* What's the matter?
Progressive forms are not very common.
      *Your idea sounds great.* (not *Your idea's sounding great.*)
However, progressive forms are possible when there is an idea of change.
      *The car sounds / is sounding a bit rough these days.*
      *That sounds like James coming up the stairs.*
      *It sounds as if/though he's had a hard day.*

south and southern, etc ► 442

594 speak and talk

1 little difference
      There is little difference between *speak* and *talk*. In certain situations one
or the other is preferred, but they are usually both possible.
2 formality

*Talk* is the more usual word for informal communication.

> When she walked into the room everybody stopped *talking*.
> Could I *talk* to you about my plans for a few minutes?

*Speak* is often used for communication in more serious or formal situations.

> I’ll have to *speak* to that boy – he’s getting very lazy.
> They had a fight last week, and now they’re not *speaking* to one another.
> After she had finished explaining her plans, nobody *spoke*.

3 lectures, etc

*Talk* is often used for the act of giving an informal lecture (a *talk*); *speak* is preferred for more formal lectures, sermons, etc. Compare:

> This is Patrick Allen, who’s going to *talk* to us about gardening.
> This is Professor Rosalind Bowen, who is going to *speak* to us on recent developments in low-temperature physics.
> The Pope *spoke* to the crowd for seventy minutes about world peace.

4 languages

*Speak* is the usual word to refer to knowledge and use of languages, and to the physical ability to speak.

> She *speaks* three languages fluently.
> We *spoke* Dutch so that the children wouldn’t understand.
> His throat operation has left him unable to *speak*.

5 other cases

One usually asks to *speak to* somebody on the phone (AmE also *speak with*).

> Hello. Could I *speak to* Karen, please?

*Talk* is used before *sense, nonsense* and other words with similar meanings.

> You’re *talking* complete nonsense, as usual.
> (Not *You’re speaking* complete nonsense... )

**start and begin**  ➤ 398

595 *still, yet and already*: time

1 meanings

*Still, yet and already* can all be used to talk about things which are going on, or expected, around the present. Briefly:

– *still* is used to say that something is continuing and has not stopped

– *yet* is used to talk about something that is expected

– *already* is used to say that something has happened early, or earlier than it might have happened.

2 *still*

*Still* is used to say that something has, perhaps surprisingly, not finished.

> She’s still asleep. Is it still raining?

vocabulary • 595 *still, yet and already*: time
I've been thinking for hours, but I still can't decide.
You're not still seeing that Jackson boy, are you?
Still usually goes with the verb, in 'mid-position' (► 200).

3 yet

Not yet is used to say that something which is expected has not happened (but we think that it will).

'Is Sophie here?' 'Not yet.' The mail hasn't come yet.
In questions, we use yet to ask whether something expected has happened.
Is supper ready yet? Has the mail come yet?
Yet usually goes at the end of a clause, but it can go immediately after not in a formal style.
Don't eat the pears — they aren't ripe yet.
The pears are not yet ripe. (more formal)

4 already

Already is used to say that something has happened earlier than expected, or earlier than it might have happened.

'When’s Sophie going to come?' 'She’s already here.'
'You must go to Scotland.' ‘I’ve already been there.’
Have you already finished? That was quick!
Already usually goes with the verb, in 'mid-position' (► 200). It can also go at the end of a clause, for emphasis.
Are you here already? You must have run all the way.
We do not usually put already before time expressions.

When I was fourteen I already knew that I wanted to be a doctor.

(Not already when I was fourteen...)

5 still not or not yet?

Still not looks back towards the past; not yet looks towards the future.
Compare:
– She still hasn’t got a job. (Looking back: she hasn’t had a job for a long time, and this situation is continuing.)
She hasn’t got a job yet. (Looking forward: she hasn’t got a job now, but we’re hoping that she will get one.)
– I still can’t speak Russian, after all these years of study.
  I can’t speak French yet, but I hope I will be able to soon.

6 yet or already in questions

Questions with already often suggest that something has happened. Compare:
– Have you met Professor Hawkins yet?
  (= I don’t know whether you’ve met him.)
Have you already met Professor Hawkins?
  (= I think you’ve probably met him.)
– Is my coat dry yet?
  Is my coat dry already? That was quick!

7 tenses

Various tenses are possible with all three words. In British English, perfect tenses are common with already and yet; Americans often use past tenses. Compare:
- *Have you paid yet?* (BrE)
  *Have you paid / Did you pay yet?* (AmE)
- *She has already left.* (BrE)
  *She (has) already left.* (AmE)

8 related to a past moment
All three words can be related to a past moment instead of to the present.

*I went to see if she had woken up yet, but she was still asleep. This was embarrassing, because her friends had already arrived.*

9 *yet* meaning ‘still’
*Yet* is normally used in questions and negative sentences. But it is sometimes used in affirmative sentences in a formal style to mean ‘still’.

*We have yet to hear from the bank.* (= We are still waiting to hear . . .)

10 *all ready*
*All ready* is not the same as *already*: it simply means the same as *all + ready*.

Compare:
‘*When’s Megan coming?’ ‘She’s already arrived.*’
‘*Are you all ready?’ ‘No, Dan isn’t.’*

For *still* as a discourse marker meaning ‘however’, ► 301.2.

**street and road** ► 570

596 *such*

1 *word order*
*S*uch is used with nouns and noun phrases. It comes before *a/an*.

*such people*  *such interesting ideas*  
*such a decision* (not *a-such decision*)

2 ‘of this/that kind’
*S*uch can mean ‘like this/that’, ‘of this/that kind’. This is most common in a formal style, with abstract nouns.

*The committee wishes to raise fees. I would oppose such a decision.*

*There are various forms of secret writing. Such systems are called ‘codes’.*

In an informal style, and with concrete nouns, we prefer *like this/that* or *this/that kind of*.

* . . . systems like this are called . . .*

*He’s got an old Rolls-Royce. I’d like a car like that.* (not *I’d like such a car.*)

3 high degree
Another use of *such* is to talk about a high degree of some quality. In this sense, *such* is common before *adjective + noun*.

*I’m sorry you had such a bad journey.* (= You had a very bad journey, and I’m sorry.)

*It was a pleasure to meet such interesting people.*
Such is also possible with this meaning before a noun alone, when the noun has an emphatic descriptive meaning.

I'm glad your concert was such a success.
Why did she make such a fuss about the dates?

4 such and very, great, etc

Very, great and similar words are also used to talk about a high degree of some quality. The difference is that they give new information; such (= like this/that) normally refers to information that is already known. Compare:

I've had a very bad day. (giving information)
Why did you have such a bad day? (The information is already known.)
The weather was very cold.
I wasn't expecting such cold weather.
There was great confusion.
Why was there such confusion?

However, in a very informal style such can also be used to mean 'very' or 'great', especially in exclamations.

She has such a marvellous voice! He's such an idiot!

5 such . . . that; such . . . as to

Structures with very cannot be followed directly by that-clauses. Instead, we can use such . . . that.

It was such a cold afternoon that we stopped playing. (not It was a very cold afternoon that . . . )

There is also a structure with such followed by . . . + as to + infinitive.

This is formal and not very common.

It was such a loud noise as to wake everybody in the house.
(Less formal: . . . such a loud noise that it woke . . . )

6 such as

Such as is used to introduce examples.

My doctor told me to avoid fatty foods such as bacon or hamburgers.

7 such-and-such

Note this informal expression.

She's always telling you that she's met such-and-such a famous person.
(= . . . one or other famous person.)

597 such and so

1 such before (adjective +) noun

We use such before a noun (with or without an adjective).

They're such fools. (not They're so fools.)

It was such good milk that we couldn't stop drinking it. (not It was so good milk that . . . )

Such comes before a/an.

She's such a baby.
I've never met such a nice person. (not . . . a such/so nice person.)
2. so before adjective, adverb, etc

We use so before an adjective alone (without a noun) or an adverb.

*She's so babyish.* (not *She's such babyish.*)

*The milk was so good that we couldn't stop drinking it.*

*Why do you talk so slowly?*

We can also use so before *much, many, few* and *little.*

*We've got so much to do,* and *so little time.*

We use *so much,* not *so,* before comparatives.

*I'm glad you're feeling so much better.* (not *...so better.*)

For *so beautiful a day,* etc, ▶ 187.

For more about the meaning and use of *such,* ▶ 596. For more about *so,* ▶ 584.

### 598 suggest

1. infinitive not used

*Suggest* is not followed by *object + infinitive.* *That*-clauses and *-ing* structures are common.

*Her uncle suggested that she (should) get a job in a bank.*

*Her uncle suggested getting a job in a bank.* (not *Her uncle suggested her to get a job in a bank.*)

2. indirect object not used

*Suggest* is not normally followed by an indirect object without a preposition.

*Can you suggest a restaurant to us?* (not *Can you suggest us a restaurant?*)

3. verb forms in that-clauses

In *that*-clauses after *suggest,* various verb forms are possible when we suggest what people should do.

Ordinary present and past tenses can be used.

*Her uncle suggests that she gets a job in a bank.*

*He suggested that she got a job in a bank.*

*Should + infinitive without to* is common.

*He suggests that she should get a job in a bank.*

*He suggested that she should get a job in a bank.*

Subjunctives (▶ 232) are also used, especially in American English.

*He suggests that she get a job in a bank.*

*He suggested that she get a job in a bank.*

4. direct suggestions

In direct suggestions ('I suggest ...'), *should* is not generally used.

*I suggest (that) you get ...* (not *I suggest that you should get.*)

**suit and fit** ▶ 467
Suppose, supposing and what if can all be used with present tenses to make suggestions about things that might happen.

'I haven't got a tablecloth.' 'Suppose we use a sheet.'

'Let's go to the beach.' 'Supposing it rains.'

What if we invite your mother next weekend and go away the week after?

A past tense makes the suggestion sound less definite.

'Daddy, can I watch TV?' 'Suppose you did your homework first.'

'I'm going to climb up there.' 'No! supposing you slipped!'

What if I came tomorrow instead of this afternoon?

In sentences about the past, past perfect tenses are used to talk about situations that did not occur.

That was very clever, but supposing you had slipped?

For more about past tenses with present or future meanings, ► 46.

Surely is more common in British than American English.

1 not the same as certainly

Surely does not usually mean the same as certainly. We use certainly when we simply tell people that something is true. We use surely mostly to ask for people's agreement: to persuade them that something must be true, or that there are good reasons for believing it. Compare:

- House prices are certainly rising fast at the moment. (‘I know this is so.’)
  House prices will surely stop rising soon. (‘I believe this must be so.’)
- I certainly transferred the money on Monday. (‘I know.’)
  She’s surely got the money by now. (‘It seems very probable.’)

2 belief in spite of . . .

Surely can be used when we say that we think something is true in spite of reasons to believe the opposite, or in spite of suggestions to the contrary. These sentences are often like questions.

‘I’m going to marry Sonia.’ ‘Surely she’s married already?’
Surely that’s Henry over there? I thought he was in Scotland.

‘Is it tonight we’re going out?’ ‘No, tomorrow, surely?’

With not, surely can express difficulty in believing something.

‘I’m failed his exam.’ ‘Oh, surely not?’
Surely you’re not going out in that hat?
You don’t think I’m going to pay for you, surely?
601 sympathetic

Sympathetic usually means ‘sharing somebody’s feelings’ or ‘sorry for somebody who is in trouble’.

I’m sympathetic towards the strikers.
She’s always very sympathetic when people feel ill.

Sympathetic is a ‘false friend’ for speakers of certain languages. It does not usually mean the same as, for example, sympatyczny, sympathisch, sympatisk or simpático.

The people in my class are all very nice / pleasant / easy to get along with.

(Not...are all very sympathetic.)

602 take: time

We can use take to say how much time we need to do something.
Five structures are common

1 The person is the subject:

   person + take + time + infinitive

   I took three hours to get home last night.
   She takes all day to get out of the bathroom.
   They took two hours to unload the ferry.

2 The activity is the subject:

   activity + take (+ person) + time

   The drive took me three hours.
   Gardening takes a lot of time.
   Unloading the ferry took them two hours.

3 The object of the activity is the subject:

   object of activity + take (+ person) + infinitive

   The ferry took them two hours to unload.
   This house will take all week to clean.

4 Preparatory it is the subject:

   It + take (+ person) + time + infinitive

   It took me three hours to get home last night.
   It takes ages to do the shopping.

5 Before/until is used:

   It + take (+ person) + time + before/until.

   It took us six weeks before/until we got the house clean.
   It took a long time before/until she felt comfortable in her new school.
603  taste

1 linking verb

Taste can be used as a linking verb (►11), followed by an adjective or noun, to say how something tastes. Progressive forms are not used.

- This tastes nice. What's in it? (not . . . tastes nicely.)
- The wine tastes funny. (not . . . is tasting funny . . .)

Before a noun, taste of and taste like are used.

- The fish soup tasted mostly of garlic.
- Her lips tasted like wild strawberries.

2 transitive verb: ‘perceive’

Taste can be used with an object, to say what we perceive with our sense of taste. Progressive forms are not used. We often use can taste (►84).

- I can taste onion and mint in the sauce. (not I am tasting . . .)

3 transitive verb: ‘investigate’

Another transitive use is to say that we are using our sense of taste to find out something. Progressive forms can be used.

- ‘Stop eating the cake.’ ‘I’m just tasting it to see if it’s OK.’

604  thankful and grateful

Grateful is the normal word for people’s reactions to kindness, favours, etc.

- I’m very grateful for all your help. (not I’m very thankful . . .)
- She wasn’t a bit grateful to me for repairing her car.

Thankful is used especially for feelings of relief at having avoided a danger, or at having come through an unpleasant experience.

- I’m thankful that we got home before the storm started.
- We feel very thankful that she didn’t marry him after all.
- Well, I’m thankful that’s over.

then and so  ►583
605  there

The spelling *there* is used for two words with completely different pronunciations and uses.

1  adverb of place

*There* (pronounced /ðeə(r)/) is an adverb meaning ‘in that place’.

*What’s that green thing over there?*

*There’s the book I was looking for.*

For the difference between *here* and *there*, ► 484.

2  introductory subject

*There* (most often pronounced /beə(r)/) is used as an introductory subject in sentences beginning *there is, there are, there might be,* etc. For details, ► 20.

*There’s a book under the piano.*

*there and here* ► 484

606  think

1  ‘have an opinion’: not progressive

When *think* is used for opinions, progressive forms are unusual.

*I don’t think* much of his latest book. *(NOT I’m not thinking much . . .)*

*Who do you think* will win the election? *(NOT Who are you thinking . . .?)*

2  other meanings: progressive possible

When *think* has other meanings (e.g. *consider* or *plan*) progressives are possible.

*You’re looking worried. What are you thinking about?* *(NOT . . . What do you think about?)*

*I’m thinking of changing my job.*

3  -ing forms

After *think*, -ing forms can be used, but infinitives are not usually possible unless there is an object (► 606.4 below).

*She’s thinking of going to Brazil next year.* *(NOT She’s thinking to go . . .)*

However, *think* + infinitive can be used when we talk about remembering to do something, or having the good sense to do something.

*Did you think to close the windows when it started raining?*

4  *think* + object (+ to be) + complement

In a very formal style, *think* is sometimes followed by an object and an adjective or noun complement.

*They thought her fascinating.*  *We thought him a fool.*

*It* can be used as a preparatory object (► 269) for an infinitive or clause.

*I thought it better to pretend that I knew nothing.*

*We thought it important that she should go home.*
To be is occasionally used before the complement (suggesting objective judgment rather than subjective impression), but this is very unusual.

They thought him to be a spy.

In more normal styles, that-clauses are preferred after think.

They thought that she was fascinating.

We thought that he was a fool.

However, the passive equivalent of the object + complement structure is reasonably common, usually with to be.

He was thought to be a spy.

5 transferred negation: I don’t think . . .

When think is used to introduce a negative clause, we most often put not with think, rather than with the following clause (► 219).

I don’t think it will rain. (More natural than I think it won’t rain.)

Emily doesn’t think she can come.

However, we can express surprise with I thought . . . not.

Hello! I thought you weren’t coming!

6 indirect speech

Think does not usually introduce indirect questions.

I was wondering if I could do anything to help. (More natural than I was thinking if . . .)

7 I thought . . .

Note the use of stressed I thought . . . to suggest that the speaker was right.

Compare:

'It isn’t very nice.' ‘Oh, dear. I thought you’d LIKE it. (But I was wrong.)'

'It’s beautiful!' ‘Oh, I am glad. I THOUGHT you’d like it. (And I was right.)'

8 I had thought . . ., I should think, etc

Past perfect forms can suggest that the speaker was mistaken, especially when had is stressed.

I had thought that we were going to be invited to dinner.

I should think and I should have thought (also I would / I’d . . .) are used (mostly in British English) to introduce guesses.

I should think we’ll need at least twelve bottles of wine.

I’d have thought we could expect at least forty people.

This structure can also introduce criticisms.

I should have thought he could have washed his hands, at least.

For I (don’t) think so and I thought so, ► 585.

though and although ► 371

607 through: time

In American English, through can be used to mean ‘up to and including’.

The park is open from May through September.
In British English, *through* is not normally used in this way. Instead, British people say, for example, *to . . . inclusive*, or *until the end of . . .*

*The park is open from May to September inclusive.* (or . . . *from May until the end of September.*)

**through, across and over ➤ 357**

### 608 time

#### 1 countability and article use

*Time* has various uses, some countable and some uncountable (for full details see a good dictionary). Most of these are straightforward, but there are problems in two areas:

**a measure of duration: how long**

When we talk about the number of hours, days, etc that are needed to complete something, *time* is generally uncountable (and therefore used without *a*).

*How much time do we need to load the van?*

*It took quite some time to persuade her to talk to us.*

*Don’t worry – there’s plenty of time.*  
*This is a complete waste of time.*

However, *time* is countable in certain expressions like *a long/short time* and *quite a time* (BrE).

*I took a long time to get to sleep.*  
*She was away for quite a time.*

*The time* can be used to mean ‘enough time’; *the* is often dropped.

*Just come with me – I haven’t got (the) time to explain.*

For the use of *take* with expressions of time, ➤ 602.

**b clock times**

When we talk about clock times, *time* is countable.

*Six o’clock would be a good time to meet.*

*She phoned me at various times yesterday.*

*The* is dropped in the expression *it’s time.*

*It’s time to stop.* (NOT *It’s the time to stop.*)

#### 2 without preposition

Prepositions are often dropped before some common expressions with *time.*

*He’s busy. Why don’t you come another time?* (More natural than  
* . . . *at another time.*)

*What time does the match start?* (More natural than *At what time . . . ?*)

*You won’t fool me this time.*

In relative structures after *time*, *that* is often used instead of *when* in an informal style (or dropped).

*Do you remember the time (that) Freddy pretended to be a ghost?*  
*You can come up and see me any time (that) you like.*

*The first time (that) I saw her, my heart stopped.*

For similar structures with other time words, and with *place, way* and *reason*, ➤ 237.7.
3 **on time and in time**

*On time* means 'at the planned time', 'neither late nor early'. The opposite is 'early' or 'late'. It is often used to refer to timetabled events.

**Only one of the last six trains has been on time.** *(not .. . in time:)*

Daniel wants the discussion to start exactly **on time**. *(not . . . in time:)*

*In time* means ‘with enough time to spare’, 'before the last moment'. The opposite is **too late**.

**We arrived in time to get good seats.** *(not . . . on time to get good seats:)*

He would have died if they hadn’t got him to the hospital **in time**.

*(not . . . got him to the hospital on time:)*

**I nearly drove into the car in front, but I stopped just in time.**

For structures after *It's time*, ► 502. For ways of telling the time, ► 325. For *by the time*, ► 414. For tenses with *this is the first time . . ., this is the last time . . . and similar structures, ► 56.

**to and at/in** ► 385

609 **tonight**

*Tonight* refers to the present or coming night, not to the past night (*last night*). Compare:

*I had a terrible dream last night.* *(not I had a terrible dream tonight:)*

*I hope I sleep better tonight.*

610 **too**

1 **too and very**

*Too* is different from *very* – **too** means ‘more than enough’, ‘more than necessary’ or ‘more than is wanted’. Compare:

- He's a very intelligent child.
  He's **too** intelligent for his class – he's not learning anything.

- It was very cold, but we went out.
  It was **too** cold to go out, so we stayed at home.

2 **too and too much**

Before adjectives without nouns and before adverbs we use **too**, not **too much**.

*You're too kind to me.* *(not You're too much kind to me:)*

*I arrived too early.* *(not I arrived too much early:)*

**Too much** is used, for example, before nouns. For details, ► 611.

*I've got too much work.*

3 **modification: much too, far too, etc**

Expressions which modify comparatives (► 207) also modify **too**.

*much too old* *(not very-too-old)*

*a little too confident*

*a lot too big*

*a bit too soon*

*far too young*

*rather too often*
4 not used before adjective + noun

Too is not normally used before adjective + noun.

I put down the bag because it was too heavy. (NOT I put down the too-heavy bag.)

She doesn't like men who are too tall. (NOT She doesn't like too-tall men.)

Let's forget this problem - it's too difficult. (NOT Let's forget this too-difficult problem.)

In a rather formal style, too can be used before adjective + a/an + noun (► 187). Note the word order.

It's too cold a day for tennis.

5 too . . . + infinitive

We can use an infinitive structure after too + adjective/adverb.

He's too old to work. It's far too cold to go out.

We can also use an infinitive structure after too much/many.

There was too much snow to go walking.

If the infinitive has its own subject, this is introduced by for (► 113).

It's too late for the pubs to be open.

There was too much snow for us to go walking.

6 too salty to drink, etc

The subject of a sentence with too can also be the object of a following infinitive.

(For more about this structure, ► 101.4). Object pronouns are not normally used after the infinitive in this case.

The water is too salty to drink. (NOT The water is too salty to drink it.)

However, object pronouns are possible in structures with for.

The water is too salty for us to drink it.

Note the two possible meanings of sentences like He's too stupid to teach:

1. He's too stupid to be a teacher.

2. He's too stupid for anyone to teach - he can't be taught.

7 That's really too kind of you.

In informal speech too can sometimes be used to mean 'very'.

Oh, that's really too kind of you - thank you so much.

I'm not feeling too well.

8 only too . . .

The expression only too is used to mean 'very', 'extremely'. It is common in formal offers and invitations.

We will be only too pleased if you can spend a few days with us.

For too meaning 'also', ► 369.

too, also and as well ► 369
611 too much and too many

1 the difference
The difference between too much and too many is the same as the difference between much and many (► 165). Too much is used with singular (uncountable) nouns; too many is used with plurals.

You put too much salt in the soup.
I’ve had too many late nights recently. (not...too much late nights...)

2 a bit too much, rather too many, etc
Expressions which modify comparatives (► 207) and too can also modify too much and too many.

She’s wearing a bit too much make-up for my taste.
I’ve been to rather too many parties recently.
However, much too many is unusual.

You ask far too many questions. (not...much too many questions.)

3 too much/many without a noun
We can drop a noun after too much/many, if the meaning is clear.

You’ve eaten too much.
‘Did you get any answers to your advertisement?’ ‘Too many.’

For the difference between too and too much, ► 610.2.

town and city ► 420

612 travel, journey, trip and voyage

‘Travel’ means ‘travelling in general’. It is normally uncountable.

My interests are music and travel.
The plural travels is sometimes used; it suggests a rather grand programme of travelling or exploration.

He wrote a wonderful book about his travels in the Himalayas.

A journey (more common in British English) is one ‘piece’ of travelling.

Did you have a good journey? (not Did you have a good travel?)
I met Megan on my last journey to England. (not...my last travel.)

A trip is a return journey together with the activity (business or pleasure) which is the reason for the journey.

I’m going on a business trip next week. (= I’m going on a journey and I’m going to do some business.)
Daniel’s school is organising a skiing trip to the Alps.

Compare:

‘How was your journey?’ ‘The train broke down.’
‘How was your trip?’ ‘Successful.’

We do not so often use trip for expeditions which have a very serious purpose, are very hard and/or take a very long time.
In 1863 the President travelled to Dakota to make peace with the Indians. (NOT... made a trip to Dakota to make peace...) Amundsen made his journey to the South Pole in 1911. (NOT Amundsen made his trip to the South Pole...)

A long sea journey is often called a voyage. Note the preposition: on a journey/trip/voyage.

type of, kind of and sort of ► 592

(the) United Kingdom, England, Britain and the British Isles ► 411

613 until

1 until and till

These two words can be used both as prepositions and conjunctions. They mean exactly the same. Till (AmE also 'til or til) is informal.

OK, then, I won’t expect you until/till midnight.
I'll wait until/till I hear from you.
The new timetable will remain in operation until June 30.

2 until/till and to

To can sometimes be used as a preposition of time with the same meaning as until/till. This happens after from...

I usually work from nine to five. (Or... from nine until/till five.)

We can also use to when counting the time until a future event.

It's another three weeks to my birthday. (Or... until/till my birthday.)

In other cases, to is not generally used.

I waited for her until six o'clock, but she didn’t come. (Not I waited for her to six o'clock...)

For American English from... through, ► 607.

3 distance and quantity: until/till not used

Until/till is used only to talk about time. To talk about distance, we use to, as far as or up to; up to is also used to talk about quantity.

We walked as far as/up to the edge of the forest. (Not... till the edge...)
The minibus can hold up to thirteen people. (Not... until thirteen people.)
You can earn up to £1,500 a week in this job.

4 tenses with until

Present tenses are used to refer to the future after until (► 231).

I’ll wait until she gets here. (Not... until she will get here.)

Present perfect and past perfect tenses can emphasise the idea of completion.

You’re not going home until you’ve finished that report.
I waited until the rain had stopped.
5 structure with *Not until*. . . 
In a literary style it is possible to begin a sentence with *Not until*. . . , using inverted word order in the main clause (► 270).

*Not until* that evening was she able to recover her self-control.
*Not until* I left home did I begin to understand how strange my family was.

6 *until* and *by*: states and actions
We use *until* to talk about a situation or state that will continue up to a certain moment. We use *by* (► 414) to say that an action or event will happen at or before a future moment. Compare:

- Can I stay *until* the weekend?
  Yes, but you'll have to leave *by* twelve on Monday at the latest.
  (= at twelve on Monday or before)

- Can you repair my watch if I leave it *until* Saturday?
  No, but we can do it *by* next Tuesday. (*not* . . *until* next Tuesday.)

7 *until* and *before*

*Not until*/*till* can mean the same as *not before*.

I won't be seeing Judy *until*/*before* Tuesday.

And both *until* and *before* can be used to say how far away a future event is.

*It’ll be ages* *until*/*before* we meet again.

*There’s only six weeks left* *until*/*before* Christmas.

614 *up, down*

1 *towards/away from the centre* 
*Up* and *down* are not only used to refer to higher and lower positions. They can also refer to more or less important or central places. (Trains to London used to be called ‘up trains’, and trains from London ‘down trains’.)

The ambassador walked slowly *up* the room towards the Queen’s throne.

She ran *down* the passage, out of the front door and *down* the garden.

We’ll be going *down* to the country for the weekend.

But in the US *downtown* refers to the central business/entertainment area.

2 *north and south*

People often use *up* and *down* for movements towards the north and south (perhaps because north is at the top of a map page).

I work in London, but I have to travel *up* to Glasgow every few weeks.

3 *‘along’*

Sometimes both *up* and *down* are used to mean ‘along’, ‘further on’, with little or no difference of meaning.

The nearest bank is about half a mile *up*/*down* the road.
615 (be) used to

1 meaning
If a person is used to something, it is familiar; he or she has experienced it so much that it is no longer strange or new.

I've lived in Central London for six years now, so I'm used to the noise.
At the beginning I couldn't understand Londoners because I wasn't used to the accent.

2 structures
Be used to can be followed by -ing forms, but not infinitives (► 104.2).
I'm used to driving in London now, but it was hard at the beginning.
(Not I'm used to drive in London . . .)
It was a long time before she was used to working with old people.
Used is an adjective in this structure, and can be modified by quite or very.
I'm quite used to her little ways.

3 get used to . . .ing, etc
Get, become and sometimes grow (► 394) can also be used before used to (. . .ing).
You'll soon get used to living in the country.
Little by little, he became used to his new family.
It took them a long time to grow used to getting up in the night.

4 pronunciation
Note that used is pronounced /juːst/ in this structure.

For used to + infinitive (e.g. I used to smoke), ► 87.

616 very and very much

1 adjectives and adverbs: very kind, very quickly
We use very, not very much, before adjectives and adverbs.
You're very kind. (Not You're very much kind.)
The situation is very serious. (Not . . . very much serious.)
I came very quickly. (Not . . . very much quickly.)
However, (very) much is used before comparatives.
I'm (very) much happier in my new job. (Not . . . very happier . . .)

For very with superlatives (very first, very best, etc), ► 207.4. For the the very same, ► 571.

2 not very
Not very expresses quite a low degree.
It's not very warm – you'd better take a coat.
That meal wasn't very expensive. (= quite cheap.)
Note that little cannot be used in this way.
He's not very imaginative. (Not He's little imaginative.)
3 past participles: very much loved, very worried

Before past participles we normally use very much.

\[ \text{She was very much loved by her grandchildren. (NOT She was very loved.)} \]
\[ \text{Journey times will be very much reduced by the new road. (NOT ...very reduced...)} \]

But we use very with some past participles that are used as adjectives.

For details, ➤ 96.8.

\[ \text{I'm very worried about Angela. (NOT...very much worried...)} \]
\[ \text{We were very surprised when Dan passed his exam. (More common than ...very much surprised...)} \]

4 very much (adverbial)

Very much can be an adverbial.

\[ \text{We very much enjoyed the party. (NOT We very enjoyed...)} \]

We do not normally put very much between a verb and its object.

\[ \text{I very much like mountains. (NOT I like very much mountains.)} \]

Very much can also be a determiner before a noun.

\[ \text{She didn’t have very much money.}
\text{Have you got very much work to do?} \]

Very much is not often used as a determiner in affirmative clauses (➤ 165.4).

\[ \text{There was a lot of snow on the road. (NOT There was very much snow...)} \]

For very... indeed, ➤ 499.

voyage, journey, travel and trip ➤ 612

wait

Wait can be followed by an infinitive.

\[ \text{I'll wait to hear from you before I do anything.} \]

Before a direct object, wait for is used.

\[ \text{Please wait for me here. (NOT Please wait me here.)} \]

That-clauses are not used, but an object + infinitive structure is possible.

\[ \text{We'll have to wait for the photos to be ready. (NOT...wait that the photos-are-ready.)} \]

The time preposition for is often dropped after wait.

\[ \text{I waited (for) a very long time for her answer.} \]

The transitive verb await is formal, and is used mostly with abstract objects.

\[ \text{We're still awaiting instructions.} \]

For the difference between wait for and expect, ➤ 457.

wait, hope, expect and look forward ➤ 457

wake(n) and awake(n) ➤ 389
618 want

1 infinitive with to

After want, we normally use an infinitive with to.

_I don't want to come back here ever again._ (not _I don't want come back_. . . )

*That*-clauses are not normally used after want, but an object + infinitive structure (► 98) is possible.

_Do you want me to make you some coffee?_ (not _Do you want (that) I make you some coffee?)

_I don't want that woman to come here._

In American English, a structure with _for_ + object + infinitive is also possible.

_Do you want for me to make you some coffee?_

2 structure with object complement

Want can be followed by an object together with a complement (adjective, adverbial or past participle) to express ideas such as change or result.

_She doesn't want him back._

_We want the job finished by Tuesday._

_They wanted him dead._

_I want her out of there now._

To _be_ or _as_ is used before a noun complement.

_I want you to be my friend._ (or . . . _as my friend_.) (not _I want you my friend_.)

3 want meaning 'need'

In informal British English, we can say that a thing 'wants' (= needs) something, particularly with reference to actions.

_That car wants a clean._  _Your hair wants a good brush._

In this case, want can be followed by an -ing form (like _need_, ► 532).

_This coat wants cleaning._ (= . . . needs to be cleaned.)

4 I wanna hold your hand.

In informal speech, want to often sounds like 'wanna'. It is sometimes spelt like this in order to represent conversational pronunciation – for example in comic strips.

For _to_ used instead of a whole infinitive (e.g. _I don't want to, thanks_), ► 280.

**want and will** ► 631

619 -ward(s)

_Backward(s), forward(s), northward(s), outward(s)_ and similar words can be used as adjectives or adverbs.
1 adjectives
When they are used as adjectives, they do not have -s.

This country is very backward in some ways.
You're not allowed to make a forward pass in rugby.
He was last seen driving in a northward direction.

2 adverbs
When these words are adverbs, they can generally be used with or without -s.
The forms with -s are generally a little more common in British English, and the forms without -s in American English.

Why are you moving backward(s) and forward(s)?
If we keep going upward(s), we must get to the top.
Let's start driving homeward(s).

In some figurative expressions such as look forward to, bring forward, put forward, the form without -s is always used.

I look forward to hearing from you.
She put forward a very interesting suggestion.

3 other words
Towards and afterwards are the usual forms in British English; in American English, toward and afterward are also common.

watch, look (at) and see  ► 575

620 way

1 preposition dropped
In an informal style, we usually drop the prepositions in or by before way.

You're doing it (in) the wrong way.  Come this way.
Do it (in) any way you like.  We went there the usual way.

2 relative structures
In an informal style, we often say the way (that) instead of the way in/by which.

I don't like the way (that) you talk to me.
Let's go the way (that) we went yesterday.

3 infinitive or -ing
After way (meaning ‘method’/‘manner’) we can use an infinitive structure or of . . . ing. There is no important difference between the two structures.

There's no way to prove / of proving that he was stealing.

4 way of and means of
Way of is unusual before a noun (except in the common expression way of life). We use means of or method of instead.

The 19th century saw a revolution in means of transport.
(Not . . . ways of transport.)
They tried all possible methods of instruction, but the child learnt nothing.
5 **in the way and on the way**

These expressions are quite different. *In the/my, etc way* is used for obstacles – things that stop people getting where they want to.

- *I can’t get the car out because those boxes are in the way.*
- *Please don’t stand in the doorway – you’re in my way.*

*On the/my, etc way* means ‘during the journey/movement’ or ‘coming’.

- *We’ll have lunch on our way.*
- *Spring is on the way.*

---

621 **welcome**

Note the common negative meaning of ‘welcome to it’.

‘Aren’t you worried that somebody will steal your car?’ ‘They’re welcome to it. It’s more trouble than it’s worth.’

Compare:

- **Welcome to London!**
- **London – you’re welcome to it!** (= I hope you like it more than I do.)

622 **well**

1 **well and good**

*Well* and *good* can have similar meanings, but in this case *well* is an adverb, while *good* is an adjective. Compare:

- **The car runs well.** (adverb modifying *runs*) *(not The car runs good.)*
- **It’s a well-made car.** (adverb modifying *made*)
- **It’s a good car.** (adjective modifying *car*)
- **He teaches very well.**
  - *I like that teacher. He’s good.* *(not He’s well.)*
- **She speaks English well.** *(not She speaks English good.)*
  - *She speaks good English.
  - Her English is good.*

Note that we cannot say *well* between the verb and the object, *(Adverbs cannot usually go well = ‘in good health’)*.

There is also an adjective *well*, meaning ‘in good health’.

‘How are you?’ ‘Quite well, thanks.’ *I don’t feel very well.*

Note that the adjective *well* is only used to talk about health. Compare:

- **When I’m in the mountains I am always well.**
- **When I’m with you I’m happy.** *(not When I’m with you I’m well.)*

*Well* is not common before a noun. We can say *She’s well*, but it is less usual to say, for example, *She’s a well girl.*
3 I’m good.

I’m good is now often used informally to mean ‘I’m OK’, especially when refusing an offer.

‘More coffee?’ ‘No, I’m good, thanks.’

‘Want help?’ ‘It’s OK – I’m good.’

For ill and sick, ► 494. For well as a discourse marker, ► 301.3.

west and western, etc ► 442

what if ► 599

what . . . like and how ► 493

what, which and who: question words ► 625

623 when and if

A person who says when (referring to the future) is sure that something will happen. A person who says if is unsure whether it will happen. Compare:

I’ll see you at Christmas when we’re all at Sophie’s place. (We are certain to be at Sophie’s place.)

I’ll see you in August if I come to New York. (Perhaps I’ll come to New York, perhaps not.)

To talk about repeated, predictable situations and events (in the sense of ‘whenever’), both when and if can be used with little difference of meaning.

When/If you heat ice it turns to water.

When/If I’m in Liverpool I usually stay with my sister.

624 where (to)

To is often dropped after where.

Where are you going (to)? Where does this road lead (to)?

To is not normally dropped in the short question Where to?

‘Could you send this off for me?’ ‘Where to?’

For where in relative clauses, ► 233.1

625 which, what and who: question words

1 which and what: the difference

Which and what are often both possible, with little difference of meaning.

Which/What is the hottest city in the world?

Which/What train did you come on?

Which/What people have influenced you most in your life?
We prefer *which* when we have a limited number of choices in mind.  
*We’ve got white or brown bread. Which will you have?* (More natural than . . .  
*What will you have?)  
*Which size do you want – small, medium or large?*  
When we are not thinking of a limited number of choices, *what* is preferred.  
*What language do they speak in Greenland?* (More natural than  
*Which language . . . *)  
*What’s your phone number?* (not *Which is your phone number?*)

2 determiners: *which* and *what*  
Before nouns, *which* and *what* can be used to ask questions about both things and people.  
*Which teacher do you like best?*  
*Which colour do you want – green, red, yellow or brown?*  
*What writers do you like?*  
*What colour are your baby’s eyes?*  

3 *which of*  
Before another determiner (e.g. the, my, these) or a pronoun, we use *which of*.  
*Who* and *what* are not normally used with *of* like this in modern English.  
*Which of your teachers do you like best?* (not *Who/What of your teachers . . . *)  
*Which of us is going to do the cooking?* (not *Who of us . . . ?*)  
*Which of these coats is yours?* (not *What of these . . . ?*)

4 without nouns: *who* for people  
When these words are not followed by nouns or pronouns, we generally use *who*, not *which*, for people.  
*Who won – Smith or Fitzgibbon?* (not *Which won . . . ?*)  
*Who are you going out with – Lesley or Maria?*  
However, *which* can be used in questions about people’s identity, and *what* can be used to ask about people’s jobs and functions.  
*‘Which is your husband?’ ‘The one in jeans.’*  
So Jessica’s the Managing Director. *What’s Daniel?*

For relative *who* and *which* (e.g. *the man who . . . *), 233.  
For relative *what* (e.g. *what I need is . . . *), 236.  
For singular and plural verbs after *who* and *what*, 130.5.

626 *who* and *whom*  
*Whom* is unusual in informal modern English.

1 questions: *Who did they arrest?*  
We normally use *who* as an object in questions.  
*Who did they arrest?*  
Prepositions usually come at the end of *who*-questions (209).  
*Who did she go with?*  
In a very formal style, *whom* is sometimes used.  
*Whom did they arrest?* (formal)  
Prepositions normally come before *whom*.  
*With whom did she go?* (very formal)
2 relative clauses: the man (who) we met

In identifying relative clauses, (► 234), whom is unusual in an informal style. Either we leave out the object pronoun, or we use that or who (► 233–234 for details).

There’s the man (that)/(who) we met in the pub last night.

In a formal style whom is more common.

She married a man whom she met at a conference.

In non-identifying relative clauses (► 234), we usually use whom as an object when necessary (but these clauses are uncommon in informal English).

This is John Perkins, whom you met at the sales conference.

I have a number of American relatives, most of whom live in Texas.

3 who(m) he thought, etc

In a sentence like He was trying to find an old school friend, who(m) he thought was living in New Zealand, people are often unsure whether whom is possible (because it seems to be the object of the first following verb) or whether they should use who (because it is the subject of the second verb). Who is considered more correct, but whom is sometimes used. Another example:

There is a child in this class who(m) I believe is a musical genius.

In cases with a following infinitive, usage is mixed, but whom is considered more correct.

There is a child in the class who(m) I believe to be a musical genius.

627 who ever, what ever, etc

These expressions show surprise or difficulty in understanding something.

Who ever is that strange girl with George?
What ever are you doing?
How ever did you manage to start the car? I couldn’t.
When ever will I have time to do some shopping?
Why ever did I marry you?

The expressions can also be written as single words: whoever, whatever, etc.

Note that whose and which are not used with ever in this way.

For the conjunctions whoever, whatever, etc, ► 252.

628 whose: question word

1 with a noun or alone

The question word whose can be used with a noun as a determiner, like my, your, etc.

Whose car is that outside?
Whose garden do you think looks the nicest?

Whose can also be used alone, like mine, yours, etc.

Whose is that car outside? ‘Whose is this? ‘Mine.’
2 prepositions

Prepositions can normally come either before whose (more formal) or at the end of the clause (less formal). ➤ 209 for details.

For whose benefit were all these changes made?

Whose side are you on?

In short questions with no verb, prepositions can only come before whose.

'I’m going to buy a car.' ‘With whose money?’ (not Whose money with?)

For the relative pronoun whose, ➤ 235.

629 whose and who’s

Whose is a possessive word meaning ‘of whom/which’, used in questions and relative clauses. Who’s is the contraction of who is or who has. Compare:

- Whose is that coat? (not Who’s is that coat?)
  It was a decision whose importance was not realised at the time. (not . . . who’s importance . . .)
- Do you know anybody who’s going to Poland in the next few days?
  (not . . . anybody whose going . . .)
  I’ve got a cousin who’s never been to London. (not . . . whose never been . . .)

There is a similar confusion between its and it’s: ➤ 501.

630 why and why not

1 replies

We generally use Why not?, not Why?, in short replies to negative statements. Compare:

‘They’ve decided to move to Devon.’ ‘Why?’
‘I can’t manage tomorrow evening.’ ‘Why not?’ (More natural than Why?)

Why not? can also be used to agree to a suggestion.

‘Let’s eat out this evening.’ ‘Yes, why not?’

2 Why should . . .?

A structure with why followed by should can suggest surprise.

I wonder why she should want to go out with me.

The structure can also suggest anger or refusal to do something.

I don’t see why we should have to pay for your mistake.

‘Give me a cigarette.’ ‘Why should I?’

For a similar structure with how, ➤ 303.2.

3 infinitive structures

Why can be followed by an infinitive without to. This structure can suggest that an action is unnecessary or pointless.

Why argue with him? He’ll never change his mind. (not Why arguing . . .?

or Why to argue . . .?)

Why pay more at other shops? We have the best value.
Why not + infinitive without to is used to make suggestions. ‘Sandy’s in a bad mood.’ ‘Why not give her some flowers?’ Why don’t . . .? can be used in the same way.
  Why don’t you give her some flowers?
  Why don’t we go and see Julie?

wide and broad ► 412

631 will and want

Will and want can both be used to talk about wishes, but they are rather different. Will is used mostly in ‘interpersonal’ ways, to express wishes that affect other people through orders, requests, offers, promises, etc. Want simply refers to people’s wishes – nothing more. Will is to do with actions, want is to do with thoughts. Compare:
- Will you open the window? (an order)
  Do you want to open the window? (a question about somebody’s wishes)
- She won’t tell anybody. (= She refuses to . . .)
  She doesn’t want to tell anybody. (= She prefers not to . . .)
Note that will cannot be used with a direct object.
  Do you want / Would you like an aspirin? (not Will you an aspirin?)

For a comparison between will and going to, ► 39.

win and beat ► 392

632 wish

1 wish + infinitive

We can use wish + infinitive to mean want. Wish is very formal in this sense. Note that progressive forms are not used.
  I wish to see the manager, please. (not I’m wishing to see . . .)
  If you wish to reserve a table, please telephone after five o’clock.
An object + infinitive structure is also possible.
  We do not wish our names to appear in the report.
Wish + direct object is not normal without a following infinitive.
  I want / would like an appointment with the manager.
  (not I wish an appointment with the manager.)

2 I wish you . . .

Wish is used with two objects in some fixed expressions of good wishes.
  I wish you a Merry Christmas. We all wish you a speedy recovery.
  Here’s wishing you all the best in your new job.

vocabulary • 631 will and want
3 wish + that-clause: meaning

We can also use wish with a that-clause (that can be dropped in an informal style). In this case, wish does not mean ‘want’ – it expresses regret that things are not different, and refers to situations that are unreal, impossible or unlikely. Tenses are similar to those used with if (see below).

I wish (that) I was better looking.
Don’t you wish (that) you could fly?
We all wish (that) the snow would stay forever.

Wish + that-clause is not generally used for wishes about things that seem possible in the future. We often use hope in this sense (► 490).

I hope you pass your exams. (NOT I wish you would pass your exams.)
I hope you feel better tomorrow. (NOT I wish you felt better tomorrow.)

4 wish + that-clause: tenses

In a that-clause after wish, we generally use the same tenses as we would use, for instance, after ‘It would be nice if . . .’ (► 239). Past tenses are used with a present or future meaning.

I wish I spoke Japanese. (= It would be nice if I spoke Japanese.)
I wish I had a yacht. I wish tomorrow was Sunday.
All the staff wish you weren’t leaving so soon.
Do you ever wish you lived somewhere else?

Were can be used instead of was in this structure, especially in a formal style.

I wish that I were better looking.
Past perfect tenses are used for wishes about the past.

I wish you hadn’t said that. (= It would be nice if you hadn’t said that.)

Now she wishes she had studied harder.

In informal speech, sentences like I wish you’d have seen it sometimes occur.

For similar structures with if, ► 245.

5 wish . . . would

Would is very common in that-clauses after wish (much more common than it is in if-clauses). Sentences with wish . . . would express regret or annoyance that something will not happen.

Everybody wishes you would go home. (= Why won’t you go home?)
I wish you would stop smoking. (= Why won’t you stop smoking?)
I wish Jack would call me. (But it looks as if he won’t.)
I wish it would stop raining. (= It will keep on raining!)
Don’t you wish that this moment would last forever?

Sentences with wish . . . wouldn’t refer to things that do or will happen.

I wish you wouldn’t keep making that stupid noise.
(= You will keep making . . .)

Wish . . . would(n’t) can be like an order or a critical request. Compare:

- I wish you wouldn’t drive so fast. (Similar to Please don’t drive so fast.)
- I wish you didn’t drive so fast. (More like I’m sorry you drive so fast.)
- I wish you wouldn’t work on Sundays. (= Why don’t you stop?)
- I wish you didn’t work on Sundays. (= It’s a pity.)

For similar structures with if only, ► 242.

For other cases where past tenses have present or future meanings, ► 46.
1 **trembling with rage, blue with cold, etc**

*With* is used in a number of expressions which say how people are showing their emotions and sensations.

- **My father was trembling with rage.**
- **Annie was jumping up and down with excitement.**
- **When I found her she was blue with cold.**
- **white with fear/rage**
- **green with envy**
- **red with anger/embarrassment**
- **shivering with cold**

2 **angry with, etc**

*With* is also used after a number of adjectives which say how people are feeling towards others.

- **I'm cross with you.**
  - **furious with**
  - **upset with**
  - **angry with**
  - **pleased with**

After words which say how people act towards others (like *kind, nice, polite, rude, good*), we generally use *to*, not *with*.

- **She was very nice to me. (not...nice with me.)**

3 **with meaning ‘against’**

After *fight, struggle, quarrel, argue, play* and words with similar meanings, *with* can be used with the same meaning as *against.*

- **Don’t fight with him – he’s bigger than you are.**
- **Will you play chess with me?**

4 **accompanying circumstances and reasons**

*With* can introduce accompanying circumstances or reasons (rather like *and there is/was or because there is/was*).

- **The runners started the race with a light following wind.**
- **With all this work to do, I won’t have time to go out.**
- **With friends like you, who needs enemies?**

*Without* can be used in similar ways.

- **Without Emma and Jake, we’re going to have trouble finishing the repairs.**

5 **possession**

*With* is very often used, like *have*, to indicate possession and similar ideas.

- **There are so many people around with no homes. (=...who have no homes.)**
- **They’ve bought a house with a big garden.**

6 **clothing, voices, transport, etc**

Note that *in* is often used instead of *with* to refer to articles of clothing.

- **Who’s the man in the funny hat?**
- **Could you go and give this paper to the woman in glasses?**

We say *in a...voice,* not *with a...voice.*

- **Why are you talking in such a loud voice?**

Note also: *by car/train, etc (not with the car, etc), and write in pencil/ink.*

For the difference between *by* and *with,* ► 416.
worth

1 worth a lot, etc

Worth can be followed by an expression describing the value of something.

That piano must be worth a lot.
I don’t think their pizzas are worth the money.
‘Shall I talk to Rob?’ ‘It’s not worth the trouble.’

In questions about value, either what or how much can be used.

What / How much is that painting worth?

2 a million dollars’ worth of . . .

A possessive can be used before worth in expressions with numbers.

They’ve ordered a million dollars’ worth of computer software.

3 It’s worth talking to Joe; Joe’s worth talking to

To talk about the value of an activity, we can use an -ing form with worth.

The -ing clause cannot be the subject; we often use preparatory it.

It’s worth talking to Joe. (NOT Talking to Joe is worth.)
It isn’t worth repairing the car.

Is it worth visiting Leicester?

We can also use a structure in which the object of the -ing form (Joe, the car, Leicester) is made the subject of the sentence.

Joe’s worth talking to.
The car isn’t worth repairing. (NOT The car isn’t worth repairing it.
OR The car isn’t worth to be repaired.)

Is Leicester worth visiting?

For more about structures in which the object of a verb is the subject of the sentence (e.g. She’s easy to amuse), ► 101.4.

4 It’s worth it.

We often use It’s (not) worth it to say whether something is worth doing.

If you pay a bit more you get a room to yourself. I think it’s worth it.
‘Should we go and see the castle?’ ‘No, it’s not worth it.’

5 worthwhile

Worthwhile (or worth while) is sometimes used instead of worth, particularly to express the idea ‘worth spending time’.

Is it worthwhile visiting Leicester?

Infinitives are also possible after worthwhile.

We thought it might be worthwhile to compare the two years’ accounts.

Note also the structure worth somebody’s while.

Would you like to do some gardening for me? I’ll make it worth your while.

(= . . . I’ll pay you enough.)
6 well worth

Worth can be modified by well.

Leicester’s well worth visiting. (NOT well worth...)

635 yes and no

1 answers to negatives

In English, yes is used with affirmative sentences and no with negative sentences. In answers to negative questions and statements, yes and no are chosen according to the form of the answer, not in order to show agreement or disagreement with the speaker.

‘Aren’t you going out?’ ‘No, I’m not.’ (NOT Yes, I’m not.)

‘I have no money.’ ‘No, I haven’t either.’ (NOT Yes, I haven’t too.)

‘Haven’t you got a raincoat?’ ‘Yes, I have.’ (NOT No, I have.)

2 contradicting

Some languages have a special word for contradicting negative statements or suggestions (e.g. French si or German doch). English does not have a word like this. We often use a short answer structure (► 308).

‘The phone isn’t working.’ ‘(Yes,) it is.’ (NOT The phone isn’t working. ‘Yes.’)

Affirmative sentences are contradicted with negative short answers.

‘It’s raining.’ ‘(No,) it isn’t.’

For more about negative questions, ► 218.
For yes and no in answers to Do/Would you mind... ,► 528.

yet, still and already: time ► 595

zero ► 537
Index
a/an 133-135, 137-140; a and one in numbers 322.10; a with half 478.4; generalisations (e.g. a child needs . . .) 140.2; position with as/how/so/too + adjective 187; with quite and rather 564.4, 565.2; the difference between a and an 137.7; 70 miles an hour, etc 322.19; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3; with uncountable nouns 120.4; see also articles

a-bit 406; softening expression 312.1; with comparatives 207.1

a couple of . . . + plural verb 128.2

a few, few and (a) little 168; with of 168.1

a great deal 172.4

a group of . . . + plural verb 128.2

a large amount/number 172.4

a little, little and (a) few 168; with of 168.1; with comparatives 207.1

a long time and long 517

a long way and far 461

a lot and lots 172.2; with comparatives 207; a lot of . . . + plural verb 128.2

a number of . . . + plural verb 128.2

abbreviated styles 291

abbreviations 336

ability can and could 82-83

able be able to 85

-able (suffix) 338.4; -able and -ible 344

about and (a)round 376; and on 352; how about . . .? 492.4

about to 353

above and over 354

academic writing 288

accents 316.3-4

accept and agree 355

accommodation uncountable 119.3

according to 356

accused the accused 188.3

accustomed the accustomed 96.7

ache (verb) simple or progressive 34.6

card 322.17

acronyms 336.3

across, over and through 357

act and play 555.2

active verb tenses 2

actor and actress 328.4

actual(ly) 358; discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3

AD and BC 324.3

addition in addition 284.2

addresses at, in and on 384.6; in letters 289; in emails 290.1, 290.3

adjective clauses see relative structures

adjectives SECTION 15

+ for . . . to . . . 113.3-4

+ infinitive 101

+ -ing form 103

adjectives and adverbs of manner

e.g. happy and happily 193

adjectives or adverbs: confusing cases 194

after linking verbs (e.g. be, seem, look) 11.2

after sit, stand, lie, fall, etc 11.5

before personal pronouns (e.g. Poor you!) 174.7

comparison 204, 206-208

complementation: what can follow an adjective? 192

leaving out words after adjectives 188

order before nouns 184.1-3

position 183; after as, how, so, too 187;
after measurement nouns 186.4; after nouns and pronouns 186; after object 183.4; with something, everything, etc 186.6

use of commas 296.9

with and 185

without nouns 188

word order with complements (e.g. skilled in design) 186.5

admired much admired 96.8

admit . . .ing 100.1

adopted position and meaning 96.7

advanced active past participle 96.4

adverb particles (e.g. back, off, out) 195;
in phrasal verbs 12

adverbial clauses if SECTION 22; other adverbial clauses SECTION 23

adverbs and adverbials position 196-202;
adverbs of manner and adjectives (e.g. happily and happy) 193; adverbs or adjectives: confusing cases 194; connecting and comment adverbials 197; indefinite frequency 198.1; certainty 198.2; completeness 198.3; focusing 199; manner, place and time 201; position with ought to 76.3; with used to 87; comparison 205; ending in -ly; spelling 345.1-2;

often, etc with present perfect 47.5;
yesterday, etc not used with present perfect 48.2; adverbials and conjunctions: the difference 283.1; punctuation 283.1, 296.8; see also adverb particles

advertisements words left out 291.1

advice uncountable 119.3; + subjunctive 232.2

advise + object + infinitive 98; + -ing form or infinitive 105.4

afford + infinitive 97

afloat position 183.3
afraid position 183.3; afraid so/not 585.1; be afraid 25.1; be afraid and fear 359.1; with -ing form or infinitive 105.13; I’m afraid meaning ‘I’m sorry’ 359.2

African-American 335.2

after (adverb) shortly after, etc 360.1; and afterwards 360.2

after (conjunction) 249; after...ing 249.4; + perfect tenses 249.3; + present with future meaning 249.2; + past or past perfect 54.1

after all 361; and finally 361.2

afterwards(s) 619.3; and after 360.2

again and back 390

age (noun) preposition 323.2-3; ‘unmarked’ use 190; in/for ages 318.9

age (talking about age) 323; use of be 25.2 -age (suffix) 338.2

aged pronunciation 191

agent 7.1; in passive structures 58

ago 362; and before 362.4; and for 362.3; not used with present perfect 48.2; tenses 362.2; word order 362.1

agree + infinitive 97; and accept 355; I agree (simple present) 34.3; it was agreed to... 63.2; non-progressive verb 4.2; preposition 213: as agreed 275.11

agreement mixed singular and plural 128–130; multiple negatives 220

ain’t 337.4 Notes

aircraft singular and plural the same 117.3 -al (suffix) 338.2, 338.4

alight position 183.3

alike 363; position 183.3

alive position 183.3

all 146–150

and of 147.1; and both 146.1; and every 152; and whole 150

all, everybody and everything 149

all I want is... etc 274.5

all that... (relative structure) 233.4

expressions with no preposition 214.2 following article dropped 142.5

all... but 413.1

all day/week, etc 147.5; all day and every day, etc 152.4

all else 447.1

all right showing change of subject 301.1; and alright 364

all the better, all the more important, etc 208.2

all the same 284.2

all together and altogether 372

allow + object + infinitive 98; + -ing form or infinitive 105.4; allow, permit and let 365; I was allowed to 64.1; was allowed to instead of could 81.5

almost position 200.1; with superlatives 207.3; almost, nearly and practically 366

alone position 183.3; alone, lonely, lonesome and lone 367

along and through 368

 aloud and loudly 520

already tenses 595.7; with present perfect 47.4; already, still and yet 595

also position 369.1; and even 452.3; discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2; not only... but also 228.4; also, too and as well 369

alternate(ly) and alternative(ly) 370

although, though, but and however 371; and but not used together 229.5; and in spite of 498

altogether and all together 372

always position 198.1; in imperatives 224.7; and ever 454.5; with progressive 5; with simple past 49.4

am weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

am (= in the morning) 325.3

American used for United States citizens and affairs 321.3 Notes

American English American-British differences 319; grammar 319.1; vocabulary 319.2; spelling 319.3; pronunciation 319.4; adjective forms used as adverbs 194.4; adverb position 200.4; can’t and mustn’t 69.2; dates 324; have to and must 75.1; irregular verbs 1.2; letters 289 Notes; names of meals 330.2; noun + noun (e.g. a doll house) 127.1; use of subjunctive 232.2

among and between 403; meaning ‘one of’ 403.4

amount with uncountables 172.4; following article dropped 142.7

amused very/much amused 96.8

analysis plural 117.4

-ance, -ancy (suffix) 338.2

and 226.1; + infinitive without to 91.4; after try, wait, go, etc 99; both... and 228.1; ellipse (leaving out words) after and 276; in numbers 322.9; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3; with adjectives 185

Anglo- (prefix) 338.1

angry preposition 213

annoyed + by or with 96.9

another 550; + plural expression 130.7; another one 182.5

another thing is 301.2

ante- (prefix) 338.1

anti- (prefix) 338.1

antique(s) shop 125.4

anxious preposition 213; anxious to 101.1; anxious for... to 113.3

any 159

after superlatives 206.8

and any of 159.5; and every 162; and not any 159.3; and some 161

Index
Index

| as, since and for 377; just because . . ., it doesn't mean 393.3 |
| become, get, go, grow, etc 394 |
| bed expressions without article 142.1 |
| been meaning 'come' or 'gone' 395; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3 |
| before (adverb) 396; and ago 362.4; and ever 454.4; before, first and before that 396.3; with present perfect 47.4 |
| before (conjunction, preposition) 250; with past perfect 250.3; + present with future meaning 231.2; before . . .ing 115.6; and in front of 397; and until 613.7 |
| beg + infinitive 97; + object + infinitive 98; I beg your pardon 329.7 |
| begin + -ing form or infinitive 105.10; and start 398 |
| believe non-progressive verb 4.2; + object + to be 10.3; believe so/not 585; in negative sentences 219; he is believed to be 64.2; preposition 213; so I believe 585.3 |
| belong non-progressive verb 4.2; preposition 213 |
| beloved pronunciation 191 |
| below, under, underneath and beneath 399 |
| bend active or passive meaning 9.2 |
| beneath, below, under and underneath 399 |
| beside and besides 400; besides (discourse marker) 301.2 |
| bet 401; + present with future meaning 401.2; with two objects 8.1 |
| better 204.2; and rather 402.2; had better 77; meaning 'recovered' 402.1; quite better 564.3; all the better 208.2 |
| between and among 403; between . . . to 318.7; between you and I, etc 174.1 |
| bi- (prefix) 338.1 |
| bicycle by bicycle 142.1 |
| big, large and great 404 |
| billiards singular; no plural 117.3 |
| billion 322.13; and billions 322.14 |
| binoculars plural with no singular 117.7 |
| bit 121.1; a bit 406; quite a bit 564.4 |
| black person 335.2 |
| blame to blame 106.2 |
| blessed pronunciation 191 |
| blind the blind 188.1 |
| blue with cold, etc 213 |
| boat by boat 142.1; on/in a boat 384.4 |
| bored and boring, etc 96.3 |
| born and borne 407 |
| borrow and lend 408 |
| both 155; following article dropped 142.5; and all 146.1; and both of 155.2; both . . . and 228.1 |
| bread uncountable 119.3 |
| break active or passive meaning 9.2 |
| bride and bridegroom 328.4 |
| briefly 284.1 |
| bring and take 409; with two objects 8.1 |
| bring up and educate 410 |
| Brit 321 Notes |
| Britain, the United Kingdom, the British Isles and England 411 |
| British the British 188.2; the British Isles 411 |
| British and American English 319 |
| Briton 321 Notes |
| broad and wide 412 |
| broadly speaking discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2 |
| buffalo plural 116.3 |
| bunch 121.4 |
| burst out crying/laughing 100.1 |
| bus by bus 142.1; on a bus 384.4 |
| but (co-ordinating conjunction) 226.3; but, although, though and however 371; but and although not used together 229.5; dropping words after but 276; may/might . . . but 72.2; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3 |
| but (meaning 'except') 413.1–3; + infinitive without to 91.4; me, him, etc after but 174.2; next but one, last but two, etc 413.1 |
| but (meaning 'only') 413.4 |
| buy with two objects 8.1 |
| by (method, tools, etc) and with 416; in passive 58; by Shakespeare, by Mozart, etc 212; or other prepositions after past participles 96.9; by the kilo, etc 142.17 |
| by (place) and near 415 |
| by (time) 414; and until 613.6 |
| by all/any/no means 527.2 |
| by car/bus, etc 142.1 |
| by far with superlatives 207.3 |
| by myself, etc 178.7 |
| by the time that 414.1 |
| by the way 301.1 |
| Bye and Bye-bye 329.2 |
| cactus plural 117.4 |
| calculations in speech 322.21–22 |
| calf plural 117.1 |
| call 417; passive (e.g. she was called stupid) 65; call back 390.5 |
| camped active past participle 96.4 |
| can and could willingness 79 |
| instructions and requests 80 permission 81 ability 82–83 typical behaviour 86 can’t and may/might not 71.4 can’t and mustn’t 69.2 can’t have done 69.4 can have done in questions 69.4 can see, hear, etc 84; can speak, play 83.3 can/could always 83.4 can or will be able 83.1 |
Index
with or without the 208.6; tenses after this is the best, etc 56

**comparison** SECTION 17; as ... as 203; comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs 204–208; see also **comparatives and superlatives**

compel + object + infinitive 98

**complement** and **compliment**

complementation What can follow an adjective? 192; What can follow a noun? 122; What can follow a verb? 16; verb + object + complement 10; of somebody, etc 180.5; complements of place 7.3; infinitive complements 92; -ing form complements 94

**completely** position 198.3

**compound adjectives with participles** (e.g quick-growing, home-made) 96.5

**compound nouns** plurals 117.6

**concentrate** not 'concentrate oneself' 178.10

**concern** non-progressive verb 4.2

**concerned** position and meaning 96.7

**concerto** plural 116.3

**conclusion** in conclusion 284.1

**conditional structures** see if

**confused** and **confusing**, etc 96.3

**congratulate** and **congratulations** preposition 213; **congratulations** no singular 117.7

**conjunctions** SECTION 20; conjunctions and adverbials: the difference 283.1; punctuation 283.1, 296.8; prepositions before conjunctions (e.g. the question of whether ... ) 210; see also entries for particular conjunctions

**consent** structures 104.2

**consequently** adverb not conjunction, punctuation 283.1; discourse marker 284.2

**consider** +...ing 100.1; + object + to be 10.3; he was considered a genius, etc 65; is considered to be, etc 64.2

**consist** non-progressive verb 4.2

**contain** non-progressive verb 4.2

**contemplate** +...ing 100.1

**contents** plural with no singular 117.7

**continual(ly)** and **continuous(ly)** 427; with progressive form 5

**continue** + -ing form or infinitive 105.11

**contractions** 337

**contrary** and opposite 428.2; on the contrary discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2; on the contrary and on the other hand 428.1

**contrastive emphasis** cleft sentences 273–274; stressed auxiliaries 313.5

**control** meaning 429

**conversation** countable or uncountable 119.6

**coordinate clauses** 226–228

**co-ordinating conjunctions** 226–228

**corpus** plural 117.4

**correctness** 317

**correspondence** letters 289; emails, etc 290

**cost** with two objects 8.1

**costly** adjective, not adverb 194.1

**could** see can and could

**countable and uncountable nouns** 119; advanced points 120

counter-(prefix) 338.1

**counting** see numbers

**country** countable and uncountable uses 430; the country 141.4

**couple** a couple of... + plural verb 128.2

**course of course** 540

**court martial** 186.1; plural 117.6

**covered** preposition 96.9

**cowardly** adjective, not adverb 194.1

**crack** active or passive meaning 9.2

**craft** singular and plural the same 117.3

**crash** preposition 213

**crew** plural with no singular 117.7

**crisis** plural 117.4

**criterion** plural 117.4

**crooked** pronunciation 191

**crossroads** singular and plural the same 117.3

**cubic metre**, etc 322.18

**cursed** pronunciation 191

**customs** plural with no singular 117.7

**cyber-**(prefix) 338.1

**dago**(offensive word) 335.2

**daily** adjective and adverb 194.1

**dangling particles** see misrelated participles

**dare** 431; I dare say 431.3; How dare you? 431.3

**dash**(punctuation mark) 297

**data** singular or plural 117.3; correctness 318.7

**dates** 324; in letters 289 Notes

**day** by day 142.1; day after day 142.2; the day we met, etc 237.7

**days of the week** expressions with no preposition 214.3

**de-**(prefix) 338.1

**dead** adjective and adverb 194.2; and deadly 194.2; dead, died and death 432; the dead 188.1

**deadly** adjective, not adverb 194.1

**deaf** the deaf 188.1

**deal** a great deal 172.4

**decide** + infinitive 97; it was decided to 63.2

**decimals** 322.1–3
every 151; and all 152; and any 162; and each 154; every one (of) 151.2; every . . . but 413.1; every day and all day, etc 152.4; expressions with no preposition 214.2
every few days, etc 151.5
every now and then 151.8
every other 151.8
every single 151.8
every so often 151.8
everybody and everyone 180.1; no difference 180.1; + singular verb 180.3; and all 149; position with adjectives 186.6; question tags 306.5; with else 447.1
everyday and every day 151.7
everyone 180; + singular verb 180.3; and all 149; and everybody 180.1; and every one 180.7; position with adjectives 186.6; question tags 306.5
everything 180; + singular verb 180.3; and all 149.2; everything that 233.4; position with adjectives 186.6; question tags 306.5
everywhere 180; + singular verb 180.3; position with adjectives 186.6
ex-(prefix) 338.1
example + of 213; for example discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
except structures 456; + infinitive without to 456.5; and except for 456; and without 456.6; me, him, etc after except 174.2
excited + by or about 96.9; and exciting, etc 96.3
exclamation mark 293
exclamations 223; articles (e.g. What a . . .) 223.2
excuse + . . . ing 100.1
Excuse me 329.6-7
expect (+ object) + infinitive 97-98; expect, hope, wait and look forward 457; in negative sentences 219.4; expect so/so not 585
experience countable or uncountable 119.5; and experiment 458
experiment and experience 458
explain structures 459; passive structures 61; preposition 213
extent to some extent, etc 284.2
extra-(prefix) 338.1
face + . . . ing 100.1
facing, opposite and in front of 549
fact in fact discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3; as a matter of fact discourse marker in speech 301.3; the fact that 264.3
faded active past participle 96.4
fag and faggot (offensive word) 335.2
fail + infinitive 97
fair adjective and adverb 194.2
fairly, quite, rather and pretty 460
fall ill 394.8
fallen active past participle 96.4
family + singular or plural 128.1
fancy + . . . ing 100.1
far (adjective) 461.4
far (adverb) and a long way 461; before too 610.3; before comparatives and superlatives 207; how far? 492.5; see also as far as
farm on a farm 384.7
farther and further 462
fast adjective and adverb 194.2; (adverb) comparative and superlative 205
fear and be afraid 359
feel 463; progressive and non-progressive uses 4.3; + object + infinitive without to 91.2; + object + to be 10.3; it was felt that 63.1; there are felt to be 64.4; feel as if/though 463.3; can feel 463.6; feel like meaning want 463.4; I feel discourse marker 301.3; -self 178.10
female and feminine 464
fetch, look for and look after 518.4
few, a few and (a) little 168; with of 168.1; the few . . . 233.4; quite a few 564.4
fewer and less 169; with or without of 169.2
fewest and least 170
fight preposition 213
fill in/out 318.9
filled + with 96.9
finally 284.1; and after all 351.2; finally, at last and in/at the end 465
find + object + . . . ing 115.7; + object + to be 10.4; and found 1.2
find out and know 504.5
fine adjective and adverb 194.2
finish + . . . ing 100.1; and end 448
finished be/have finished 466; meaning 'ready' 466; active past participle 96.4
finished-time words not normally used with present perfect 48.2; used with present perfect 49.5
fireman 328.5
firm + singular or plural 128.1
first (ordinal number) first, one, second and two, etc 322.6; tenses after first, etc 56; the first, etc to 101.3; word order with complement 186.5
first (adverb) and at first 388; and before 396.3
first (discourse marker) first(ly), first of all in writing 284.1, in speech 301.1
first floor, etc 322.8
firstly see first
fish singular and plural the same 117.3
fit (adjective) + infinitive 101.2

Index
fit (non-progressive verb) 4.2; AmE forms 1.3; and suit 467; no passive 57.3

fixed expressions 332.4-5; position of adjectives (e.g. Secretary General) 186.1; order of nouns (e.g. bread and butter) 226.2

flat adjective and adverb 194.2

flock 121.4

floors first floor, etc 322.8

flow and fly 1.2

flu uncountable 119.7

fly and flow 1.2

focus(s)ing, etc spelling 347.7

follow can follow 84.3; as follows 256

foot (body part) on foot 142.1; irregular plural 117.2

foot (measure) 322.17; six foot/feet, etc 322.14

for (time) for, since, in and from 469; and ago 362.3; and during 440; dropped in time expressions 214.7; with present perfect progressive 50.5; present with future meaning with for (e.g. How long are you here for?) 469.1

for (purpose, cause, etc) 468; for...ing after nouns (e.g. a machine for cutting) 468.2; for, as, because and since 377; in news headlines 292.2

for (linking word) for... to 113; after enough 113.8; after something, anybody, etc 113.6; after too 113.8; after verbs 113.7; for there to be 113.10

for (pronunciation) weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

for a long time and long 517

for example discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2

for instance discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2

for one thing 301.1

forbid + object + infinitive 98; -ing form or infinitive 105.4

force + object + infinitive 98

fore- (prefix) 338.1

forever 454.5; with progressive form 5

forget + -ing form or infinitive 105.1; and leave 470

forgive + -ing 100.1

formal and informal language 281; in letters, emails, etc 289-290; formal and informal vocabulary 333

former the former 188.3

formula plural 117.4

formulaic expressions 332.4

forward(s) 619

found and find 1.2

fractions 322.1-3

frankly 301.3

free adjective and adverb 194.2; and freely 194.2

French the French 188.2

frequently position 198.1

friendly adjective, not adverb 194.1

frightened frightened by/of 96.9; very frightened 96.8

Frog (offensive word) 335.2

from, in, for and since (time) 469; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

from my point of view and in my opinion 557

front in front of, facing and opposite 549; in the front of 549.3

fronting 272

fruit uncountable 119.5

-ful (suffix) 338.2, 338.4

full stops 293; in numbers 322.1; in abbreviations 336.1

fun and funny 471

funds plural with no singular 117.7

fungus plural 117.4

furniture uncountable 119.3

further and farther 462; discourse marker 284.2

furthermore 284.2; and in addition 288.5

future

SECTION 4, 35-43

going to 35

present progressive 36

present progressive or going to 36.2

simple present 37

will 38

present forms or will 39.3

shall 38.1; in legal documents, etc 39.8

will and shall, going to and present progressive (advanced points) 39

future perfect 40

future progressive 41

I am to... 42

future in the past 43

future forms in polite instructions, etc (e.g. You'll need to...) 311.3

see also shall, will

gallon British and American 322.17

game and play 555.1

gather I gather that 482

gay 335.2

gender (references to males and females) 328

general in general discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2

genitive see possessives

geo- (prefix) 338.1

geographical names article use 142.18; English names of cities 327.1

gerunds SECTIONS 8–10;

see also -ing forms

get structures and meanings 472; + object + infinitive 98; causative structures 108;
I should/would meaning 'if I were you, I should/would' 240.2
I suppose 301.3
I think 301.3
I think I'll softening expression 312.2
I told you so 586.2
I would meaning 'if I were you, I would' 240.2
-(i)an (suffix) 338.3
-ic, -ical (suffix) 338.4
idea preposition 213; a good idea for . . . to 113.5; the idea of . . . ing 103.1; uncountable use 120.2
identify structure with as 10.2
identifying and non-identifying relative clauses 234; advanced points 237
idioms 332
if SECTION 22; ordinary structures 238; special structures with past tenses and would 239; if I were you 240; if . . . happen to 244.1; if . . . was/were to 244.2; unreal past situations 241; if only 242; if you will, etc 243; structures in spoken English 245; if . . . should 244.1; if it was/were not for 244.3; even if 452.4; if meaning 'even if' 244.10; extra negative in sentences with if 244.8; if after preparatory it (e.g. it will be a pity if) 268.5; in indirect questions 260.3; if and whether 261; conditionals in indirect speech 263.5; if and in case 248; if and when 623; if and unless 247; other words with similar uses 246; leaving out if 244.4; inversion structures instead of if-clauses (e.g. Had I known . . .) 244.5; if asked, etc 115.6; any in if-clauses 159.1; ever in if-clauses 454.1; if so/not 244.7; if any, if ever, if necessary, if in doubt, etc 244.6; if + past participle 115.6; if . . . then 244.9; what if 599; if as discourse marker showing concession 284.2; see also as if if any 244.6
if ever 244.6
if in doubt 244.6
if necessary 244.6
if not and unless 247
if only 242
if so/not 244.7
if you like 514.7
-ify (suffix) 338.6
ill position 183.3; and sick 494; preposition 213
ill- (prefix) 338.1
illnesses usually uncountable 119.7; with or without the 142.15
I'm, I've, don't, etc contractions 337
I'm afraid 359.2; discourse marker 301.3
im- (prefix) 338.1
imagine non-progressive verb 4.2; + (object +) -ing form 100.1; imagine (that) 246; + so/not 585; in negative sentences 219.1
immediately (conjunction) 495
imperatives 224; question tags 306.2; structures with let 225
important + subjunctive 232.2; + for . . . to 113.2; structure with should 232.5
impossible to understand, etc 101.4; for . . . to 113.4
impressed preposition 213
in (place) 384; and into 496; and to 385; in, at and on 384; in bed, hospital, etc 142.1
in (time) 386; in a month's time, etc 386.6; and during 441; and later 506; in, at and on 386; in, from, for and since 469
in addition 284.2; and furthermore 288.5; in addition to . . . ing 104.2
in any case discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
in case and if 248; + happen to / should 248.2; in case of 248.4
in conclusion 284.1
in fact discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
in front of, facing and opposite 549; and before 397
in general discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
in most cases discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
in my opinion comment adverbial 197; discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3; and from my point of view 557
in my view discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
in order that and so that 588
in order to 112.2
in other words discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
in particular discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
in short 284.1
in some cases discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
in spite of 498; in spite of . . . ing 115.6; in spite of the fact that 264.3; in spite of this/that discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
in the end, at the end, at last and finally 465
in the first, etc place discourse marker in writing 284.1, in speech 301.1
in the same way 284.2
in the way and on the way 620.5
in time and on time 608.3
in which case 237.6
in- (prefix) 338.1
inch 322.17
incidentally 301.1
Index
Index

inclined structures 104.2
include non-progressive verb 4.2
increased active past participle 96.4
indeed 499
indefinite pronouns see somebody, anybody, you, etc
independence and independent prepositions 213
Indian English 320.3
indirect and direct objects 8
indirect and direct speech 258–263;
introduction 258; tenses 259; questions and answers 260; whether and if 261;
infinitives 262; advanced points 263;
reporting past tenses with past or past perfect 263.1;
I asked how old you are! were, who 263.9; indirect speech with relative structures: somebody I know you’ll like, a car that I didn’t know how fast it could go 237.17
infinitives SECTIONS 8–10; introduction 88; progressive, perfect, passive and negative infinitives 89; split infinitive 89.7; perfect infinitives (e.g. to have left) 90; without to 91; to instead of whole infinitive 280.1; as subject, object or complement 92; infinitive or -ing form 95; infinitive or -ing form with different uses 105; after verbs 97; after verb + object 98; after hear, see, etc + object 110; after adjectives 101; after easy, difficult, impossible, etc 101.4; after superlatives (e.g. the youngest person to) 101.3;
after nouns and pronouns 102; after relatives (e.g. a garden in which to play) 237.14; for... to... 113; active and passive infinitive with similar meaning 106; purpose (e.g. I sat down to rest) 112; structure with preparatory it 268–269; in causative structures with make, take 107; with get 108; with have 109; and instead of to (e.g. try and) 99; future meaning (e.g. the life to come) 102.6; in indirect speech 262; in news headlines 292.2; after way 620.3; after but 413.3; after except 456.5; after help 483; after let 512; after make 107; after rather than 566.1; after would rather 566.2; after why 630.3; who to... what to... etc 111
informal and formal language 281;
in letters, emails, etc 289–290; informal and formal vocabulary 333
information uncountable 119.3
information structure 267; reasons for using passives 67

-ing (suffix) 338.2
-ing forms SECTIONS 8–10; introduction 93; terminology: ‘participles’ and ‘gerunds’ 93.1, 93.3; perfect, passive and negative -ing forms 93.2; as subject, object or complement 94; with determiner (e.g. the opening of Parliament, my smoking) 94.3; with object (e.g. smoking cigarettes) 94.2; infinitive or -ing form 95; infinitive or -ing form with different uses 105; participles (-ing forms used like adjectives) 96; -ing forms after verbs 100; after nouns and adjectives 103; after prepositions 104; to... ing 104.2; in causative structures with get 108; with have 109; after hear, see, etc + object 110; participle clauses 115; misrelated participles (e.g. Looking out of the window, the mountains...) 115.4; in progressive structures 3; passive meaning (e.g. It needs cleaning) 100.3; after mind 528.3; go/come... ing 476; after way 620.3; structure with preparatory it 94.5
initials names of organisations 336
insist + subjunctive 232.2; preposition 213
instance for instance discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
instant the instant (that) 495
instead 500.3; instead of 500.1; instead of ...ing 115.6; instead of and without 500.2
instruct + object + infinitive 98
instructions use of tenses 33.3; words left out 291.1; use of will, would and can 80.1; Shall I/we...? 80.2; future in polite instructions (e.g. You’ll need to...) 311.3; imperatives 224
intend + object + infinitive 98; + -ing form or infinitive 105.11; in negative sentences 219.4
inter- (prefix) 338.1
interest(ed) preposition 213; + -ing form or infinitive 105.16; interested and interesting, etc 96.3
international English 320.4
interrogative structures 216
into and in 496
intonation 314; in question tags 305.5; in relative clauses 234.2
introductions 329.1
Inuit 335.2
inversion verb before subject 270–271; in older English 318.10
inverted commas see quotation marks
invitations 329.15
invite + object + quotation marks
involve non-progressive verb 4.2; involve... ing 100.1
involved position and meaning 96.7
Irish the Irish 188.2
irregular verbs list of common examples 1
is weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
-se/ize (suffix) 338.6; -ise or -ize 343
-ish (suffix) 338.4
-ism (suffix) 338.2
-ist (suffix) 338.3
it (personal pronoun) 173; advanced points 174; and this/that (things that have just been mentioned) 145; referring to nothing 173.7; referring to the situation 173.7; referring to time, weather, temperature and distances 173.8; used to identify (e.g. It’s John) 173.9; it was me that / it was I who, etc 174.3; it was my secretary who, etc (left sentences) 273; it’s impossible for... to, etc 113.4; preparatory subject and object 268-269
it doesn’t matter and no matter 253.3
it is the first/last, etc tenses 56
it is true (that) discourse marker 284.2
item of information, etc 121.1
its 143; and it’s 501
it’s . . . since tenses 579.2
it’s time 502
itself 178
-it (suffix) 338.2
-ive (suffix) 338.4
-ize (suffix) 338.6; -ize or -ise 343
Jamaican creole 320.3
Jap (offensive word) 335.2
Japanese singular and plural the same 117.3; the Japanese 188.2
jeans plural with no singular 117.7
journey (countable) and travel (uncountable) 119.3; have/did you have a good journey 329.9; journey, travel, trip and voyage 612
jury treated as singular or plural 128.1
just adjective and adverb 194.2; and justly 194.2; (adverb) meanings and tenses 503; position 199; used for emphasis 503.1; just as/when 251.3; just as discourse marker 284.2
just because . . ., it doesn’t mean 393.3
just now meanings and tenses 503.3
keep meaning ‘stay’ 394.10; keep (on) . . .ing 100.1
kibbutz plural 117.4
kick with two objects 8.1
kidnapped, etc spelling 347.7
kilo plural 116.3
kilo- (prefix) 338.1
kind/sort of 592; following article dropped 592.1; these kind of 592.2; discourse marker 301.3; softening expression 312.1
kind to 213; so kind as to 584.8
kinds of English SECTION 28; standard English and dialects 316; accents 316.4; correctness, rules 317; formality 281; changes in English 318; American and British English 319; other varieties of English 320; English as a lingua franca 320.4; formal written English SECTION 26; spoken English SECTION 27
King, Queen, etc without article 142.12
knife plural 117.1
know structures and tenses 504; + object + infinitive without to 504.2; + object + to be 10.3; and find out 504.5; I know and I know it 504.6; know and know about of 504.4; know about not followed by that 210.1; non-progressive verb 4.2; passive (she is known to be . . .) 64.2; you know discourse marker 301.1, 301.3; I don’t know discourse marker 301.3; How do you know? 492.4; How should I know? 303.2
knowledge uncountable 119.3
known known to 96.9; well known 96.8
Kraut (offensive word) 335.2
lack (noun) preposition 213
lack (verb) non-progressive 4.2; no following preposition 214.1; not used in passive 57.3
large and wide 404.4; large, big and great 404
last word order with complement 186.5; at last 65.2; expressions with no preposition 214.2; last but one, etc 413.1; last, the last and the latest 505; tenses after this is the last, etc 56; the last . . . to 101.3; last three, etc 505.2
lastly 284.1
late adjective and adverb 194; and lately 194.2; (adverb) later and latest 205; See you later 329.2
lately with present perfect 47.4; with present perfect progressive 50.5
later and in 506
latest, last and the last 505
latter the latter 188.3
laugh preposition 213
lay and lie 507
lead and leaden 126.4
leaf plural 117.1
learn forms 508.1; + -ing form or infinitive 105.8; learn to and learn how to 508.2
learned (adjective) pronunciation 191
least and fewest 170; at least discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
leave preposition 213; + object + infinitive 98; and forget 470; with preparatory it (e.g. I’ll leave it to you to decide) 269.4; with two objects 8.1
leave off . . .ing 100.1
leaving out words see ellipsis

Index
left (= remaining) 509
leisurely adjective and adverb 194.1
lend with two objects 8.1; and borrow 408; passive structures 61
length (noun) ‘unmarked’ use 190; expressions with no preposition 214.8
length (talking about length) use of be 25.2
less and fewer 169; less + plural (e.g. less people) 169.1; less of 169.2
-less (suffix) 338.4
lesser 510.1
lest 511
let structures 512; + object + infinitive without to 512.1; let, allow and permit 365; let him, etc (third-person imperative) 225.3; let’s 225.1; question tag 306.3; let’s see, let me see, let me think 225.2
let, rent and hire 486
letters 289; words left out in emails, text messages, etc 291
lexical phrases (formulaic expressions) 332.4
lezzie and lezzo (offensive word) 335.2
lie and lay 507
life countable or uncountable 513; plural 117.1
lightning uncountable 119.3
like (similarity, function) and as 515; comparative and superlative of like 204.5; feel like 463.3; like, as and how 492.3; meaning ‘as if’ 378.3; like this/that and so 582; seem like 576.5; what . . . like and how 493
like (verb) structures and meanings 514; would like 514.6; would have liked to have seen, etc 90.2; if you like 514.7; like to: no passive 64.6; non-progressive verb 4.2
-like (suffix) 338.4
likely 516; adjective, not adverb 194.1; with there 20.5
linking with conjunctions and adverbs 283
linking verbs 11
linking words conjunctions and adverbials: the difference 283.1; punctuation 283.1
listen preposition 213; and hear 481; listen to: passive structure 62.1
little (adjective) position 183.2; and small 580
little (determiner) little, a little and (a) few 168.2; with of 168.1; + inversion (auxiliary before subject) 270.7; the little that 233.4; little else 447.1; question tags 305.4
live (adjective) position 183.2
lively adjective, not adverb 194.1
loaf of bread 121.1
logo plural 116.3
lone, alone, lonely and lonesome 367; lonely adjective, not adverb 194.1
long (adjective) after measurement nouns 186.4
long (adverb) longer/longest 205; a long way and far 461; and (for) a long time 517; as long as 379; so long as meaning ‘on condition that’ 246; see also how long?
Long live the King 232.4
look linking verb and ordinary verb 518; non-progressive verb 4.2; not followed by if 518.3; preposition 213; discourse marker 301.2; look at + object + -ing form or infinitive 110.4; look at, see and watch 575; passive structure 62.1
look after, look for and fetch 518.4
look forward to . . . ing 104.2; look forward, expect, hope and wait 457
look out for 13.4
lose and loose 519
lots, a lot 172.2; quite a lot 564.4; with comparatives 207.1
loud adjective and adverb 194.2; (adverb) louder/loudest 205; loudly and aloud 520
louse plural 117.2
love (meaning ‘zero’) 537
love non-progressive verb 4.2; + object + infinitive 98; + -ing form or infinitive 105.9
lovely adjective, not adverb 194.1
low adjective and adverb 194.2; (adverb) lower/lowest 205
luck uncountable 119.3
lucky + infinitive 101.2
luggage uncountable 119.3
lunch and dinner 330
-ly (suffix) 338.4; spelling of adverbs 345
macaroni uncountable 119.5
madam 326.2 b
made of/from/with 522
magic and magical 521
majority the majority 172.5; the majority of + plural verb 128.2
make with two objects 8.1; causative structures 107; + action noun (e.g. make a guess) 132.2; + object + infinitive without to 91.2; made of/from/with 522; make and do 435; make oneself heard/understood 107.2; make somebody welcome, happy, etc 107.3; passive (e.g. he was made to . . .) 64.3; passive (e.g. it has been made beautiful) 65
mal- (prefix) 338.1
Malaysian English 320.3
male and masculine 464
man plural 117.2; or men in noun + noun compounds 125.4; without article meaning ‘the human race’ 328.6; man-made discriminatory expression 335.1
Index
manage + infinitive 97
mankind 328.6
manners plural with no singular 117.7
many and much 165; see also much
'marked' and 'unmarked' adjectives and nouns in measurements 190
marriage preposition 213
marry and get married 523; no following preposition 523.2; not used with each other / one another 179.5
masculine and male 464
mathematics singular, no plural 117.3
matter (noun) no matter what, etc 253; the matter (with) 524; structure with there 20.2, as a matter of fact 301.3
matter (verb) non-progressive 4.2; it doesn't matter and no matter 253.3
may and might chances 71; may/might not and can't 71.4; special uses 72; may in wishes and hopes 72.1; may/might as well 72.3; may/might have done 71.8-9; might in instructions, requests, suggestions and criticisms 80; permission 81; typical behaviour 86; may... (but) discourse marker showing concession 284.2; might in indirect speech 263.3; might meaning 'would perhaps' 239.6; might making questions, etc less direct 311.4; the difference between may and might 71.2; the differences between may/might and can/could 71, 80-81
maybe position 198.2; and perhaps 525; softening expression 312.1
mayor and mayoress 328.4
me 173; after be 173.3; advanced points 174; in double subjects [e.g. John and me went] 174.1; me or I, etc after as, than, but and except 174.2; me too 369.3; me neither, me either 309.2; me/my smoking, etc 94.3
meals 330; thanks for meals, etc 329.11
mean (verb) 526; non-progressive verb 4.2; +ing form or infinitive 526.3; + object + infinitive 526.3; and think 526.2; I meant to have done it 90.2; structure of questions 526.1; What do you mean? 526.5; I mean discourse marker 526.4
meaning and opinion 526.2
means 527; by all/any/no means 527.2; means of and way of 620.4; singular and plural the same 117.3
measles singular; no plural 117.3; uncountable 119.7
measure non-progressive verb 4.2
measurement 'marked' and 'unmarked' forms 190; a five-litre can, etc 125.3; expressions without preposition 214.8; high and tall 485; adjectives after measurement nouns 186.4, foot, inch, etc 322.17
media singular (uncountable) or plural 117.3
meet (with) 318.9; not used with each other / one another 179.5
mega- (prefix) 338.1
melt active or passive meaning 9.2
-ment (suffix) 338.2
mention +...ing 100.1; don't mention it 329.19
mere position 183.2
metre, etc 322.17
micro- (prefix) 338.1
mid- (prefix) 338.1
Middle Ages plural with no singular 117.7
might see may and might
mile 322.17
milli- (prefix) 338.1
million (a) million 322.10; and millions 322.14
mimicked spelling 347.8
mind (verb) meaning, use and structures 528; Do/Would you mind...? 528
mind you 301.2
mine, yours, etc 176; a friend of mine, etc 177
mini- (prefix) 338.1
ministry + singular or plural verb 128.1
mis- (prefix) 338.1
misrelated participles (e.g. Looking out of the window, the mountains...) 115.4
Miss 326.1 c, 326.2 b, 326.3
miss (verb) meanings and structures 529
missing (adjective) 529.5
mistake + for... to 113.5
mistaken (very) much mistaken 96.8
modal auxiliary verbs grammar and meanings SECTION 7; in indirect speech 263.3; used to make questions, etc less direct 311.4
moment the moment (that) 495
Monday, etc with no preposition 214.3
money notes, coins and amounts (British) 322.15; (American) 322.16; singular verbs and pronouns 129.1
money uncountable noun 119.3
mono- (prefix) 338.1
monthly adjective and adverb 194.1
more (determiner and adverb) 166; more of 166.1 and other 550.3; in comparatives 204-205; more and more 206.4; no more and not any more 535; what is more 284.2
more or less discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
more than one + singular verb 129.3
moreover 284.2
mosquito plural 116.3
most (determiner and adverb) 167; most of 167.1; in superlatives 204-205; and mostly
much | mph | move | mph (= miles per hour) 322.19
Mr, Mrs and Ms 326.1 c, 326.3
much and many 165; as much/many... as 203.5; much/many of 165.2; how much/many 492.5; much and very with past participles 96.8; much as an adverb 165.7; much else 447.1; much/many more 207.2; much too 610.3; much with comparatives and superlatives 207
multi- (prefix) 338.1
musical instruments article use 142.10
must certainty 69; must have been/done, etc 69.4; must not and can’t (British and American English) 69.8; obligation 73; and have (got) to 75; mustn’t and can’t 73.3; mustn’t, needn’t and don’t have to 73.4; and should (certainty) 69.7; and should (obligation) 73.8; past indirect speech (certainty) 69.6; past indirect speech (obligation) 73.7; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
my, your, etc 143; my/me smoking, etc 94.3
myself, yourself, etc 178
naked pronunciation 191
names English versions of place names, classical names, etc 327
names and titles (e.g. Peter, Mr Lewis) 326
nationalities nouns and adjectives (e.g. Ireland, Irish, an Irishman/woman, the Irish) 321
nature without the 140.1
near (adverb) comparative and superlative 205
near (preposition) and by 415; near to 531
nearest, next and the next 533
nearly position 198.3; nearly, almost and practically 366; not used with never, etc 366.3
necessary structure with should 264.6; + for... to 113.4; if necessary 244.6
need (noun) structure with there 20.2; no need for... to 113.5
need (verb) forms and use 532; + object + infinitive 98; needn’t have and didn’t need to 532.6; in indirect speech 263.3; needn’t, mustn’t and don’t have to 73.4; need never + infinitive 532.6; non-progressive verb 4.2
negative structures 217-222
basic rules 217
negative infinitives and -ing forms 217.3
negative questions 218; negative questions as exclamations 223.4; negative questions in indirect speech 263.6
negative imperatives 217.2
think, seem, etc in negative structures 219
multiple negatives 220; multiple negatives in dialects 220.4
ambiguous sentences 221
extra negative 220.5; in expressions of doubt 220.6
question tags 217.6
yes and no in answers 218.4
contractions (n’t) 337
neglect to 97
neither (determiner) 157; neither of 157.2; neither one 182.5; neither, no and none 163.5; pronunciation 157.4
neither (adverb) neither do I, etc 309.2; neither... nor 228.3; neither, nor and not... either 227.2
neo- (prefix) 338.1
-ness (suffix) 338.2
never with present perfect 47.4; with simple past 49.4; and not ever 454.1; not used with do 217.5; position 198.1; position in imperatives 224.7; + inversion (auxiliary before subject) 270.7; question tags 305.4
nevertheless 284.2
New Zealand English 320.3
news uncountable 119.3
news headlines 292
next expressions with no preposition 214.2; next but one, etc 413.1; next, the next and the nearest 533; next Sunday two possible meanings 533.3; next three, etc 533.2; word order with complement 186.5
nice preposition 213; nice and 185.4
nickel 322.16
nigger (offensive word) 335.2
night at night 142.1
nil 537
no (determiner) no, none and not any 163; and neither 163.5; and not all 147.6; and not 536; no... but (= except) 413.1; question tags 305.4
no (adverb) no older, etc, no different, no good/use 373
no (answer) and yes 635; in answers to negative questions 635.1; contradicting 635.2
no doubt 534; discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
no good 373.3
no longer, not any more and no more 535
no matter who, what, etc 253; and whoever, whatever, etc 253.2; no matter and it doesn’t matter 253.3; no matter what with no following verb 253.4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>occasionally</td>
<td>position 198.1; with present perfect 47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ocracy</td>
<td>(suffix) 338.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odds</td>
<td>plural with no singular 117.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>after determiners SECTION 13; after fractions and decimals 322.2; after half 478.1; after whole 150.5; noun + noun with of or s 124.2; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course</td>
<td>540; discourse marker 284.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer</td>
<td>+ infinitive 97; with two objects 8.1; passive structures 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offers</td>
<td>329.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>541; position 198.1; with present perfect 47.5; how often 492.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>showing change of subject 301.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>position and meaning 183.2; after measurement nouns 186.4; the old 188.1; 'marked' and 'unmarked' use 190; how old 492.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>older English verb forms</td>
<td>318.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ology</td>
<td>(suffix) 338.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omission of words</td>
<td>see ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omni-</td>
<td>(prefix) 338.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>and about 352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on (place)</td>
<td>384.2; and onto 496; on, at and in 384; on the bus, train, etc. 384.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on (time)</td>
<td>386; on, at and in 386; on/at weekends 318.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on . . .ing</td>
<td>115.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on condition that</td>
<td>246; + present with future meaning 231.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on earth</td>
<td>who on earth, etc 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on foot</td>
<td>142.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on holiday</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on one's own</td>
<td>552.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the contrary</td>
<td>discourse marker 301.2; and on the other hand 428.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the one hand</td>
<td>284.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the other hand</td>
<td>283.1; discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2; and however 288.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the way</td>
<td>and in the way 620.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the whole</td>
<td>discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on time</td>
<td>and in time 608.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on top of that</td>
<td>301.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once (conjunction)</td>
<td>543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once (adverb) and one day</td>
<td>542; at once 542; with simple past or past perfect 54.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one (number) and a</td>
<td>322.10; one and a half 478.5; one and first, two and second, etc 322.6; one Tuesday, etc (no preposition) 214.2; one/two more, etc. 166.3; one of 544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one, you and they (indefinite personal pronouns)</td>
<td>181; one's 143.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one(s)</td>
<td>substitute word 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one another and each other</td>
<td>179; and -selves 179.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one day and once</td>
<td>542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oneself</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>use and position 545; + inversion (auxiliary before subject) 270.7; + relative clause with that 233.4; if only 242; not only... but also 228.4; only today, etc 545.4; only too 610.8; the only . . . ever 454.2; the only . . . to 101.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onto</td>
<td>and on 496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>without -self 178.10; active or passive meaning 9.1; when open is not used 546.2; open (adjective) and opened 546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operate</td>
<td>preposition 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>and point of view 557; and meaning 526.2; in my opinion 197; in my opinion and according to me 356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportunity</td>
<td>and possibility 547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>(adjective) position 548; and contrary 428.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite (noun)</td>
<td>quite the opposite discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite (preposition)</td>
<td>opposite, facing and in front of 549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or and nor</td>
<td>227.1; either . . . or 228.2; dropping words after or 276; singular or plural verb after expression with or 130.4; whether . . . or 254; + infinitive without to 91.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or (suffix)</td>
<td>338.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or else</td>
<td>447.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or rather</td>
<td>566.4; and better 402.2; discourse marker 301.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orchestra</td>
<td>+ singular or plural 128.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order (verb)</td>
<td>+ object + infinitive 98; in order that 588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orders</td>
<td>imperatives 224; with will 73.6; predictions as orders 39.5; You are to . . ., etc 42.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other(s) and another</td>
<td>550; and different 550.2; and more 550.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td>forms 76.3; probability 70; obligation 76; and should 70, 76; and had better 77.1; ought to have . . . 70, 76; in indirect speech 263.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ounce</td>
<td>322.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>143; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ours</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>(suffix) 338.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out (of)</td>
<td>551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-</td>
<td>(prefix) 338.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outskirts</td>
<td>plural with no singular 117.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outward(s)</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over and above</td>
<td>354; over, across and through 357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over-</td>
<td>(prefix) 338.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owe</td>
<td>non-progressive verb 4.2; with preparatory if (e.g. we owe it to society to) 269.4; with two objects 8.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Index
owing to and due to 439
own (determiner) my own, etc 552
own non-progressive verb 4.2
ox plural 117.2

page on page ... 212
pair 121.3
Paki (offensive word) 335.2
pan- (prefix) 338.1
panicking, etc spelling 347.8
pants plural with no singular 117.7
paper (uncountable) and a paper 119.4
paragraphs 286
Pardon? 329.8; Pardon me? 329.8; I beg your pardon 329.7
parking uncountable 119.3
part without a 553
participles (-ing and -ed forms) SECTIONS 8-10; terminology: 'present' and 'past' participles 96.1; 'participle' and 'gerund' 93.1; used like adjectives 96; active and passive participles 96.2-4; after conjunctions and prepositions (e.g. after talking to you) 115.6; after nouns (e.g. the people questioned) 96.6; past participles with by or other prepositions 96.9; past participles with very and much 96.8; causative structures with have/do/make + object + participle 107-109; hear, see, etc + object + participle 110; participle clauses 115; misrelated participles (e.g. Looking out of the window, the mountains ...) 115.4
particular in particular discourse marker in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2
party (social occasion) preposition 212
party (political, etc) with singular or plural verb and pronoun 128.1
pass with two objects 8.1
passer-by plural 117.6
passives SECTIONS 6; structures and verb forms 57; by + agent 58; modal structures 59; get as passive auxiliary (e.g. get caught) 60; verbs with two objects 61; verbs with prepositions 62; it was thought that ... etc 63; He is believed to be ... etc 64; He was considered a genius, etc 65; My suitcase is packed, etc 66; When do we use passive structures? 67; infinitives (e.g. to be taken three times a day) 42.5; infinitives (e.g. nothing to do / nothing to be done) 106.3; -ing forms (e.g. being done) 93.2; passives without be in news headlines 292.2; position of prepositions 209.4; verbs not used in passive 57.3
past continuous see past progressive
past participles see participles
past perfect 53-55; or simple past with after, as soon as, etc 54.1; progressive 55; simple and progressive: the differences 55.4; with before 250.3; with if (unreal past) 241; with suppose, supposing, what if (unreal past) 599; with as if (unreal past) 378
past progressive forms and use 45; difference between past progressive and simple past 45.3-6
past simple see simple past
past tense instead of would ... after conjunctions 46.1
past verb form with present or future meaning 46; after I'd rather 566.3; after if 239; after if only 242; after it's time 502.2; after wish 632.4; in polite requests, questions, etc 46.2
paths pronunciation 118.4
pay preposition 213; in passive 61; pay for to 113.7; one and two objects 8.7
penny, pennies and pence 322.15
people, person(s) and peoples 117.2
per (e.g. 70 miles per hour) 322.19
perfect infinitive (e.g. to have done) 89.2; use 90; after modal verbs (e.g. You should have written) 90.3
perfect -ing forms (e.g. having slept) 93.2
perfect tenses 6; with after 249.3; with before 250.3; with ever 454.3; with for and since 469.2; future perfect 40; see also present perfect, past perfect
perhaps position 198.2; and maybe 525
period (full stop) 293
permission (noun) uncountable 119.3
permission (giving and asking) 81
permit + object + infinitive 98; + -ing form or infinitive 105.4; permit, allow and let 365
person, persons, people and peoples 117.2
personal pronouns 173-175; basic information 173; advanced points 174; singular they 175; I and me, she and her, etc: the differences 173.2; the differences (advanced points) 174; me, etc in double subjects (e.g. John and me went) 174.1; l, etc in double objects (e.g. between you and I) 174.1; me or I, etc after as, than, but, except 174.2; it was me that ... it was I who, etc 174.3; we: inclusive and exclusive 174.5; we women, you men, etc 173.10; us meaning 'me' 174.6; you folks/guys 174.8; older and dialect singular and plural forms of you 174.8; he/she who 174.9; me/my, etc 94.3; it referring to nothing, the situation, time, weather, temperature, distances 173.7; it used to identify (e.g. It's John) 173.9; pronouns after adjectives (e.g. Poor you!) 174.7; pronouns in indirect speech 258.2; personal pronouns not left out 173.4; personal and relative pronouns not used together 229.6

Index
persuade + object + infinitive 98
phenomenon plural 117.4
-phil(e) (suffix) 338.2
-phob(e), -phobia (suffix) 338.2
phone preposition 212
photo plural 116.3; take a photo 435.6
photo-(prefix) 338.1
phrasal verbs 12
physics singular, no plural 117.3
piano plural 116.3
picnickers, etc spelling 347.8
picture in a picture 212
piece a piece of 121.1
piece- and group-words 121
pint British and American 322.17
pity countable or uncountable 119.6
place expressions with no preposition 214.11; a place to live, etc 554;
a place we can stay, etc 237.7; in the first, second, etc 63
place discourse marker in writing 284.1, in speech 301.1
place names articles 142.18; English versions 327
plan (noun) for ... to 113.5
plane by plane 142.1; on/in a plane 384.4
play (noun) and game 555.1
play (verb) with one and two objects 8.7; and act 555.2
please and thank you 556
please non-progressive verb 4.2
pleased preposition 213; + infinitive 101.1
plenty 172.3
plural see singular and plural
pm (= in the afternoon/evening) 325.3
Poet Laureate 186.1
poetry uncountable 119.3
point at or to 385.3
point uncountable use 120.2; there’s no point, etc 20.2; at which point 237.6
point of view preposition 212; and opinion 557
pointless for ... to 113.4
police plural with no singular 117.7
policeman/woman 328.4
polish active or passive meaning 9.2
polite preposition 213
politeness 310-312; questions as requests 310; distancing verb forms 311; softening expressions 312; please and thank you 556
political and political 558
politics singular and plural the same 117.3; and policy 559
polys- (prefix) 338.1
poor the poor 188.1
possess non-progressive verb 4.2
possessive’s 123-124, 127; forms 123; use 124; classifying expressions 127; articles dropped 142.3; not used with the poor, etc 188.1; or preposition structure 124.2
possessives possessive determiners (e.g. my, your) 143; possessive pronouns (e.g. mine, yours) 176-177; a friend of mine, etc 177; my smoking, etc 94.3; possessive forms of nouns 123-124; see also possessive’s
possibility and opportunity 547
possible position after noun 186.2
post with two objects 8.1
post- (prefix) 338.1
postcards words left out 291.2
postman 335.1
postpone ...ing 100.1
potato plural 116.3
pound (English money) 322.15
pound (weight) 322.17
practically position 198.3; practically, almost and nearly 366
practise ...ing 100.1
pre- (prefix) 338.1
predicative position of adjectives 183.1
predictions with will 38.2-3
prefer structures 560; + -ing form or infinitive 105.9; + object + infinitive 98; prefer ...ing to ...ing 104.2; non-progressive verb 4.2
prefixes 338
premises plural with no singular 117.7
preparatory it 268-269; with -ing forms 268.3; in passives (e.g. it was thought that, it was decided to) 63; with for ...to, etc 113.4-5
prepare to 97
prepositions 209-214; after particular words and expressions 213; before particular words and expressions 212; at the ends of clauses 209; after superlatives (e.g. the happiest man in the world) 206.7; place 384; direction 385; time 386; expressions without prepositions 214; before conjunctions 210; before -ing forms 104; at, in and on left out 386.7; left out before question words 210.4; left out before that 210.1-3; left out in abbreviated styles 291; prepositional verbs (e.g. look at) 13; prepositional verbs in passive structures 62; prepositions and adverb particles 195.1; see also the entries for particular prepositions
prescriptive and descriptive rules 317.4
present position and meaning 186.3
present and present perfect the differences 52
present continuous see present progressive
present participles see participles

Index
principle 563
prince and princess 328.4
prize and prize 562
prisoner expressions without article 142.1
prize and price 562
pro- (prefix) 338.1
probable structures 113.4
probably position 198.2
problem No problem (reply to thanks) 556.5
professor 326.3
progress uncountable 119.3
progressive forms 3–5; construction 3; non-progressive verbs 4; with always, etc 5; in polite requests, questions, etc 311.2; and simple forms with as, when and while 251; progressive infinitive (e.g. to be doing) 89.1
promise + infinitive 262.1; I promise 34.3; non-progressive verb 4.2; with two objects 8.1; passive structures 61
pronouns SECTION 14; see also entries for particular pronouns
pronunciation stress and rhythm 313; stress on street names 570.2; stress on noun + noun compounds 125.7; stress in abbreviations 336.2; stressed and unstressed contractions 337; intonation 314; accents 316.3; ‘received pronunciation’ 316.3; British and American differences 319.4; pronunciation and spelling 351; silent letters 351.3; weak and strong pronunciation 315; pronunciation of ed 44.2; third person -(e)s 30.3; plurals 118; possessive’s 123.2; younger/-est, longer/-est, stronger/-est 204.1; aged, naked, etc 191; a/an 137.7; ate, shone in AmE 1.3; can 315; can’t 337 Notes; either 156.6; going to (gonna) 35.5; got to (‘gotta’) 74.3; Mr, Mrs, Ms 326.3; neither 157.4; often 541; read 1.1; says 1.3; some 158.2; the 136.8; want to (‘wanna’) 618.4
proof preposition 213
-proof (suffix) 338.4
proper position and meaning 186.3
propose + infinitive or -ing form 100.4
proved or proven 1.3
provided/providing (that) 246
pseudo- (prefix) 338.1
psycho- (prefix) 338.1
public (noun) + singular or plural 128.1
publicity uncountable 119.3
punctuation 293–298; full stop, question mark and exclamation mark 293; full stops in abbreviations 336.1; question marks not used in indirect questions 260.2; colon 294; colons in news headlines 292.2; semi-colon 295; comma 296; commas after subordinate clauses 229.2; commas in numbers 322.9; commas in relative clauses 234.2; commas with adjectives 184.6; commas not used in indirect questions or before
structures, exclamations, imperatives, relative clauses, if, noun clauses, direct and indirect speech

series singular and plural the same 117.3
set of cutlery, etc 121.4
sexist language 328
shade and shadow 578
shall future auxiliary 38.1; offers, suggestions, asking for instructions and decisions 80.2; legal documents, etc 39.8; indirect speech 263.4; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3; will replacing shall 318.9

shame for . . . to 113.5
shape expressions with no preposition 214.8; use of be 25.2
share between/among 403.3
sharp adjective and adverb 194.2; and sharply 194.2
shave without -self 178.10
she 173–174; used for animals, countries, ships, etc 328.1; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
sheep singular and plural the same 117.3
sheer position 183.2
sheet of paper, grain of sand, etc 121.1
shelf plural 117.1
-ship (suffix) 338.2
shocked to 101.1; by/at 96.9; with should 232.5; very shocked 96.8
shone AmE pronunciation 1.3
short adjective and adverb 194.2; and shortly 194.2; in short 284.1
short answers (e.g. Yes, he can) 308
shorten 394.9
should probability 70; obligation 76; and must (certainty/probability) 69.7; and must (obligation) 73.8; and ought to 70; and had better 77.1; should or would after I and we in if-clauses, etc 244.1; I should meaning 'If I were you, I should' 240; after in case 248.2; after I insisted, it's important, it's surprising, etc 232.5; after so that / in order that 588.3; in indirect speech 263.3; not used for past 76.2; should have done 76.2; should I meaning 'If I should', etc 244.5; who should I see but, etc 413.1; Why should she?, etc 303.2; would replacing should 318.9; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
shout at or to 385.3; passive structure 62.1
show one and two objects 8.7; passive structures 61
shrunken 96.10
shut and close 422
sick and ill 494; he's sick / he's being sick 18
side either side 156.5
silk and silken 126.4
silly adjective, not adverb 194.1

similar word order with complement 186.5
similarly 284.2
simple past forms, spelling, pronunciation and use 44; or past progressive 45.3–6; or present perfect 48–49; or present perfect with already and yet 595.7; or past perfect with after, as soon as, etc 54.1; instead of past progressive or perfect after conjunctions 231.7; with present or future meaning 46; with present or future meaning after would rather 566.3

simple present forms, spelling, pronunciation 30; use 31, 33–34; or present progressive 31–34; or present perfect 31.6; or present 52; instead of present progressive after conjunctions 231.7; future use 37
since tenses 579; with present perfect progressive 50.5; since, for, in and from (time) 469; since . . . ing 115.6; since, as, because and for 37
sing structures with one and two objects 8.7
Singapore English 320.3
singular and plural spelling of plurals 116; irregular and special plurals 117; plural with apostrophe (e.g. 1960's) 336.4; pronunciation of plurals 118; group nouns (e.g. the team is/are) 128.1; other singular expressions with plural verbs 128.2; plural expressions with singular verbs 129; mixed singular and plural 130; is/are after what-clause 274.1; this/these sort of, etc 592.2; here's, there's and where's + plural verb 130.6; another / a good three hours, etc 130.7; distributive plural (e.g. they opened their books) 131; singular modifiers: a shoe shop, etc 125.2; a three-mile walk, etc 125.3; fractions and decimals 322.1; nouns and verbs after one of 544; after one and a half 478.5; hundred and hundreds, etc 322.14; singular they 175; either of 156.2; neither of 157.2; the rest 569; bread and jam, etc 130.4; see also countable and uncountable nouns

sir 326.2; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
size expressions with no preposition 214.8
size of be 25.2
sky in the sky 384.7
slang (kind of language) 334
slang (noun) uncountable 119.3
Sleep well 329.20
sleeping and asleep 389.2
sleepy be asleep 25.1
slow adjective and adverb 194.2; (adverb) comparative and superlative 205
small and little 580
smell 581; can smell 84.1; progressive and non-progressive uses 4.3
smile preposition 213
snow preposition 212
so (adverb) meaning 'like this/that' 582;
do so 29; even so 452.5;
I think/hope/believe, etc so 585.1;
I don't think/believe, etc so 585.2; I told
you so 586.2; if so 244.7; I'm afraid
so 359.2; so am I, so have I, etc 309;
so I hear/believe, etc 585.3; so it is, so
I have, etc 309.3; so with say and tell 586
so (degree adverb) so tired, so fast, etc 584;
and so much 584.7; and such 597;
and very 584.2; ever so 455; exclamations
and emphasis 223.3; not so... as 203.2;
so... as to 584.8; so... that 584.4;
so warm a day, etc 187; verb before
subject after so 270.5
so that and in order that 588
so to speak discourse marker in writing
284.3, in speech 301.3
so-and-so 589
so-so 589
social language 329
society without the 140.1
socio- (prefix) 338.1
solo plural 116.3
some meanings, pronunciation and
use 158; and any 161; some of 158.6;
and others 158.7; expressions with no
preposition 214.2; some or no article 139;
some of whom, etc 237.9; weak and strong
pronunciation 315.3
some time, sometime and sometimes 590
somebody and someone 180; no difference
180.1; position with adjectives 186.6;
question tags 306.5; with else 447.1
someplace 180.6
something 180; position with adjectives
186.6; something else 447.1; + for... to
113.6; something that 233.4
sometimes and once 542; sometime,
sometimes and some time 590
sometimes position 200.2; with present
perfect 47.5
somewhere 180; position with adjectives
186.6; somewhere else 447.1; somewhere I
can lie down, etc 237.7
soon comparative and superlative 205;
soon, early and quickly 591; no sooner,
hardly and scarcely 480; see also as soon
as
soprano plural 116.3
sorry preposition 213; -ing form or
infinitive 105.14; sorry about not followed
by that 210.2; Sorry and Excuse me 329.7;
Sorry? (asking for repetition) 329.8;
with should 232.5
sort of 592; discourse marker 592.3; article
dropped after sort of 142.6; these sort of
sound adjective and adverb 194.2;
and soundly 194.2
sound (verb) 593; non-progressive verb 4.2
South African English 320.3
south and southern, etc 442; capital letters
442.3
spacecraft singular and plural the same
117.3
spaghetti uncountable 119.5
Spanish the Spanish 188.2
speak speak to/with 318.9; and talk 594;
so to speak discourse marker in writing
284.3, in speech 301.3
speaking speaking of/about 301
special(ly) and especially 451
species singular and plural the same 117.3
spectacles plural with no singular 117.7
speech see spoken English
spelling 337, 340–351; contractions
(e.g. I'm, won't) 337; plurals 116; third-
person singular present 30; simple past
44; possessive’s 123.1; comparative and
superlative adjectives 204.1; apostrophes
340; capital letters 341; hyphens 342;
numbers (e.g. forty-one) 322.9; -ie and
-ize 343; -able and -ible 344; adverbs
endings in -ly 345; -icly and -ically 339.4;
final -e 346; doubling final consonants
347; y and i 348; ch and tch, k and ck 349;
ie and ei 350; spelling and pronunciation
(strange and difficult spellings) 351;
British-American differences 319.3;
national adjectives (e.g. Italian) 321;
North(ern), South(ern), etc 442; Mr, Mrs,
Ms 326.3; + noun + noun expressions
(e.g. bathroom, furniture shop) 125.8
spend + object + -ing form 100.2
spic (offensive word) 335.2
spit AmE forms 1.3
spite in spite of 498
split infinitive 89.7
spoken and written English see spoken
English, written texts
that (conjunction) dropped 265; comprehension problems 285.6; not used after prepositions 210.1; that and as not used together 229.5; that-clauses 264; preparatory it 264.4; that, than and as 206.1; the fact that 264.3; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
that (demonstrative) and those 144; expressions with no preposition (e.g. that afternoon) 214.2; that one 182.5; that is where 274.5; that/those of 182.7; this/that and it for things that have just been mentioned 145
that (relative pronoun) see relative structures
that-clauses 264-265
that is to say in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3
That's all right / OK reply to thanks, etc 556.5
the (definite article) 133-136, 140-142; generalisations with and without the 140; with superlatives 208; measurements (e.g. by the kilo) 142.17; musical instruments 142.10; parts of the body 142.16; radio, cinema, theatre and television 142.11; the accused 188.3; the blind, deaf, old, etc. 188.1; the British, Dutch, etc. 188.2; the meaning 'enough' 450.6; the older ..., the happier ..., etc 206.5; with half 478.3; dropped after all and both 142.5; after amount/number of 142.7; in noun + noun compounds 142.4; after possessive's 142.3; in advertisements, instructions, etc 142.20; in bed, etc. 142.1; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3; see also articles
the British Isles, Britain, the United Kingdom, and England 411
the fact that 264.3
the former, the latter 188.3
the majority 172.5; + plural verb 128.2
the matter (with) 524
the Middle Ages plural with no singular 117.7
the moment (that) 495
the rest 569
the same 571
the United Kingdom, Britain, the British Isles and England 411
the way (= how) 492.6
theatre preposition 212; (the) theatre 142.11
thee 318.10
their 143; meaning 'his or her' 175
theirs 176
them 173-174; meaning 'him or her' 175; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
themselves 178
Index
university preposition 212; expressions without article 142.1
unless 247; + present with future meaning 247.3; and if not 247.1
unlikely 516; adjective, not adverb 194.1
unnecessary for ... to 113.4
until and till 613; + past participle (e.g. until cooked) 115.6; + present tense with future meaning 613.4; and before 613.7; and by 613.6; and to 113.2; not used for distance 613.3; not until + inversion (auxiliary before subject) 270.7
up and down (e.g. up/down the road) 614
up to (distance, quantity) 613.3
upbringing and education 410
upward(s) 619
us meaning 'me' 174.5; us women, etc 174.1; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
use any/no use 373.3; is it any use expecting ... ?, etc 94.5; structure with there 20.2
used be/get used to (... ing) 615
used to + infinitive (past habits, etc) 87; and would 87.8
usual for ... to 113.4; as usual 381
usually position 198.1
vacation 488
vanished active past participle 96.4
verb + infinitive '97; + for ... to 113
verb + infinitive or -ing form 100.4; special cases 105
verb + -ing form 100
verb + object + complement (e.g. They elected her President) 10; passive (e.g. She was elected President) 65
verb + object + infinitive 98; passive (e.g. He is believed to be ...) 64
verb + object + -ing form 100.2
verb complementation What can follow a verb? 16
verb forms in older English 318.10
verbs of movement she came in running, she entered running or she ran in 14
verbs with active and passive meanings (e.g. I opened the door / the door opened) 9
verbs with particles (phrasal verbs) (e.g. break up) 12
verbs with prepositions (e.g. listen to) 13; passive structures 62
verbs with two objects 8; in passive 61
vertebra plural 117.4
very 616; and very much 616.4; and so 584.2; and such 596.4; and too 610.1; very ... indeed 499.1; and much with past participles 96.8; very best, etc 207.4

travel (uncountable) and journey 119.3; countable use 120.3; travel, journey, trip and voyage 612
travelling, etc spelling 347.6
tri- (prefix) 338.1
trip preposition 213; Have you had / Did you have a good trip? 329.9; trip, travel, journey and voyage 612
troops plural with no singular 117.7
trouble + (object +) infinitive 282-283
trousers plural with no singular 117.7
true it is true that 284.2
truth to tell the truth 301.3
truths pronunciation 118.4
try (verb) + -ing form or infinitive 105.6; try and 99.1
try (noun) one more try 132.1
tube by tube 142.1
turn, turn into (changes) 394.7
turning verbs into nouns 132
TV preposition 212; without article 142.11
twice as ... as, etc 203.7
two-part verbs phrasal verbs (e.g. break up) 12; prepositional verbs (e.g. listen to) 13
type of 592; following article dropped 592.1; these type of 592.2
typical preposition 213
typical behaviour can, could, may, might, will, would 86; used to 87
ugly adjective, not adverb 194.1
ultra- (prefix) 338.1
un- (prefix) 338.1
unable 85
uncountable nouns 119; advanced points 120
under, below, underneath and beneath 399
under- (prefix) 338.1
under no circumstances + inversion (auxiliary before subject) 270.7
understand non-progressive verb 4.2; + object + to be 10.3; + object + -ing form 100.1; can understand 84.3; I understand that ... 482; make oneself understood 107.2; so I understand 585.3; there is understood to be 64.4
understanding complicated sentences 285
unemployed the unemployed 188.1
uni- (prefix) 338.1
unimportant for ... to 113.4
union with singular or plural verb and pronoun 128.1
United the United Kingdom, Britain, the British Isles and England 411
United States + singular verb/pronoun 129.6
very much 616.4; and very 616; position 616.4; with comparatives and superlatives 207
vice- (prefix) 338.1
view in my view discourse marker in writing 284.3, in speech 301.3; point of view 212, 557
vital for... to 113.4; + subjunctive 232.2
vocabulary uncountable 119.3
voice preposition 212
volcano plural 116.3
volume and area 322.18
voyage, travel, journey and trip 612
wait 617; wait and see, etc 99.1; wait, expect, hope and look forward 457
waiter and waitress 328.4
wake active or passive meaning 9.1; wake, awake and awoke 389
waking (adjective) and awake 389.2
wanna (= want to) 618.4
want structures and meanings 618; in negative sentences 219.4; non-progressive verb 4.2; + -ing form with passive meaning 618.3; and will 631; meaning 'need' 618.3; want to not possible in passive 64.6
ward(s) (suffix) 619
warm be warm 25.1
warn + object + infinitive 98
was replacing were (e.g. If I was) 318.9; if... was to 244.2; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
wash without -self 178.10
watch + -ing form or infinitive 105.5; watch, look at and see 575
way 620; expressions with no preposition 620.1; in the same way 284.2; in/on the way 620.5; the way (that) she spoke to me, etc 620.2; way of...ing / way to... 620.3; way of and means of 620.4; by the way 301.1; the way and how 492.6
we inclusive and exclusive meanings 174.5; we who 237.13; we women, you men, etc 173.10; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
weak and strong forms 315
wear be wearing 437.3
weather uncountable 119.1; countable use 120.3; the weather 141.4
weekends at/on weekends 318.9
weekly adjective and adverb 194.1
weigh progressive and non-progressive uses 4.3
weight (talking about weight) use of he 25.2
weight (noun) expressions with no preposition 214.8
welcome welcome to 101.2; Welcome home/back 329.9; You're welcome 329.19; You're welcome to it 621
well adjective and adverb 622; (adverb) comparative and superlative 205; position 183.3; discourse marker 301.3; and good 622.1; as well, also and too 369; as well as 382; as well as that 301.2
well-known comparative and superlative 204.4
well-read active past participle 96.4
well worth 634.6
Welsh the Welsh 188.2
were instead of was after if 239.4; if I were you 240; after as if/though 378.2; after wish 632.4; was replacing were (e.g. if I was) 318.9; were she meaning 'if she were', etc 244.5; were to in if-clauses 244.2; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3
wert older English form of were 318.10
what (question word) 625; exclamations 223.2; questions with what as subject 216.6; What! (asking for repetition) 329.8; what to 262.2; what, which and who 625; what, why and how 492.4; word order in indirect questions 263.7
what (relative pronoun) 236; no matter what 253; What I need is, etc 274
west and western, etc 442; capital letters 442.3
what... like and how 493
What about...? 492.4
what else 447.1
what ever 627
what if 599
what is more 284.2
What time...? 386.7
whatever 252; and no matter what 253.2; meaning 'at all' 252.8; short answer 252.7; whatever else 447.1
when with simple past or past perfect 54.1; + present tense with future meaning 231.2; and if 623; in relative structures: the day when, etc 274.2; dropped after time, day, year, etc 237.7; no matter when 253; when...ing 116.5; when, as and while 251; when else 447.1; when ever 627; when turning, when ready, etc 251.5
whenever 252; and no matter when 253.2; whenever else 447.1
where + infinitive 262.2; dropped after somewhere, anywhere, etc 237.7; in relative structures: the place where, etc 233.9; no matter where 253.2; to dropped 624; where else 447.1
where's + plural noun phrase 130.6
whereas 284.2
wherever 252; and no matter where 253.2
Index
now, last, next, only, opposite, quite, rather, such, used to, whole.

work uncountable 119.3; expressions without article 142.1

works (= factory) singular and plural the same 117.3

worshippers, etc spelling 347.7

worth structures 634; I didn’t think it worth complaining, etc 94.5

worthwhile 634.5

would with if 239; would or should after I and we 239.3; replacing should 318.9; I would meaning ‘If I were you, I would’ 240; would have . . . for unreal past situations 241; in spoken if-clauses 245; modal use in requests and suggestions 80; typical behaviour 86.2; criticisms 86.3; and used to 87.8; future in the past 43; after wish 632.5; in indirect speech 259.3; past tense instead of would after conjunctions 46.1; used to make questions, etc less direct 311.4; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

would like 514.6; softening expression 312.3; would have liked to have seen, etc 90.2

would rather 566.2; negative structure 566.2

Would you mind . . . ? 528.2

wound and wind 1.2

wreaths pronunciation 118.4

wretched pronunciation 191

write with one and two objects 8.1

written and spoken English see spoken English, written texts

written texts SECTION 26; formality 281; pronouns and other proforms 282; linking with conjunctions and adverbs 283; discourse markers 284; reading complicated sentences 285; paragraphs 286; repetition 287; academic writing 288; letters 289; emails, text messages, etc 290; abbreviated styles 291; headlines 292; see also punctuation

wrong adjective and adverb 194.2; comparative and superlative 204.5; preposition 213; there’s something wrong 20.2; wrong to 101.2; wrong for . . . to 113.4

-y (suffix) 338.4

y’all (AmE dialect form of plural you) 174.8

yard (measurements) 322.17

ye (dialect form of plural you) 174.8; (older English) 320.1

yearly adjective and adverb 194.1

years old 323

yes and no 635; in answers to negative questions 635.1

yet non-affirmative word 222; after superlatives 206.8; tenses 595.7; yet, still and already 595; punctuation 283.3; discourse marker emphasising contrast in writing 284.2, in speech 301.2

yid (offensive word) 335.2

you 173; advanced points 174; you men, etc 173.10; you folks/guys 174.8; dialect plurals (ye, yiz, youse, y’all) 174.8; you, one and they (indefinite personal pronouns) 181; you who 237.13; you know discourse marker 301.3; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

You’re welcome 329.19; You’re welcome to it 621

young the young 188.1

your 143; weak and strong pronunciation 315.3

Your health 329.12

yours 176

Yours faithfully, etc 289 Point 8

yourself and yourselves 178

youse (dialect form of plural you) 174.8

youths pronunciation 118.4

zero 537

Index
Your indispensable guide to problems in English

Practical English Usage answers the questions that teachers and learners ask about English grammar and vocabulary, using clear corpus-informed explanations and examples.

More than 600 entries range across issues such as:
- article problems
- using tenses
- singular *they*
- *get* as a passive auxiliary
- the truth about conditionals
- *bring* or *take*?
- *can, could, may* or *might*?
- *classic* or *classical*?
- *emails*
- *politeness*
- *avoiding offensive language*

**New edition**
Now organised into two main parts for quicker, easier reference

- **Complete practical learner’s grammar**
  28 sections cover all the grammar and usage that learners need to know, including:
  - the grammar of speech and formal writing
  - British–American differences
  - changes in English
  - questions of style and idiom
  - lists of learners’ most common mistakes

- **Guide to vocabulary problems**
  - rules for word formation and spelling
  - a survey of high-priority vocabulary areas
  - an A–Z guide to over 250 common word problems

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt